

User's Guide

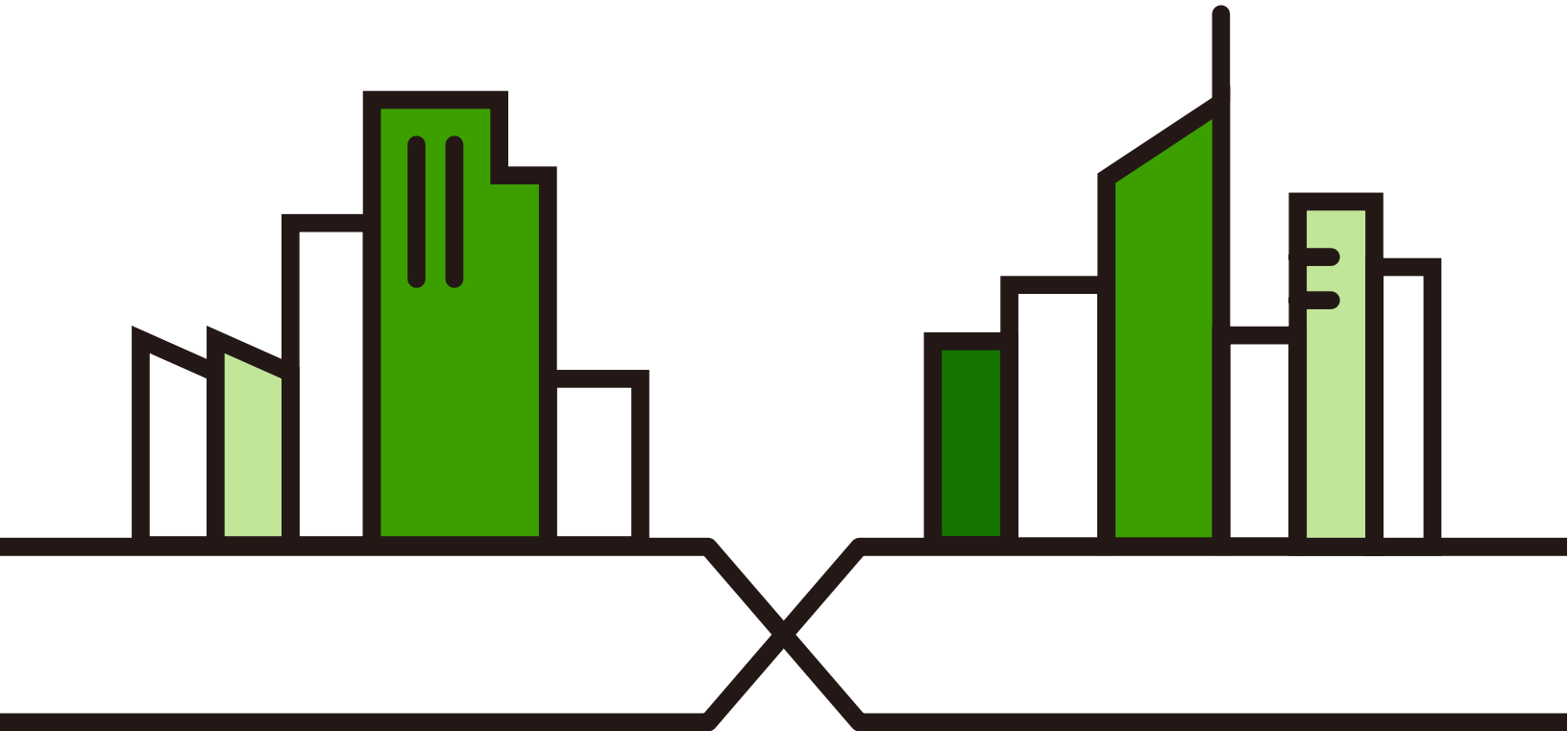
NCC

Nebula Control Center

Default Login Details

NCC URL	https://nebula.zyxel.com
User Name	myZyxel account name
Password	myZyxel account password

Version 15 Edition 1, 08/2022



IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

This is a User's Guide for a system managing a series of products. Not all products support all features. Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from what you see due to differences in release versions or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

- Nebula Device Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guide shows how to connect the managed device, such as the Nebula AP, Switch or Security Appliance.

- Nebula Device User's Guide

Refer to the individual Nebula managed device's User's Guide for information about how to set the device to be managed by the NCC and/or configure the device using its built-in Web Configurator,

- More Information

Go to the [Nebula Control Center](#) to find other information on the NCC.



Table of Contents

Table of Contents	3
Part I: Introduction & Getting Started Tutorials	10
Chapter 1	
Introduction	11
1.1 NCC Overview	11
1.1.1 MSP (Managed Services Provider) Portal	12
1.1.2 Groups, Organizations, and Sites	12
1.1.3 Mobile Router, Firewall (Security Appliance), Switch, and Access Point	13
1.1.4 License Concept	13
1.2 Getting Started	21
1.2.1 Connect Nebula Managed Devices	21
1.2.2 Access the NCC Portal	21
1.3 NCC Portal Overview	28
1.3.1 Title Bar	28
1.3.2 Navigation Panel	33
1.4 Create Organization	40
1.5 Choose Organization	41
1.6 Cloud-Saving Mode	42
Chapter 2	
Setup Wizard	43
2.1 Setup Wizard	43
2.1.1 Step 1: Run the Wizard	43
2.1.2 Step 2: Create an Organization and Site	44
2.1.3 Step 3: Add Your Nebula Devices	45
2.1.4 Step 4: Set up your WiFi Network	46
2.1.5 Step 5: Set up a Guest WiFi Network	47
2.1.6 Step 6: Set up the Deployment Method	48
2.1.7 Step 7: View the Summary	50
2.1.8 Step 8: Activate NCC Pro Pack and Security Services Trial Period	51
Chapter 3	
Tutorials	52
3.1 Overview	52
3.2 Add a Nebula Device	52
3.3 Activate and Assign a License for a Nebula Device, Site, or Organization	53

3.4 Monitor a Site	56
3.5 Know What Licenses are Set to Expire in My Site or Organization	57
3.6 Renew an Expired License	58
3.7 Transfer Licenses	59
3.7.1 Select Transferable Licenses	59
3.7.2 Undo Assigning a License	60
3.7.3 Transfer a License to a Different Organization	61
3.7.4 Assign a License to a Nebula Device in the New Organization	62
3.7.5 Transfer a License to a Nebula Device in a New Organization	65
3.8 Maintain Firmware	66
3.9 Assign an Administrator to Manage a Nebula Device	68
3.10 Manage a Configuration Template	70
3.10.1 Create and Bind a Template Site/Setting	70
3.10.2 Duplicate and Import a Template Setting to a Site	74
3.10.3 Enable the Override Site-wide Configuration (Local Override) Feature	80
3.11 Activate an MSP License	85
3.12 Configure CNP/CNP Plus Security Services	86
3.13 Delete an Organization	89
3.14 Manage IPTV	93
3.14.1 Set up the VLAN for IPTV	94
3.14.2 Define the Role of a Switch	95
3.14.3 Configure the Channel Profile and Naming	97
3.15 Setup Remote Access VPN	100

Part II: MSP 112

**Chapter 4
MSP 113**

4.1 Overview	113
4.2 MSP Portal	113
4.3 Change Log	117
4.4 Create Organization	118
4.5 MSP Branding	119
4.6 Admins & Teams	121
4.6.1 Admins Screen	121
4.6.2 Teams Screen	124
4.6.3 Cross-org synchronization	127
4.7 MSP Alerts	129
4.7.1 Alert Settings	130

Part III: Manage by Deployment: Group, Organization, Site.....	134
Chapter 5	
Group-wide	135
5.1 Introduction	135
5.1.1 Creating a Group	135
5.1.2 Group-Wide Menu	136
5.2 Monitor	136
5.2.1 Overview	136
5.2.2 Inventory	137
5.2.3 Change Log	138
5.3 Configure	140
5.3.1 Group Settings	140
5.3.2 Org-to-Org VPN	141
5.3.3 Administrators	144
Chapter 6	
Organization-wide	148
6.1 Overview	148
6.2 Monitor	148
6.2.1 Organization Overview	148
6.2.2 Change Log	152
6.3 Configure	153
6.3.1 Organization Settings	153
6.3.2 Create Site	155
6.3.3 License & Inventory	156
6.3.4 Administrators	170
6.3.5 Cloud Authentication	174
6.3.6 Configuration Management	185
6.3.7 Configuration Template	187
6.3.8 Security Profile Sync	190
6.3.9 VPN Orchestrator	196
6.3.10 Firmware Management	199
Chapter 7	
Site-wide	202
7.1 Monitor	202
7.1.1 Dashboard	202
7.1.2 Clients	205
7.1.3 Client Diagnostic	211
7.1.4 Containment List	212
7.1.5 Map & Floor Plans	213
7.1.6 Topology	215

7.1.7 Vouchers	216
7.1.8 Cloud Intelligence Logs	219
7.1.9 Summary Report	220
7.1.10 Applications	223
7.2 Configure	225
7.2.1 General Settings	226
7.2.2 Collaborative Detection & Response	229
7.2.3 Quarantine Interface Configuration	232
7.2.4 Alert Settings	233
7.2.5 Add Devices	236
7.2.6 Firmware Management	237
7.2.7 Cloud Authentication	240
Part IV: Manage by Device Type	247
Chapter 8	
Mobile Router	248
8.1 Overview	248
8.2 Configuration	248
8.2.1 Configuration: Edit	249
8.2.2 Home Networking	250
8.2.3 Cellular IP Passthrough	251
8.2.4 Firmware Status	253
8.3 Map/Photo	254
8.4 Live Tools	255
8.4.1 WAN Status	256
8.4.2 Cellular Info	257
8.4.3 LAN Stations	262
8.4.4 WLAN Stations	263
8.5 Backup & Restore	264
8.6 Network Usage and Connectivity	264
Chapter 9	
Firewall	266
9.1 Overview	266
9.2 Monitor	266
9.2.1 Firewall	266
9.2.2 Clients	270
9.2.3 Event Log	270
9.2.4 VPN Connections	270
9.2.5 SecuReporter	272

9.2.6 Summary Report	273
9.3 Configure	278
9.3.1 Port	278
9.3.2 Interface	279
9.3.3 Routing	287
9.3.4 NAT	292
9.3.5 Site-to-Site VPN	294
9.3.6 Remote Access VPN	299
9.3.7 Security Policy	304
9.3.8 Security Service	312
9.3.9 Captive Portal	326
9.3.10 Authentication Method	329
9.3.11 Wireless	330
9.3.12 Firewall Settings	332
Chapter 10	
Security Gateway	341
10.1 Overview	341
10.2 Monitor	341
10.2.1 Security Appliance	341
10.2.2 Clients	344
10.2.3 Event Log	344
10.2.4 VPN Connections	345
10.2.5 NSS Analysis Report	347
10.2.6 Summary Report	349
10.3 Configure	352
10.3.1 Interface Addressing	352
10.3.2 Link Aggregation Groups	360
10.3.3 Policy Route	368
10.3.4 Firewall	369
10.3.5 Security Service	376
10.3.6 Site-to-Site VPN	379
10.3.7 Remote Access VPN	386
10.3.8 Captive Portal	388
10.3.9 Network Access Method	392
10.3.10 Traffic Shaping	393
10.3.11 Gateway Settings	396
Chapter 11	
Switch	401
11.1 Overview	401
11.2 Monitor	401
11.2.1 Switches	401

11.2.2 Clients	413
11.2.3 Event Log	413
11.2.4 IPTV Report	413
11.2.5 Surveillance	419
11.2.6 Surveillance Port Details	420
11.2.7 Summary Report	422
11.3 Configure	424
11.3.1 Switch Ports	424
11.3.2 ACL	431
11.3.3 IP & Routing	432
11.3.4 ONVIF Discovery	435
11.3.5 Advanced IGMP	437
11.3.6 RADIUS Policies	441
11.3.7 PoE Schedules	442
11.3.8 Switch Settings	443
Chapter 12	
Access Point	448
12.1 Overview	448
12.1.1 Nebula Smart Mesh	448
12.1.2 Smart Mesh Network Topology	449
12.2 Monitor	450
12.2.1 Access Points	450
12.2.2 Clients	460
12.2.3 Event Log	466
12.2.4 Wireless Health	466
12.2.5 Summary Report	470
12.3 Configure	474
12.3.1 SSID Settings	474
12.3.2 SSID Advanced Settings	476
12.3.3 Captive Portal Customization	485
12.3.4 SSID Availability	489
12.3.5 Radio Settings	490
12.3.6 Traffic Shaping	496
12.3.7 Security Service	497
12.3.8 AP & Port Settings	499
Chapter 13	
Help	504
13.1 Online documents	504
13.2 Troubleshooting Tips	506
13.2.1 Firewall Information	506
13.2.2 Data Policy	506

13.3 Device Function Table 507
13.4 Support Forum 508
13.5 Support Request 508

Part V: Troubleshooting and Appendices 512

Chapter 14
Troubleshooting.....513
 14.1 Getting More Troubleshooting Help 516
 14.2 NCC Live Chat 516
Appendix A Customer Support 517
Appendix B Legal Information 522
Index523

PART I

Introduction & Getting Started Tutorials

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1.1 NCC Overview

The Zyxel Nebula Control Center (NCC) is a cloud-based network management system that allows you to remotely manage and monitor Zyxel Nebula Mobile Routers, Access Points, Ethernet Switches, and Security Appliances. A Nebula Mobile Router is an LTE or NR cellular 5G indoor or outdoor router that can be managed by Nebula. You need to set up a myZyxel account in order to log into the NCC and manage your Nebula Devices, as discussed in [Section 1.2.2 on page 21](#).

NCC feature support includes:

- System accounts with different privilege levels
 - Site Administrator: manage one site, which is a network that contains Nebula Devices
 - Organization Administrator: manage one or more organizations, which are sets of sites
- Multi-tenant management
- Inventory and license management
- Alerts to view events, such as when a device goes down
- Graphically monitor individual devices
- Securely manage Nebula Devices by using the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) over TLS

The following table describes the supported Nebula Devices.

Table 1 Supported Nebula Devices

CATEGORY	INCLUDED ZYXEL DEVICES
Hybrid Mobile Routers	LTE/NR Indoor/Outdoor Models
NSG (Nebula Security Gateway) devices	NSG Series
Hybrid Security Firewall devices	ZyWALL ATP / USG FLEX / USG20(W)-VPN Series Note: The following Nebula Devices do NOT have a P1 port: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• USG FLEX 50• USG FLEX 100 rev 2.0• ATP100 rev 2.0
Hybrid Switches	NSW / GS / XGS / XS Series
Hybrid APs (Access Point)	NAP / NWA / WAC / WAX Series

Note: To view the list of Nebula Devices that can be managed through NCC, go to **Help > Device function table**.

A hybrid device can operate in either standalone or Nebula cloud management mode. When the hybrid device is in standalone mode, it can be configured and managed by the Web Configurator.

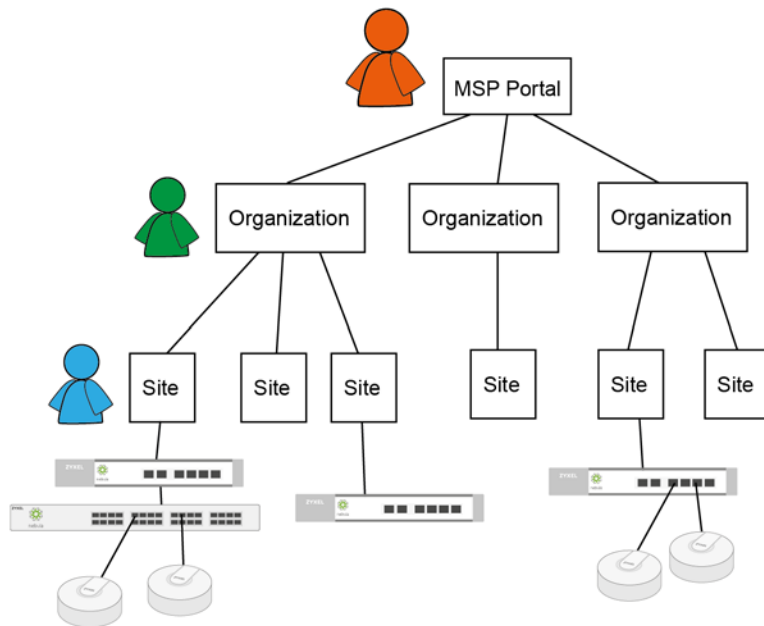
When the hybrid device is in Nebula cloud management mode, it can be managed and provisioned by the Zyxel Nebula Control Center (NCC).

1.1.1 MSP (Managed Services Provider) Portal

If you have an MSP license (as discussed in [Section 4.1 on page 113](#)), use the MSP menus for cross-organization management and branding.

A Managed Service Provider (MSP) network is a group of organizations that belong to the same organization administrator. With MSP, you can:

- View the organization summary and transfer licenses
- Copy the settings from a source organization to a destination organization
- Create administrators or groups of administrators (teams) and view their login details
- Assign administrators to multiple organizations
- Upload/replace/remove the dashboard logo on NCC
- Set the support contact details
- Configure MSP alerts to monitor Nebula Devices for unexpected events (for example, online/offline events)



1.1.2 Groups, Organizations, and Sites

To manage by how Nebula Devices are deployed, use the [Group-wide](#), [Organization-wide](#), and [Site-wide](#) menus.

In the NCC, a site is a group of Nebula-managed devices in the same network. An organization is a group of sites. A group is a collection of two or more organizations. To use the NCC to manage your Nebula Devices, each Nebula Device should be assigned to a site and the site must belong to an organization.

- A site can have multiple Nebula Devices, but can only belong to one organization.

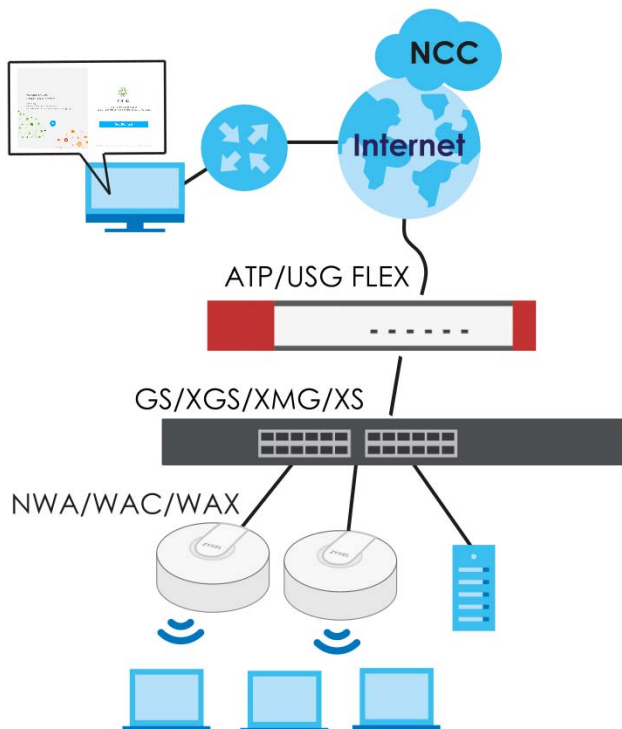
- A site can be managed by more than one site or organization administrator.
- An organization can contain multiple sites and can be managed by more than one organization administrator.
- A myZyxel.com account can be an organization administrator and/or site administrator in the NCC (see [Section 6.3.4 on page 170](#)).
- A site administrator can manage more than one site.

1.1.3 Mobile Router, Firewall (Security Appliance), Switch, and Access Point

To manage by Nebula Device type, use the [Mobile Router](#), [Firewall \(Security Gateway\)](#), [Switch](#) or [Access Point](#) menus.

In the following example, Nebula managed devices, such as the NAP102 or the NSW100-28P, are deployed in two separate networks (Site A and Site B). With the NCC organization administrator account, you can remotely manage and monitor all Nebula Devices even when they are located at different places.

Figure 1 NCC Example Network Topology



1.1.4 License Concept

The following section describes license concepts in NCC. Licenses unlock additional features in NCC. This means you purchase a license, assign the license to a Nebula Device, and you can then use the service in the site or organization that the Nebula Device is in.

1.1.4.1 Summary of NCC Licenses

There are three categories of licenses in NCC:

- **Organization:** These licenses unlock advanced features for sites and organizations.
- **Security Service:** These licenses unlock advanced security features on a Security Appliance/Firewall device.
- **MSP:** This license unlocks the MSP menu for an NCC user account.

The following table gives a summary of all licenses in NCC at the time of writing.

Table 2 Licenses Summary

LICENSE	CATEGORY	ASSIGN TO	DESCRIPTION
Pro Pack	Organization	Any NCC-managed devices	Unlocks all advanced features within the Nebula Device's organization. For details on Pro features, see Section 1.1.4.2 on page 15 .
Plus Pack	Organization	Any NCC-managed devices	Unlocks certain advanced features within the Nebula Device's organization. Note: Upgrade to Pro Pack to get all the advanced features. For details on Plus features, see Section 1.1.4.2 on page 15 .
MSP	MSP	NCC user account	Unlocks the MSP menu and MSP features for an NCC user account.
MSP Trial	MSP	NCC user account	Unlocks the MSP menu and MSP features but is available only once per NCC account for 30 days. Go to More > My devices & services > Services: Activate trial for MSP . Note: An MSP Trial license may not be transferred to a different account. A deactivated trial license ends the service and cannot be re-claimed.
Organization Trial	Organization	Organization	Available when creating a new organization. Unlocks all Pro Pack and Nebula Security Pack (NSS) features in the organization for 30 days. There are no restrictions on the allowed number of Nebula Devices or sites. Note: Each Nebula user account can create 10 new organizations with trial licenses every 90 days.
Nebula Security Pack (Nebula Security Service)	Security Service	Nebula Security Gateway (NSG) devices	Unlocks security services, such as anti-virus and anti-malware. You can use these security services within the NSG's site.
UTM Security Pack	Security Service	USG FLEX devices	Unlocks security services, such as anti-spam, anti-malware, content filtering and security profile sync (see Section 6.3.8 on page 190 for more information), on a Security Firewall. You can then use these security services within the Security Firewall's site.

Table 2 Licenses Summary (continued)

LICENSE	CATEGORY	ASSIGN TO	DESCRIPTION
Gold Security Pack	Organization and Security Service	ATP devices	Unlocks security services, such as web filtering, application patrol, IPS (Intrusion Prevention System), Reputation filter, anti-malware with hybrid mode, sandboxing, CDR (Collaborative Detection & Response), security profile sync, Secure WiFi, SecuReporter, and all advanced features of a Pro Pack license. For details on Pro features, see Section 1.1.4.2 on page 15 .
Secure WiFi	Security Service	USG FLEX devices	Unlocks the Remote AP feature.
Content Filter Pack	Security Service	USG VPN devices	Unlocks security services, such as content filtering, SecuReporter, security profile sync, and all advanced features of a Pro Pack license on USG FLEX 50 / USG20-VPN / USG20W-VPN devices.
Connect & Protect (CNP)	Security Service	NWA1123ACv3, WAC500, WAC500H	Unlocks the IP reputation filter feature.
Connect & Protect Plus (CNP+)	Security Service	NWA110AX, NWA210AX, WAX510D, WAX610D, WAX630S, WAX650S	Unlocks security services, such as IP reputation filter and application visibility & optimization.

1.1.4.2 Organization License Tiers

NCC features the following license tiers for organizations: **Base**, **Plus**, **Pro**.

- The **Base** tier is free and included with every organization.
- The **Plus** and **Pro** tier licenses unlock additional features within the organization. From a **Plus** tier license upgrade to a **Pro** tier license to unlock all the additional features. These features are marked in the user interface with a diamond icon (💎).

The feature differences between the license tiers are listed below:

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Group-wide menu (Monitor – Overview, Inventory, Change log, and Configure – Settings, Org-to-Org VPN, and Administrators)	No	No	Yes	Group-wide	To create a group, you must be an NCC admin and the owner of two or more Pro organizations.
Organization change logs	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Monitor > Change log	
Login IP address ranges for an organization	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Setting	
Number of admin accounts	5	8	Unlimited	Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators	
Number of cloud authentication accounts	50	100	Unlimited	Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication	

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences (continued)

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Cloud authentication users with VLAN attribute	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication (Account type: Users)	
Cloud Authentication DPPSK account type	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication (Account type: DPPSK)	
New site configuration clone	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Create site	
Site-wide settings sync	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration management	
Switch settings clone	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration management	
Site/Switch configuration backup and restore	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration management	
Configuration templates	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates	At the time of writing, gateway and mobile router configuration templates are not available
Add client to block list/allow list	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Monitor > Clients	
Client diagnostic	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Monitor > Clients Access point > Monitor > Clients	
Site-wide topology	No	Yes	Yes	Site-wide > Monitor > Topology	
Summary report email & schedule	No	Yes	Yes	Site-wide / Access point / Switch / Security gateway > Monitor > Summary report	
Time period for summary reports	24 hours	7 days	365 days	Site-wide / Access point / Switch / Security gateway > Monitor > Summary report	

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences (continued)

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Time period for device monitoring statistics	24 hours	7 days	365 days	Access point / Switch / Security gateway > Monitor > Access Points / Switches / Security gateways > [Select Access Points / Switches]	
Time period for client monitoring statistics	24 hours	7 days	365 days	Access point / Switch / Security gateway > Monitor > Clients > [Select client]	
Time period for device event log access	24 hours	7 days	365 days	Access point / Switch / Security gateway > Monitor > Event log	
Export data to CSV/XML file	No	No	Yes	All monitoring pages with tables	
Open API	No	No	Yes	All monitoring information	
API access (for example, DPPSK third-party integration)	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > General settings	
Smart email alerts	No	Yes	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > Alert settings	
Per-device firmware upgrade schedules	No	Yes	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > Firmware Management	
Org-wide firmware upgrade	No	Yes	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > Firmware management	
Priority support requests from NCC portal or Nebula app	Yes	No	Yes	Help > Support request	
Web chat with tech support directly from NCC portal	No	No	Yes	Website footer	
Maximum uploaded photos from phone through NCC app	1	1	5	Device (for example, Access point) > Monitor > Device (for example, Access points) > [Select Device for example, AP] > Photo	
Remote CLI access	No	No	Yes	Access point / Security gateway / Firewall > Monitor > Access Points / Security gateways [Select AP] Live tools	

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences (continued)

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Wireless health monitor and report	No	No	Yes	Access point > Monitor > Wireless health	
Programmable SSID/PSK	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > SSID settings	
Dynamic Personal Pre-Shared Key (DPPSK)	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings	
Vouchers as WiFi authentication credentials	No	Yes	Yes	Site-wide > Monitor > Vouchers Site-wide > Configure > General settings Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings Access point > Configure > Captive portal customization > [portal theme]	
Facebook WiFi	Configure in NCC	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings	
RADIUS accounting for captive portal	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings	
Customize RADIUS NAS ID	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings	
Customize portal redirect URL parameter	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > Captive portal customization	
Smart steering per AP	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > Radio settings > [Edit the selected Access Point]	
Bandwidth Management by VLAN interface	No	No	Yes	Access point > Configure > Traffic shaping	Currently supported on NWA1123ACv3, WAC500, WAC500H, NWA110AX, NWA210AX, WAX510D, WAX610D, WAX630S, WAX650S
AP traffic log	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > General settings	
IPTV report	No	No	Yes	Switch > Monitor > IPTV report	
Advanced IGMP	No	No	Yes	Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP	

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences (continued)

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Switch Surveillance Monitoring with ONVIF	No	No	Yes	Switch > Monitor > Surveillance	Currently only supported on GS1350 series switches
Extended PoE range	Yes	Yes	Yes	Switch > Configure > Switch ports > [select port]	Currently only supported on GS1350 series switches
Automatic PoE device recovery	No	Yes	Yes	Switch > Configure > Switch ports > [select port]	Currently only supported on GS1350, GS2220 and XGS2220 series switches
Port bandwidth control	Yes	Yes	Yes	Switch > Configure > Switch ports > [edit the selected port]	
Vendor ID-based VLAN	No	Yes	Yes	Switch > Configure > Switch settings	
IP interface and static route	No	No	Yes	Switch > Configure > IP & Routing	
Remote SSH in Live tools	No	No	Yes	Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details > Live tools > Remote Access	Currently only supported on XS3800-28 and XGS2220 series v4.80 switches
IP Source Guard	No	No	Yes	Switch > Configure > Switch settings	Currently only supported on XS3800-28 and XGS2220 series v4.80 switches
Time period for security service (AV/App Patrol/CF/IDP/NSS) analysis report	24 hours	7 days	365 days	Security gateway > Monitor > NSS analysis report	Requires Nebula Security Gateway (NSG) Nebula Security Service (NSS) – Security Pack (SP) license
Traffic log archiving	No	No	Yes	Firewall > Monitor > SecuReporter	
VPN topology with traffic usage	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator	
Smart VPN	No	No	Yes	Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator	
VPN provision script email	No	No	Yes	Security gateway / Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN (L2TP/IPSec)	
Collaborative Detection & Response (CDR) with automatic respond action	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > Collaborative detection & response	Requires Security Firewall UTM Security Pack license

Table 3 NCC License Tier Differences (continued)

FEATURE	BASE	PLUS	PRO	LOCATION	NOTES
Smart mesh with manual select of root Nebula Device and automatic fall back to auto mode	Yes	Yes	Yes	Access point > Monitor > Access point	Currently supported on NWA110AX, NWA210AX, WAX510D, WAX610D, WAX630S, WAX650S, NWA1123ACv3, WAC500, and WAC500H APs
Traffic logs to SecuReporter	No	No	Yes	Site-wide > Configure > General settings	Also available for Gold Security Pack, UTM Security Pack, and Content Filter Pack
Cellular IP Passthrough	No	No	Yes	Mobile Router > Configuration	Currently only supported on NR7101 and LTE7461
Remote configurator in Live tools	No	No	Yes	Mobile Router > Live tools > Remote configurator	Requires LTE or NR cellular 5G indoor or outdoor router running the latest firmware

Organization License Grace Period

If a Pro or Plus license expires while assigned to a Nebula Device or you add an unlicensed Nebula Device to the organization, you have a 15-day grace period during which the organization's license remains active. During the grace period, you must perform one of the following actions:

- Assign a valid Plus or Pro license to the unlicensed Nebula Device.
- Remove the unlicensed Nebula Device from the organization.

If the expired Nebula Device is still in the organization after the grace period elapses, the organization automatically downgrades to the Base tier.

The grace period status can be any of the following:

- **Near Expiring:** Any Nebula Devices with licenses expiring within 15 days before the grace period has started.
- **License Expired:** Any Nebula Devices with expired licenses after the grace period.
- **Insufficient Licenses:** Any Nebula Devices that are unlicensed, or lower tier licensed Nebula Devices added during the grace period.

1.1.4.3 General License Information

License Validity

Each license has a validity period, for example: 6 months, 1 year, 2 years. After being activated, a license also has an expiry date, which is calculated as Activation Date + Validity Period. For example, if a 1-year license is activated on January 1st 2022, then its expiry date is January 1st 2023.

Note: A license cannot be deactivated. An activated license continues counting towards its expiry date, even if its licensed service is deactivated.

Bundled and Renewal Licenses

A **bundled license** is a license that is included when you purchase a Nebula Device. The bundled license is automatically assigned to the purchased Nebula Device when you add the Nebula Device to NCC.

A **renewal license** is a license purchased separately from a Nebula Device as a license key, from Zyxel or a third-party reseller. To assign a renewal license to a Nebula Device, go to **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > License** and then click **+Add**. See [Section 6.3.3.6 on page 166](#) for more information.

1.2 Getting Started

You can perform network management with the NCC using a web browser. Use a browser that supports HTML5, such as Microsoft Edge, Mozilla Firefox, or Google Chrome. The recommended browser is Google Chrome.

View the browser in full screen mode to display the NCC portal properly.

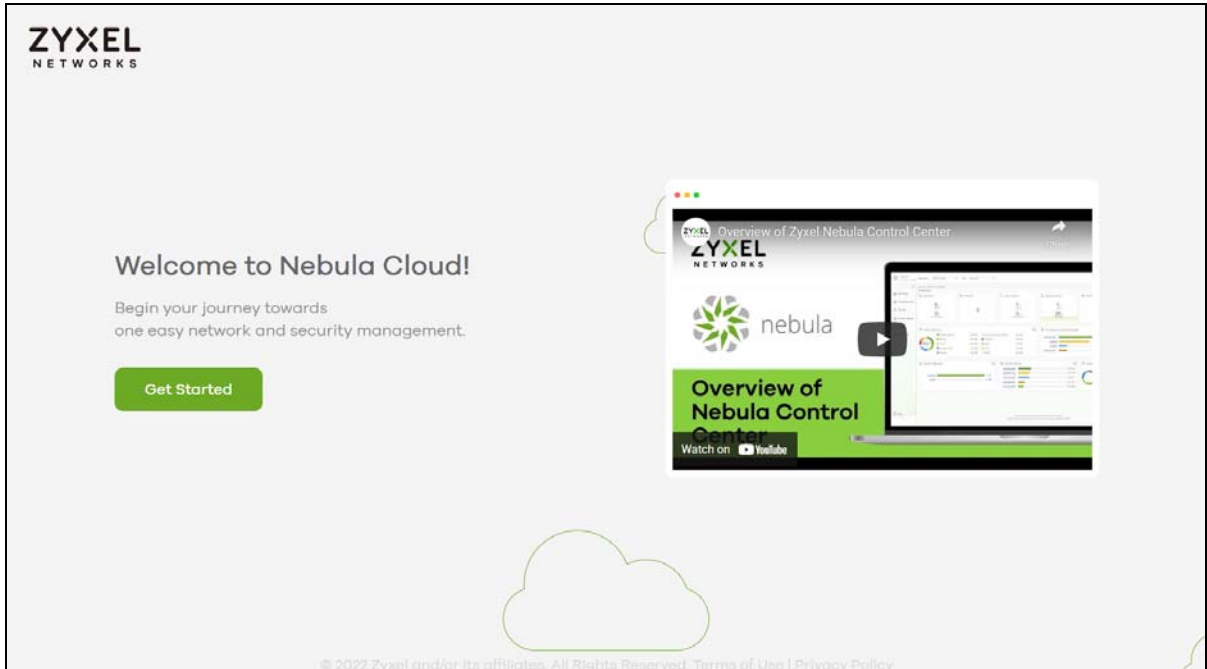
1.2.1 Connect Nebula Managed Devices

Connect your Nebula managed devices (such as the NAP102 or the NSW100-28P) to your local network. Your local network must have Internet access. See the corresponding Quick Start Guides for hardware connections.

1.2.2 Access the NCC Portal

Go to the NCC portal website.

- 1 Enter <http://nebula.zyxel.com> in a supported web browser. Click **Get Started**.

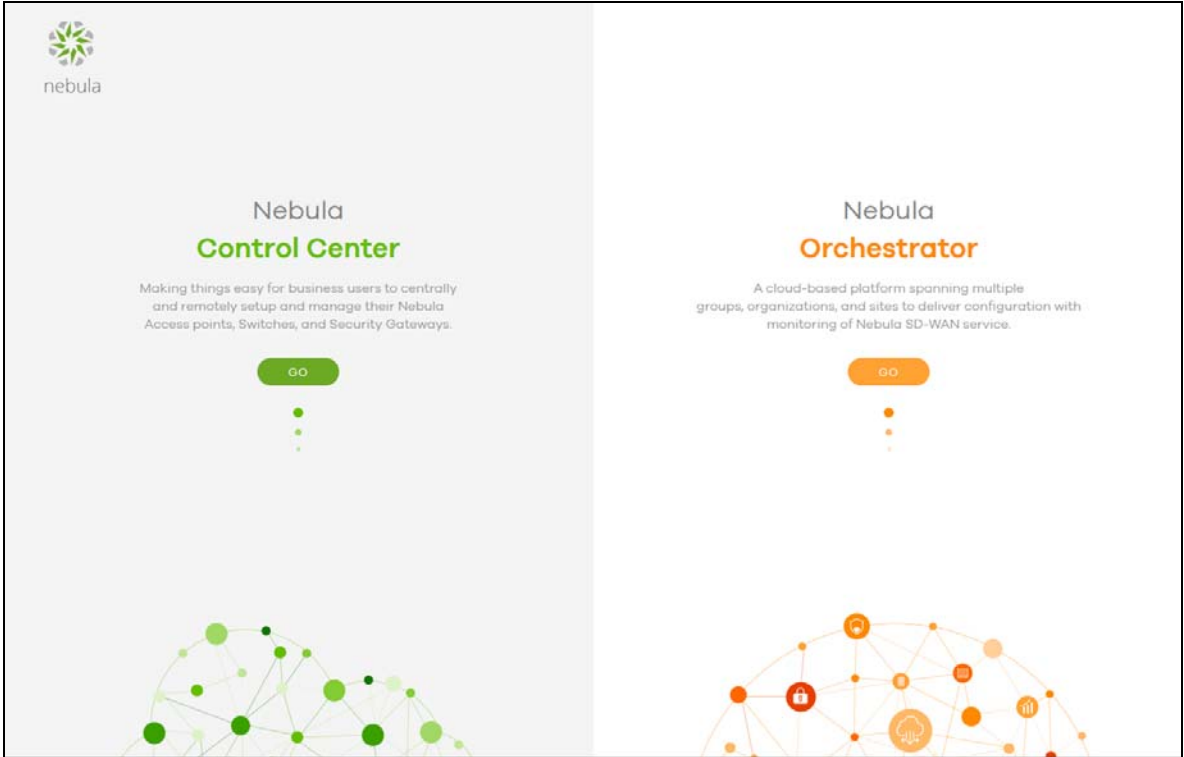


Note: The NCC requires a myZyXel account before you can register and manage Nebula Devices. Log into the NCC with your myZyXel account. Click **Create Account** if you do not have a myZyXel account and create an account with your existing email address.

- 2 Enter the **Email Address** and **Password**, and then click **Sign In**.

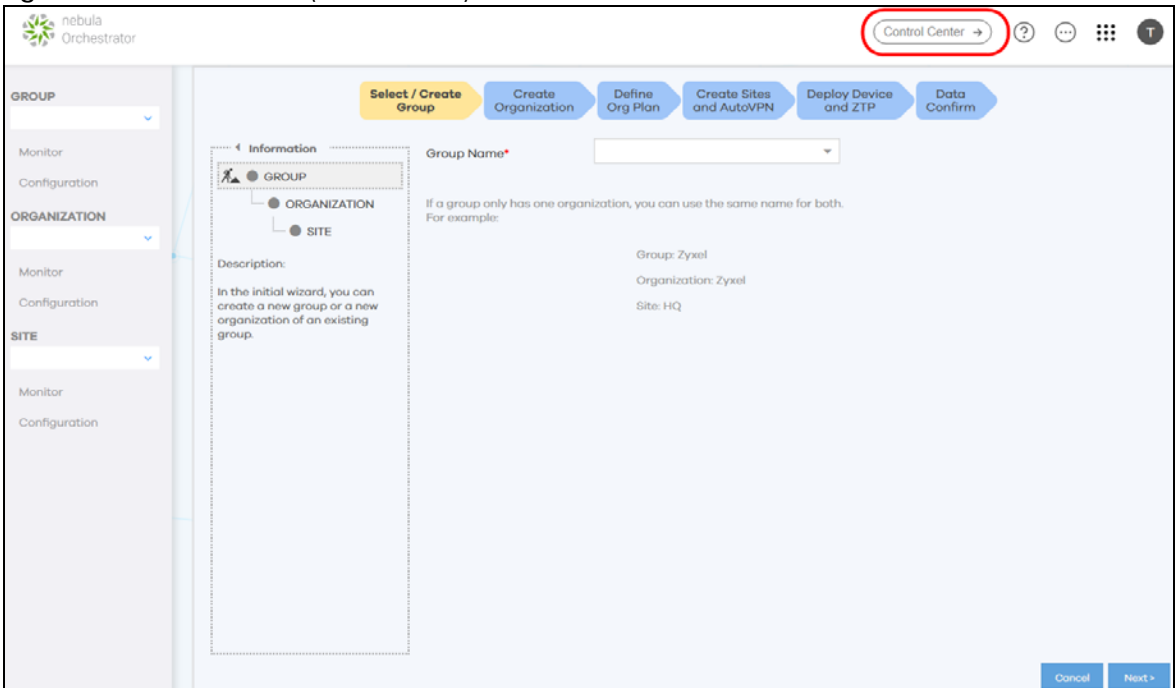
Note: Click **Try Demo** to enter the **Demo Site**. The **Demo Site** allows you to explore the NCC Portal.

- 3 Click **Go** under Nebula Control Center to log in to NCC.



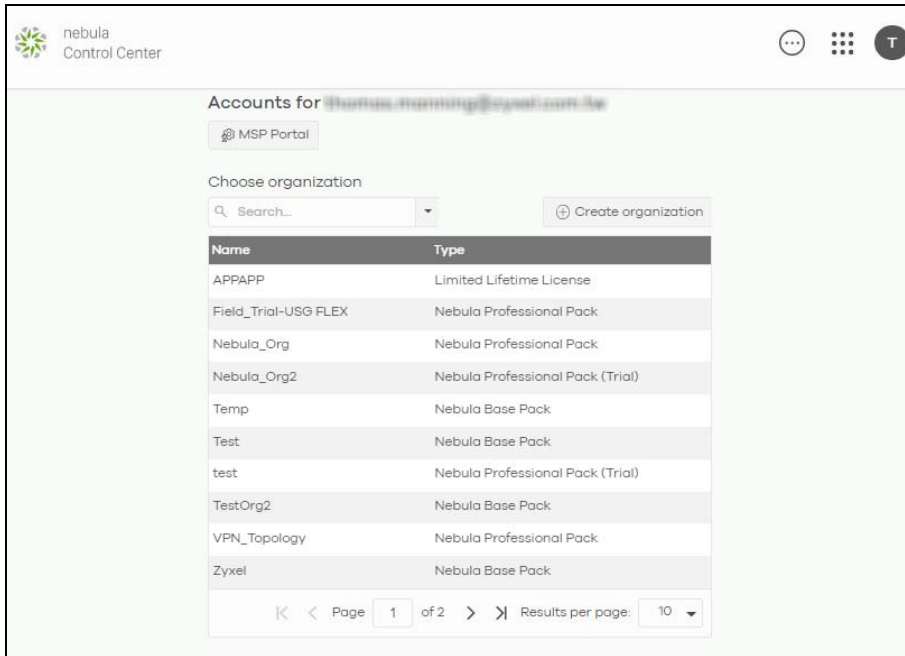
Alternatively, click **Go** under Nebula Orchestrator to go to the Nebula SD-WAN (Orchestrator) web portal to configure ZyWALL VPN devices. This is only available if you have purchased the SD-WAN license for Orchestrator Management.

Figure 2 Nebula SD-WAN (Orchestrator)

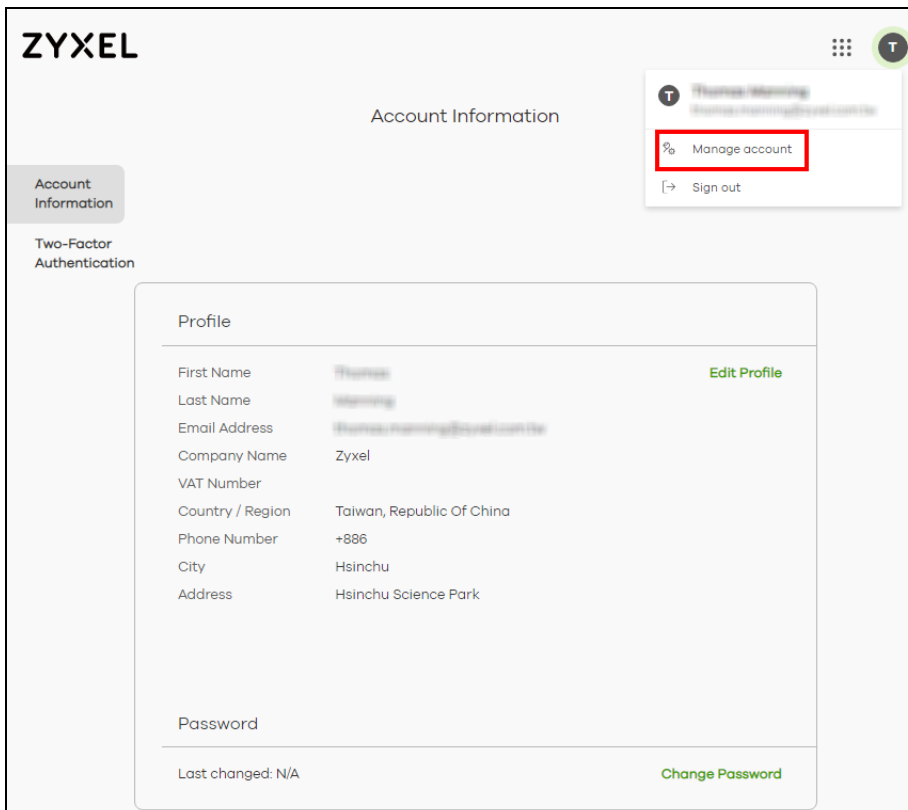


You can click **Control Center** to go back to the NCC platform.

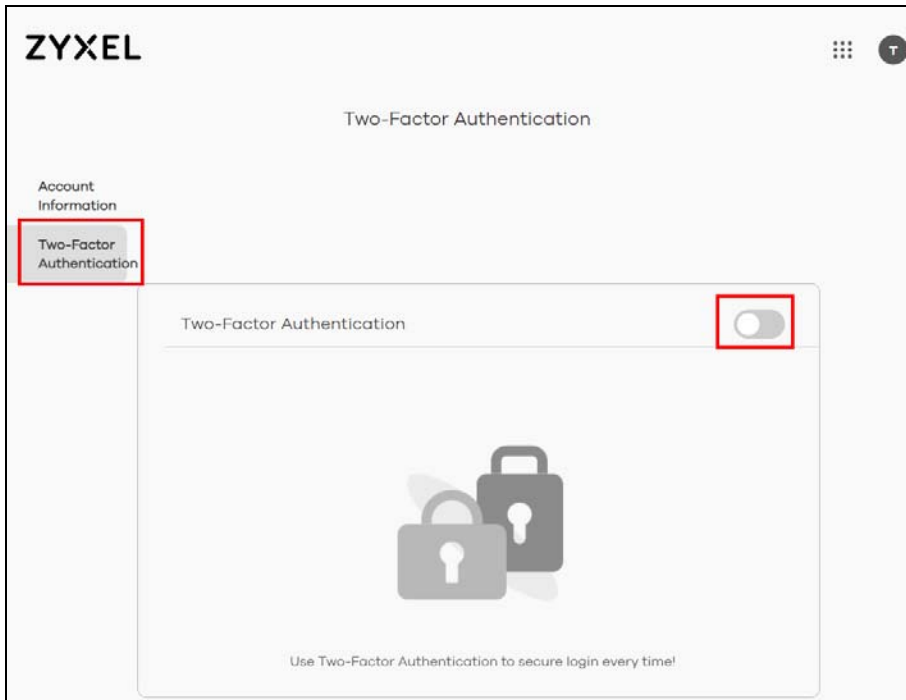
- Click **Create organization** to create a new organization. If this is the first time you have logged into NCC, proceed to step 10.
If you have more than one organization, click a row to select the organization you want to manage.



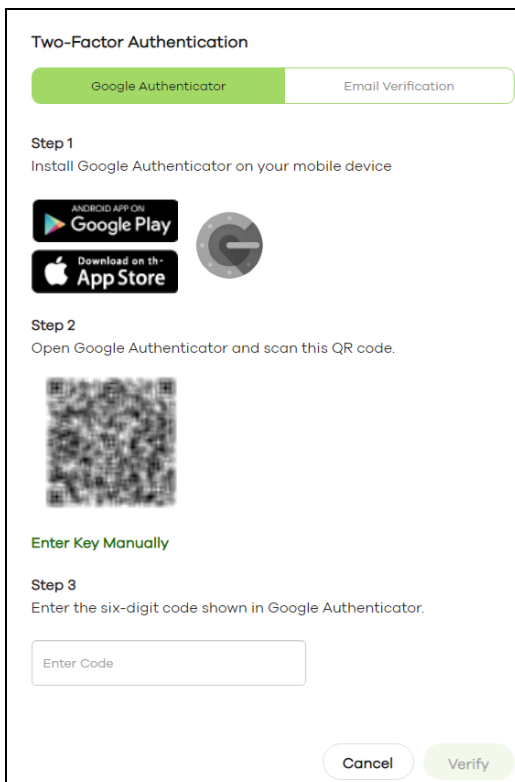
- The NCC supports two-factor authentication (2FA) to add a second layer of security to your account. Click **Manage account** to enable Two-factor authentication on the following page. Otherwise, you can skip 2FA and go to step 10 directly.



- 6 Click **Two-Factor Authentication** and then click the switch to enable Two-Factor Authentication.



- 7 The following screen appear. Activate the two-step verification service using the Google Authenticator app or your email address. If you select **Google Authenticator**, install the app on your smartphone and scan the QR code on the NCC web screen to get a 6-digit one-time code. Then enter the code and click **Verify** to authenticate your identity.



Alternatively, click **Email Verification** to use your email to authenticate.

If you select **Email Verification**, an email is sent to your myZyxel account's email address. Enter the code exactly as it appears in the email and click **Verify**.

Two-Factor Authentication

Google Authenticator | **Email Verification**

We have send a verification email to [redacted]@***el.com.tw.
Please enter the six-digit code in the email.

Enter Code

[Resend](#)

[Cancel](#) [Verify](#)

- 8 Enter the verification code to get 10 backup codes, which help regain access to your account in case your smartphone is not available for 2FA the next time you need to log in again.

Note: If you generate a new set of backup codes, the old set will become inactive.

Two-Factor Authentication

Two-Factor Authentication

Google Authenticator
Get code on Google Authenticator app

Backup Code
These one-off-passcodes allow you to sign in when you use Google Authenticator away from your mobile phone. Each backup code can only be used once. You may generate more codes as you need.

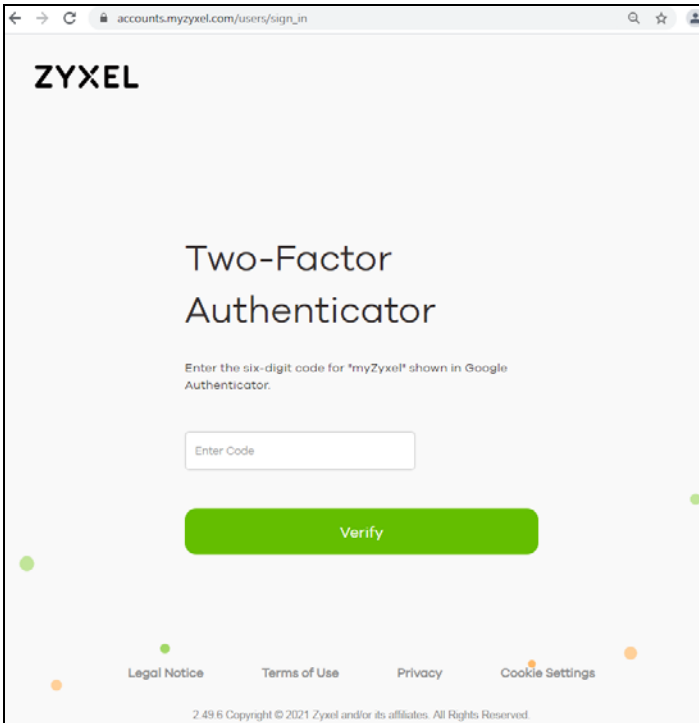
122220	482019	064804	716777	867627
485769	496888	306540	556545	164640

[Download](#) [Generate New Code](#)

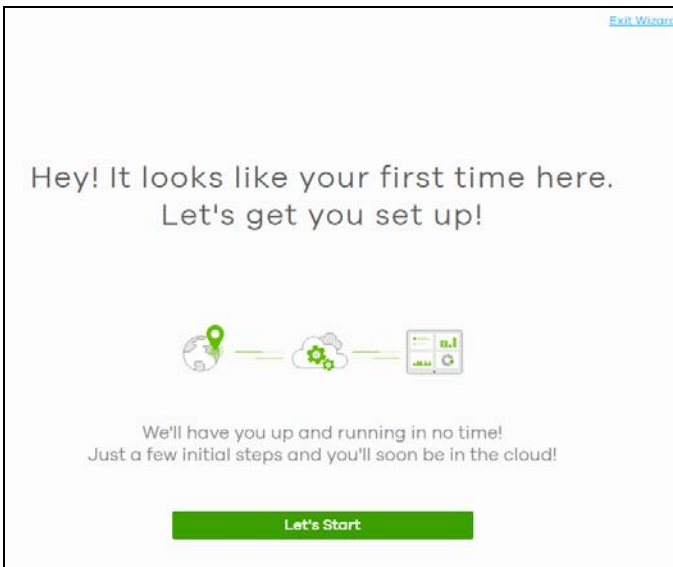
Email Verification
Get code via email

Write down or print out the backup codes for your account. You can enter the backup code on the NCC web page to authenticate your identity at the next login. Each code can only work once. Click **Download** to download the backup codes.

- 9 To re-log in Nebula after the **Two-Factor Authentication** is enabled. Go to **Applications > Nebula** and then enter a code to log in your Nebula account.



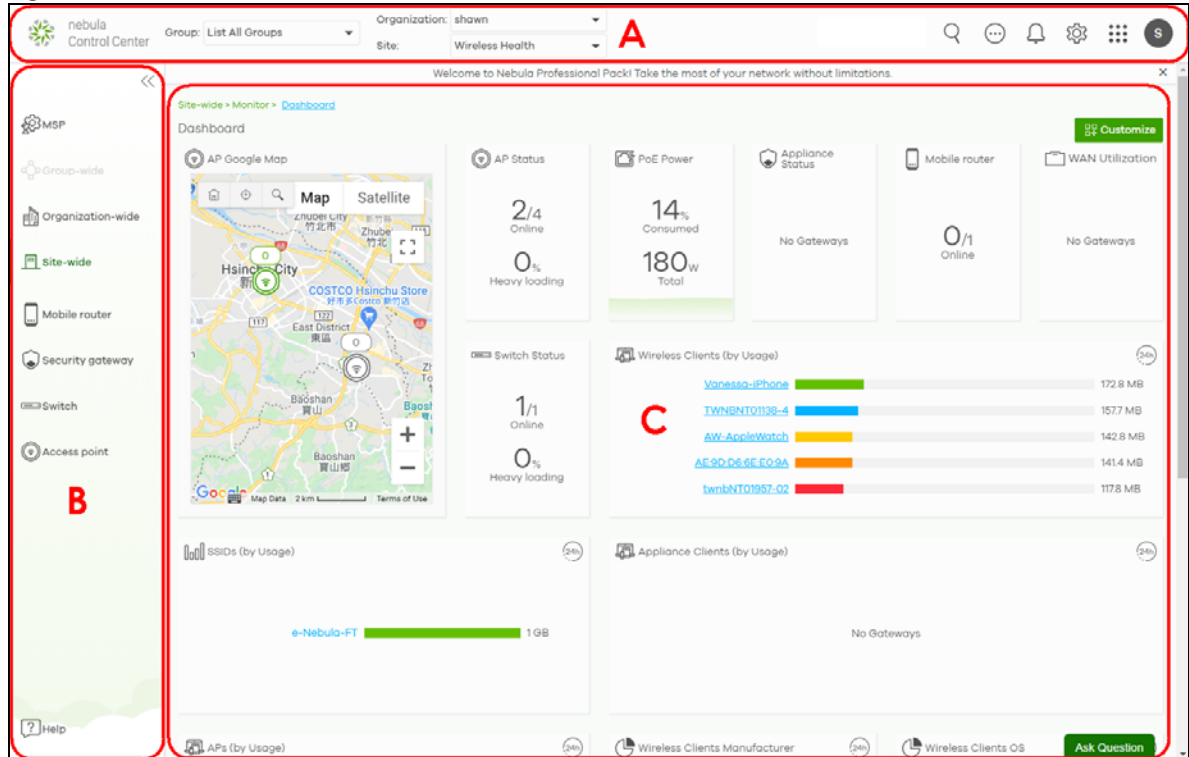
- 10 If this is the first time you have logged into NCC, the setup wizard welcome screen displays. You need to create your organization and sites, register Nebula Devices and associate them with a site. See [Chapter 2 on page 43](#) for how to use the wizard.



1.3 NCC Portal Overview

The following summarizes how to navigate the Nebula web site from the **Dashboard** screen. The NCC portal screen is divided into these parts:

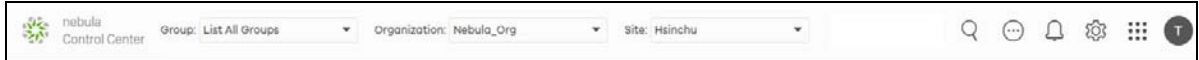
Figure 3 NCC Overview



- A – Title Bar
- B – Navigation Panel
- C – Main Screen

1.3.1 Title Bar

The title bar provides common links and is always at the top of NCC.

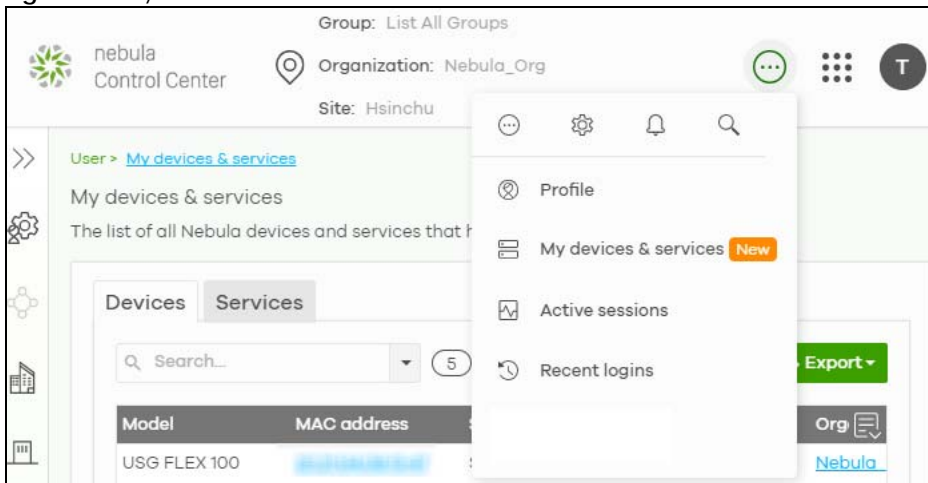
Figure 4 NCC Title Bar

The icons provide the following functions.

Table 4 NCC Title Bar

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group	This shows the name of the groups you are managing, if your NCC account has an MSP license. Click to choose another group if you have multiple groups. Note: To create a group, you must be the owner of two or more Pro pack organizations that are not currently assigned to a group, as discussed in Section 5.1.1 on page 135 .
Organization	This shows the name of the organization you are managing. Click to choose another organization, access the MSP portal or create a new organization.
Site	This shows the name of the site you are managing. Click to choose another site if you have multiple sites in the selected organization.
Search	Use this to search for managed Nebula Devices by model, description or MAC address.
More	Click this to view your account information, login history and active sessions. You can also view your Nebula Devices and manage NCC licenses linked to your account.
Notification	Click this to view log messages.
Settings	Click this to select a display language for the screens, or change the theme between dark and light mode.
Applications	Click this to open a list of links to different Zyxel sites, such as myZyxel, Nebula, SecuReporter, CNC, Circle, Marketplace, and the Forum.
Account	Click this to manage your NCC account settings, or to sign out of NCC.

Note: If the browser window is too narrow, the layout of the title bar changes and some settings are hidden under the More menu.

Figure 5 Layout of the Title Bar

1.3.1.1 Group/Organization/Site

Select the group, organization and site that you want to manage.

- If you select a group, you can only select organization in that group. Select **List all Groups** from the Group drop-down list to view all organizations and group.
- If you have multiple organizations, select **MSP Portal** from the **Organization** drop-down list box to view your organization summary (see [Section 4.2 on page 113](#)).

Note: You need to have an MSP license to view the **MSP Portal**.

- If you need to have more organizations, select **Create Organization** from the **Organization** drop-down list box to create a new one (see [Section 1.4 on page 40](#)).

Figure 6 NCC Title Bar: Group/Organization/Site

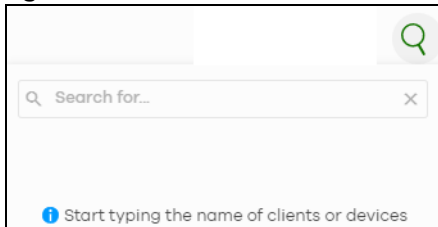


The screenshot shows a horizontal bar with three dropdown menus. The first is labeled 'Group:' and has 'List All Groups' selected. The second is labeled 'Organization:' and has 'Nebula_Org' selected. The third is labeled 'Site:' and has 'Hsinchu' selected.

1.3.1.2 Search

Click this to search for NCC-managed devices by model, description or MAC address. You can enter partial search criteria.

Figure 7 Search

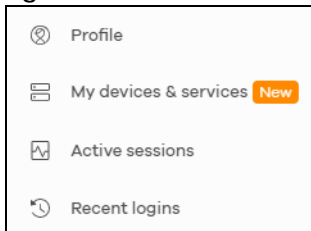


The screenshot shows a search interface with a search input field containing the placeholder text 'Search for...'. To the right of the input field is a search button with a magnifying glass icon. Below the input field is a blue information icon followed by the text 'Start typing the name of clients or devices'.

1.3.1.3 More

Click the More icon at the top right-hand corner of the **Dashboard** screen to view and configure account settings.

Figure 8 More



The screenshot shows a vertical menu with four items: 'Profile' with a person icon, 'My devices & services' with a list icon and a 'New' badge, 'Active sessions' with a document icon, and 'Recent logins' with a clock icon.

The following table describes this menu.

Table 5 Login Account Menu

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile	This shows account information, such as name, address, and phone number.
My devices & services	This shows a list of all Nebula Devices in NCC that have your login account as the owner. You can filter the list of Nebula Devices by name, serial number, model, or organization. You can also register licenses to your account, such as an MSP license.
Active sessions	Shows all active web browser sessions for this login account. Click End Session to close a session and force the user to log into NCC again in that browser.
Recent logins	Shows the login history for this user account, including IP address, location, and time.

Click **My devices & services** and the following screen appears. Click **Devices** to view all Nebula Devices of the user account which can be managed by NCC, and/or all Nebula Devices not registered to this user account but with a Full (Delegated) administrator privilege. See the table on [MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins](#) in [Section 4.6.1 on page 121](#) for details on the organization privileges.

Figure 9 My Devices

The screenshot shows the 'My devices & services' page with the 'Devices' tab selected. It displays a table of 3 devices. The table has the following columns: Model, MAC address, Serial Number, Name, Organization, Site, and Device owner. The data rows are:

Model	MAC address	Serial Number	Name	Organization	Site	Device owner
USG FLEX 500	B85C-A31373E4	S16214598193		Test_July	ZyNet_TW	snmual.vni@zyxel.com.tw
NR7101	D85C-E5282056	S16274500757		Test_July	ZyNet_TW	snmual.vni@zyxel.com.tw
NWA110AX	B00E4593000	S16214598004		Test_July	ZyNet_TW	snmual.vni@zyxel.com.tw

Click **Services** to view and configure the start dates, end dates, registered dates, activated dates and statuses of an MSP license, purchase or register a license key, and export the list of MSP licenses in CSV/XML format.

Figure 10 My Services

The screenshot shows the 'My devices & services' page with the 'Services' tab selected. It displays a table of 2 licenses. The table has the following columns: License key, Service description, Start date, End date, Status, Actions, Registered date, and Activated date. The data rows are:

License key	Service description	Start date	End date	Status	Actions	Registered date	Activated date
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIC-TRIAL-366DAYS-1624282655326	Nebula MSP Pack License; Trial	2021-06-21	2022-06-22	Expired		2021-06-21	2021-06-21
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-NMSP-2YR-202206230916	Nebula MSP Pack License; 2YR	2022-07-01	2024-07-01	Activated	Transfer license	2022-06-23	2022-07-01

Click **Purchase history** to view the order ID, purchase date, number of licenses, statuses of purchased MSP license(s), and export the information in CSV/XML format.

Figure 11 Purchase History

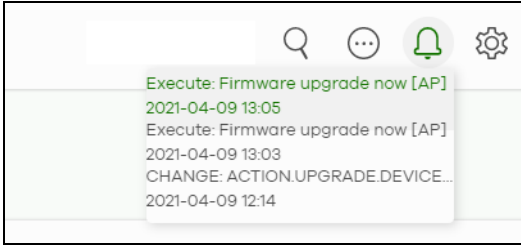
The screenshot shows the 'My devices & services' page with the 'Purchase history' tab selected. It displays a table with the following columns: Order ID, Purchase date, # licenses, Status, and Export. The table is currently empty.

Order ID	Purchase date	# licenses	Status	Export
----------	---------------	------------	--------	--------

1.3.1.4 Notifications

Click this alert icon to view log messages for the selected site.

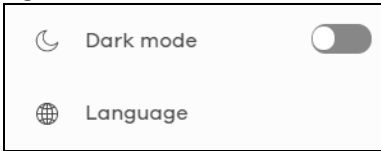
Figure 12 NCC Notification



1.3.1.5 Settings

Click the **Settings** icon at the top right-hand corner of the screen to view and configure NCC settings.

Figure 13 Settings

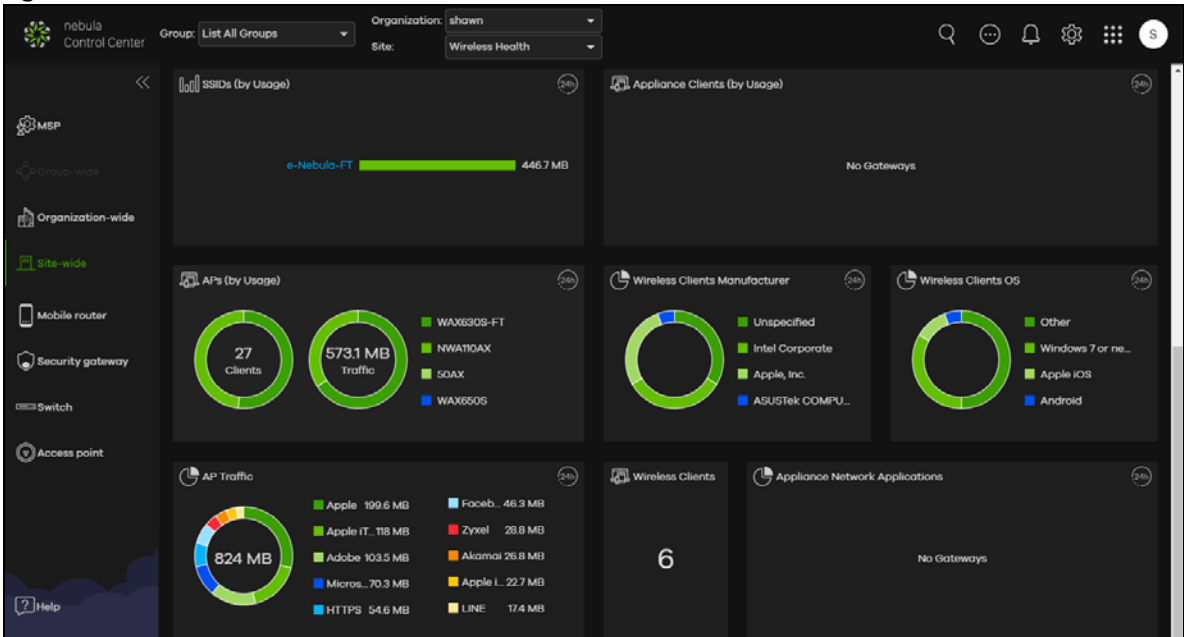


The following table describes this menu.

Table 6 Settings Menu

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dark mode	Click this to apply a black background and white text to the white background and black text on the NCC screen.
Language	Select the NCC display language. At the time of writing, the following languages are available: English, Chinese, Japanese, German, Russian, French.

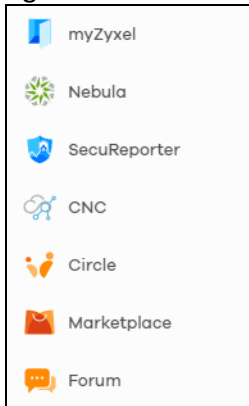
Figure 14 Dark Mode



1.3.1.6 Applications

Click this to display a list of related NCC links.

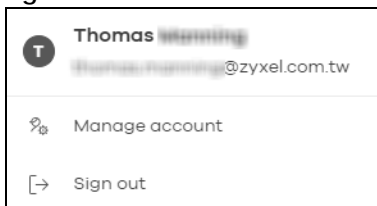
Figure 15 Related NCC Links



1.3.1.7 Account

Click the **Account** icon at the top right-hand corner of the screen to view and configure NCC account settings.

Figure 16 Account



The following table describes this menu.

Table 7 Account Menu

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Manage account	Click this to edit your account settings at myZyxel.
Sign out	Sign out of NCC.

1.3.2 Navigation Panel

Use the NCC menu items to configure network management for each site, organization and/or Nebula Device. Click the arrow (<<) on the upper right corner of the navigation panel to collapse or expand the navigation panel menus.

Table 8 Navigation Menus Overview

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use these menus to set up customer networks.	
MSP	Create multiple organizations and change the branding and assign administrators to multiple organizations.
Group-wide	Manage settings for multiple organizations and create VPN links between groups in the organization. Two or more Pro tier organizations can be a group.

Table 8 Navigation Menus Overview (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Organization-wide	Manage multiple network sites within an organization.
Site-wide	Manage Nebula Devices in a site.
Use these menus to set up customer Nebula Devices.	
Mobile router	Manage Zyxel LTE/NR devices.
Security gateway	Manage ZyWALL NSG devices (firewalls).
Firewall	Manage ZyWALL ATP, USG FLEX, and USG20(W)-VPN devices (firewalls).
Switch	Manage Zyxel Switches.
Access point	Manage Zyxel APs (Access Points).
Help	Access the Zyxel community forum, submit a support ticket, view User Guides for Nebula managed devices, view ports used by Nebula, view Nebula privacy policies, and view devices/features that can be managed by Nebula.

This is a summary of the menu details.

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
MSP	Monitor	
	MSP portal	Use this menu to create multiple organizations and change the branding and assign administrators to multiple organizations.
	Change log	Use this menu to view log messages about configuration changes in the Admins & teams and Cross-org synchronization screens.
	Configure	
	Create organization	Use this menu to create a new organization or copy settings from an existing organization.
	MSP branding	Use this menu to upload/replace/remove the dashboard logo. You can also set the support contact details.
	Admins & teams	Use this menu to create administrators or groups of administrators (teams) and view their login details.
	Cross-org synchronization	Use this menu to sync or clone organization-wide settings from a source organization to a destination organization.
	MSP alerts	Use this menu to configure MSP alerts to monitor Nebula Devices for unexpected events (for example, online/offline events).
Group-wide	Monitor	
	Overview	Use this menu to view organization and license details of a selected group.
	Inventory	Use this menu to view Nebula Devices belonging to organizations. You may also export the list of Nebula Devices found to your computer.
	Change log	Use this menu to view log messages about configuration changes in the group.
	Configure	
	Settings	Use this menu to configure group information and group members.
	Org-to-Org VPN	Use this menu to view and manage VPNs between members in the group.
	Administrators	Use this menu to view, remove, or create a new administrator account for the selected group.

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Organization-wide	Monitor	
	Overview	Use this menu to view a list of sites belonging to the selected organization and detailed information about the Nebula Devices connected to the sites.
	Change log	Use this menu to view log messages about configuration changes in this organization.
	Configure	
	Settings	Use this menu to configure security settings or delete the organization.
	Create site	Use this menu to create a new site.
	License & inventory	Use this menu to manage your licenses and view the summary of Nebula Devices which have been registered and assigned to the sites in the selected organization.
	Administrators	Use this menu to view, remove, or create a new administrator account for this organization.
	Cloud authentication	Use this menu to create or remove user accounts and grant user access to all sites in the selected organization through different authentication methods, such as MAC-based authentication, captive portal, or the IEEE 802.1x authentication method.
	Configuration management	Use this menu to synchronize the configuration between sites or switch ports and back up or restore a configuration file.
	Configuration templates	Use this menu to create or delete a configuration template or bind a site to the template.
	Security profile sync	Use this menu to synchronize the settings of URL threat filter, anti-malware and content filtering on the selected gateways.
	VPN Orchestrator	Use this menu to view and manage VPNs created for the selected organization.
Firmware management	Use this menu to upgrade firmware or schedule firmware upgrades for Nebula Devices in the organization.	

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Site-wide	Monitor	
	Dashboard	Use this menu to view Nebula Device connection status and traffic summary.
	Clients	
	Clients list	Use this menu to view the connection status and detailed information of all wired and WiFi clients connected to Nebula Devices (Access Points, Switches, Security Appliances, Security Firewalls) in the site.
	Client diagnostic	Use this menu to view all related event logs between Access Points and WiFi clients, and DHCP logs of Nebula Security Appliances (NSG, ZyWALL USG FLEX, ATP, and USG20(W)-VPN). Association, Authentication, Disconnection, and DHCP event logs that occur are summarized in chronological order to aid in troubleshooting.
	Containment list	Use this menu to view and manage Nebula Devices contained by CDR (Collaborative Detection & Response).
	Map & Floor plans	Use this menu to locate Nebula Devices on a world map or on a floor plan.
	Topology	Use this menu to view Nebula managed-device connections in your network.
	Vouchers	Use this menu to create and manage vouchers that allow WiFi network access
	Cloud intelligent logs	Use this menu to view log messages about configuration changes made by the NCC for the site.
	Summary report	Use this menu to view network statistics for a site, such as bandwidth usage, power usage, top Nebula Devices, top clients and/or top SSIDs.
	Applications	Use this menu to view usage of applications such as Social Network, Telephony (VoIP), Advertising, News, Web Services in the network.
	Configure	
	General settings	Use this menu to change the general settings for the site, such as the site name, device login password and firmware upgrade schedule.
	Collaborative detection & response	Use this menu to view and configure the policies and notification settings for malware, IDP and web threats and corresponding containment actions to quarantine, alert or block. This is only available for ZyWALL USG Flex Series at the time of writing.
	Alert settings	Use this menu to set which alerts are created and emailed or sent by the Zyxel Nebula app. You can also set the email addresses to which an alert is sent.
	Add devices	Use this menu to register a Nebula Device and add it to the site.
	Firmware management	Use this menu to upgrade firmware or schedule firmware upgrades for Nebula Devices in the site.
	Cloud authentication	Use this menu to add user accounts and grant user access to the selected site through different authentication methods, such as the MAC-based authentication, captive portal or the IEEE 802.1x authentication method.
	Mobile Router	

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Security gateway		Use these menus to monitor and configure the Security Appliances, not including Security Firewall series, ATP series, and USG20(W)-VPN series, managed by the NCC. The settings are applied when a Nebula Security Appliance is registered and attached to the selected site.
	Monitor	
	Security gateway	Use this menu to view the detailed information about the Security Appliance of the selected site.
	Clients	Use this menu to view the connection status and detailed information about a client in the selected site.
	Event log	Use this menu to view all events on the Security Appliance. An event is something that has happened to a Nebula managed device.
	VPN connections	Use this menu to view status of the site-to-site VPN connections.
	NSS analysis report	Use this menu to view the statistics report for NSS (Nebula Security Service), such as content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), application patrol, and anti-virus.
	Summary report	Use this menu to view network statistics specific to the Security Appliance in the site.
	Configure	
	Interface addressing	Use this menu to configure network mode, port grouping, interface address, static route and DDNS settings on the Security Appliance.
	Policy route	Use this menu to view and configure policy routes.
	Firewall	Use this menu to configure firewall rules for outbound traffic, application patrol, schedule profiles and port forwarding rules for inbound traffic.
	Security service	Use this menu to enable content filtering and block access to specific web sites. You can also enable Anti-virus and Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) on the Security Appliance.
	Site-to-Site VPN	Use this menu to configure VPN rules.
	Remote access VPN	Use this menu to enable and configure IPsec VPN or L2TP VPN settings.
	Captive portal	Use this menu to configure captive portal settings for each Security Appliance interface.
	Network access method	Use this menu to enable or disable web authentication on an interface.
	Traffic shaping	Use this menu to configure the maximum bandwidth and load balancing.
	Gateway settings	Use this menu to configure the DNS server and address records and also set the external AD (Active Directory) server or RADIUS server that the Security Appliance can use in authenticating users. You can also specify walled garden web site links for all interfaces on the Security Appliance.

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Firewall		Use these menus to monitor and configure the ZyWALL USG FLEX series, ATP series, and USG20(W)-VPN series devices, not including ZyWALL NSG series devices, managed by the NCC. The settings are applied when a Nebula Security Firewall is registered and attached to the selected site.
	Monitor	
	Firewall	Use this menu to view the detailed information about the Security Firewall of the selected site.
	Clients	Use this menu to view the connection status and detailed information of all wired and WiFi clients connected to Nebula Devices (Access Points, Security Firewall) in the site.
	Event log	Use this menu to view all events on the Security Firewall. An event is something that has happened to a Nebula managed device.
	VPN connections	Use this menu to view status of the site-to-site VPN connections.
	SecuReporter	Use this menu to view the statistics report for NSS (Nebula Security Service), such as content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), application patrol, and anti-virus.
	Summary report	Use this menu to view network statistics specific to the Security Firewall in the site.
	Configure	
	Port	Use this menu to configure network mode and port grouping on the Security Firewall.
	Interface	Use this menu to configure interface address, subnet mask and VLAN ID settings on the Security Firewall.
	Routing	Use this menu to view and configure policy routes, static routes and WAN load balancing.
	NAT	Use this menu to view and configure virtual servers and NAT settings.
	Site-to-Site VPN	Use this menu to configure VPN rules between Security Firewalls.
	Remote access VPN	Use this menu to enable and configure IPsec VPN or L2TP VPN rules from off-site clients to an on-site Security Firewall.
	Security policy	Use this menu to configure firewall rules for outbound traffic, application patrol, schedule profiles and port forwarding rules for inbound traffic.
	Security service	Use this menu to enable content filtering and block access to specific web sites. You can also enable Anti-virus and Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) on the Security Firewall.
	Captive portal	Use this menu to configure captive portal settings for each Security Firewall interface.
	Authentication method	Use this menu to configure network access settings through a captive portal or Nebula Cloud Authentication.
	Wireless	Use this menu to configure different SSID profiles for your ZyWALL USG FLEX 100W and USG20W-VPN. Note: This menu only appears for the ZyWALL USG FLEX 100W and USG20W-VPN.
	Firewall settings	Use this menu to configure the DNS server and address records and also set the external AD (Active Directory) server or RADIUS server that the Security Firewall can use in authenticating users. You can also specify walled garden web site links for all interfaces on the Security Firewall.

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Switch		Use these menus to monitor and configure the Switches managed by the NCC. The settings are applied when a Nebula Switch is registered and attached to the selected site.
	Monitor	
	Switches	Use this menu to view the list of Switches added to the site.
	Clients	Use this menu to view detailed information about the clients which are connecting to the Switches in the site.
	Event log	Use this menu to view all events on the Switch. An event is something that has happened to a Nebula managed device.
	IPTV report	Use this menu to view available IPTV channels and client information.
	Surveillance	Use this screen to view information about Powered Devices (PDs) connected to ports on the Switch.
	Summary report	Use this menu to view network statistics specific to Switches in the site.
	Configure	
	Switch ports	Use this menu to view the Switch port statistics and configure Switch settings for the ports.
	ACL	Use this menu to configure the access control list in order to control access to the Switches.
	IP & Routing	Use this menu to configure layer 3 features such as creating IP interfaces and static routes on the Switch.
	ONVIF discovery	Use this menu to enable ONVIF and configure ONVIF VLAN ID for the selected Switch.
	Advanced IGMP	Use this menu to enable and configure IGMP snooping and create IGMP filtering profiles.
	RADIUS policies	Use this menu to configure authentication servers and policies.
	PoE schedules	Use this menu to set the schedule for Switches in distributing power to powered devices.
	Switch settings	Use this menu to configure global Switch settings, such as (R)STP, QoS, port mirroring, voice VLAN and DHCP white list.

Table 9 NCC Menu Summary (continued)

LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2 / LEVEL 3	FUNCTION
Access Point		Use these menus to monitor and configure the Access Points managed by the NCC. The settings are applied when a Nebula Access Point is registered and attached to the selected site.
	Monitor	
	Access points	Use this menu to view the list of Access Points added to the site.
	Clients	Use this menu to view WiFi clients which are connected to the Access Points in the site.
	Event log	Use this menu to view all events on the Access Point. An event is something that has happened to a Nebula managed device.
	Wireless health	Use this menu to view health of the WiFi networks for the supported Access Points and connected clients.
	Summary report	Use this menu to view network statistics specific to Access Points in the site.
	Configure	
	SSID settings	Use this menu to view and configure SSID settings and authentication methods.
	SSID advanced settings	Use this menu to configure network access, traffic options and advanced settings for SSID profiles.
	Captive portal customization	Use this menu to configure captive portal settings for SSID profiles.
	SSID availability	Use this menu to configure SSID visibility settings and set whether the SSID is enabled or disabled on each day of the week.
	Radio settings	Use this menu to configure global radio settings, such as maximum output power or channel width, and enable smart client steering for all Access Points in the site.
	Traffic shaping	Use this menu to configure the maximum bandwidth and load balancing.
	Security service	Use this menu to enable application visibility and optimization, and IP reputation filter on the managed Access Point.
	AP & port settings	Use this menu to configure load balancing settings and enable or disable a port on the managed Access Point and configure the port's VLAN settings.

1.4 Create Organization

Use this screen to first create an organization, then create a site (network) in the organization, and finally add Nebula Devices to the site.

Note: You have to contact Zyxel customer support if you need to change the device owner at myZyxel or remove an Organization from the NCC. But an administrator can remove sites without customer support. Configure your Nebula Device owners and organizations carefully. See also [Section 6.3.3 on page 156](#).

Note: There is no limit as to how many organizations you can create, but you can only activate a trial license up to 10 new organizations every 90 days. The expiration date of the organization created using a trial license is shown.

- 1 Click **Create Organization** from the **Organization** drop-down list box in the title bar. The Wizard starts. See [Chapter 2 on page 43](#) for detailed information about how to use the wizard to create an organization and site. Otherwise, click **Exit Wizard** to close the wizard and display the **Create organization** screen.
- 2 Enter a name for your organization.
- 3 If you already have one or more than one organization under your account and you want to copy the organization settings of an existing one, select the organization name from the **Copy setting from** field and also **Add this Org to MSP Teams** by selecting existing teams before clicking the **Create organization** button.
- 4 Click the **Create organization** button to add a new organization.

Figure 17 Create Organization

- 5 Choose whether to activate a one-month trial of Nebula Pro Pack and Nebula Security Services for the organization. For example, USG FLEX 700, Secure WiFi License, 1MO; USG FLEX 700, UTM Security Pack License, 1MO; Nebula Professional Pack License, 1MO.

1.5 Choose Organization

When you have more than one organization on your account, the following screen displays right after you log in. Select the organization you want to manage now, access the **MSP Portal** or click **Create organization** to add a new one.

Note: You need to purchase an MSP license to see the MSP Portal menu.

Figure 18 Choose Organization

Accounts for [redacted]@zyxel.com.tw

MSP Portal

Choose organization

Search... + Create organization

Name	Type
Org1	Nebula
Org2	Nebula

1.6 Cloud-Saving Mode

If you do not log into a base (free) license tier organization for over 30 days, the organization automatically enters Cloud-saving mode. When Cloud-saving is enabled, NCC does not record any data traffic statistics, except for event logs. To disable Cloud-saving mode, click the link in the NCC banner when notified.

Figure 19 Cloud-saving mode

Cloud-saving mode ×

You haven't logged in to this Organization over 30 days.

NCC has deactivated the collection of the traffic stats (except for the device's event log for troubleshooting) to conserve bandwidth & cloud resources.

You may disable cloud-saving mode on the banner and NCC will resume data collection.

Cloud-saving mode

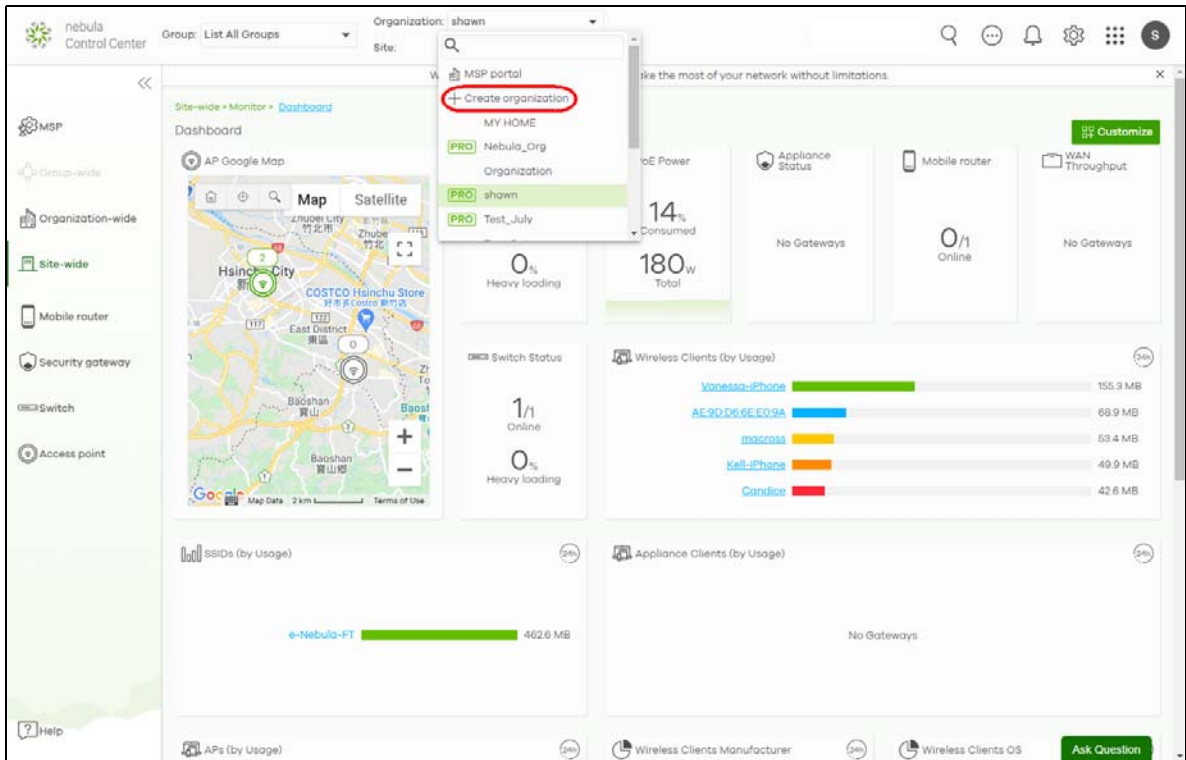
Close

CHAPTER 2

Setup Wizard

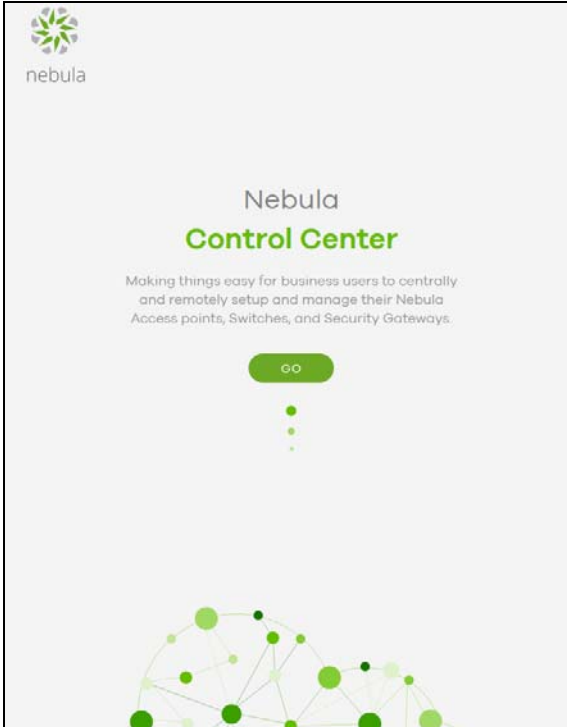
2.1 Setup Wizard

- The setup wizard helps you create an organization and site, add Nebula Devices and set up WiFi networks quickly.
- The wizard appears automatically after you log in the first time or if there is no organization created under your account.
- The wizard also starts when you click **Create Organization** from the **Organization** drop-down list box in the title bar.

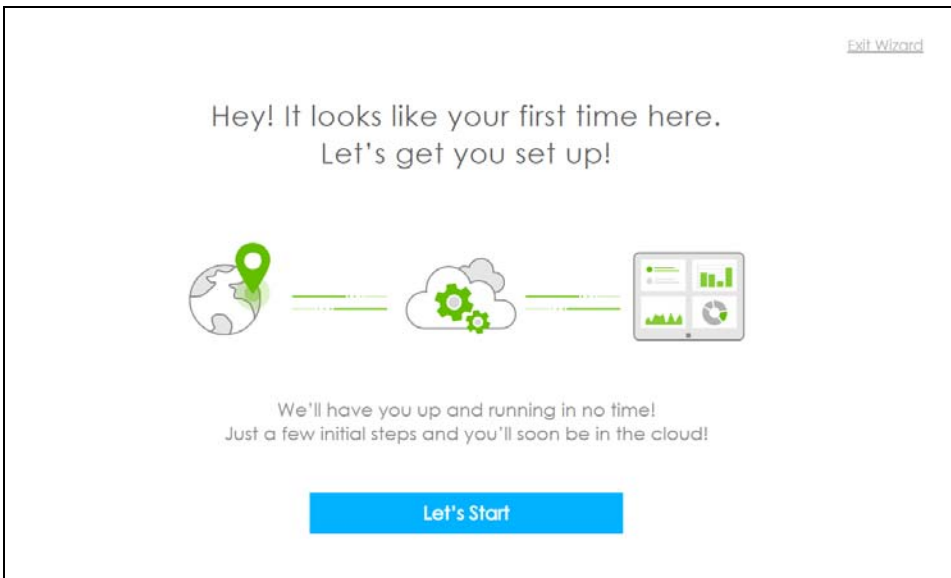


2.1.1 Step1: Run the Wizard

- 1 After logging in to <https://nebula.zyxel.com>, the following screen appears. Click **GO** to start the NCC wizard.



- 2 The welcome screen displays when you are creating the first organization under your account. Click **Let's Start** to begin.



Note: This screen will appear only if you have not created a new organization.

2.1.2 Step 2: Create an Organization and Site

- 1 Enter a descriptive name for your organization and site. Both names must consist of 1 – 64 characters.

- 2 Select the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
- 3 Click **Next** to continue.

The screenshot shows the first step of the Nebula Setup Wizard. On the left, a grey sidebar contains the step number '01' and explanatory text: 'Nebula is organized into Organizations, for example, "YourCompany" or "YourClient", and Sites, for example, "London Branch" or "Factory". You can create as many Organizations and Sites as you need once you're up and running. The country allows us to set the correct time zone for your site and the legal requirements for settings like radio power on access points. Please enter your Organization and Site names and select the correct Country and Time Zone.' On the right, the main content area is titled 'First step is to create your Organization and Site'. It features four input fields: 'Organization' and 'Site' are text boxes with 'x' clear buttons; 'Country' is a dropdown menu with 'Taiwan' selected; and 'Timezone' is a dropdown menu with 'Asia - Taipei (UTC +8.0)' selected. A 'Next' button is located at the bottom right of the form area. An 'Exit Wizard' link is visible in the top right corner of the wizard window.

2.1.3 Step 3: Add Your Nebula Devices

- 1 Enter your device's MAC address and serial number.

You can also leave the fields blank and click **Next** to move on to the next step without adding a Nebula Device.

- 2 Click the + **Add** button to register and add the Nebula Device to the site. You can register multiple Nebula Devices at a time.
- 3 Click **Next** to proceed.

[Exit Wizard](#)

02

To add your device(s) you will need to input the MAC address, which is the number that looks like this: 7C:99:DD:39:AC:F0, and the Serial Number that looks similar to: S891345239054. These are located on the box and at the bottom of each device, it may appear as:

Serial Number

MAC address

You might just click Next to skip this step.

Let's now add your device(s) to Nebula

X
 X

+ Add

Name	MAC	Serial Number
Please click Add button after filling in the MAC address and Serial Number		

Back
Next

2.1.4 Step 4: Set up your WiFi Network

- 1 Configure the WiFi settings for the managed APs. Enter the WiFi network name (SSID) and the WiFi password.

You can also leave the fields blank and click **Next** to move on to the next step without setting up the main WiFi network.

- 2 Configure the ID number of the VLAN to which the SSID belongs.

The VLAN ID 1 is generated automatically by the NCC and reserved for a gateway's LAN 1 and LAN 2 by default. The IPv4 subnets 192.168.1.0/24 and 192.168.2.0/24 are also reserved for these two LAN interfaces.

If you enter a different VLAN ID other than the default one ("1") in the **VLAN** field, click the **Set up VLAN interface** link to create a gateway interface with the specified VLAN ID. You need to configure an IP address and subnet mask and enable the DHCP server function for this interface.

- 3 Click **Next** to proceed.

[Exit Wizard](#)

03

Enter your WiFi name. This is what you will select from a device when connecting to your network. If you leave the password empty then anyone will be able to access your network without the need to enter a password. If a password is entered, we will automatically add WPA2 security so that every device will need to enter this password to connect to your network.

Gateway Optionally, you could configure the IP address settings of the WiFi VLAN in case a Nebula gateway is installed in this site.

You might just click Next to skip this step.

Let's get your WiFi set up

WiFi Name (SSID)

Password (Pre-Shared Key)

VLAN

▲ Set up VLAN interface **Gateway**

[Back](#) [Next](#)

[Skip WiFi settings](#)

2.1.5 Step 5: Set up a Guest WiFi Network

- 1 Configure WiFi and VLAN settings for guest users who can wirelessly access the Internet or networks through Nebula Devices.

You can also leave the fields blank and click **Next** to move on to the next step without setting up the guest WiFi network.

- 2 If you want to enable web authentication, select **Clicking "Agree" to access the network** to block network traffic until a client agrees to the policy of user agreement. Otherwise, select **Using their Facebook account to join the network** to block network traffic until the client logs in using his/her existing Facebook account.

Note: If you do not enable any WiFi security, your network is accessible to any WiFi networking device that is within range.

Note: The guest network function and Layer 2 isolation between clients are enabled on this WiFi network by default.

If you enter a different VLAN ID other than the default one ("1") in the **VLAN** field, click the **Set up VLAN interface** link to create a gateway interface with the specified VLAN ID. You can set the gateway interface as a guest interface, configure the IP address and subnet mask and enable the DHCP server function for this interface.

Note: If you set the guest WiFi network to use the same VLAN ID as the WiFi network and have already configured the gateway interface, the gateway interface configuration fields will be grayed out in this screen.

- 3 Click **Next** to proceed.

[Exit Wizard](#)

04

Enter your Guest WiFi name. If you leave the password empty, then anyone will be able to access your network without the need to enter a password. Additionally, you can choose to add a captive portal that will redirect the guests to either click "I agree" or by using their Facebook account to access your guest network.

Gateway Optionally, you could configure the IP address settings of the Guest WiFi VLAN. In case a Nebula gateway is installed in this site, the interface can also be set as Guest to restrict devices access to Internet only.

You might just click Next to skip this step.

Need to set up a Guest WiFi?

How do you prefer guest to access your guest network (Captive portal)?

No captive web portal

Clicking "Agree" to access the network

Using their Facebook account to join the network

Set up VLAN interface **Gateway**

2.1.6 Step 6: Set up the Deployment Method

If you added a ZyWALL USG FLEX / ATP / USG20(W)-VPN Series device in step 3, you need to select a deployment method for management by Nebula. Select **Nebula native mode** if available. If not, select **Zero Touch Provision mode** and configure an email address to send an activation link to the administrator who is in charge of managing the Nebula Device.

[Exit Wizard](#)

05

Configure WAN settings for the gateway device that you added earlier in the wizard. Nebula Control Center (NCC) then assigns the device you added as the gateway device for the new site. NCC also sends the WAN settings to the specified email address, as an encoded URL.

Gateway After you have finished this wizard, follow the instructions in the email to apply the WAN settings to the gateway device.

You might just click Next to skip this step.

Deployment Method

[Show device information](#)

Deployment Method

Nebula native mode

1. Connect your computer to the GW LAN port and connect WAN port to a modem or router that has Internet access.
2. Login GW GUI and configure your WAN connection settings.

The diagram shows a ZyXEL gateway device with a WAN port connected to the Internet and a LAN port connected to a PC. Red arrows and numbers 1 and 2 indicate the connection steps.

Zero Touch Provision mode

2.1.6.1 Nebula Native Mode

To use the Nebula native mode deployment method, perform the steps described in [On the Nebula Device](#).

2.1.6.2 Zero Touch Provision Mode

To configure the Zero Touch Provisioning (ZTP) settings, do the following in NCC:

- 1 Enable **VLAN Tag** and configure the **VLAN ID** (1 – 4094) for the WAN port.
- 2 Select **Static/DHCP/PPPoE/PPPoE with static IP** for the WAN type of the Nebula Device.
- 3 If you select **DHCP**, enter the **MTU** (Maximum Transmission Unit) to set the maximum size (1280 – 1500) of each data packet, in bytes, that can move through this interface.

If you select **Static**, enter the **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, **Default Gateway**, **First/Second DNS Server**, and **MTU** (1280 – 1500).

If you select **PPPoE**, select the **Authentication Type**, enter the **Username**, **Password**, and **MTU** (1280 – 1492).

If you select **PPPoE with static IP**, select the **Authentication Type**, enter the **Username**, **Password**, **IP Address**, **Default Gateway**, **First DNS Server** and **MTU** (1280 – 1492).

Note: Configure the VLAN ID and WAN interface for the Nebula Device exactly as your ISP gave it to you.

- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Select **I will install Firewall by myself** to receive an activation email and activation link/file. Alternatively, if you want another administrator to activate the Nebula Device, enter the recipient's **Email Address**.
- 6 Click **Next**.
- 7 Select where the Nebula Device will get and install the activation file, from a computer or through a USB drive.

On the Nebula Device


- 1 Back up the current configuration (in case you want to return to On Premises mode later).
- 2 Reset the Nebula Device if it was previously configured.
- 3 Connect the Nebula Device's WAN port to a modem/router that has Internet access.
- 4 Connect your computer to the Nebula Device's LAN port.
- 5 If you select **Nebula native mode**, go directly to step 7.
Click the activation link in the email.
Alternatively, save the activation file in the root directory of a USB drive. Then insert the USB drive into your Nebula Device.
Wait until Nebula Zero Touch Provisioning is successful.



- 6 Click **Go to Nebula Control Center** to configure the Nebula Device using NCC.
- 7 When you log into the Web Configurator for the first time or when you reset the Nebula Device to its default configuration, the **Initial Setup Wizard** screen displays. Choose **Nebula Mode** to manage your Nebula Device remotely using Nebula Control Center (NCC).
- 8 Follow the wizard to configure the Nebula Device network settings to connect to NCC. The screens vary depending on the encapsulation type. Refer to information provided by your ISP to know what to enter in each field. Leave a field blank if you do not have that information.

Note: Refer to the Nebula Device User's Guide for more information.

2.1.7 Step 7: View the Summary

- 1 A summary of the wizard configuration will display after you complete the deployment method.
- 2 You can click a section's edit icon () to modify its setting.
- 3 You must click **Go to Nebula Dashboard** to save your changes in the wizard; otherwise click **Exit Wizard** to close the wizard screen without saving the settings.

Let's take a look for what you had done

Organization Summary

- Organization name for Mockup
- Site name for Mockup with a long name description
- Taiwan
- Asia - Taipei (UTC +8.0)

Devices

- 2 Mobile router(s)
- 1 Firewall(s)
- 12 Switch(es)
- 22 Access point(s)

Overview for your Wifi configuration

Wifi setting	Guest Wifi setting
Wifi Name (SSID): Wifi name for Mockup	Guest WiFi Name (SSID): Wifi name for Mockup
WiFi Password: 12345678	Guest WiFi Password: 12345678
VLAN Interface (Gateway): VLAN 2 - 232.22.123.2 DHCP server ON	VLAN Interface (Gateway): VLAN 2 - 232.22.123.2 DHCP server ON

Overview for your Security Appliance configuration

Model Name: USG20-VPN	WAN Setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WAN Port: 22 • WAN Type: STATIC • VLAN ID: 2 	Recipient: vn.zyxel@gmail.com
------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------

Everything seems fine, ready to go?

[Go to Nebula Dashboard](#)

2.1.8 Step 8: Activate NCC Pro Pack and Security Services Trial Period

- 1 After setting up the wizard, the following screen will appear. you can decide if you want to activate a one-month trial period of Nebula Pro Pack and Nebula Security Services for the organization.
- 2 If you choose to activate the trial period, click **Activate one-month trial period**. NCC will send you an email reminding you to purchase the full license when the trial is close to expiring.

Notification ✕

We offer a free one-month trial period for Nebula Pro Pack and Nebula Security Services. Would you like to activate the trial period for this organization?

Activate one-month trial period.

 Continue without activating trial period.

Note: To set the administrator privileges, see [Section 4.6.0.1 on page 121](#) for more information.

CHAPTER 3

Tutorials

3.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to use the NCC's various features.

- [Add a Nebula Device](#)
- [Activate and Assign a License for a Nebula Device, Site, or Organization](#)
- [Monitor a Site](#)
- [Know What Licenses are Set to Expire in My Site or Organization](#)
- [Renew an Expired License](#)
- [Transfer Licenses](#)
- [Maintain Firmware](#)
- [Assign an Administrator to Manage a Nebula Device](#)
- [Manage a Configuration Template](#)
- [Activate an MSP License](#)
- [Configure CNP/CNP Plus Security Services](#)
- [Delete an Organization](#)
- [Manage IPTV](#)
- [Setup Remote Access VPN](#)

3.2 Add a Nebula Device

This section shows you how to add a Mobile Router, Security Gateway, Nebula Firewall, Access Point or Switch to a selected organization and site on NCC for management.

- 1 Go to the **Site-wide > Configure > Add devices** screen. Click **+Add**.

- 2 Enter the **Serial number** and **MAC address** of the Nebula Device you want to add. Click the **Finish** button to save the changes.

Note: When a Nebula Device is added to a site other than a Nebula Device owner, the **Acknowledge** button appears. Click this button first to confirm that the **Serial number** and **MAC Address** information are correct. Then click the **Finish** button.

3.3 Activate and Assign a License for a Nebula Device, Site, or Organization

This section shows you how to activate and assign a license for a Nebula Device, site, or organization. See [Section 1.1.4.2 on page 15](#) for a summary of NCC licenses.

The following table describes the license types at the time of writing.

Table 10 License Types

LOCATION	LICENSE TYPE	APPLICATION
MSP (Managed Services Provider)	MSP	NCC (Nebula Control Center) user account
Organization-wide	PRO / PLUS	AP (Access Point) / NSG (Nebula Security Gateway) / Switch / USG FLEX device
Organization-wide	Gold Security	ATP device
Site-wide	NSS (Nebula Security Service)	NSG device
Site-wide	UTM (Unified Threat Management) Security / Secure WiFi	USG FLEX device
Site-wide	Content Filter	USG FLEX 50 / USG20-VPN / USG20W-VPN device
Site-wide	Connect & Protect (CNP) / Connect & Protect Plus (CNP+)	NWA1123ACv3, WAC500, WAC500H / NWA110AX, NWA210AX, WAX510D, WAX610D, WAX630S, WAX650S device

Bundled License and Add-on License

A bundled license is a license that is included when you purchase a Nebula Device (Mobile Router, Access Point, Switch, NSG, USG FLEX, ATP, and USG20(W)-VPN). The bundled license is automatically assigned to the purchased Nebula Device when you add the Nebula Device to NCC. A bundled license cannot be transferred to another Nebula Device.

An add-on license is a license purchased separately from a Nebula Device as a license key, from Zyxel or another vendor. An add-on license can be applied to any Nebula Device.

License States

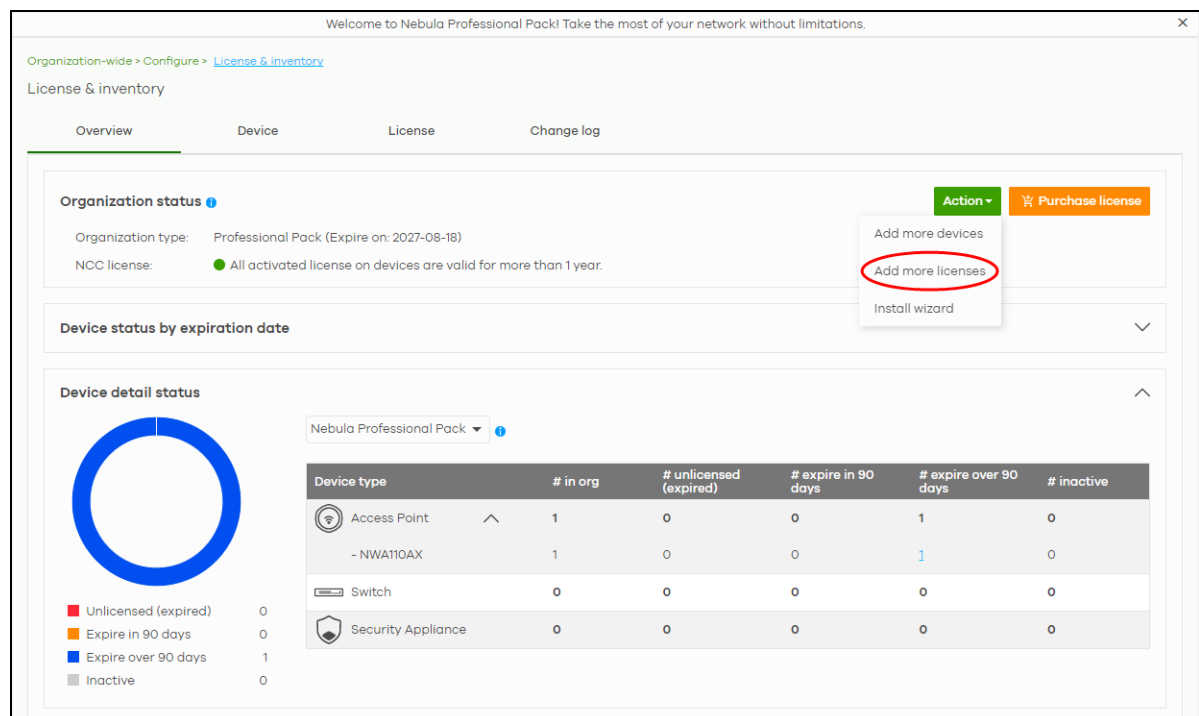
The following are the license states in NCC.

- Active – the license pack is assigned to a Nebula Device, is activated, and is in use (expiration countdown/timer has started).
- Queued – the license pack is assigned to a Nebula Device, is activated, but not yet in use.
- Inactive – the license pack is assigned to a Nebula Device, but is not yet activated in NCC.
- Unused – The license pack is assigned to an organization, but is not yet assigned to a Nebula Device and not yet activated in NCC.

License Activation Process

You must have a Nebula Device and a license pack to activate a license. Perform the following to activate a license.

- 1 In the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory**, click **Action > Add more licenses**.



Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.

Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory

License & inventory

Overview | Device | License | Change log

Organization status

Organization type: Professional Pack (Expire on: 2027-08-18)

NCC license: ● All activated license on devices are valid for more than 1 year.

Device status by expiration date

Device detail status

Nebula Professional Pack

Device type	# in org	# unlicensed (expired)	# expire in 90 days	# expire over 90 days	# inactive
Access Point	1	0	0	1	0
- NWA110AX	1	0	0	1	0
Switch	0	0	0	0	0
Security Appliance	0	0	0	0	0

Legend:

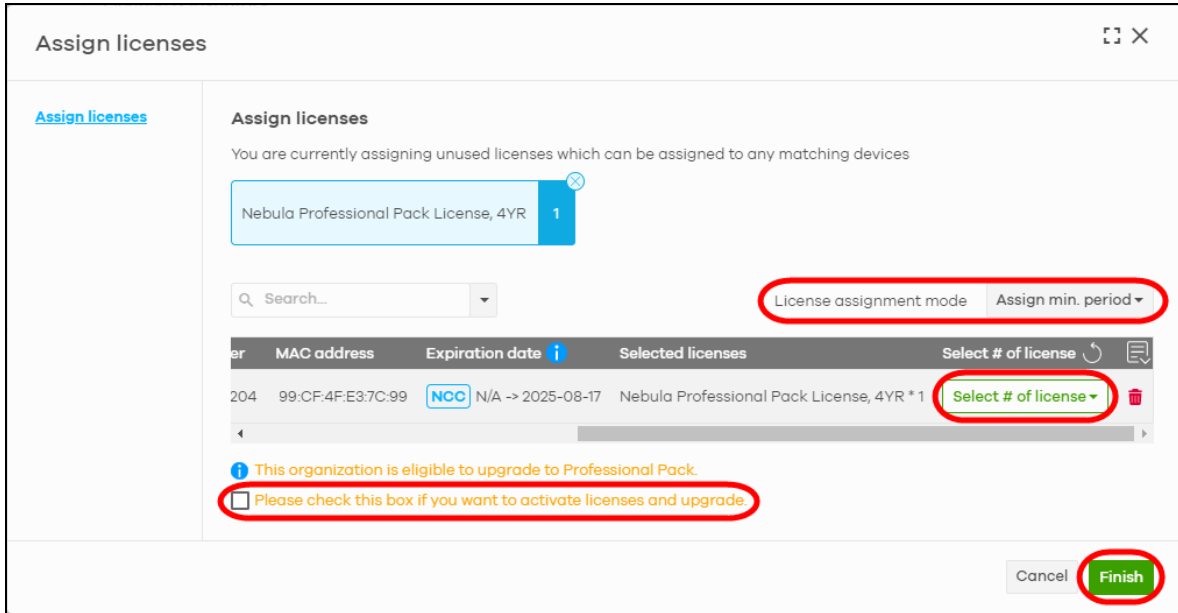
- Unlicensed (expired): 0
- Expire in 90 days: 0
- Expire over 90 days: 1
- Inactive: 0

- 2 Enter the **License key** and the **License information** will display.

- 3 Click **Finish**. The license is now assigned to your organization and site.

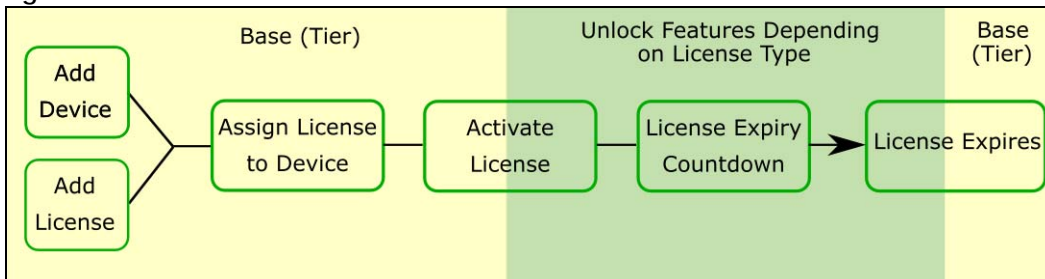
Note: A newly assigned license will not start its expiration countdown/timer until activated.
Multiple add-on Plus Pack and Pro Pack licenses can be assigned to the same Nebula Device managed by NCC.

- 4 In the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory**, select the **Device** tab.
- 5 Locate the Nebula Device to assign a license(s). Click the **Action** button and select **Assign license** on the device row.
- 6 Clear any license that you do not want added to the Nebula Device.
- 7 For multiple licenses of the same type to be added to the Nebula Device, set the number of licenses in the **Select # of license** field.
- 8 Set the expected expiration date criteria from the **License assignment mode**.
 - **Assign minimum period** – NCC assigns one of each license type with the shortest duration to each Nebula Devices.
 - **Assign all** – NCC assigns all selected license type equally to each Nebula Device.
 - **Target expiration date** – Set a future date. NCC assigns an equal number of licenses to each Nebula Devices until the expiration date (future date) is reached or exceeded.
- 9 Click **Please check this box if you want to activate licenses and upgrade**. Then, click **Finish**.



The features that will be unlocked depends on the license type purchased.

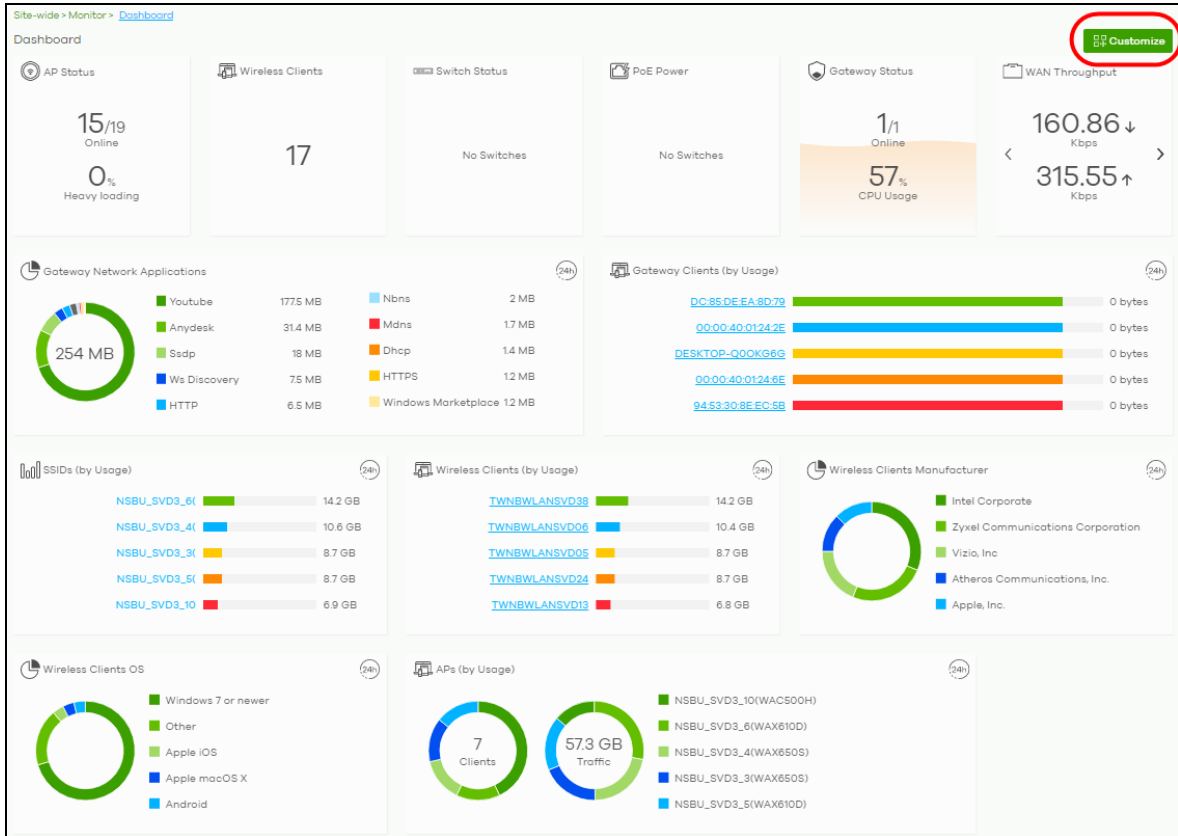
Figure 20 License Activation Process



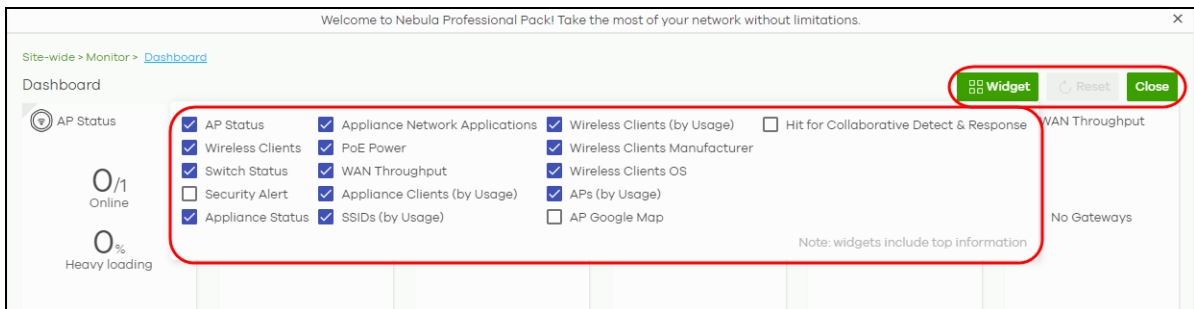
3.4 Monitor a Site

This section shows you how to view and monitor your Nebula Devices and WiFi/wired networks within a site.

- 1 Go to the **Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard** screen. To change the default view, click **Customize** to show the **Widget**, **Reset**, and **Close** buttons.



- 2 Click **Widget** to select which widgets to display. For example, clicking **SSIDs (by Usage)** will show the top 5 SSIDs with the highest percentage of bandwidth usage in the past 24 hours. Click **Reset** to restore the dashboard back to the default view. Click **Close** to hide the **Widget**, **Reset**, and **Close** buttons and show the **Customize** button.



3.5 Know What Licenses are Set to Expire in My Site or Organization

Use the **Overview** tab in the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory** to keep track of what licenses are set to expire to prevent a cut in services.

Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory

License & inventory

Overview Device License Change log

Organization status ⓘ Action ▾ Purchase license

Organization type: Professional Pack

NCC license: ● There is no expiration device within 1 year

Device status by expiration date ▾

Device detail status ⓘ

Nebula Professional Pack ⓘ

Device type	# in org	# unlicensed (expired)	# expire in 90 days	# expire over 90 days	# inactive
Access Point	1	0	0	1	0
- NWA110AX	1	0	0	1	0
Switch	0	0	0	0	0
Security Gateway	0	0	0	0	0

Legend for Device detail status:

- Unlicensed (expired): 0
- Expire in 90 days: 0
- Expire over 90 days: 1
- Inactive: 0

The license health is shown in the **Device detail status** and the following are the definition:

- Red – Nebula Device with expired license.
- Orange – Nebula Device with license that will expire in 90 days.
- Blue – Nebula Device with license that will expire in less than a year but over 90 days.
- Green – Nebula Device with license that will not expire within a year.

If a Pro or Plus tier license expires while assigned to a Nebula Device or you add an unlicensed Nebula Device to the organization, you have a 15-day grace period during which the organization's license remains active. See [Section on page 20](#) for details on a Nebula Device entering the grace period and what actions you must take.

3.6 Renew an Expired License

An administrator account should have read and write (Full) access privilege to add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory** to view the available (unused) licenses assigned to your organization.

License Key	License states	Associated device	Activate date	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> WTEST-ZIAXK-AULXJ-VLLAS-UFBSV	Active	20:21:03:21:13:46	2021-06-15	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160647	Queued	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-11	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160645	Active	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-07	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> WTEST-9RFQF-BJQUL-XYOZQ-MYI50	Inactive	20:21:03:21:13:41	-	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160641	Unused			Action ▾

In the example figure above, four kinds of licenses are available for assigning to your Nebula Device: Pro Pack 1MO / 1YR and Plus Pack 1MO / 1YR. Click any one of the license. For example, if you click Plus Pack 1YR, then only the two Plus Pack **License Keys** with 1-year validity will display in the table.

Select the check box and click **Action**. Then click **Assign license**. See [Section on page 54](#) for details on assigning a license to a Nebula Device.

If the expired Nebula Device is still in the organization after the grace period elapses, the organization automatically downgrades to the Base tier. See [Section on page 20](#) for details on a Nebula Device entering the grace period and what actions you must take.

3.7 Transfer Licenses

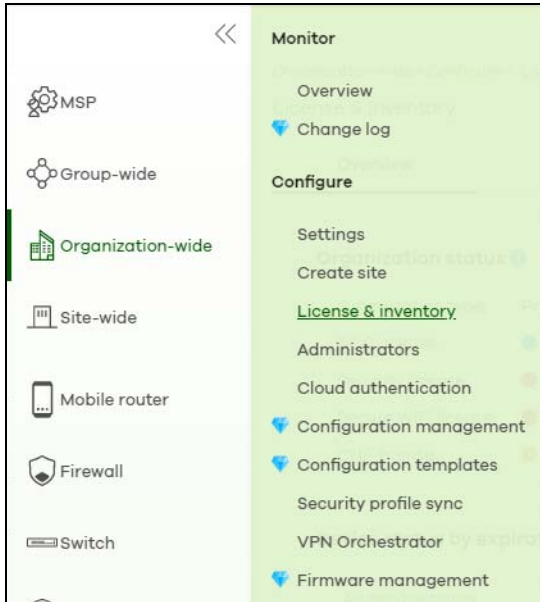
A license assigned to an organization and Nebula Device can be transferred to another Nebula Device in the same or different organization. The following guidelines apply when transferring licenses:

- The Nebula Devices must have the same owner.
- Bundled, Trial, and Promotion licenses cannot be transferred. (See [Table 40](#) for more information.)
- If the license transfer causes the Nebula Devices in the organization to be without a valid license, the organization automatically downgrades to the Base tier.

3.7.1 Select Transferable Licenses

To select a transferable license(s), do the following:

- 1 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > License** screen.



- 2 Select the licenses you want to transfer.

Overview	Device	License	Change log	
5 assigned	1 unused (Pro Pack, 1MO)	9 unused (Pro Pack, 1YR)	1 unused (Plus Pack, 1MO)	
Actions <input type="text" value="Q (licenseStatesFilter=ACTIVE)"/> (18) matches in (18) licenses. + Add Export				
License Key	License states	Associated device	Activate date	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> WTEST-ZIAXK-AULXJ-VLLAS-UFBSV	Active	20:21:03:21:13:46	2021-06-15	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160647	Queued	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-11	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160645	Active	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-07	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> WTEST-9RFQF-BJQL-XYOZQ-MY150	Inactive	20:21:03:21:13:41	-	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160641	Unused			Action

3.7.2 Undo Assigning a License

An administrator account should have read and write (Full) access privilege to un-assign licenses. Only an **Inactive** license (license is assigned to a specific Nebula Device but not activated) can be un-assigned.

To un-assign a license, do the following:

- 1 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > License** screen.
- 2 Select the **License Key** with an **Inactive** license state that you want to undo assign. Click **Action**, then click **Undo assign**. The license will return to the **Unused** license state.

Overview	Device	License	Change log		
5 assigned	1 unused (Pro Pack, 1MO)	9 unused (Pro Pack, 1YR)	1 unused (Plus Pack, 1MO) 2 unused (Plus Pack, 1YR)		
Actions ▾	Q (licenseStatesFilter=ACTIVE ▾)	(18) matches in (18) licenses.			
		+ Add	Export ▾		
<input type="checkbox"/>	License Key	License states	Associated device	Activate date	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	WTEST-ZIAXK-AULXJ-VLLAS-UFBSV	Active	20:21:03:21:13:46	2021-06-15	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160647	Queued	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-11	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160645	Active	20:21:03:21:13:40	2021-06-07	Action ▾
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WTEST-9RFQF-BJQUL-XYOZQ-MYI50	Inactive	20:21:03:21:13:41	-	Action ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	LIC-PLUS-1MO-31310203160641	Unused			Action ▾

3.7.3 Transfer a License to a Different Organization

Only an **Unused** license (a license which is assigned to an organization but not assigned to a specific Nebula Device) can be transferred. Both source and destination organizations should belong to the same owner.

To transfer a license to another organization, do the following:

- 1 Perform the steps described in [Select Transferable Licenses](#).
- 2 With the licenses you want to transfer selected, click **Actions** and then click **Change organization**.

Organization-wide > Configure > [License & inventory](#)

License & inventory

Overview Device **License** Change log

21 assigned 1 unused (Pro Pack, 1MO) 3 unused (UTM Pack, 1MO) 1 unused (UTM Pack, 1MO) 3 unused (UTM Pack, 1YR) 3 unused (Secure WiFi, 1MO) 1 >

Actions ▼ Search: ... 1 selected in 42 licenses. **+ Add** **Export** ▼

Change organization	Service	License states	License expiration d
Assign license	0210610-1 USG FLEX 100(W), UTM Security Pack License, 1MO	Unused	-
Undo assign	0210610-1 USG FLEX 200, Secure WiFi License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	UTM-1M-FLEX200-20210610-1 USG FLEX 200, UTM Security Pack License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	SEC-1M-FLEX500-20210610-1 USG FLEX 500, Secure WiFi License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	UTM-1M-FLEX500-20210610-1 USG FLEX 500, UTM Security Pack License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	SEC-1M-FLEX700-20210610-1 USG FLEX 700, Secure WiFi License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	UTM-1M-FLEX700-20210610-1 USG FLEX 700, UTM Security Pack License, 1MO	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	N-PROMO-SAPC202104-0948202103190948 USG FLEX 200, Secure WiFi License (Promotion), 3MO	Inactive	-
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	FLEX100-US1Y-202105061016 USG FLEX 100(W), UTM Security Pack, 1YR, North and Central America	Unused	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	FLEX100-TL1Y-202105061018 USG FLEX 100(W), UTM Security Pack, 1YR, Thailand	Unused	-

Page 4 of 5 Results per page: 10

- 3 Select the **Organization** you want to transfer the licenses to. The current organization will be excluded from the list. Then click **Yes**.

Change organization ✕

You are going to move license(s) from organization.

License Key

WTEST-R7YZT-EXLNA-ESM0F-MFHYP

Organization MY HOME

Cancel **Yes**

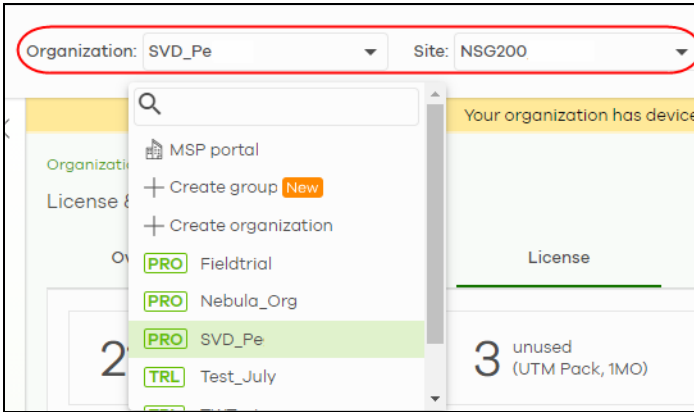
You have successfully transferred a license(s) to another organization, but without assigning it to a Nebula Device yet.

3.7.4 Assign a License to a Nebula Device in the New Organization

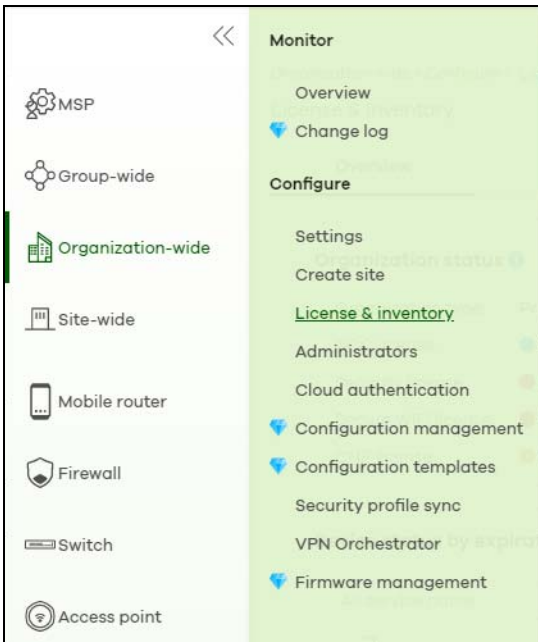
To assign a license(s) to a Nebula Device in the new organization, do the following:

- 1 Perform the steps mentioned in [Transfer a License to a Different Organization](#).

- 2 Select the **Organization** and **Site** where the license is transferred.



- 3 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Device** screen.



- 4 Select the **Device**, click **Action**, then click **Assign license**.

Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory

License & inventory

Overview **Device** License Change log

0 Access Point 0 Switch 5 Security Gateway

Actions + In use Unused Both Search... 1 selected in 5 devices + Add Export +

Device	Device type	Site	Model	Serial number	MAC address	Claim date	Country	License expiration date	License info	Action
<input type="checkbox"/> 19#88%*6*0_-10!>*	Security Gateway	N80200_0963	N80200	S202004160963	20:20:04:16:09:63	2020-04-16	Taiwan	2021-08-03 2022-09-04	Nebula Professional Pack Nebula Security Pack	Action +
<input type="checkbox"/> 20:21:03:19:09:48	USG Flex	empty_wait_add	USG FLEX 200	S202103190948	20:21:03:19:09:48	Waiting ZTP		2021-07-19 Inactive	Nebula Professional Pack Secure Wifi	Action +
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 20:21:08:04:09:44	USG Flex	flex200_0604	USG FLEX 700	S202106040944	20:21:08:04:09:44	2021-06-04	Taiwan	2021-08-07 2021-08-04 2021-07-11 (Grace Period)	Nebula Professional Pack UTM Se Secure	Action + Change organization Change site assignment Remove from organization Assign license Undo assign
<input type="checkbox"/> BC:CF:4F:8B:03:25	USG Flex	flex100w_0604	USG FLEX 100W	S202112200656	BC:CF:4F:8B:03:25	Waiting ZTP		2022-05-06 2027-06-10 2026-05-20	Nebula UTM Se Secure	
<input type="checkbox"/> 58:8B:F3:FF:F5:BC	USG Flex	flex200	USG FLEX 200	S202155000030	58:8B:F3:FF:F5:BC	2021-05-18	Taiwan	2022-04-06 2022-04-07 Inactive	Nebula UTM Security Pack Secure Wifi	

- 5 Select the **License assignment mode** to have NCC filter licenses that can be assigned.

License assignment mode

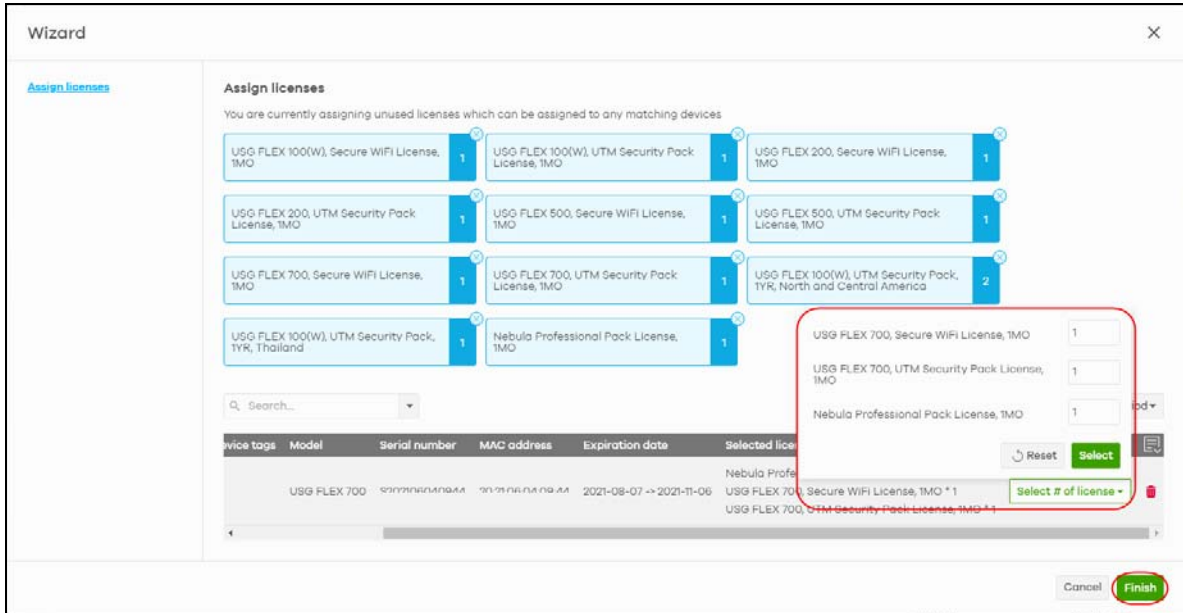
Target expiration date

Assign min. period
 Assign all
 Target expiration date
 Custom assignment

2022-07-13

Apply

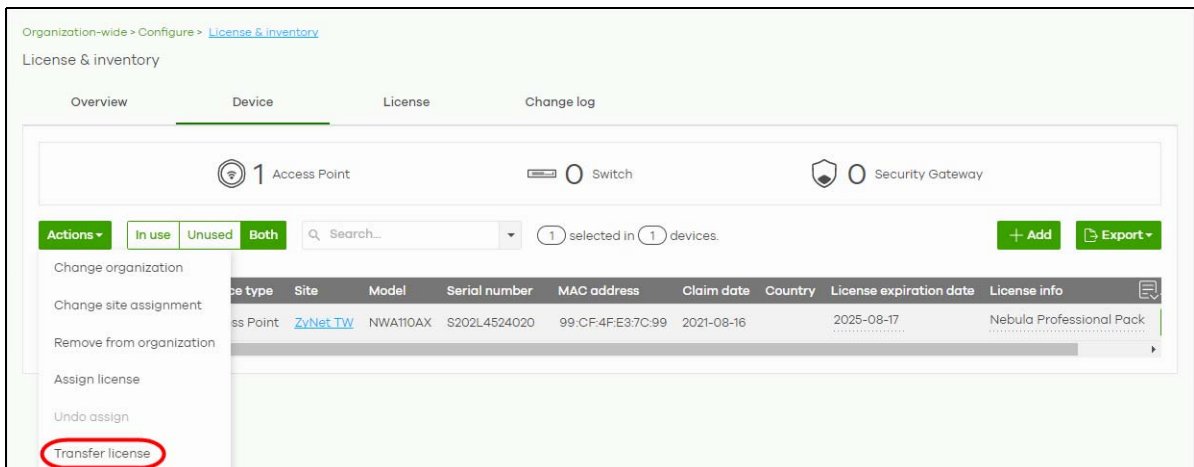
- **Assign min period** – one month license packs for your Nebula Device will be picked and displayed.
 - **Assign all** – all licenses that can be assigned are displayed.
 - **Target expiration date** – all licenses that meet the expiry criteria you set and can be assigned are displayed.
 - **Custom assignment** – any change in value to **Assign min period** and **Assign all** licenses above will become a **Custom assignment** and are displayed.
- 6 Click **Select # of license**. In the pop-up window, confirm or edit the value appearing beside the license type based on the criteria set in **License assignment mode**. Click **Select** to confirm. Then click **Finish**.



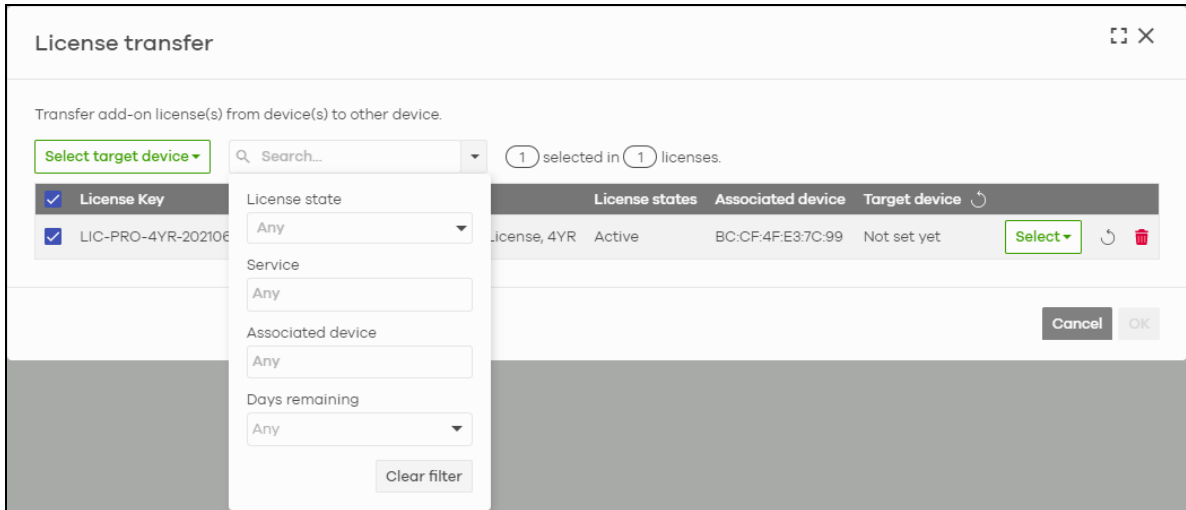
3.7.5 Transfer a License to a Nebula Device in a New Organization

To transfer a license(s) to a Nebula Device in the new organization, do the following:

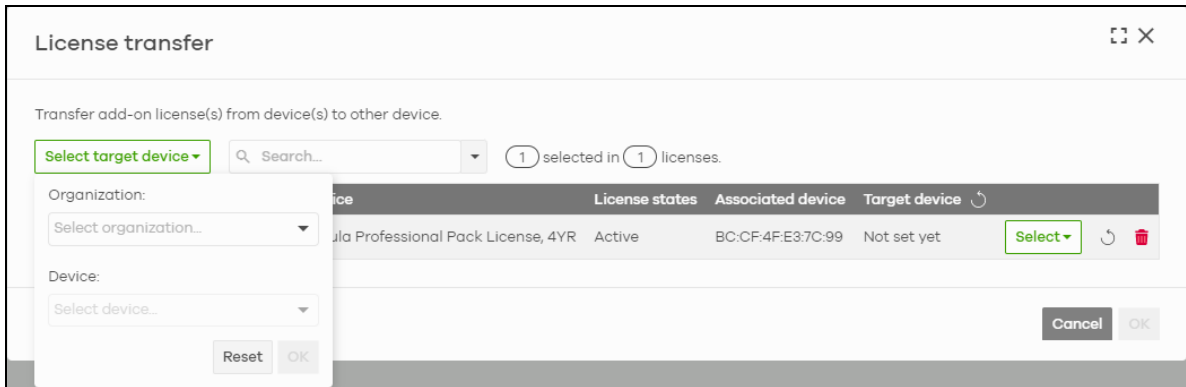
- 1 Perform the steps mentioned in [Assign a License to a Nebula Device in the New Organization](#).
- 2 Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Device** tab.
- 3 Select the devices with the license to be transferred.
- 4 Click **Actions** and select **Transfer License**.



- 5 The **License transfer** window appears. Click **Search** to set the filter to select the licenses.



- 6 Click **Select target device** to transfer all licenses to one Nebula Device by selecting the same/different **Organization** and target **Device**. Then click **OK**. Or select the devices individually.



3.8 Maintain Firmware

This section shows you how to update and maintain a Nebula Device's firmware.

- 1 Go to the **Site-wide > Configure > Firmware management** screen. Under **Upgrade time**, select the day and time of the week when NCC will detect if any new firmware is available. NCC will send out a reminder email to the administrator for the available updates. If the administrator does NOT perform the update, after the 90-day period is over, NCC will automatically upgrade the firmware for the Nebula Devices in the site.

Site-wide > Configure > [Firmware management](#)

Firmware management

Upgrade time: Monday 10pm [What is this?](#)

All APs
New firmware is available for APs in this site.
You can reschedule upgrade time as you wish or upgrade now.
 2021-03-10 00:00 UTC+8.0
 Upgrade now

All Switches
The switches in this site are using the latest available firmware.

USG Flex
New firmware is available for Gateway in this site.
You can reschedule upgrade time as you wish or upgrade now.
 2021-03-10 00:00 UTC+8.0
 Upgrade now

- 2 You can set different times to upgrade firmware for your Mobile Router, Access Points, Switches, Nebula Firewall, and Security Gateways to overwrite the site-wide weekly **Upgrade time**. Or select **Upgrade Now** to upgrade immediately.

Site-wide > Configure > [Firmware management](#)

Firmware management

Upgrade time: Monday 2am [What is this?](#)

All APs
New firmware is available for APs in this site.
You can reschedule upgrade time as you wish or upgrade now.
 2021-03-09 00:00 UTC+8.0
 Upgrade now

All Switches
The switches in this site are using the latest available firmware.

USG Flex
The gateway in this site is using the latest available firmware.

Status: Any Device type: Any Tag: Any Model: Any Current version: Any Firmware status: Any Locked: Any

1 selected in 3 devices

☐	Status	Device type	Model	MAC	S/N	Current version	Firmware status	Upgrade sched.
☐	●	USG FLEX	USG FLEX 100W	BC:CF:4F:D1:02:93	S202L28280031	V5.00(ABWC.0)b7	Up to date	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	●	Access point	WAX510D	BC:CF:4F:B8:5C:88	S202L12180002	V6.20(ABTF.0)b6	Custom	Follow upgrade time
☐	●	Switch	NSW100-10	B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14	S172L18800103	V3.00(ABHW.2) 1..	Up to date	No

- 3 If you do not want to upgrade the firmware immediately, you can click **+Schedule Upgrade** to create a schedule for your Nebula Device.

- Select **Follow global setting** to upgrade the Nebula Device according to the site-wide schedule configured for all Nebula Devices in the site.
- Select **Every Week/Month** to set up a routine schedule for upgrades.
- Select **Schedule the upgrade for** to set up a specific date and time for upgrades. This option can be enabled only when the selected Nebula Devices have a new firmware available.

- 4 Click **Add** to save the settings.

Schedule firmware ✕

Site timezone: UTC +8.0

Follow global setting. [What is this?](#)

Devices in site-wide will follow the same upgrade time.

Every Week on Monday at 02:00

Schedule the upgrade for: 2021-07-13 📅 00:00 [What is this?](#)

Selected devices will be upgraded on the specified date and time. This option is enabled only when all the selected devices have a firmware upgrade available.

Below devices will be upgrade as required time.

Device type	# of devices
Security gateway	1

Cancel
Add

3.9 Assign an Administrator to Manage a Nebula Device

This section shows you how to assign an administrator to manage your Nebula Device.

- 1 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators** screen. Click **+Add**.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Administrators](#)

Administrators

Activation Force logout Delete Search administrators... 1 administrators Change owner Import + Add

Name	Email address	Merged privilege	Privilege	Account status	Last access time (UTC)	Create date (UTC)	Status change d
<input type="checkbox"/>	S Yu	sa...@zyxel.com.tw	Owner	Owner	OK	2021-10-05 08:21:16	2021-07-12 06:44:24

Save
or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

- 2 Enter the **Name** and **Email** of a myZyxel account. Assign the **Organization access (Full, Read-Only, None)**. See [Table 15 on page 122](#) for information on organization privileges.

If you select **Full** for **Organization access**, select **Delegate owner's authority** to grant owner privileges to the new administrator except deleting/transferring organization ownership. Otherwise, do not select this option.

Select **Yes** if you wish to **Activate** the account administrator. Alternatively, select **No** if you wish to create an account administrator, but activate at a later time. The click **Create admin**.

Create administrator
✕

Name: ✕ *

Email: ✕ *

Organization access: ▼

Delegate owner's authority ⓘ

Activate: ▼

Close
Create admin

3 The **Account status** field will show **Unverified**. Click **Save**.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Administrators](#)

Administrators

Activation ▼
Force logout
Delete
Search administrators...
(2) administrators
Change owner
Import
Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Email address	Merged privilege ⓘ	Privilege	Account status	Last access time (UTC)	Create date (UTC)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SYu	syu@zyxel.com.tw	Owner	Owner	OK	2021-10-05 08:21:16	2021-07-12 06:44:24	2021-
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jon	jon@zyxel.com.tw	Organization (Full)	Organization (Delegated)	Unverified	Never	-	2021-

Save or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

The **Account status** field will show **OK** after saving. The new administrator will receive an email notification.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Administrators](#)

Administrators

Activation ▼
Force logout
Delete
Search administrators...
(2) administrators
Change owner
Import
Add

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Email address	Merged privilege ⓘ	Privilege	Account status	Last access time (UTC)	Create date (UTC)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SYu	syu@zyxel.com.tw	Owner	Owner	OK	2021-10-05 08:21:16	2021-07-12 06:44:24	2021-
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jon	jon@zyxel.com.tw	Organization (Full)	Organization (Delegated)	OK	2021-10-01 02:14:07	2021-10-05 09:16:15	2021-

Save or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

3.10 Manage a Configuration Template

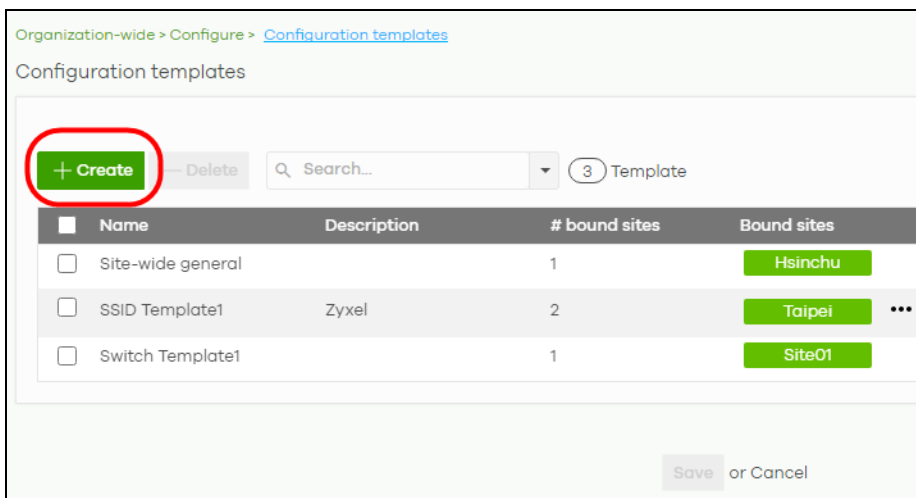
This section shows you how to use a configuration template to manage sites for your organization. Create a site and then bind a site to a template. You may enable the local override function if you want to configure some specific settings directly in a site after a site is bound to a template.

Note: This feature is available to an organization administrator with full privileges only (see [Table 15 on page 122](#) for details on organization privileges).

- 1 [Create and Bind a Template Site/Setting](#)
- 2 [Duplicate and Import a Template Setting to a Site](#)
- 3 [Enable the Override Site-wide Configuration \(Local Override\) Feature](#)

3.10.1 Create and Bind a Template Site/Setting

- 1 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates** screen. Click **+Create**.



- 2 The following screen appears. Enter a **Template name** and **Template description** for the template site or setting you want to create.
To create a new configuration template, select **Create new configuration template**.
To import an existing template from a site or template, select **Import settings from**.

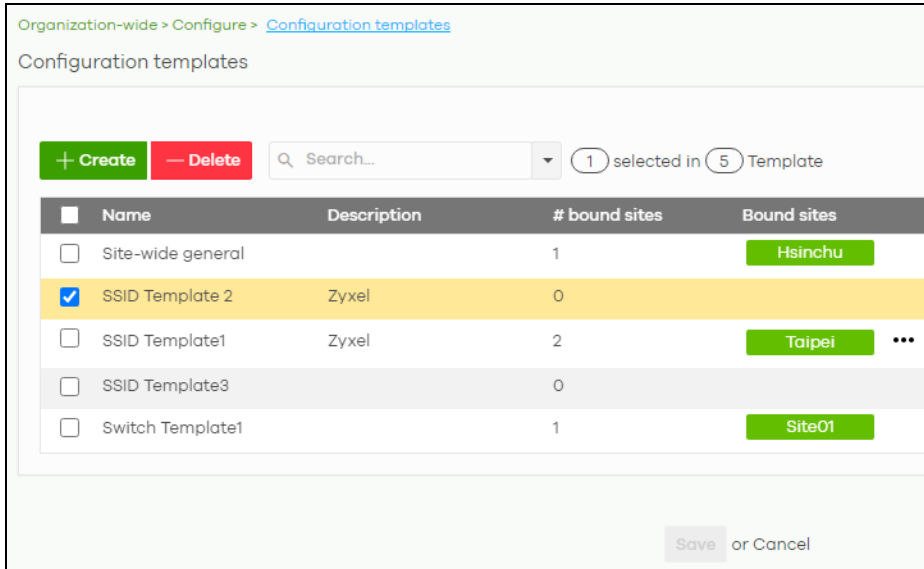
The screenshot shows the 'Create a new template' dialog box. The 'Template name' field contains 'SSID Template 2' and the 'Template description' field contains 'Zyxel'. The 'Import settings from' dropdown is open, showing a search bar and a list of sites and templates. The 'Sites' section is expanded, and 'Hsinchu' is selected. The 'Templates' section is also visible, showing 'Site-wide general'. A 'Create' button is visible at the bottom right.

Note: Under **Import settings from**, select a site from **Sites** to copy a site's settings. Under **Import setting from**, select a template from **Templates** to copy a site's site-wide general setting, an Access Point's SSIDs setting or a Switch's port setting.

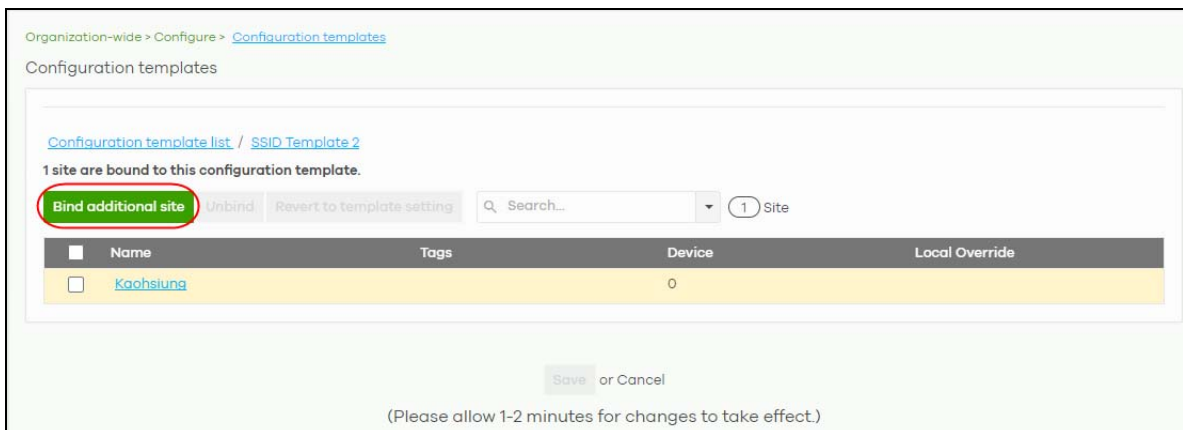
- 3 Select a site from the **Target sites** drop-down list box to bind the template to a site. Click **Create** and then click **Save** to save the changes.

The screenshot shows the 'Create a new template' dialog box. The 'Create new configuration template' radio button is selected. The 'Target sites' dropdown is open, showing a list of sites: Hsinchu, Kaohsiung, Site01, and Taipei. A 'Create' button is visible at the bottom right.

If you skip this step, you can bind a template to a site later. Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates** screen. Select the template you want to use and then click the row with the template that you want to bind to a site.



- 4 The following screen appears. Click **Bind additional site** to select the site you want to bind the template to.



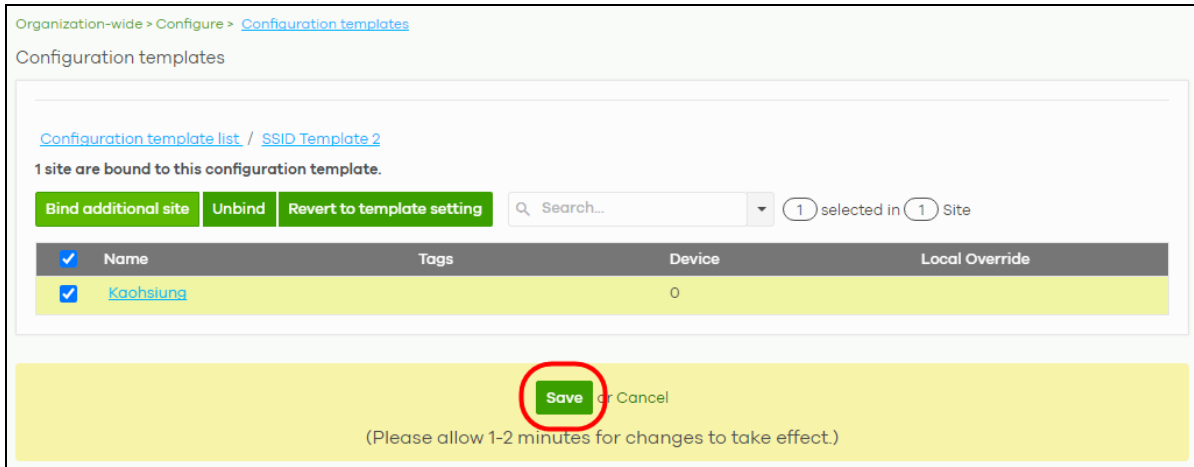
- 5 The following screen appears. Click the **Target sites** drop-down list box.



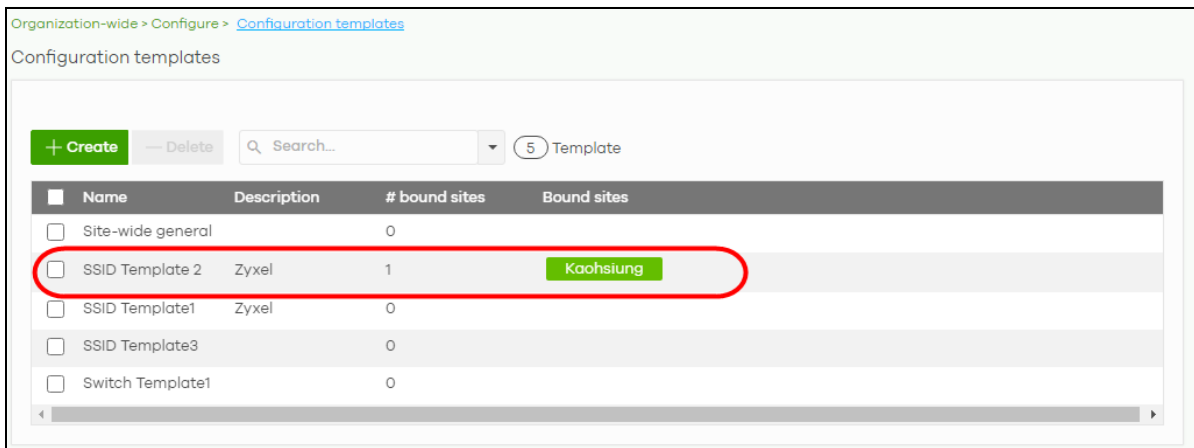
- 6 Select a site from the **Target sites** drop-down box list and then click **Bind**.



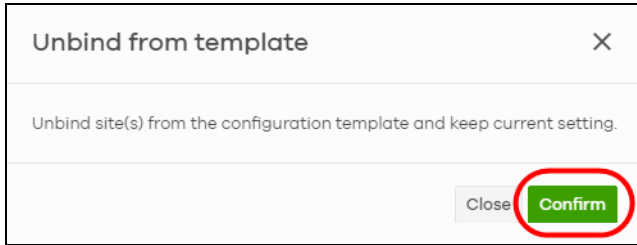
- 7 Click **Save** to save the changes.



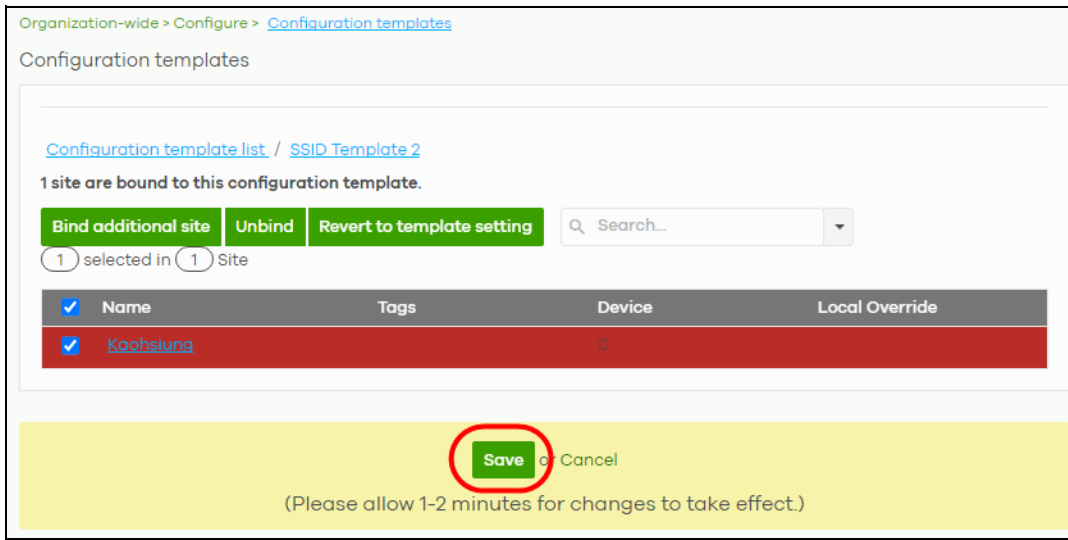
- 8 A configuration template is created as shown in the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration template** screen.



- 9 To release a site from using a configuration template, select a site and then click **Unbind** to unbind the site. The site which is unbound from the template still retains the settings applied from the template. The following screen appears. Click **Confirm** to confirm the changes.



- 10 Click **Save** to save the changes.



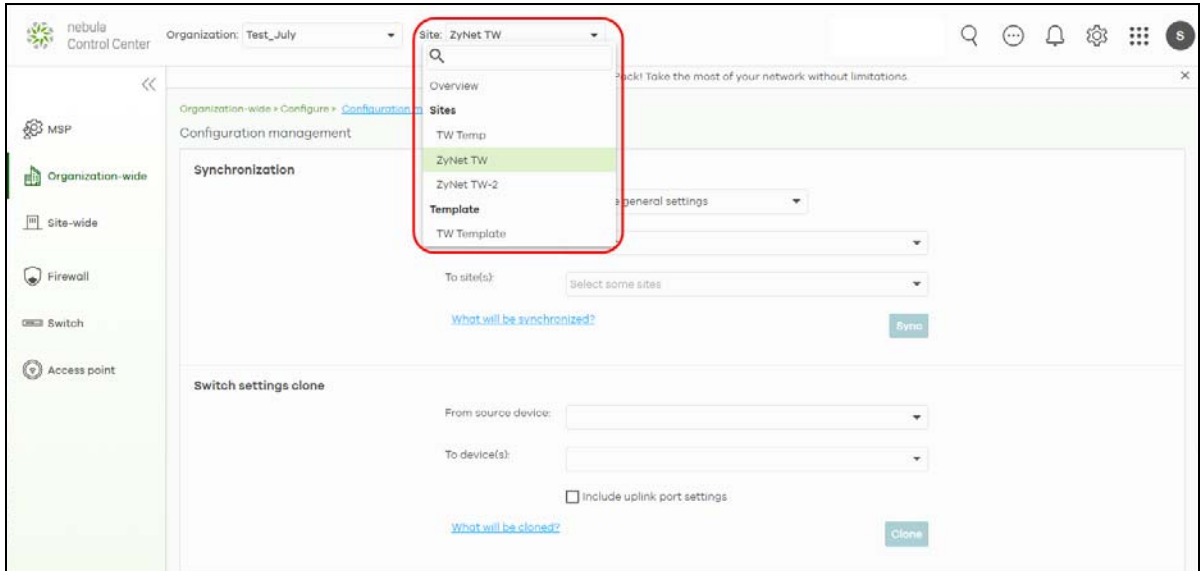
3.10.2 Duplicate and Import a Template Setting to a Site

This section shows you how to duplicate and then import the following template settings to a site:

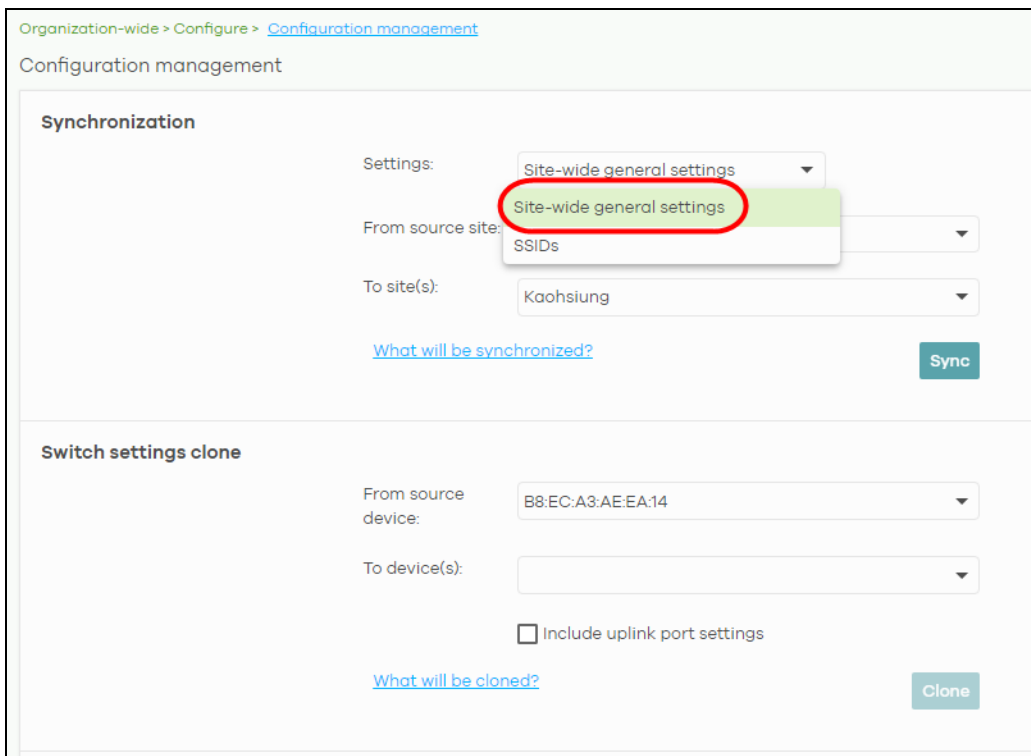
- The site-wide general setting includes the device configuration, SNMP and captive portal re-authentication.
- An Access Point's SSID setting.
- A Switch's port setting.

The site-wide general setting

- 1 Select a bound site from the **Site** drop-down list box.



- 2 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management** screen. Under **Synchronization**, select the **Site-wide general settings** in **Settings** to copy a site's general setting to another site.



- 3 From the **From source site** drop-down list box, select the site you want to copy the **Site-wide general settings** from.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings: Site-wide general settings ▼

From source site: Hsinchu ▼

To site(s): ▼

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device: B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14 ▼

To device(s): ▼

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#) Clone

- From the **To site(s)** drop-down list box, select the site you want to import the **Site-wide general settings** to. Click **Sync** to save the changes.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings: Site-wide general settings ▼

From source site: FLEX100W_0630 ▼

To site(s): ▼

[What will be synchronized?](#) Sync

Switch settings clone

From source device: ▼

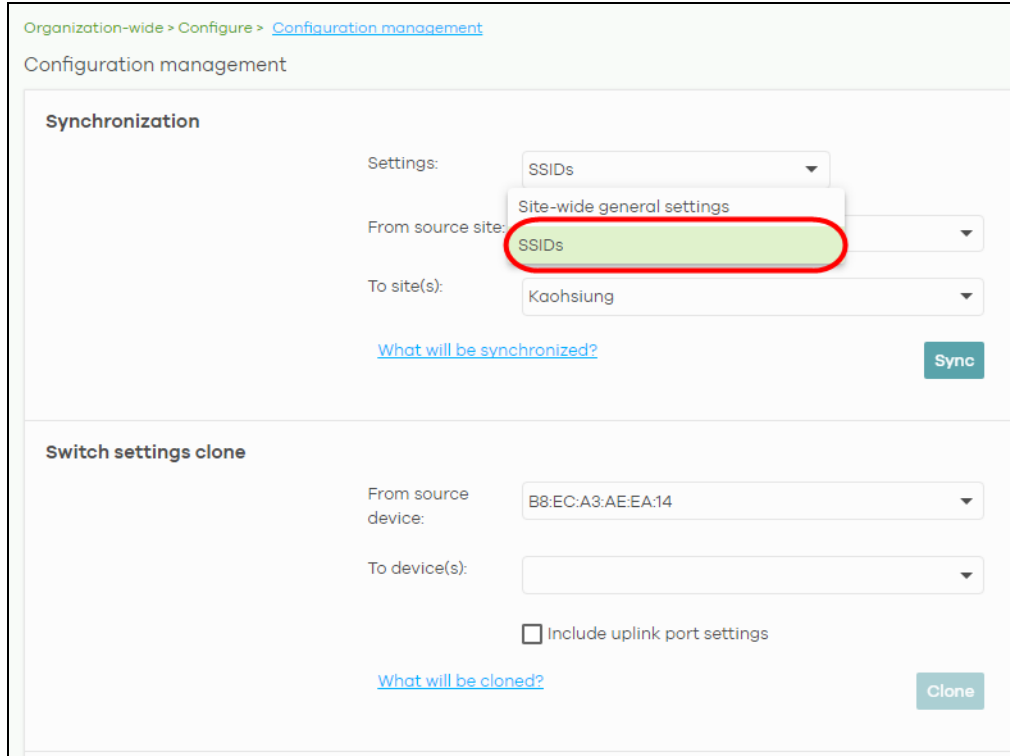
To device(s): ▼

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#) Clone

An Access Point's SSID Setting

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management** screen. Under **Synchronization**, select **SSIDs** to copy a site's SSIDs settings to another site. The duplicated **SSIDs** include the authentication and captive portal settings.



Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings: SSIDs

From source site: **SSIDs**

To site(s): Kaohsiung

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device: B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14

To device(s):

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#)

- 2 From the **From source site** drop-down list box, select the site you want to copy the **SSIDs** from.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings:

From source site:

To site(s):

- Hsinchu
- Kaohsiung
- Site01
- Taipei

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device:

To device(s):

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#)

- 3 From the **To site(s)** drop-down list box, select the site you want to import the **SSIDs** to. Click **Sync** to save the changes.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings:

From source site:

To site(s):

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device:

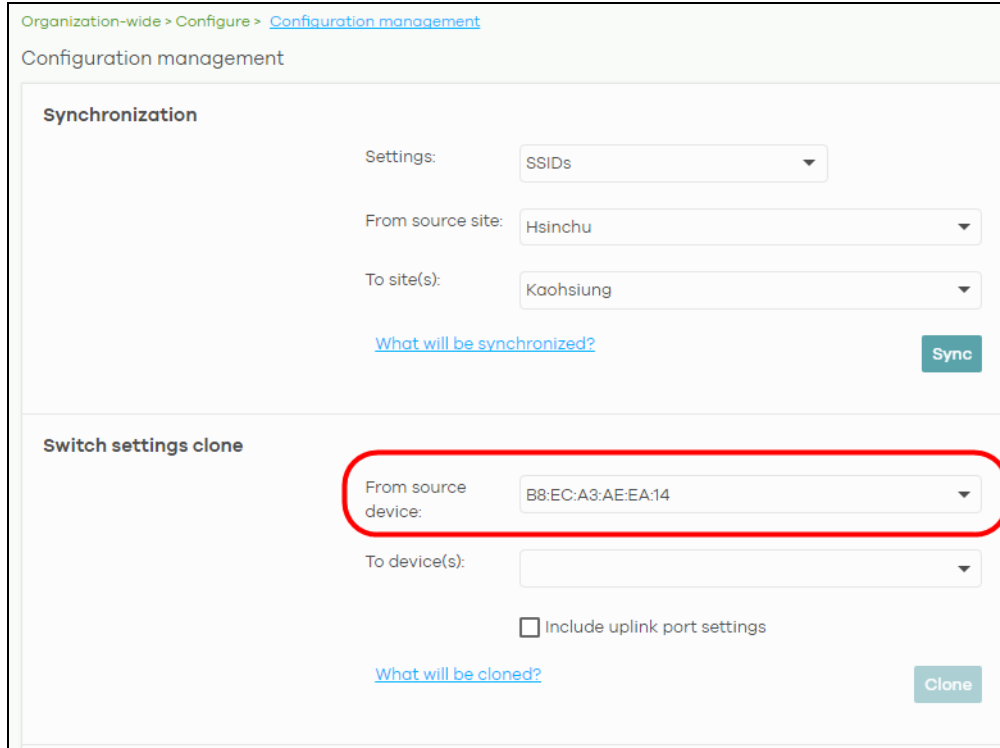
To device(s):

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#)

A Switch's Port Setting

- 1 Go to the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management** screen. Under **Switch settings clone**, select the Nebula Device's MAC address from the **From source device** drop-down list box. The cloned switch setting includes the port setting, IGMP advanced settings and STP bridge priority.



The screenshot shows the 'Configuration management' interface. The 'Synchronization' section is visible, with 'Settings' set to 'SSIDs', 'From source site' set to 'Hsinchu', and 'To site(s)' set to 'Kaohsiung'. A 'Sync' button is present. Below this is the 'Switch settings clone' section. The 'From source device' dropdown is highlighted with a red circle and contains the MAC address 'B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14'. The 'To device(s)' dropdown is empty. There is an unchecked checkbox for 'Include uplink port settings' and a 'Clone' button. A link 'What will be cloned?' is also visible.

- 2 From the **To device(s)** drop-down list box, select the Nebula Device's MAC address you want to import the Switch setting to. Click **Clone** to save the changes.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration management](#)

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings:

From source site:

To site(s):

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device:

To device(s):

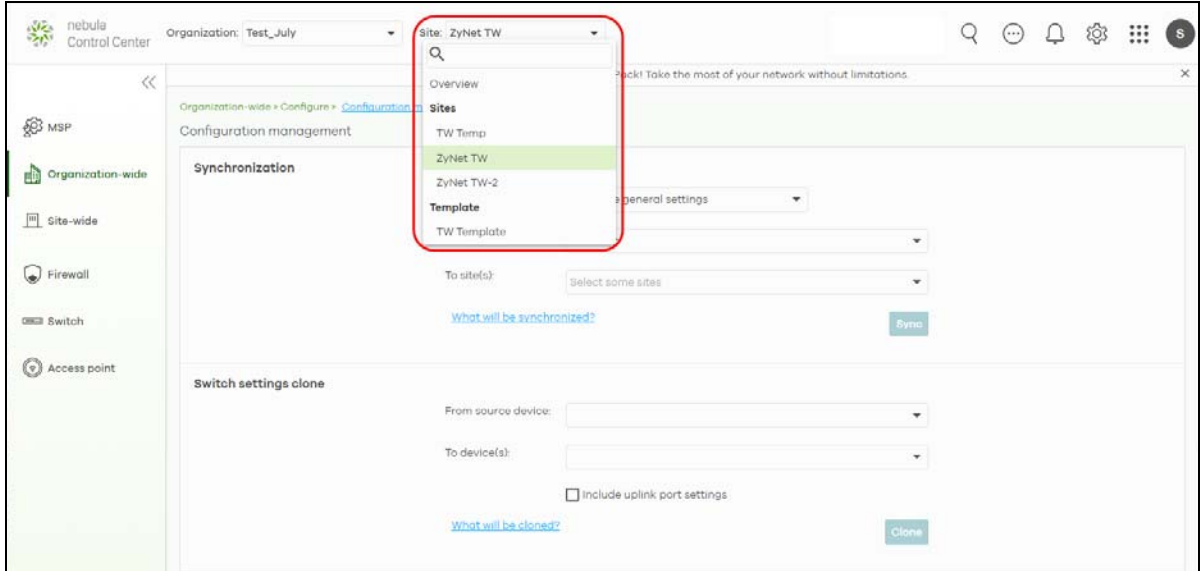
Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#)

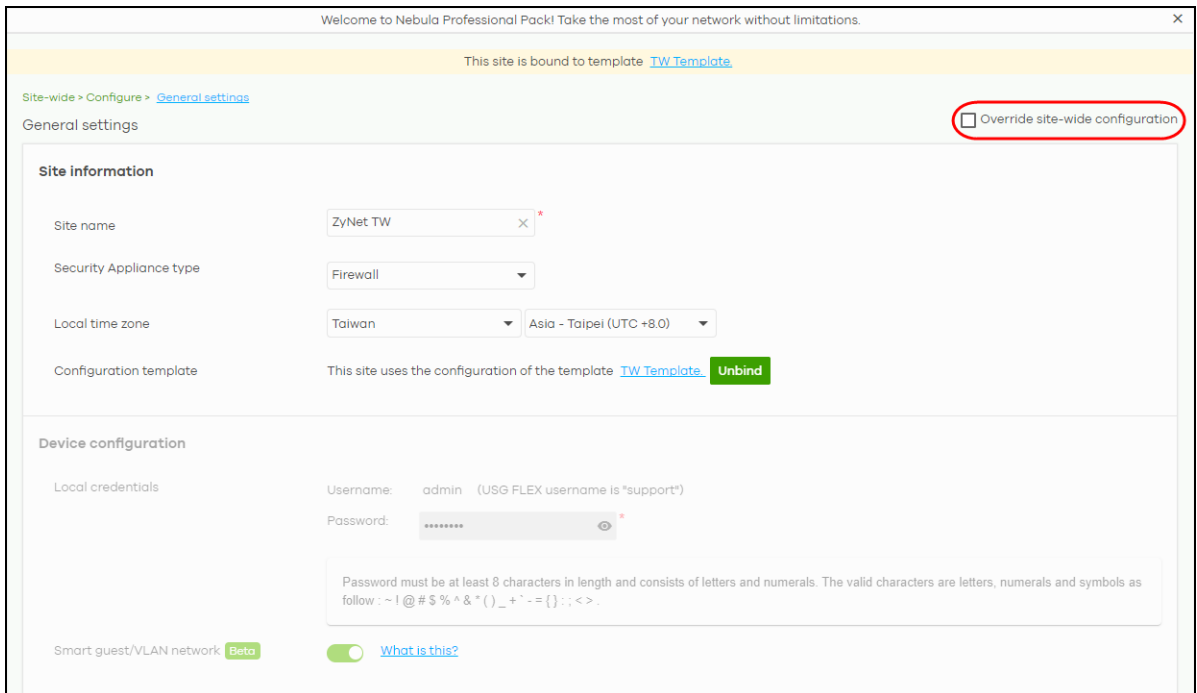
3.10.3 Enable the Override Site-wide Configuration (Local Override) Feature

A configuration template is a list of common settings that you can bind (apply) to a site. If you do not want to apply any new settings from the template to a site, just unbind that site. If you want to configure some specific settings directly in a site after the site is bound to a template, turn on the local override function. This feature is available to an organization administrator with full privileges only.

This section shows you how to enable the **Override site-wide configuration** feature to update site information. Select a bound site from the **Site** drop-down list box to edit the details of the selected site.



- 1 Go to a page under **Site-wide > Configure** and then select the **Override site-wide configuration** box. The **Configuration** page of a bound site contains an **Override site-wide configuration** box.



- 2 The following screen appears. Click **Confirm** to continue.



- 3 In the **Site-wide > Configure > General settings** screen, edit the **Site information**, **Device configuration**, **Captive portal reauthentication**, **SNMP** and **Voucher settings** on the following page. Click **Save** to save the changes.

Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.

This site is bound to template [TW Template](#)

Site-wide > Configure > [General settings](#)

General settings Override site-wide configuration

Site information

Site name: ZyNet TW

Security Appliance type: Firewall

Local time zone: Taiwan Asia - Taipei (UTC +8.0)

Configuration template: This site uses the configuration of the template [TW Template](#). [Unbind](#)

Device configuration

Local credentials: Username: admin (USG FLEX username is *support*) Password: [REDACTED]

Smart guest/VLAN network: [Beta](#) [What is this?](#)

Password must be at least 8 characters in length and consists of letters and numerals. The valid characters are letters, numerals and symbols as follow: ~ ! @ # \$ % ^ & * () _ + ' - = { } ; : < > .

- 4 To verify the local override setting of a site, go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates**. The **Local Override** field may show that **AP/SWITCH/GATEWAY/SITE-WIDE** settings in the template do not apply to the site. A tag for **AP**, as shown in the following figure, indicates that Access Point settings have a local override and any further changes in the template's AP settings will not be synchronized to the site.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Configuration templates](#)

Configuration templates

[Configuration template list](#) / [Site Template](#)

1 site are bound to this configuration template.

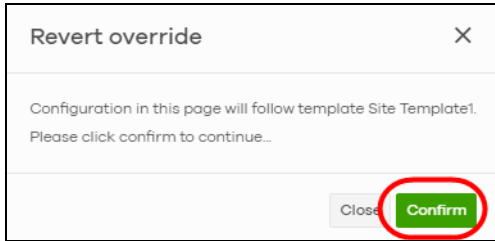
[Bind additional site](#) [Unbind](#) [Revert to template setting](#) Search... 1 selected in 1 Site

Name	Tags	Device	Local Override
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hsinchu		0	AP

[Save](#) or [Cancel](#)

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

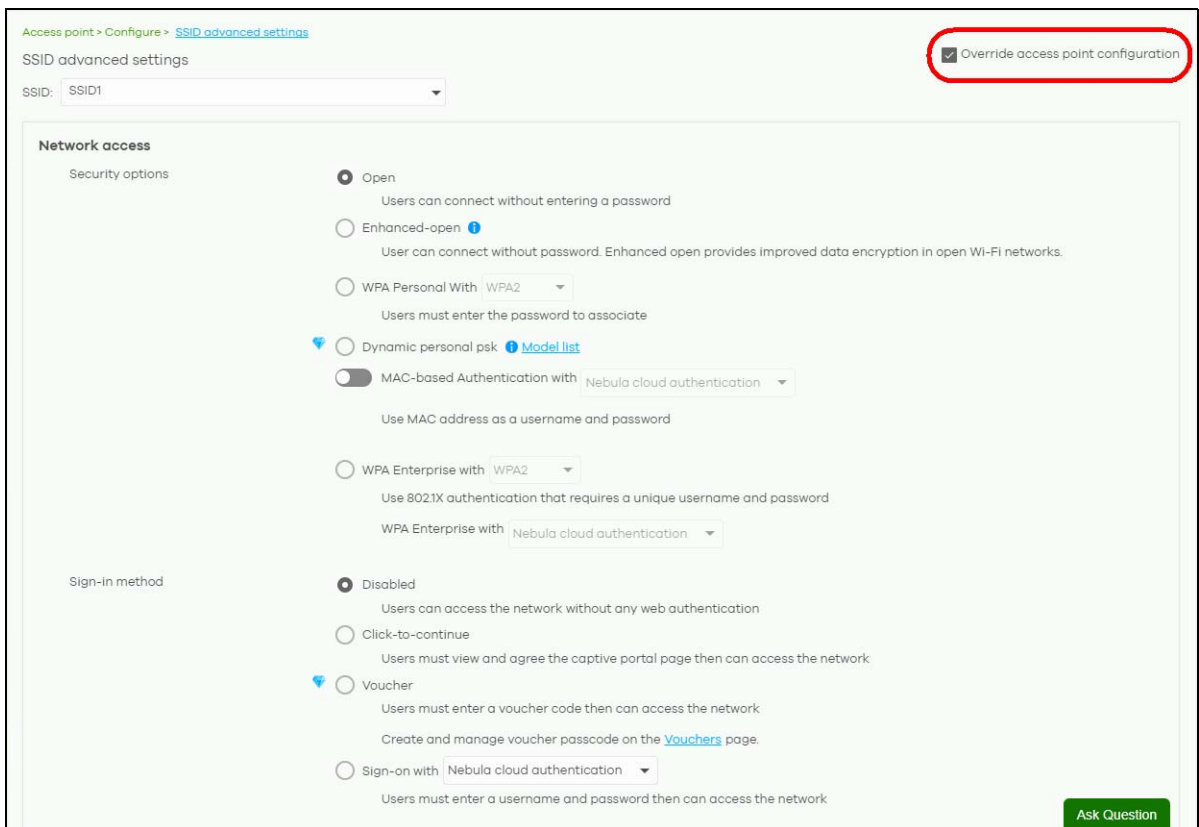
- 5 If you decide to go back to the original template settings, clear the **Override site-wide configuration** box on any page under **Site-wide > Configuration**. The following screen appears. Click **Confirm** to continue.



Overwrite the Access Point / Switch Setting

- 1 Go to any page under **Access point / Switch > Configure** and then select the **Override access point configuration** box. Every **Configuration** page of a bound site contains an **Override site-wide configuration** box.

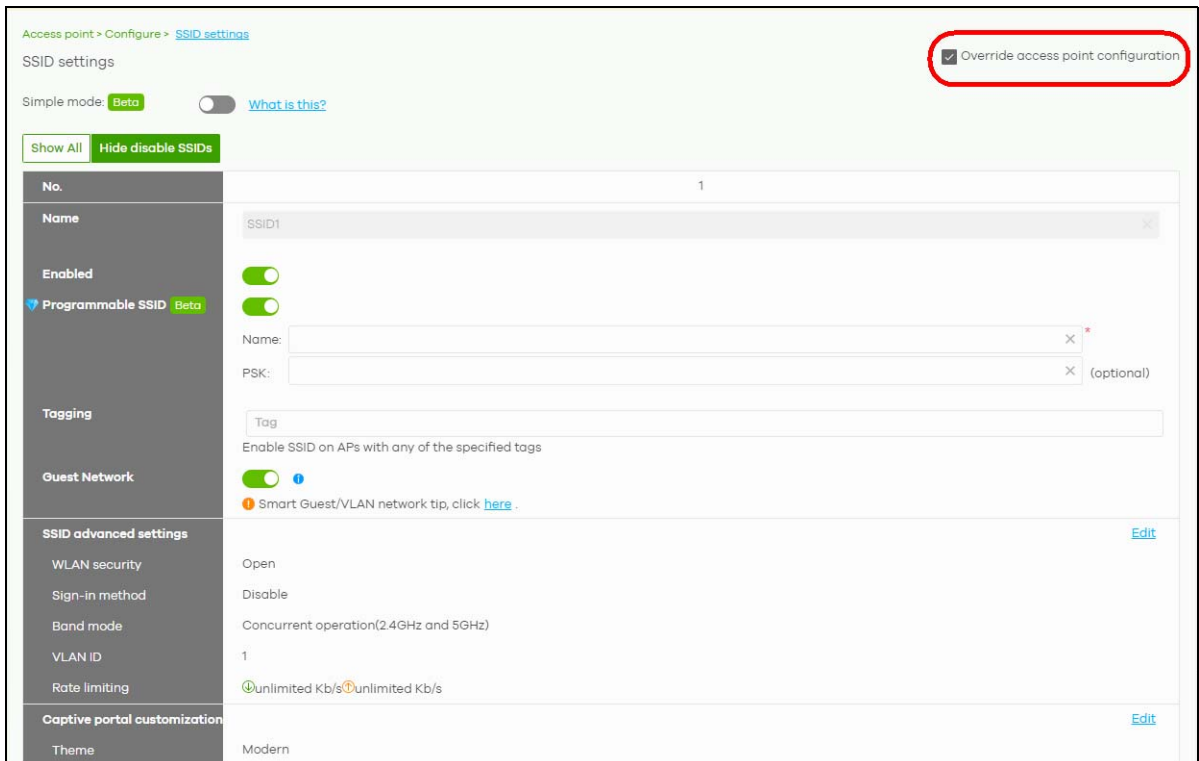
Note: If the local override configuration is enabled on one page, all configuration pages of the Nebula Devices in the selected site will be enabled.



- 2 This allows a specific type of Nebula Device setting override. The following screen appears. Click **Confirm** to continue.



- 3 In **Access point > Configure > SSID settings**, edit your SSIDs, authentication or captive portal settings on the following page. Click **Save** to save the changes.



In the **Switch > Configuration > Switch settings** screen, edit **VLAN configuration**, **STP configuration**, **Quality of service**, or **Port mirroring** settings on the following page. Click **Save** to save the changes.

This site is bound to template: [Site Template1](#)

Switch > Configure > [Switch settings](#)

Switch settings Override switch configuration

VLAN configuration

Management VLAN:

STP configuration

Rapid spanning tree protocol (RSTP):

STP bridge priority: [?](#)

Switches	Bridge priority
Default	32768

[+ Set the bridge priority for another switch](#)

Quality of service

Quality of service: [+ Add](#)

[What is this?](#)

Port mirroring

Port mirroring: [+ Add](#)

- To go back to the original template settings, clear the **Override switch configuration** box on any page under **Access point / Switch > Configuration**. The following screen appears. Click **Confirm** to continue.

Revert override

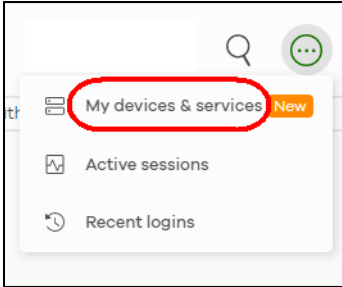
Configuration in this page will follow template Site Template1.
Please click confirm to continue...

3.11 Activate an MSP License

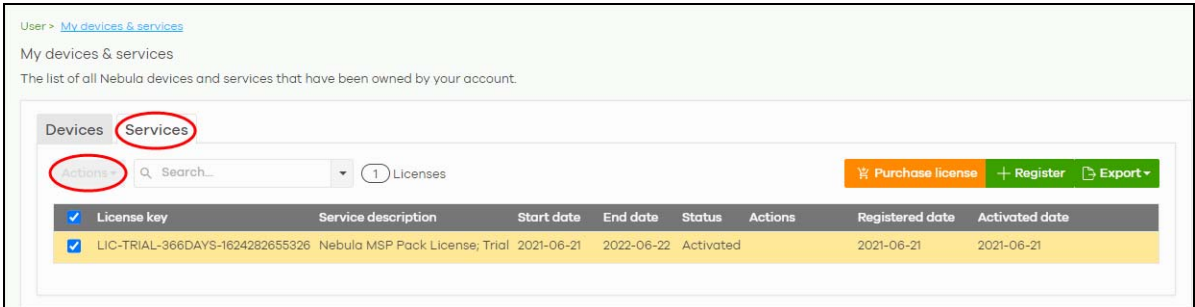
You must have an NCC account and an MSP license pack to activate an MSP license.

To activate an MSP pack, do the following:

- Click the More icon (upper right) and select **My devices & services**.



- 2 Select the **Services** tab.



- 3 Select the MSP Pack license, click **Actions**, and select **Activate license**. The MSP menu can now unlock the MSP branding, Admins & teams, Cross-org synchronization, and MSP alerts features (see [Chapter 4 on page 113](#) for details on the MSP menus).

3.12 Configure CNP/CNP Plus Security Services

Different features are enabled depending on the type of trial license you purchased.

If you activate the CNP trial license, only the IP reputation filter is enabled. If you activate the CNP Plus trial license, IP reputation filter and application visibility & optimization are enabled.

IP Reputation Filter

An IP address with a bad reputation is an IP address associated with suspicious activities, such as spam, virus, and phishing. These are stored in a database. IP reputation checks the reputation of an IPv4 (only) IP address from the database. When there are packets coming from an IPv4 address with bad reputation, you can set the Nebula Device to respond by blocking these packets. You can change the response action set in NCC. You can also configure an exempt list to allow packets from specific IP addresses regardless of their content rating.

Both the CNP/CNP Plus licenses enable the IP reputation filter feature. To configure IP reputation filter, do the following:

- 1 Go to **Access point > Configure > Security service**.
- 2 Refer to [Section 12.3.7 on page 497](#) for details on how to configure the **IP Reputation Filter** fields.

3 Then click **Save**.

Go to **Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard: Hit for AP Network IP Reputation Filter** to view the following:

- total number of times packets coming from an IPv4 address with a bad reputation occur, and
- the number of times connection attempts to an IPv4 address with a bad reputation occur.



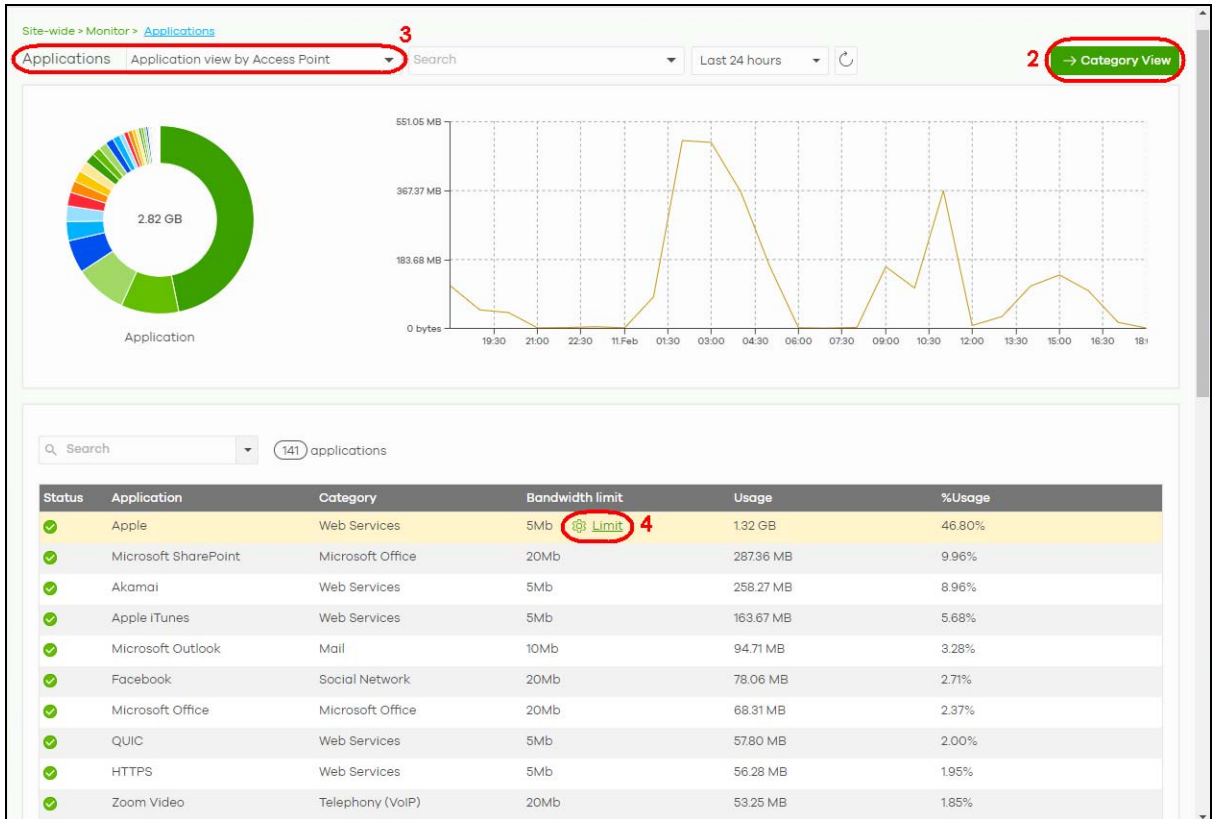
Application Visibility & Optimization

Application visibility provides a way for a Nebula-managed Access Point to manage applications in WiFi network. It can detect the type of applications used by WiFi clients and how much bandwidth they use.

Application optimization is a way to limit the bandwidth usage of applications in the WiFi network. For example, applications that need real time traffic such as video streaming may use more resources. Use application optimization to limit the bandwidth used to stream video to prevent it from slowing down your WiFi network. Application optimization limits the applications bandwidth usage by their categories. You can manage and view the applications and their categories in **Site-wide > Monitor > Applications > Application View by Access Point**.

You need to purchase the CNP Plus license to enable application visibility & optimization. To configure application visibility & optimization, do the following:

- 1 Go to **Site-wide > Monitor > Applications**.
- 2 Make sure you are in **Application View** (--> **Category View** is displayed)
- 3 Select **Application view by Access Point** in the **Applications** field.
- 4 Hover the mouse pointer anywhere on an application row. Click the **Limit** icon to set its **Bandwidth limit**.



- 5 Use the slider or enter the **Traffic** allowed in **Mb/s (1 – 30 or Unlimited)**.

Web Services [X]

Traffic

1M 15M Unlimited

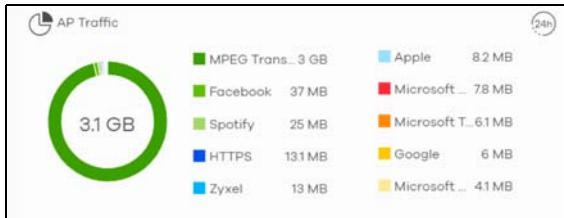
Bandwidth limit applies on application category.
The setting helps on smooth wireless experience by limiting the applications consuming large amounts of network bandwidth.

(Per client device traffic rate)

Cancel **Save**

- 6 Then click **Save**.

To monitor the application bandwidth usage, go to **Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard: AP Traffic** to view the top ten applications that use the most bandwidth in the site.



3.13 Delete an Organization

Only the Organization owner can delete an Organization. An Organization can be deleted only when it has no site(s), administrator(s), user(s), license(s), or Nebula Device(s) in the Organization.

To delete an Organization from the NCC, do the following:

Remove All Nebula Devices

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Devices** tab (1).
- 2 Click the check box (2) to select all Nebula Devices.
- 3 Click the **Actions** button (3).

Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory

License & inventory

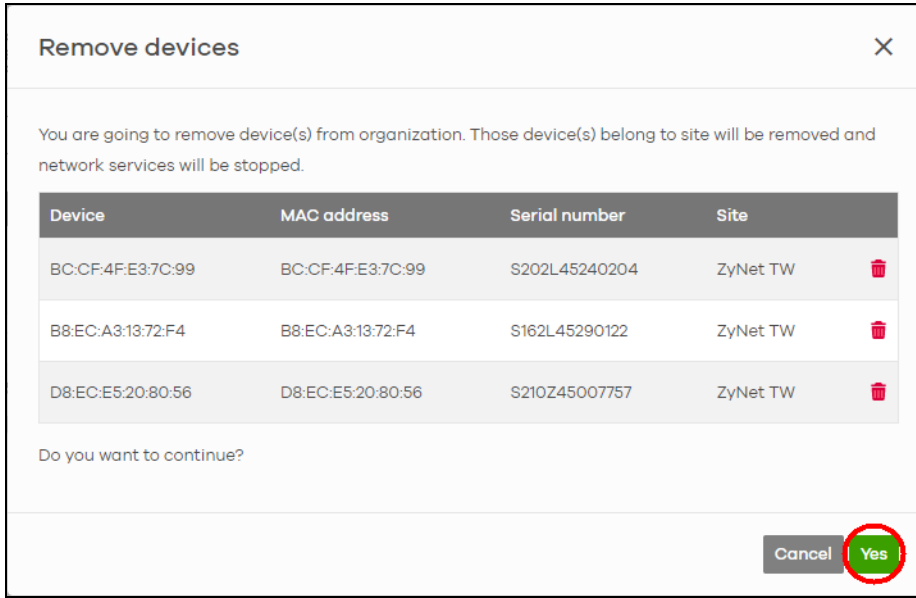
Overview **Devices 1** Licenses Change log

1 Access Point 0 Switch 1 Security Appliance 1 Mobile Router

3 Actions In use Unused Both Search... 3 selected in 3 devices + Add Export

Device	Device type	Site	Model	Serial number	MAC address	Device tag	Claim date	Unused / In use	Country	License expiration
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 99:CF:4FE3:7C:99	Access Point	ZyNet TW	NWA110AX	S202L	99:CF:4FE3:7C:99		2021-10-05	In use		2025-08-17 2022-02-10
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> F4:EC:A3:13:72:F4	Firewall	ZyNet TW	USG FLEX 500	S162L	F4:EC:A3:13:72:F4		2021-10-01	In use		2023-11-14
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 56:EC:E5:20:80:56	Mobile Router	ZyNet TW	NR7101	S210Z	56:EC:E5:20:80:56		2022-01-10	In use		2023-01-11

- 4 Click **Remove from organization**.
- 5 Click the **Yes** button to confirm, or click the delete icon to remove each devices individually.

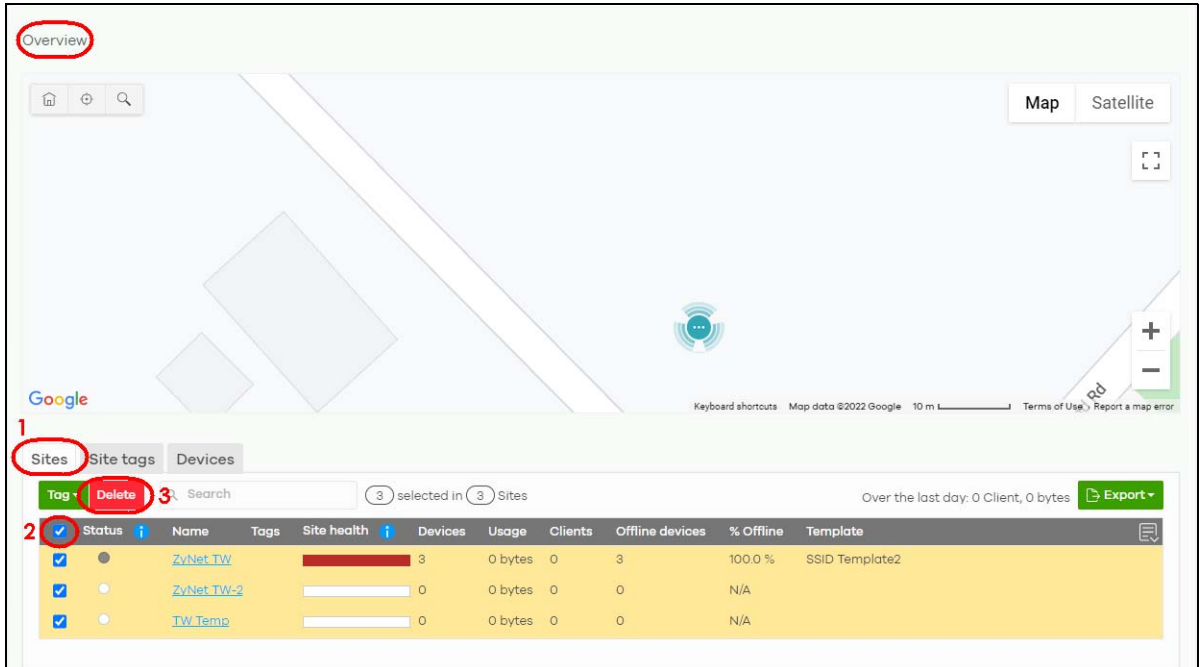


Transfer All Licenses

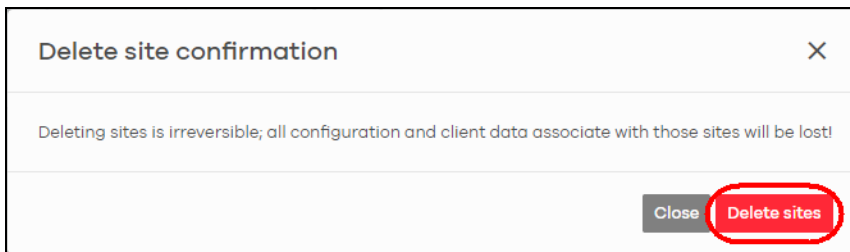
See [Section 3.7 on page 59](#) in this chapter for information on how to transfer licenses assigned to an organization and Nebula Device to another Nebula Device in a different organization.

Delete All Sites

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview > Sites** tab (1).
- 2 Click the check box (2) to select all sites.
- 3 Click the **Delete** button (3) to remove all sites.

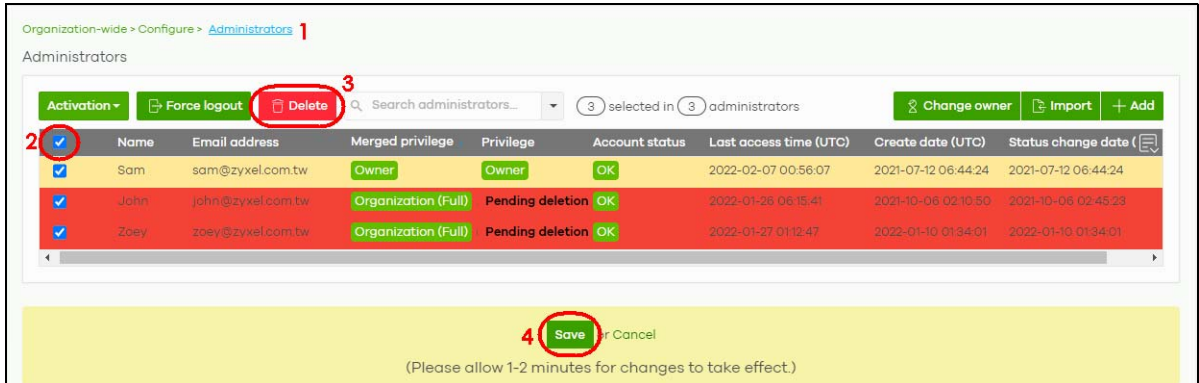


- 4 Click the **Delete sites** button to confirm.



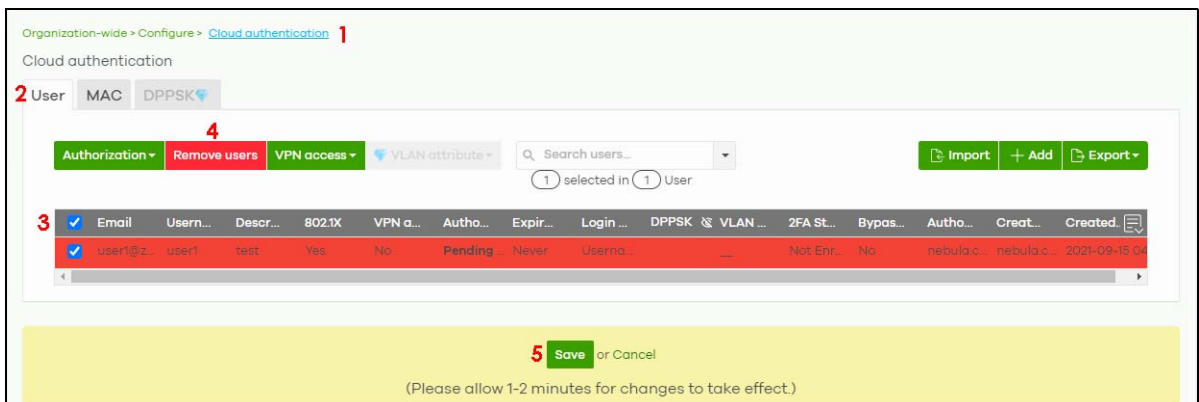
Delete All Administrators

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators** (1).
- 2 Click the check box to select all administrators (2).
- 3 Click the **Delete** button (3).
- 4 Click the **Save** button (4) to confirm.



Remove All Users

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication** (1).
- 2 Select the **User** tab (2).
- 3 Click the check box to select all users (3).
- 4 Click the **Remove users** button (4).
- 5 Click the **Save** button (5) to confirm.



Delete the Organization

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Settings** (1).
- 2 Enter the **Name** of the organization you wish to remove (2).
- 3 Click the **Delete organization** button (3).

Organization-wide > Configure > Settings **1**

Settings

Organization information

Name: **2**

Country:

Security

Idle Timeout 0 minutes of inactivity will logout users.

Login IP ranges Only allow access to this organization from IP addresses in the specified ranges.
This computer is using IP address : 61.222.86.26

Import certificate Use my certificate

Delete this organization

You can delete this organization only if it has no sites, administrators, users, licenses, or devices registered in this inventory.
Please check your setting as below: [sites](#) , [administrators](#) , [users](#) , [licenses/devices](#) of devices.

Delete organization **3**

- 4 Click the **OK** button to confirm.

WARNING

WARNING!
Deleting an organization cannot be reversed! Are you sure you want to delete this organization?

3.14 Manage IPTV

This section shows you how to configure IPTV settings and view IPTV reports:

- [Set up the VLAN for IPTV](#)
- [Define the Role of a Switch](#)
- [Configure the Channel Profile and Naming](#)

3.14.1 Set up the VLAN for IPTV

- 1 Go to the **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** screen. Click **IGMP snooping** to enable IGMP snooping on all Switches in the site. Under **IGMP-snooping VLAN**, select **Auto-detect** to automatically detect which VLANs are used for IPTV. Otherwise, manually enter the VLAN IDs (1 – 4094, up to 16 VLANs, separated by commas, no spaces) in the **User Assign VLANs** field. Click **Save** when you are finished.

Switch > Configure > [Advanced IGMP](#)

Advanced IGMP Override switch configuration

IGMP snooping

IGMP-snooping VLAN [Model list](#)

Auto-detect

User Assign VLANs.

Unknown multicast drop [Model list](#)

Drop on VLAN

IGMP filtering profiles 0 IGMP filtering profiles

IPTV topology setup

[IGMP snooping](#) [Role](#) [Port settings](#) [IGMP topology tips](#)

or

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

- 2 If you have not defined the IP address of the Switch, go to the **Switch > Configure > IP & Routing** screen and click **+Add** under **IP interface**. The following screen appear. Enter the **Interface IP**, **Subnet mask** and ID number of the **VLAN** used for IPTV. Click **Create** to save the setting.

Interface editor [X]

Switch: [Switch ID]

i This switch only supports interfaces for management and monitor purpose. No routing capability on this switch.

Name: Interface VLAN 2 [X]

Interface IP: [] *

Subnet mask: [] *

VLAN: 2

[Close] [Create]

3.14.2 Define the Role of a Switch

- 1 Go to the **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** screen. Under **IPTV topology setup**, select a Switch you want to configure and select a **Role** to define the role of your Switch from the drop-down list box.

Note: Click the **IGMP topology tips** link to view information about Switch roles. If the role of the Switch is not defined accordingly, the IPTV performance will be greatly affected.

IPTV topology setup

IGMP snooping [v] Role [v] Port settings [v] [IGMP topology tips](#)

Switch name	IGMP snooping	Role	Port settings
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-Select role- Querier Aggregator Access	Advanced setup

[Save] or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

- 2 After you define the role of the Switch, click **Advanced setup** and the following screen appears. The **Leave mode** will show the default setting based on the role you select. But you can still go back to the **Advanced IGMP** screen to configure the **Role** and **Leave mode**. Under **Maximum group**, you can select **Enable** and enter the maximum number of channels allowed at a time. Otherwise, select **Disable**. Click **Save** to save the changes.

Note: You can click **Reset** to reset the port settings to default.

Port settings

Switch name: [Switch Name]

Role: Querier

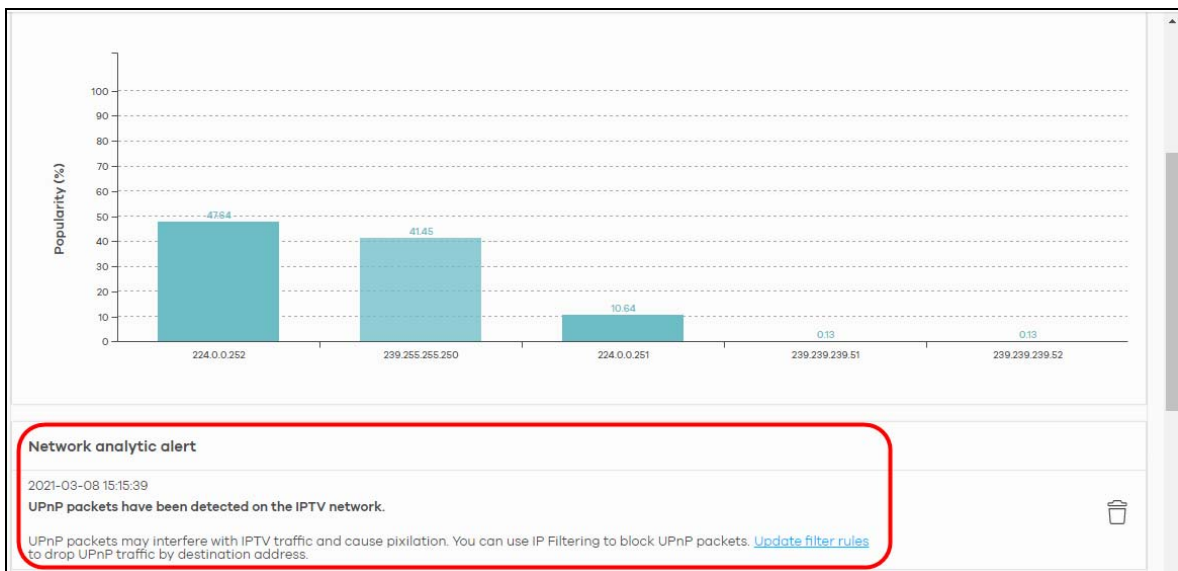
Leave mode: Normal leave (20000)

Maximum group: Enable

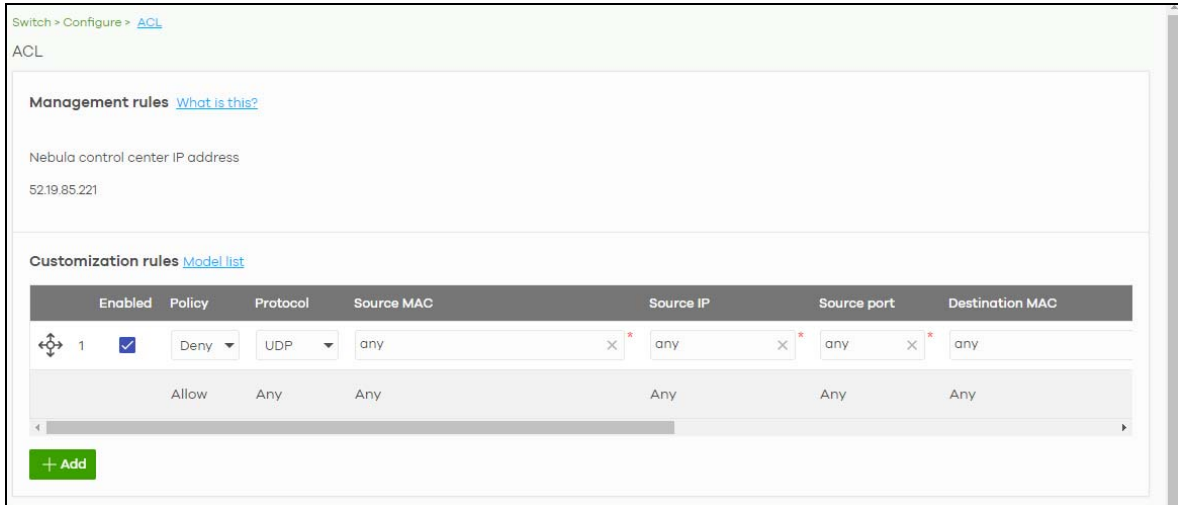
IGMP filtering profile: No select

Buttons: Reset, Close, Save

- 3 If a reminder of **Network analytic alert** appears on the **Switch > Monitor > IPTV report** page, click the **Update filter rules** link below to use the default ACL rules to block UPnP packets. In the example screen below, a **Network analytic alert** indicates that your IPTV traffic flow is affected by unneeded UPnP packets. Click the **Update filter rules** link to define IP filtering rules in the **Switch > Configure > ACL** screen to block these packets.



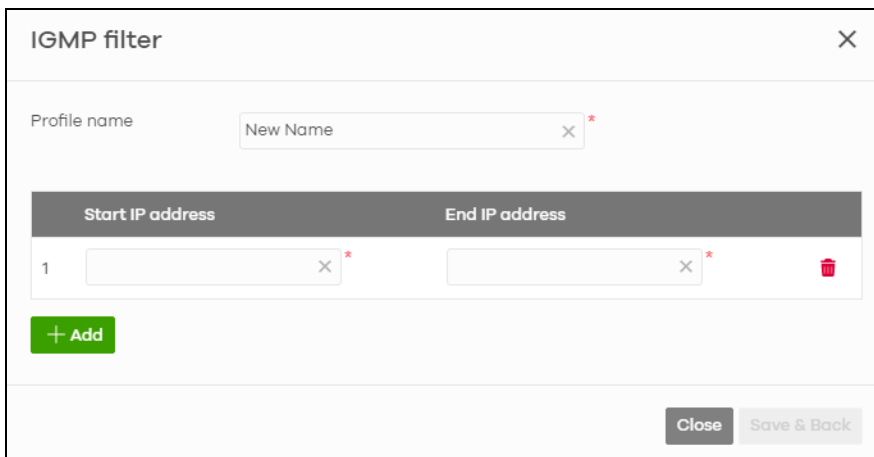
- 4 The **Update filter rules** link will lead you to the following screen. Click **Save** to save the default setting to block UPnP packets.



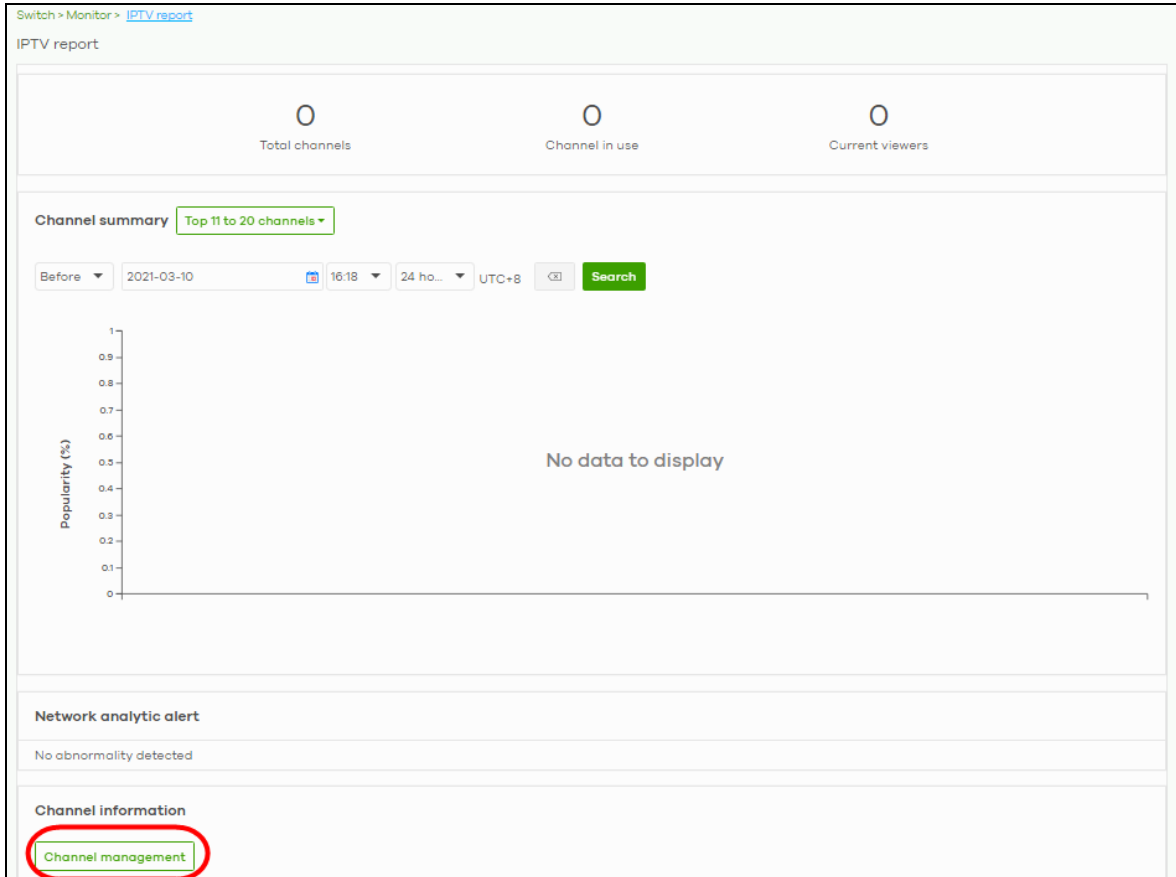
3.14.3 Configure the Channel Profile and Naming

A channel profile is the IP address range allowed to receive IPTV channels. An IPTV channel is used to send video traffic to the IP addresses in the channel profile.

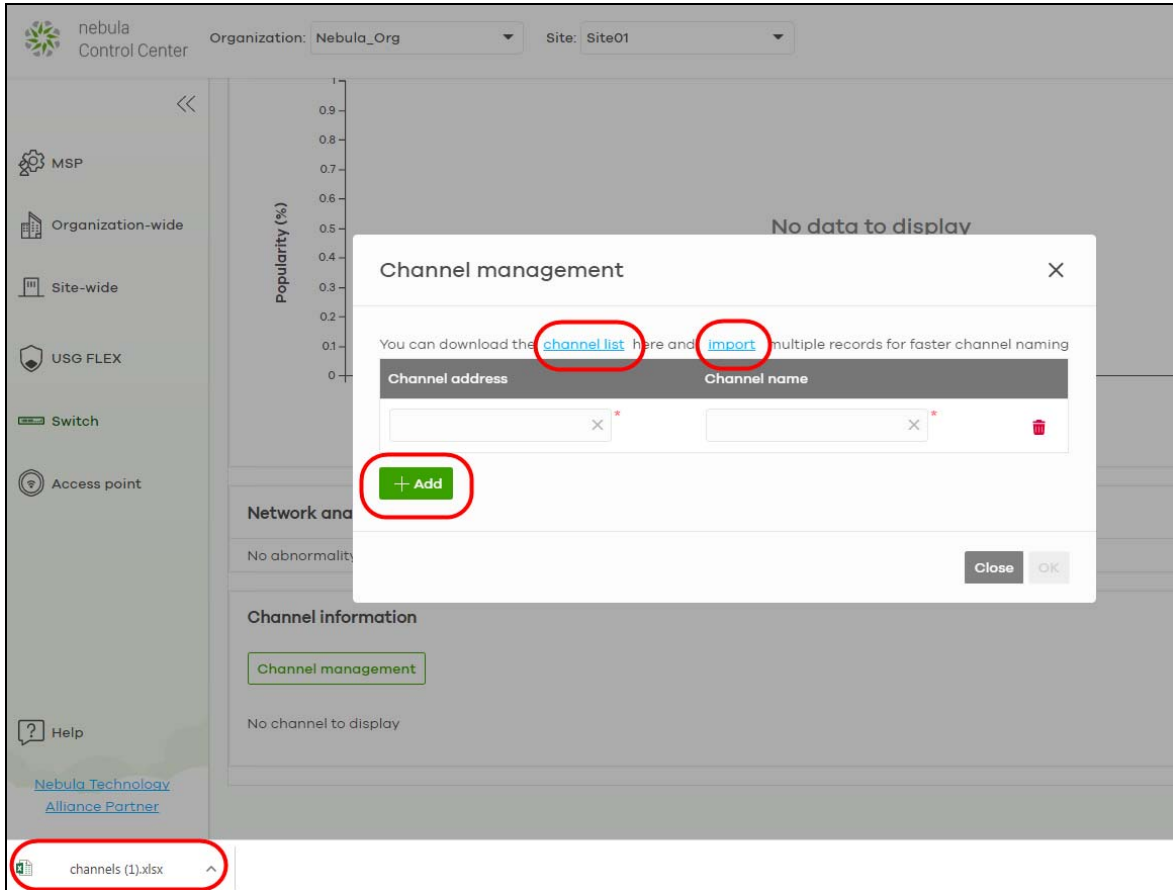
- 1 To set up a range of available IPTV channels, go to the **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** screen. Under **IGMP filtering profiles**, click **+Add** and the following screen appear. Enter a **Profile name** and enter the **Start IP address** and **End IP address**. Click **Save & Back** to save the changes.



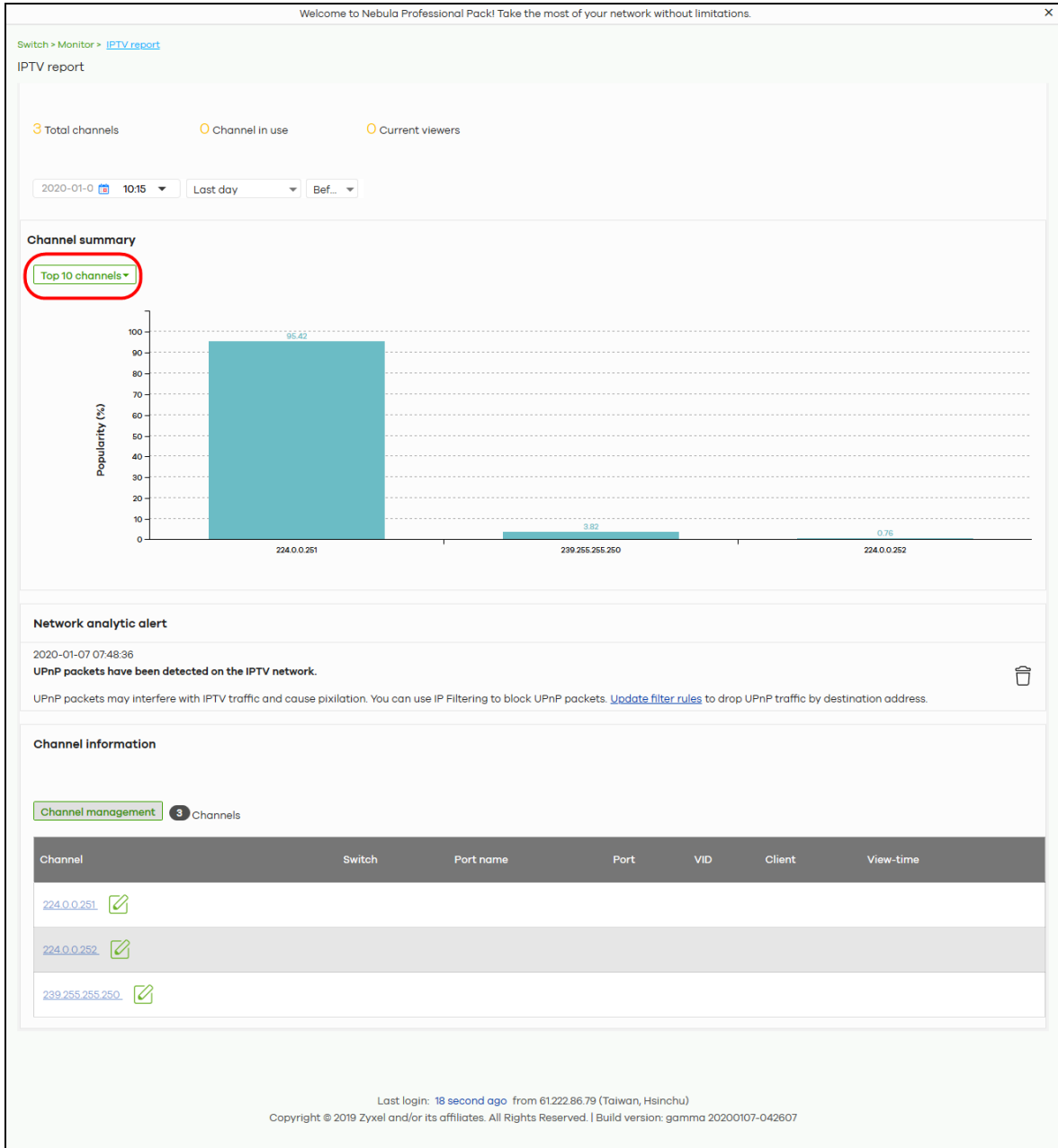
- 2 To edit the naming of the IPTV channels, go to the **Switch > Monitor > IPTV report** screen and click **Channel management** under **Channel information**.



- 3 You can choose to either import an updated channel list (channels.xlsx), or enter/edit each **Channel address** and **Channel name** individually.
- Under **Channel management**, click **channel list** to download a blank Excel file template, edit accordingly and save it, and then click **import** to import the complete channel list to NCC. Or,
 - Click **+Add** to add and then add/edit a **Channel address** and **Channel name** at a time.



- 4 To view the summary of the IPTV report, go to the **Switch > Monitor > IPTV report** screen. Click **Channel summary** to see the top or bottom viewed channels within the specified time period you choose.

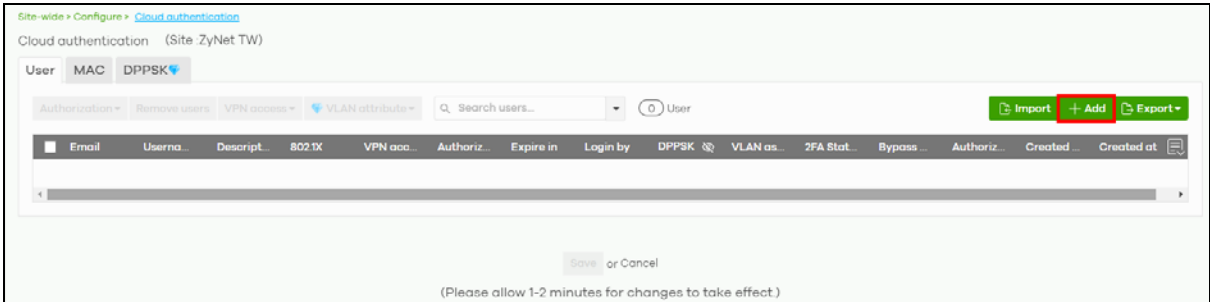


3.15 Setup Remote Access VPN

To setup a remote access VPN client on the NCC, do the following:

Create a VPN User

- 1 Go to the **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication** screen. Click **+Add** to create a user.



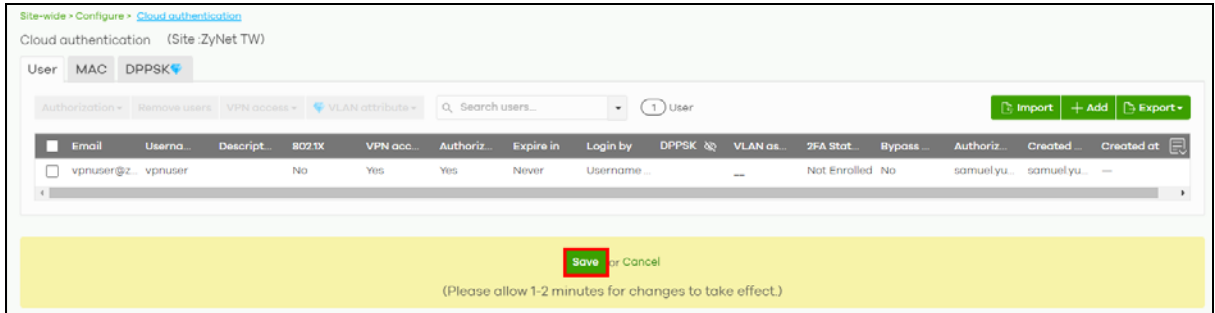
- 2 Enter an **Email**, **Username**, generate or enter a **Password** (4 – 31 characters, including 0–9 a–z A–Z `~!@#\$\$%&*(_+={}|[]:;"/.<> ?). Click to **Allow to use Remote VPN access**. Click **Does not expire** to set no time limit. Select **Username or Email** in **Login by**. Click to select **Email account information to user**. Then click **Create user**.

The 'Create user' dialog box contains the following fields and options:

- Account type: USER
- Email: vpnuser@zyxel.com
- Username: vpnuser
- Description: (empty)
- Password: 1zwKo0bM (with a 'Generate' button)
- DPPSK: (empty) (with a 'Generate' button)
- 802.1X: Allow to use WPA-Enterprise to access network
- VPN Access: Allow to use Remote VPN access
- Authorized: Yes
- Expires: Does not expire; Expires in: (empty) minutes
- Login by: Username or Email
- VLAN assignment: Beta (empty)
- Two-Factor Auth: Bypass two-factor authentication.
- Email to user: Email account information to user.

Buttons at the bottom: Close, Print, and 'Create user' (highlighted in red).

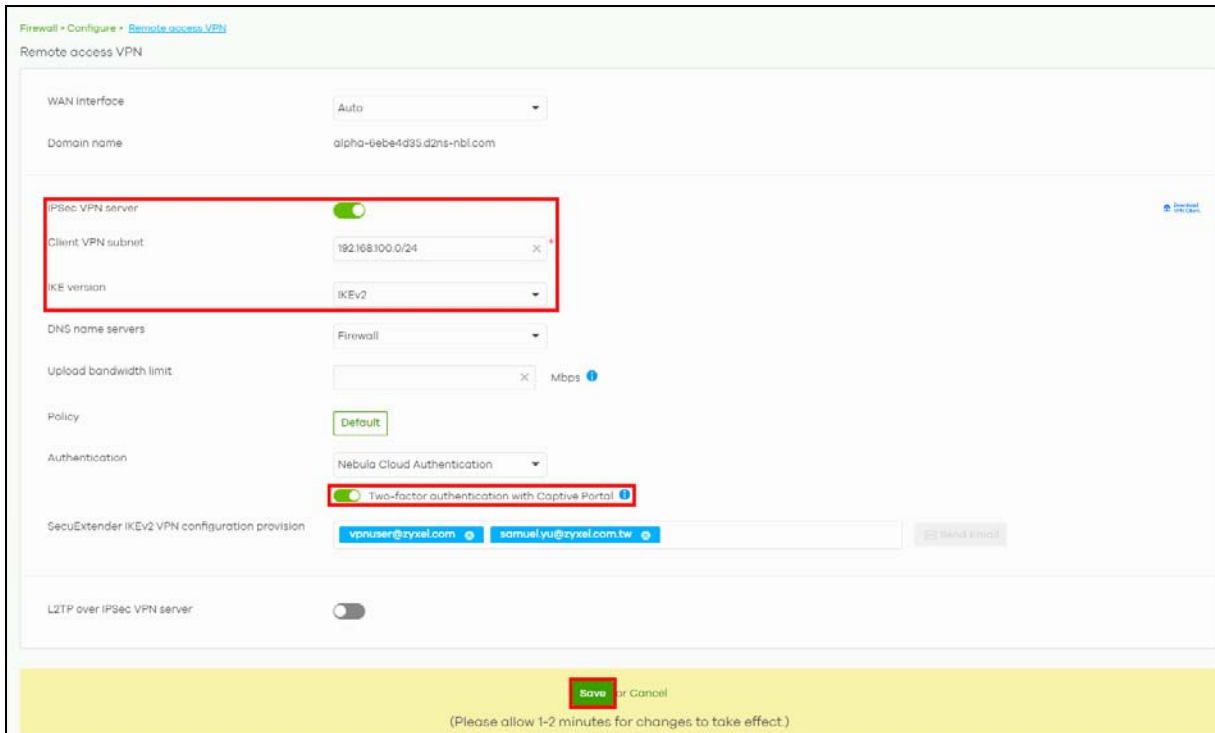
- 3 Click **Save**.



Enable the Remote Access VPN Rule for IPsec VPN Client

- 1 Go to the **Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN** screen. Click **IPsec VPN server** to enable VPN. Enter the IP address range in **Client VPN subnet**. Select **IKEv2** in **IKE version**.

Click **Two-factor authentication with Captive Portal** to enable 2FA. The VPN client will be asked to provide a Google authenticator passcode. Then click **Save**.



- 2 Click **Send Email** to give your VPN client the configuration instructions through email.

Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN

Remote access VPN

WAN interface: Auto

Domain name: alpha-6e6e4d35d2ns-nbl.com

IPsec VPN server:

Client VPN subnet: 192.168.100.0/24

IKE version: IKEv2

DNS name servers: Firewall

Upload bandwidth limit: [] Mbps

Policy: Default

Authentication: Nebula Cloud Authentication

Two-factor authentication with Captive Portal:

SecuExtender IKEv2 VPN configuration provision: vpnuser@zyxel.com samuel.yu@zyxel.com.tw **Send Email**

L2TP over IPsec VPN server:

Save or Cancel

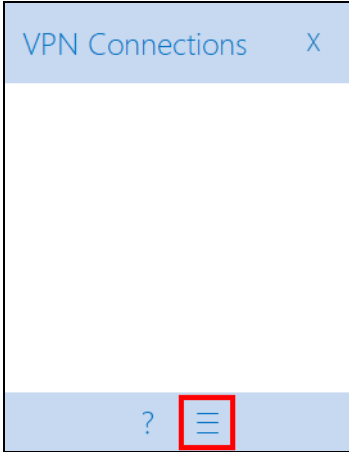
(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

VPN Setup by the User

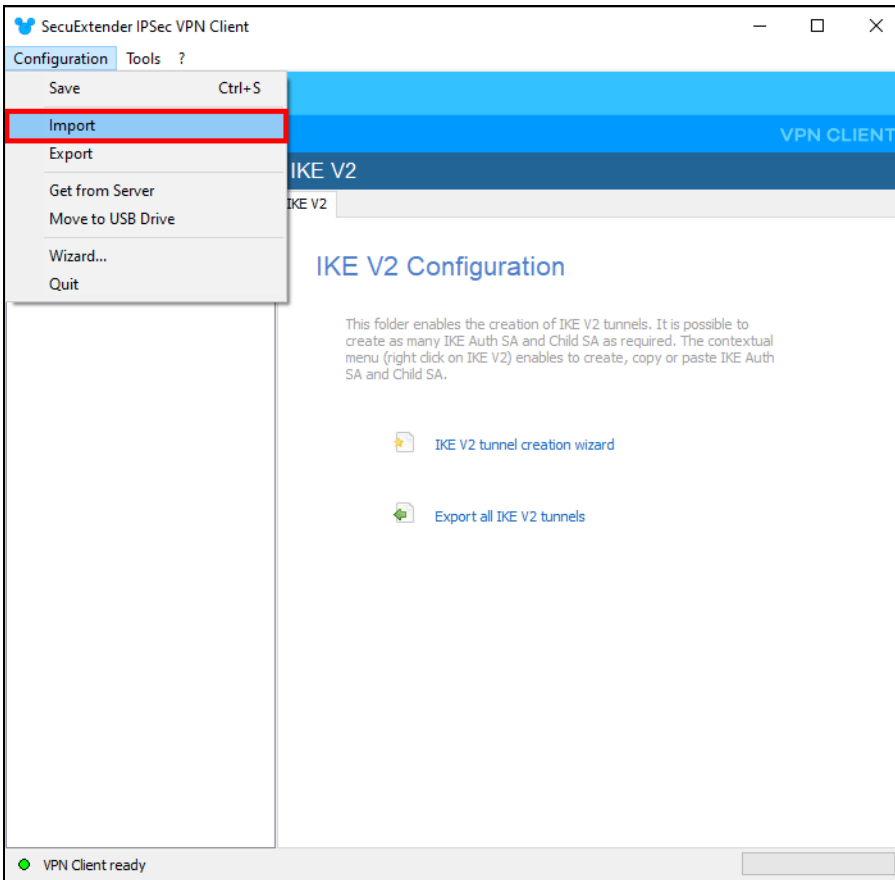
- The VPN user should receive the following emails:
 - Nebula Cloud Account Information** email with the following login information: **Email**, **Username**, **Password**, and **Expired time** (validity = **NEVER**).
 - Configuration for SecuExtender IPsec VPN Client** email with attached VPN configuration file (.tgb).
- Click the link in the **Configuration for SecuExtender IPsec VPN Client** email for instructions on activating the SecuExtender license key. The **How to activate SecuExtender license key after your online purchase** webpage appears.
 - Click **Download**.
 - Select the SecuExtender app based on your computer's operating system to install it.
 - Follow the online prompts to activate the SecuExtender license.

Import VPN Configuration File

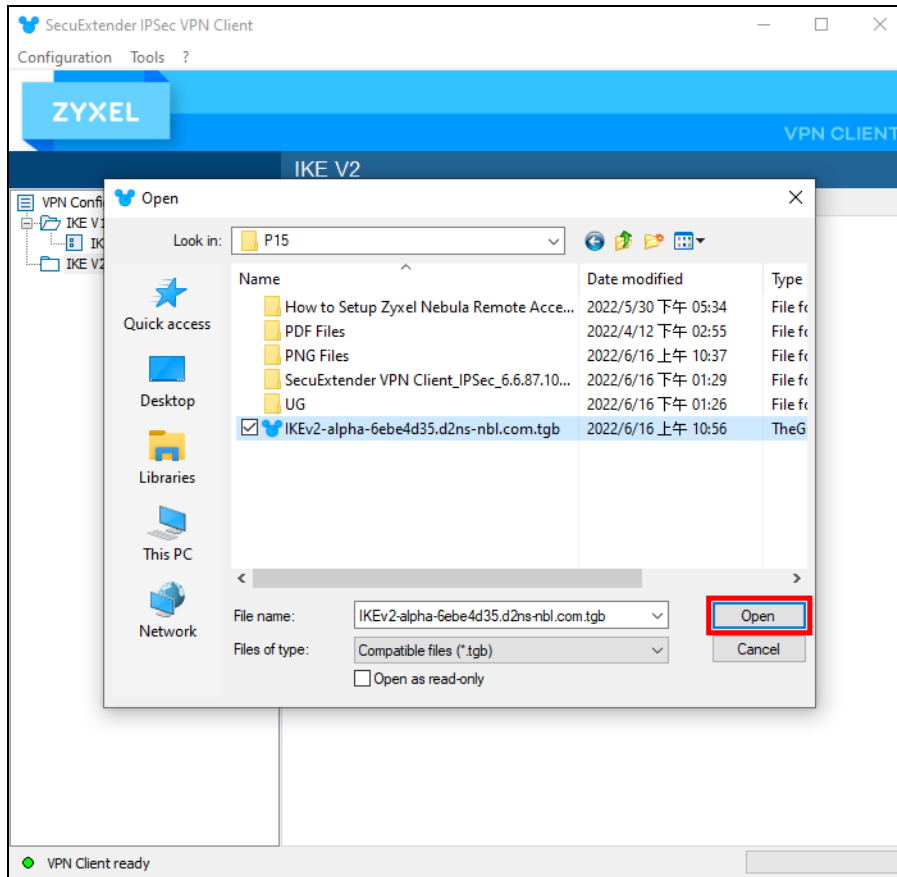
- Save the attached VPN configuration file (.tgb) from the **Configuration for SecuExtender IPsec VPN Client** email on the VPN user's computer.
- On your computer, open SecuExtender. Click the menu icon.



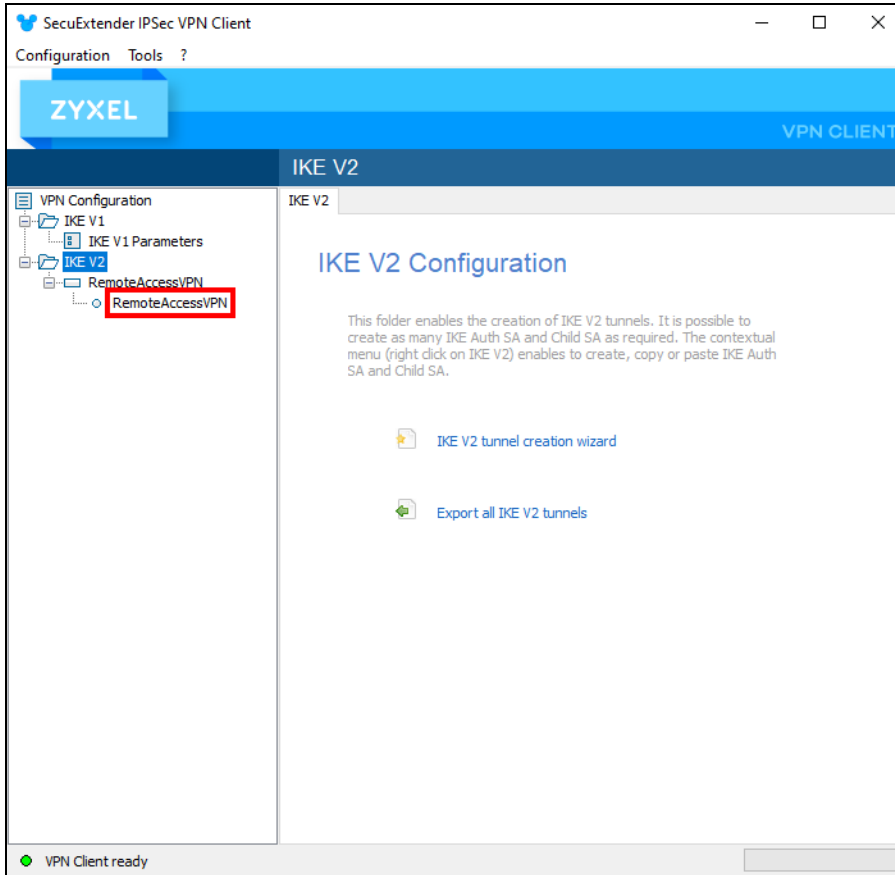
3 Click **Configuration > Import**.



4 Locate and click **Open** to import the VPN configuration file.

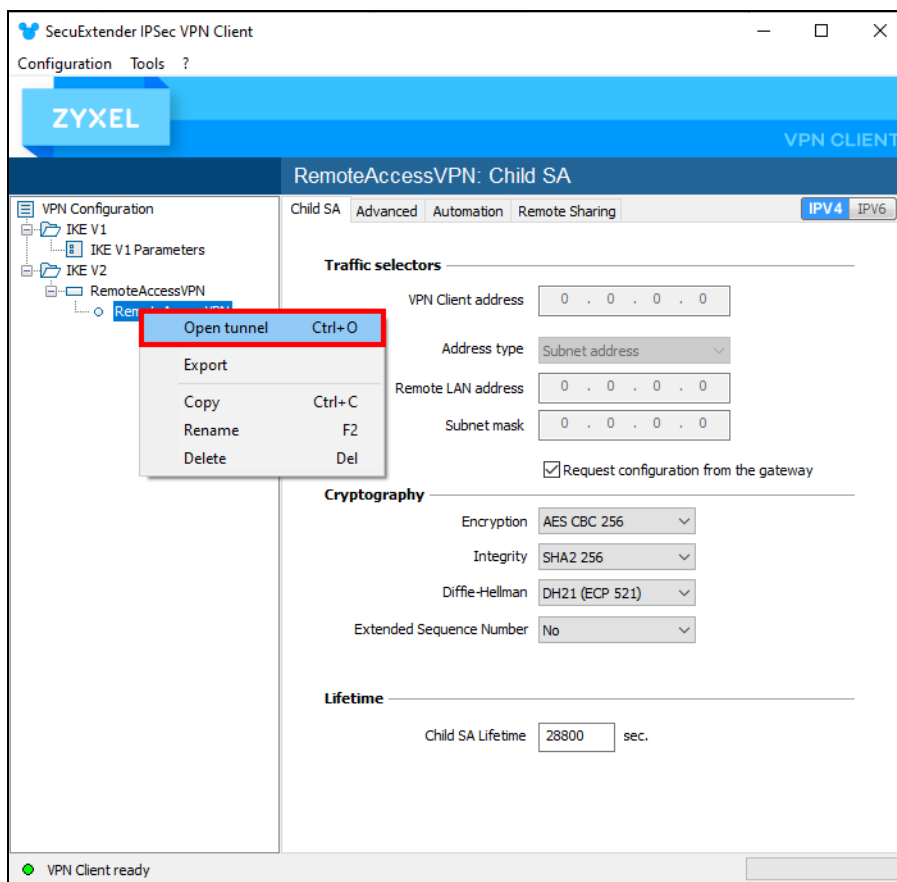


- 5 Click RemoteAccessVPN in VPN Configuration > IKE V2 > RemoteAccessVPN.

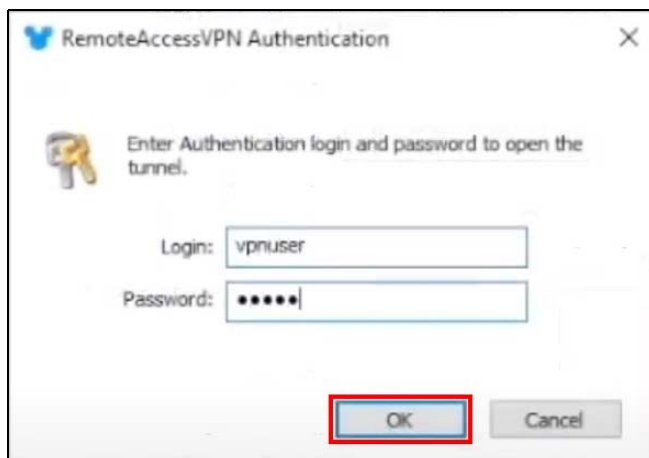


Open the VPN Tunnel

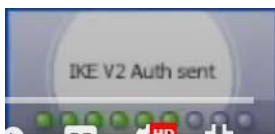
- 1 Right-click **RemoteAccessVPN** in **VPN Configuration > IKE V2 > RemoteAccessVPN** and click **Open tunnel**.



- 2 On the next screen, enter the **Login: Username** and **Password** from the **Nebula Cloud Account Information** email. Then click **OK**.



IKEV2 Auth sent will appear on the lower right of the screen.

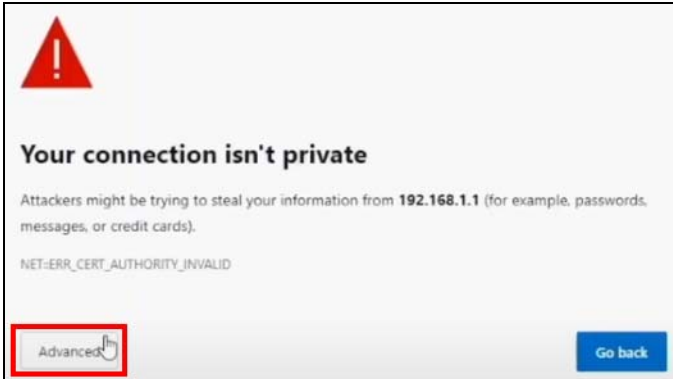


Wait until **Tunnel opened** appears on the lower right of the screen.

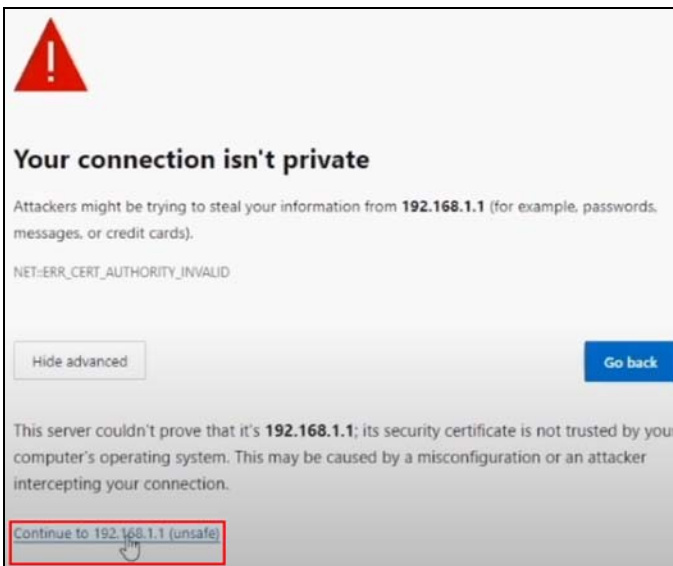


An IP address will now appear in **VPN Client address** to replace the previous **0.0.0.0**. The button lights green in front of **RemoteAccessVPN** in **VPN Configuration > IKE V2 > RemoteAccessVPN**.

- 3 When **Your connection isn't private** appears on the web browser, click **Advanced** to continue.

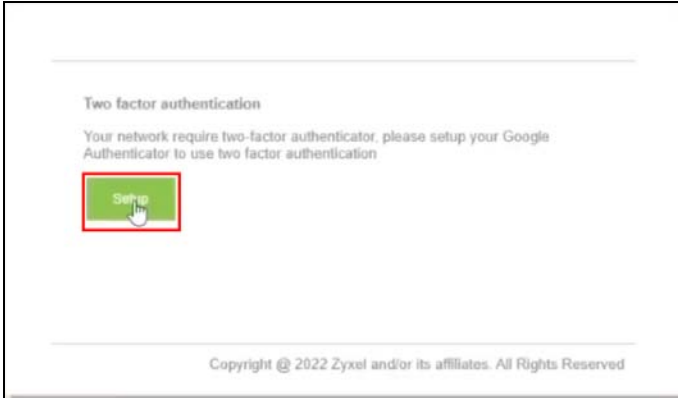


- 4 Click the **Continue to xxx.xxx.x.x (unsafe)** link on the bottom of the screen.

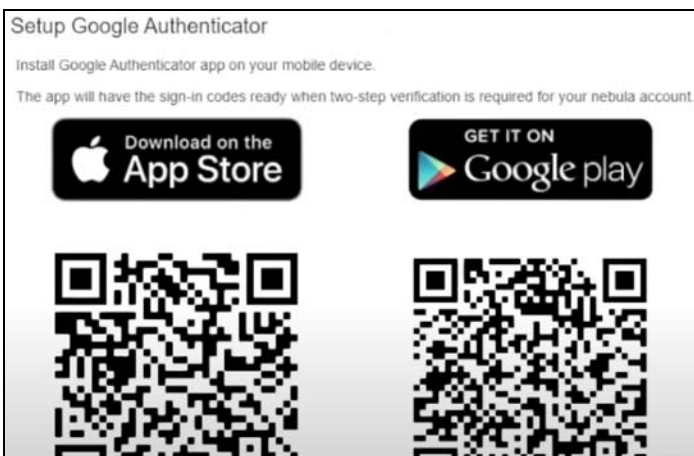


Set Up Two Factor Authentication to Bind the User Account

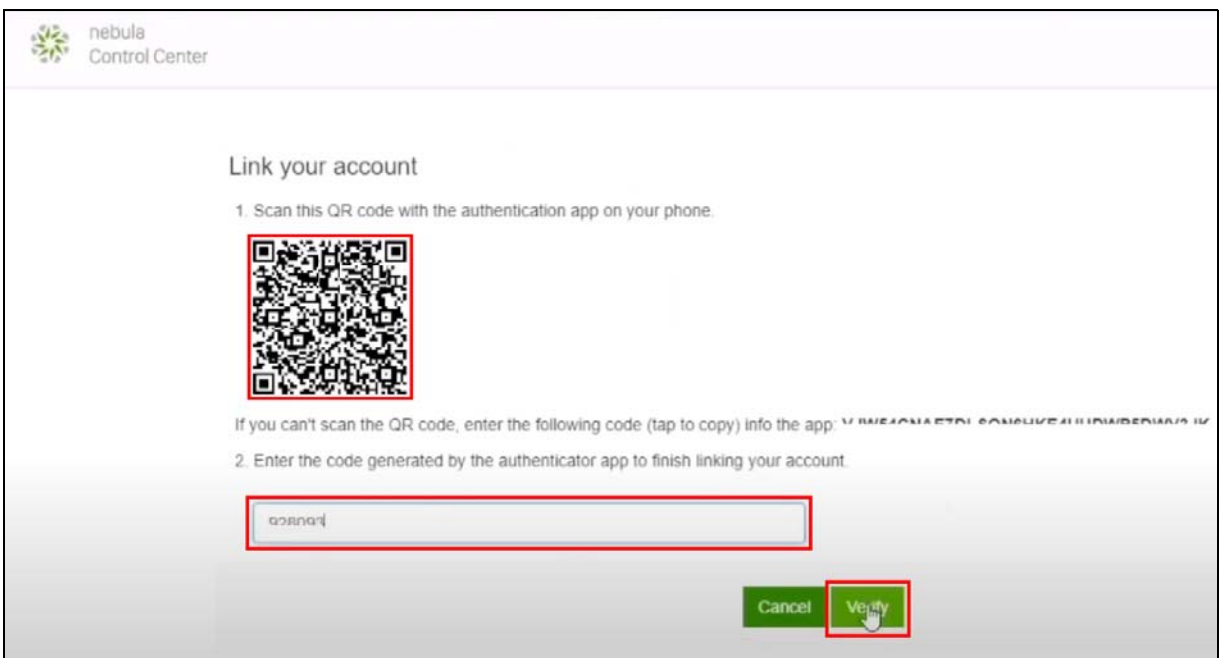
- 1 On the **Two factor authentication** screen, click **Setup**.



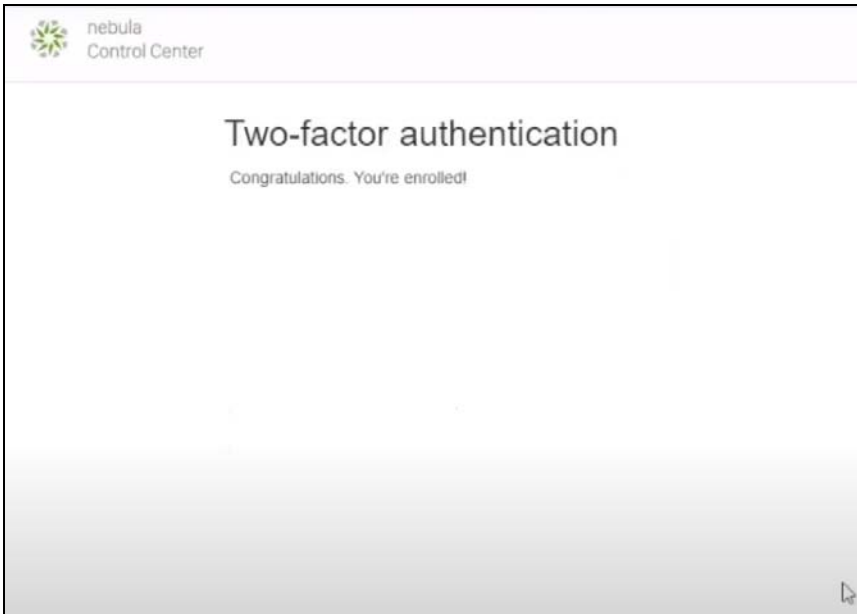
The prompt to download and install the **Google Authenticator** app on the mobile device appears.



- 2 Install the **Google Authenticator** app. Then click **Next**.

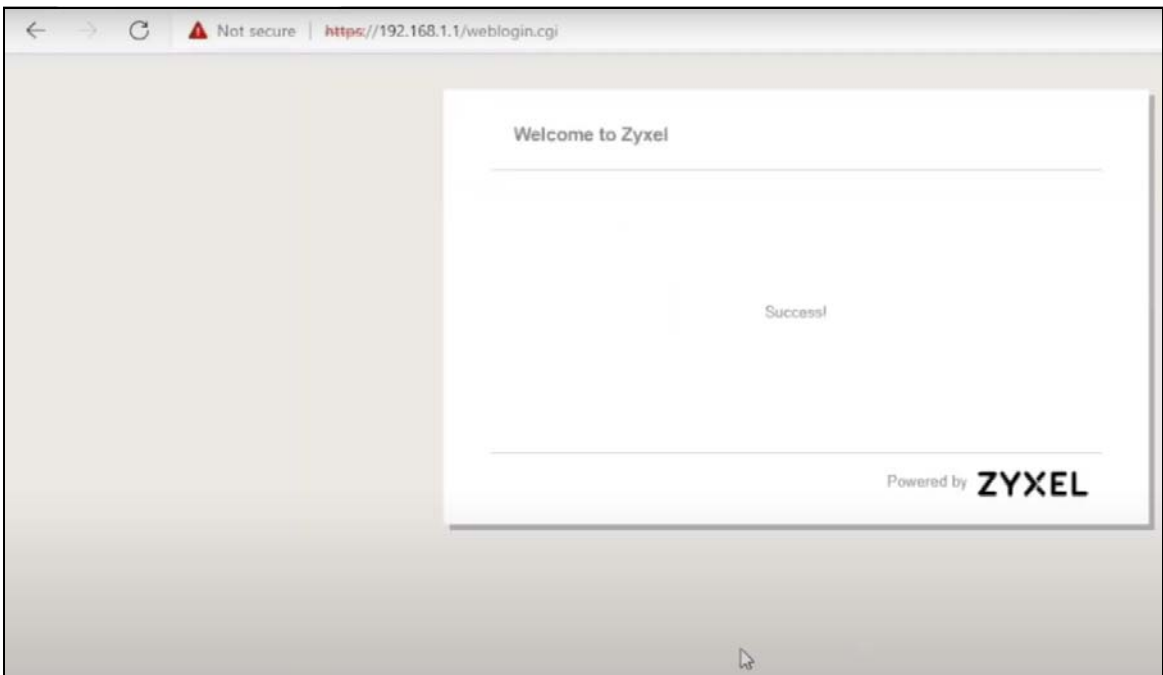


Use the **Google Authenticator** app to scan the QR code. The QR code contains the user account information created in step 2 of [Create a VPN User](#). Enter the code. Then click **Verify**. The following screen appears in the NCC portal when the connection is successful.



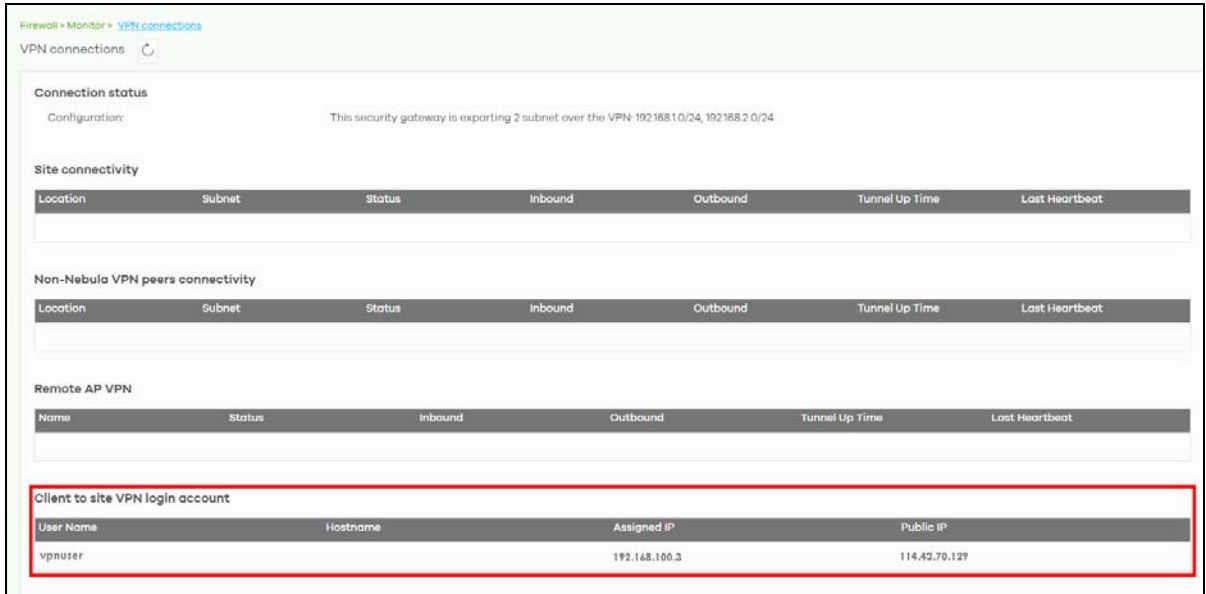
Note: Two Factor Authentication needs to be set up by the user only once. On the next login, just enter the Two Factor Authentication passcode.

The following screen will appear in the user's web browser.




Check the Connection in NCC by the Administrator

Go to the **Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections** screen. The remote VPN connection should appear in **Client to site VPN login account** table.



Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections

VPN connections 

Connection status
Configuration: This security gateway is exporting 2 subnet over the VPN: 192.168.10/24, 192.168.20/24

Site connectivity

Location	Subnet	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat
----------	--------	--------	---------	----------	----------------	----------------

Non-Nebula VPN peers connectivity

Location	Subnet	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat
----------	--------	--------	---------	----------	----------------	----------------

Remote AP VPN

Name	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat
------	--------	---------	----------	----------------	----------------

Client to site VPN login account

User Name	Hostname	Assigned IP	Public IP
vpnuser		192.168.100.3	114.43.70.127

PART II

MSP

CHAPTER 4

MSP

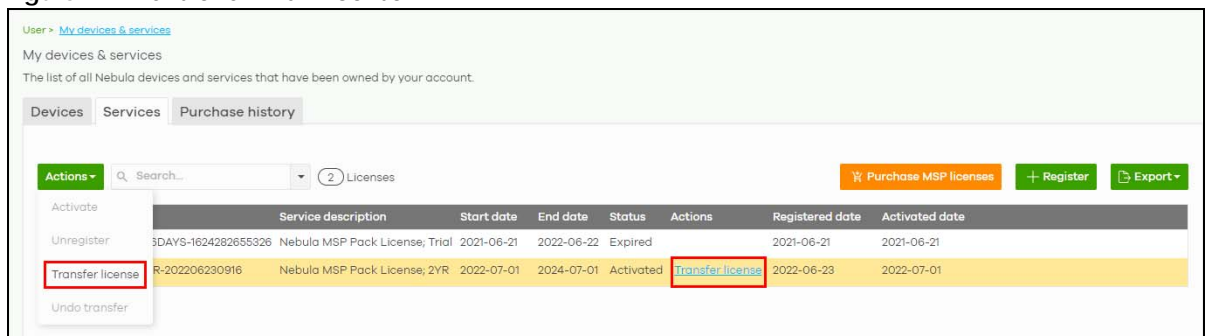
4.1 Overview

The **MSP** (Managed Services Provider) menus allow you to view the summary of organizations and change the branding on NCC.

An MSP license that expires will keep the previous settings in MSP but disable the MSP features.

An MSP license that is registered, queued, or activated can be transferred to another MSP administrator. Click the More icon at the top right-hand corner of the **Dashboard** screen and click the **Services** tab to view the **Status** of MSP licenses. To transfer an MSP license, select the MSP license and click **Actions > Transfer license**. Alternatively, click **Transfer license** under **Actions**.

Figure 21 Transfer an MSP License



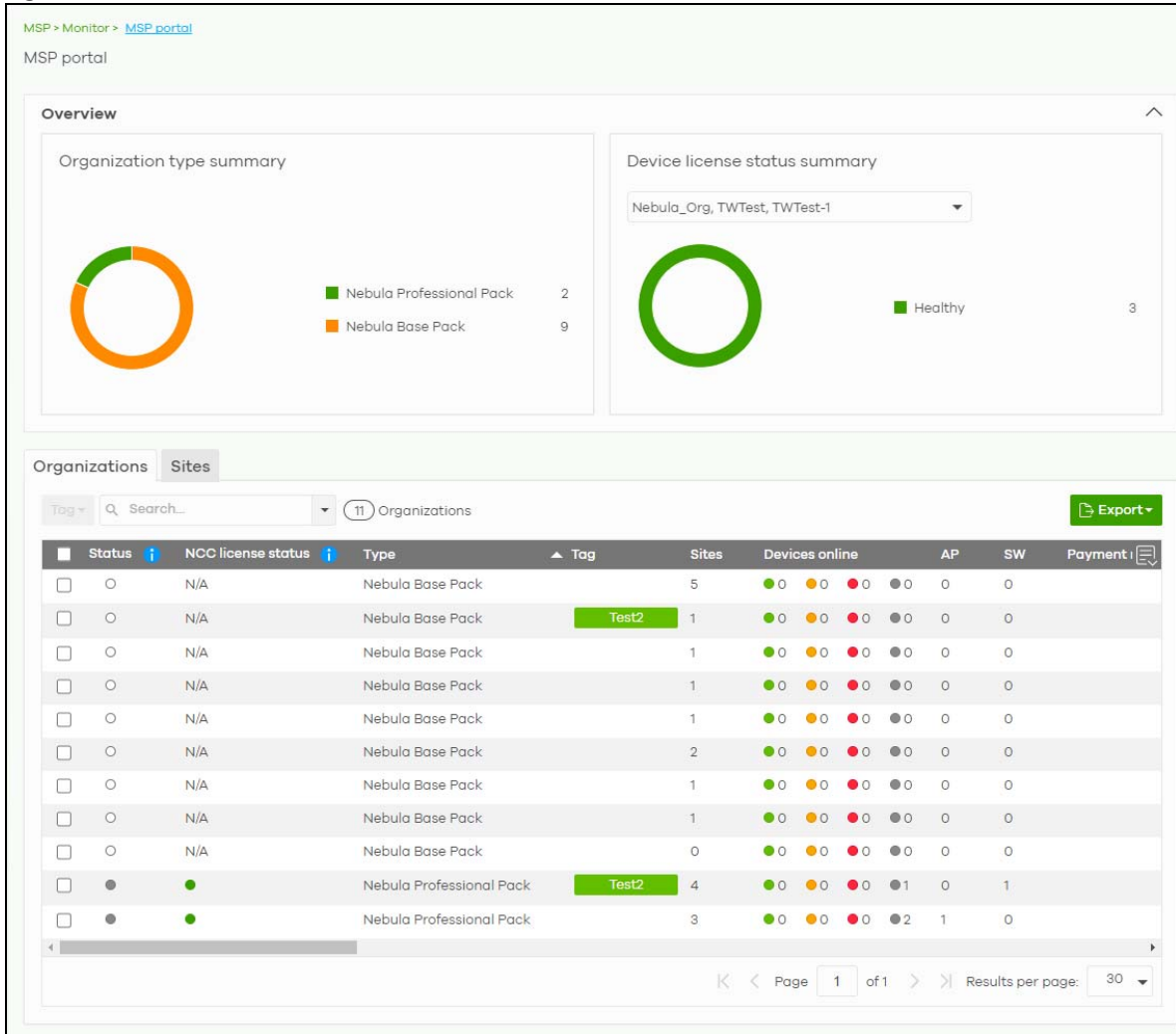
Note: To see these menus, assign an MSP license to your NCC login account.

4.2 MSP Portal

This screen lists every organization to which your account has at least read-only access.

To access this screen, select **MSP portal** from the **Organization** drop-down list box in the title bar, or click **MSP > Monitor > MSP portal** in the navigation panel.

Figure 22 MSP > Monitor > MSP portal



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 MSP > Monitor > MSP portal

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Organization type summary	This pie chart shows the total number of the organization mode (for example, x PRO, x Plus, x Base organizations).
Device license status summary	This pie chart shows the total number of Nebula managed devices with NCC and ATP licenses only. You can select the organization to display in the drop-down list. Click a particular color in the pie chart to show the details of the licenses of the selected organizations.
Organizations	

Table 11 MSP > Monitor > MSP portal (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tag	<p>Assign a name to an organization or to a group of organizations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the organizations. The Tag button will be enabled. 2. Click Tag. 3. In the Add field, enter a tag (up to 32 alphanumeric characters and spaces are allowed). 4. Click +Add new. Then Add to confirm. <p>To remove the tag assigned to an organization or to a group of organizations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the organization with an assigned tag. 2. Click Tag. 3. Enter the name of the tag. As you type along, NCC will automatically show the names of tags that matches. 4. Select the tag. Then click Remove.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of organizations.
matches in	This shows the number of organizations that match your filter criteria after you perform a search.
Organizations	This shows the number of organizations that you can manage.
*	<p>Click this to select all rows.</p> <p>Alternatively, click a row to go to the Sites tab that will show the sites belonging to the organization.</p>
Status	<p>This shows the status of Nebula Devices in the organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: All Nebula Devices are online and have no alerts. • Orange: Some Nebula Devices have alerts. • Red: Some Nebula Devices are offline. • Gray: All Nebula Devices have been offline for 7 days or more. • White: No Nebula Devices in this organization.
NCC license status	<p>This shows the license status of Nebula Devices in the organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: All Nebula Devices with over 1 year licenses. • Blue: Any Nebula Device with over 90 days but less than 1 year license together with another Nebula Device with over 1 year license. • Orange: Any Nebula Device with license that will expire in 90 days together with another Nebula Device with over 90 days license. • Red: Any Nebula Device with an expired license or is unlicensed. • Gray: No Nebula Devices in this organization.
Security license status	<p>This shows the license status of Security Gateways in the organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: All Security Gateways with over 1 year licenses. • Blue: Any Security Gateway with over 90 days but less than 1 year license together with another Nebula Device with over 1 year license. • Orange: Any Security Gateway license that will expire in 90 days together with another Nebula Device with over 90 days license. • Red: Any Security Gateway with an expired license or is unlicensed. • Gray: No Security Gateways in this organization.

Table 11 MSP > Monitor > MSP portal (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Secure WiFi license status	<p>This shows the license status of access points in the organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: All access points with over 1 year licenses. Blue: Any access point with over 90 days but less than 1 year license together with another Nebula Device with over 1 year license. Orange: Any access point license that will expire in 90 days together with another Nebula Device with over 90 days license. Red: Any access point with an expired license or is unlicensed. Gray: No access point in this organization.
CNP license status	<p>This shows the license status of the access points in the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: The access points with over 1 year licenses. Blue: The access point with over 90 days but less than 1 year license together with another Nebula Device with over 1 year license. Orange: The access point license that will expire in 90 days together with another Nebula Device with over 90 days license. Red: The access point with an expired license or is unlicensed. Gray: No access point in this site.
Organization	<p>This shows the descriptive name of the organization. Click an Organization to go to the Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview screen. Hover the mouse over the name of the Organization to display the site information window. Clicking a Site name will go to the Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard screen.</p>
Type	<p>This shows your NCC version type.</p>
Tag	<p>This shows the tag name assigned to this organization. Otherwise, the organization does not have a tag.</p>
Sites	<p>This shows the number of sites belonging to this organization.</p>
Devices online	<p>This shows the number of Nebula Devices in this organization which are online (green), have recently had alerts (orange), recently went offline (red), or have been offline for more than 6 days (gray).</p>
AP	<p>This shows the number of Nebula APs connected to the sites in this organization.</p>
SW	<p>This shows the number of Nebula switches connected to the sites in this organization.</p>
SA	<p>This shows the number of Nebula security appliances connected to the sites in this organization.</p>
Payment Mode	<p>This shows the payment method of the NCC license if you arranged a special payment method with Zyxel.</p> <p>If you bought the license through the Zyxel webstore or a third-party vendor, the value will be blank.</p>
Next NCC license expiration date Next Security license expiration date Next Secure WiFi license expiration date Next CNP license expiration date	<p>This shows the date when the license will expire, or N/A when there is no Nebula-managed device in the organization.</p> <p>For example, if you have two Nebula Devices in the organization:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nebula Device 1 is with NCC license expiration date on 2022/10/1 Nebula Device 2 is with NCC license expiration date on 2022/11/1 <p>This field will show the nearest expiration date '2022/10/1'.</p>
# devices will expire in 90 days	<p>This shows the number of Nebula-managed devices with licenses that will expire in 90 days or less in this organization.</p>
# unused NCC/ NSS/UTM/RAP/ CNP license	<p>This shows the number of unused NCC (Nebula Control Center) / NSS (Nebula Security Service) / UTM (Unified Threat Management) / RAP (Remote Access Point) / CNP (Connect & Protect) licenses in this organization.</p>
	<p>Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.</p>

Table 11 MSP > Monitor > MSP portal (continued)

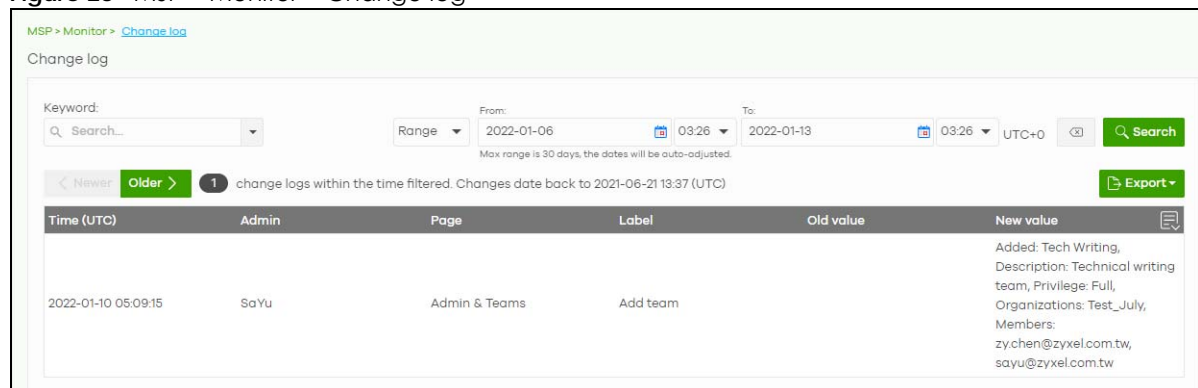
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Export	Click this button to save the MSP Portal list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Sites	
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of sites.
matches in	This shows the number of sites that match your filter criteria after you perform a search.
sites	This shows the number of sites that you can manage.
*	Click this to select all rows.
Status	This shows the status of Nebula Devices in the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: All Nebula Devices are online and have no alerts. Orange: Some Nebula Devices have alerts. Red: Some Nebula Devices are offline. Gray: All Nebula Devices have been offline for 7 days or more. White: No Nebula Devices in this site.
Organization	This shows the descriptive name of the organization.
Site	This shows the descriptive name of the site. Clicking a site name will go to the Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard screen.
Tags	This shows the tag name assigned to this site. Otherwise, the site does not have a tag.
Devices	This shows the number of Nebula Devices connected to the site.
Offline devices	This shows the number of Nebula Devices in this site which are offline.
% Offline	This shows the percentage of Nebula Devices in this site which are offline.
Template	This shows the name of the template that is bound to a site.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.
Export	Click this button to save the MSP Portal list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.

4.3 Change Log

Use this screen to view logged messages for changes in the **Admins & teams** and **Cross-org synchronization** screens. Click **MSP > Monitor > Change log** to access this screen.

When the log is full, it deletes older entries one by one to make room for newer ones.

Figure 23 MSP > Monitor > Change log



MSP > Monitor > [Change log](#)

Change log

Keyword: Range: UTC+0



Max range is 30 days, the dates will be auto-adjusted.

1 change logs within the time filtered. Changes date back to 2021-06-21 13:37 (UTC)

Time (UTC)	Admin	Page	Label	Old value	New value
2022-01-10 05:09:15	So Yu	Admin & Teams	Add team		Added: Tech Writing, Description: Technical writing team, Privilege: Full, Organizations: Test_July, Members: zychen@zyxel.com.tw, sayu@zyxel.com.tw

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 MSP > Monitor > Change log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Keyword	Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of log entries.
Range/Before	Select a filtering option, set a date, and then click Search to filter log entries by date. Range: Display log entries from the first specified date to the second specified date. Before: Display log entries from the beginning of the log to the selected date.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
Reset filters 	Click this to return the search criteria to the previously saved time setting.
Newer/Older	Click to sort the log messages by most recent or oldest.
N change logs within the time filtered.	This shows the total number of the log messages that match the search criteria. It also shows the date and time the very first log was created.
Export	Click this button to download the log list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Time (UTC)	This shows the date and time in UTC+00:00 (or UTC+0) when the log was recorded. UTC is a standard time for use around the world (formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time or GMT). UTC is an international abbreviation that is neither French nor English. It means both "Temps Universel Coordonné" and "Coordinated Universal Time".
Page	This shows the name of the NCC menu in which the change was made.
Label	This shows the action that triggered the log entry
Old value	This shows the old setting or state that was overwritten with the new value.
New value	This shows the new setting or state.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

4.4 Create Organization

Use this screen to create an organization. You can copy the settings from an existing organization if you already created one. Click **MSP > Configure > Create organization** to access this screen.

Note: You have to contact Zyxel customer support if you need to remove an Organization from the NCC. But an administrator can remove Sites without customer support. Configure your organizations carefully. See [Section 3.13 on page 89](#) for information on removing an organization.

Note: There is no limit as to how many organizations you can create, but you can only activate a trial license for up to 10 new organizations every 90 days.

Figure 24 MSP > Configure > Create organization

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 MSP > Configure > Create organization

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
New Organization	
Organization name	Enter a name for your organization. Enter up to 100 characters in this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>?-=[]\;',./].
Country	Select the country or region where the devices in the organization is located. Note: This field is only for reference. It does not affect any other fields or features in NCC.
Copy setting from	If you already have one, or more than one organizations in your account and you want to copy the organization settings of an existing one, select the organization name.
Add this Org to MSP Teams	If you already have one, or more than one MSP teams (MSP > Configure > Admins & teams) in your account and you want to add this organization to an existing one, select the MSP team.
Create organization	Click this button to add a new organization.

4.5 MSP Branding

The **Dashboard logo** section of this screen allows organization owners to replace the Nebula Control Center logo with a new MSP logo. The **Support contact** section allows addition of a customized message or MSP contact information in the **Help > Support** request page. To access this screen, click **MSP > Configure > MSP branding**.

Figure 25 MSP > Configure > MSP branding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 MSP > Configure > MSP branding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dashboard logo	
Upload new logo	Click this to browse for the location of the image file to be used as your dashboard logo. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allowed image file formats: JPG/JPEG, PNG, GIF. Maximum image file size: 200 KB. NCC converts the image file to a 160 x 44 pixel logo after uploading.
Replace this logo	Click this to browse for the location of the image file to replace your current dashboard logo.
Remove this logo	Click this to remove your current dashboard logo.
Apply to	Select All current and new PRO organizations to apply the logo to all Nebula Professional Pack organization dashboards. Select Custom to choose which Nebula Professional Pack organization to apply the logo. Select None if you only wish to upload the image file but will not apply it yet.
Support contact	
Support request page	

Table 14 MSP > Configure > MSP branding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show default Zyxel support cases <input type="checkbox"/>	Select ON to display the standard Zyxel support contact information in the Help > Support request screen. Organization owners can choose to hide the default Help > Support screen section to only show their information to clients. But the organization owner and administrators with full privilege will still see the hidden default screen section.
Customized MSP support contact information	Create your own support contact information. Enter up to 1000 characters in this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>?=-[]\;',./].
Apply to	Select All current and new PRO organizations to apply the support contact information to all Nebula Professional Pack organization Help > Support request screens. Select Custom to choose which Nebula Professional Pack organization to apply the support contact information. Select None if you only wish to save the settings but will not apply it yet.

4.6 Admins & Teams

The Admins & teams enables you to assign an administrator or a group of administrators (a team) to multiple organizations at the same time. This is faster than configuring administrators for each organization at **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators**, especially if you have a large number of organizations.

4.6.0.1 Administrator Privilege Priority

You can configure organization administrator privileges on the following screens:

- **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins**
- **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams**
- **Group-wide > Configure > Administrators**
- **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators**

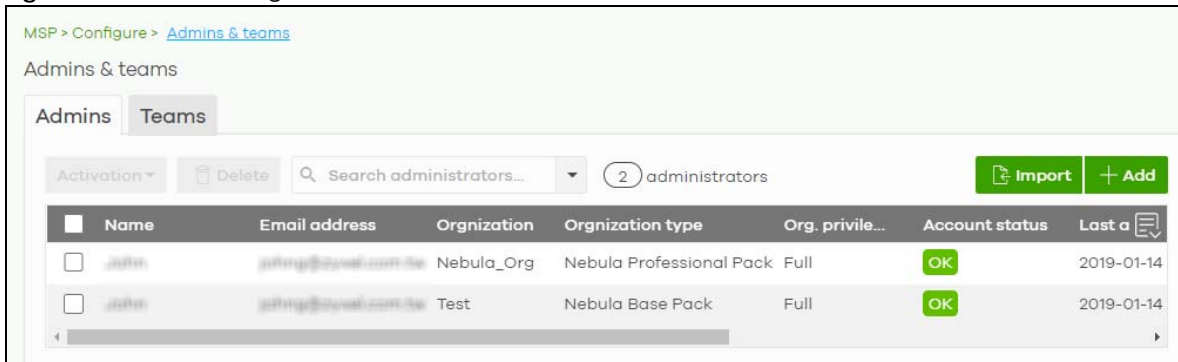
If an NCC account has different administrator privileges configured on different screens, then the highest privilege level takes priority.

Example, account User1 has four different privilege levels configured for organization Org1 on the four screens above: None, Read-Only, Full, Full (Delegate). User1's final privilege level for Org1 is Full (Delegate).

4.6.1 Admins Screen

The admins screen allows you to assign an administrator account to multiple organizations. To access this screen, click **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins**.

Figure 26 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 15 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Activation	Click this button to Activate/Deactivate the selected accounts. Then, click Update .
Delete	Click this button to remove group administrator privileges for the selected accounts.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of administrator accounts.
N administrators	This shows the number of administrator accounts (N) in the list.
Import	Click this button to create administrator accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new administrators in an Excel file. Click template to view the file format. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>Bulk Import ×</p> <p>"Bulk Import" supports for faster inputting. Please follow this template to import</p> <div style="border: 1px dashed gray; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <p>Browse</p> <p>Or drag file here...</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right;">Close</p> </div>
Add	Click this button to create a new group administrator account.
Name	This shows the name of the administrator account.
Email address	This shows the email address of the administrator account.
Organization	This shows the name of the organization in which the privileges apply.
Organization type	This shows the license tier of the organization.

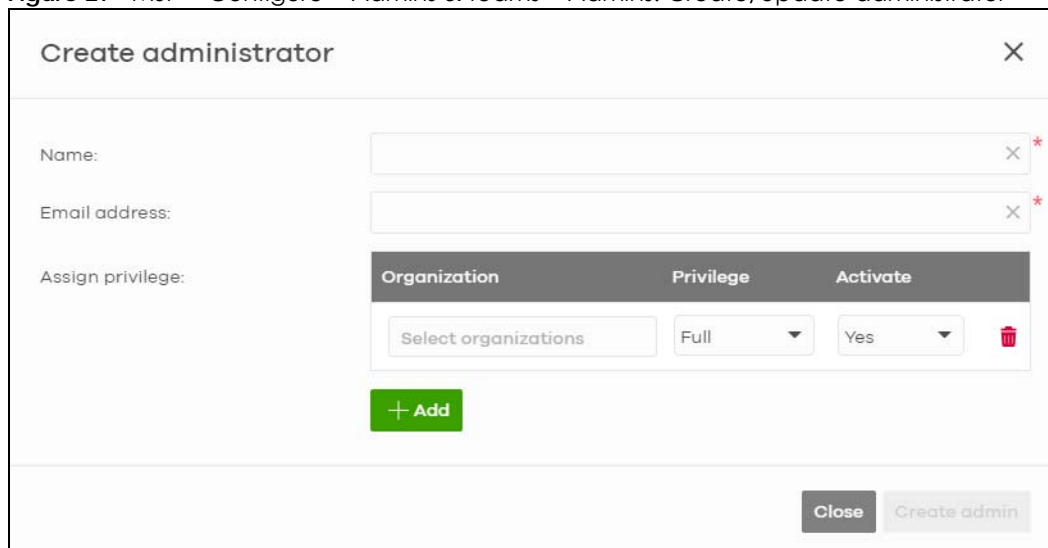
Table 15 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Org. privilege	<p>This shows the privileges the administrator has within the specified organization.</p> <p>Full: the administrator can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization.</p> <p>Read-only: the administrator account has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.</p> <p>Delegate owner's authority: The administrator account has delegated owner privileges. This type of account can perform all of the same actions as the organization owner, except for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete organization • Transfer organization ownership • Assign delegate owner privileges to an administrator account
Account status	This shows whether the administrator account has been validated (OK). It shows Deactivated if an administrator account has been created but cannot be used. This may happen since you can only have up to 5 active administrator account in NCC base tier.
Last access time (UTC)	This shows the last date and time traffic was sent from the administrator account.
Create date (UTC)	This shows the date and time the administrator account was created.
Status change date (UTC)	This shows the last date and time the administrator account status was changed.
Creator	This shows the name of the MSP user account that added the privilege settings.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

4.6.1.1 Create/Update Administrator


In the **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins** screen, click the **Add** button to add a new administrator account, or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 27 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins: Create/Update administrator



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins: Create/Update administrator

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the administrator account. Enter up to 100 characters in this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} : "<?-= [] \ ; ' , . /] .
Email address	Enter the email address of the administrator account, which is used to log into the NCC. This field is read-only if you are editing an existing account.
Assign privilege	
Organization	Select one or more organizations to assign the account privileges to. Only organizations belonging to an MSP account with full privileges can be selected. Note: If no organization is selected, then the administrator cannot access any organization until an organization is assigned full privileges.
Privilege	Select the privileges the administrator has within the selected organizations. Full: the administrator can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Read-only: the administrator account has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.
Activate	Select Yes to enable the account or No to temporarily disable the account.
	Click the remove icon to delete the current set of admin privileges.
Add	Add administrator privileges for an organization.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create admin/ Update admin	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

4.6.2 Teams Screen

The team screen allows you to assign administrator privileges to a group of NCC accounts (a team). To access this screen, click **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams**.

Figure 28 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Click this button to remove the selected teams.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of teams.

Table 17 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
N teams	This shows the number of teams (N) in the list.
Add	Click this button to create a new administrator team.
	Select an entry's check box to select a specific team. Otherwise, select the check box in the table heading row to select all teams.
Name	This shows the name of the team.
Description	This shows a description of the team.
Org. privilege	This shows the privileges the team has within the specified organizations. Full: the administrator can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Read-only: the administrator account has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.
Organization	This shows the names of the organizations in which the privileges apply.
Administrator	This shows a list of the administrators in the team.
Create date (UTC)	This shows the date and time the team was created.
Status change date (UTC)	This shows the last date and time the team status was changed.
Creator	This shows the name of the MSP user account that added the privilege settings.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

4.6.2.1 Create/Update Team

In the **MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams** screen, click the **Add** button to add a new administrator team, or double-click an existing team entry to modify its settings.

Figure 29 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams: Create/Update Team

The screenshot shows a 'Create team' form with the following elements:

- Name:** A text input field with a red asterisk indicating it is required.
- Description:** A text input field with a clear 'x' button.
- Assign privilege:** Two radio buttons: 'Full' (selected) and 'Read-only'.
- Organizations:** A dropdown menu labeled 'Select organizations'.
- Members:** A table with two columns: 'Name' and 'Email'. It contains two rows of input fields, each with a clear 'x' button and a red asterisk. A red trash icon is next to each row. A green '+ Add' button is below the table.
- Buttons:** 'Close' and 'Create' buttons at the bottom right.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams: Create/Update Team


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the team. Enter up to 15 characters in this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>?-=[]\;',./].
Description	Enter a description of the team, for example their role or membership. Enter up to 64 characters for this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>?-=[]\;',./].
Assign privilege	Select the privileges the team members have within the selected organizations. Full: Each member of the team can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Read-only: Each member of the team has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.
Organization	Select one or more organizations to assign the team privileges to. An organization can belong to multiple teams.
Members	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the members. Enter up to 15 characters for this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>?-=[]\;',./].
Email address	Enter the email address of the members who can log into the NCC.
	Click the remove icon to delete the current set of admin privileges.
Add	Add another NCC account to this team.

Table 18 MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams: Create/Update Team (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create/Update	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

4.6.3 Cross-org synchronization

The Cross-org synchronization screen allows you to copy settings or a site from one organization to another. You can also move Nebula Devices with its settings to another organization.

4.6.3.1 Cross-Org setting sync

Cross-org sync copies the following items from one organization to another organization:

- Organization-wide settings
- Administrators
- Cloud Authentication accounts (Users and MAC)
- Configuration templates

Your account must have **owner** or **organization-full** privileges in both source and destination organizations. When copying organization-wide settings, the following settings will not be overwritten if they are already configured in the destination organization:

- **Organization-wide > Configure > Settings > Country**
- **Organization-wide > Configure > Settings > Login IP ranges**
- Administrators privileges (when source and destination organizations have the same admin account)
- Cloud Authentication account privileges (when source and destination organizations have the same Cloud Authentication account)

When copying configuration templates:

- No sites are bound to the new template site.
- If the destination organization has a template with the same name, then the new template will have a number appended to the end of its name.

4.6.3.2 Cross-Org site clone

Cross-org site clone copies a site and all of its settings from one organization to another. Your account must have **owner** or **organization-full** privileges in both source and destination organizations.

If the destination organization has a site with the same name, then the new site will have a number appended to the end of its name.

The following table describes the Nebula Device (Access Point, Switch, Security Firewall) during cross-org site clone.

Table 19 Nebula Device Cross-org Site Clone

NEBULA DEVICE	CROSS-ORG SITE CLONE	MOVE NEBULA DEVICE TO CLONED SITE – ENABLED	KEEP MANAGEMENT/WAN INTERFACE – ENABLED
Access Point (AP)	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AP site-wide configuration is cloned Individual AP configuration is NOT cloned (for example, radio settings) 	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AP site-wide configuration and individual AP configuration are cloned (for example, radio settings) 	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> AP site-wide configuration and individual AP configuration are cloned (for example, radio settings)
Switch	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch site-wide configuration is cloned Individual Switch configuration is NOT cloned (for example, IGMP) Switch port configuration is NOT cloned 	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch site-wide configuration is cloned Individual Switch configuration is cloned (for example, IGMP) Switch port configuration is cloned 	When enabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch site-wide configuration is cloned Individual Switch configuration is cloned (for example, IGMP) Switch port configuration is cloned
Security Firewall	When enabled, the site-to-site VPN settings are reset.	When enabled, the site-to-site VPN settings are reset.	When enabled, the site-to-site VPN settings are reset.

4.6.3.3 Cross-org synchronization Screen

Use this screen to configure cross-org synchronization and cross site clones.

Figure 30 MSP > Configure > Cross-org synchronization

MSP > Configure > [Cross-org synchronization](#)

Cross-org synchronization

Cross-Org setting sync

From source organization: Test_July

Org. setting: All org-wide settings, Org...

To dest. organization: Nebula_Org

Sync

Cross-Org site clone with device movement

From source organization: Test_July ZyNet TW

Move site devices to cloned site in destination organization. [What is it?](#)

When you moving site include devices to another organization, you could select reset device Management/WAN Interface or keep it if your networking environment is similar or the same.

Keep Management/WAN Interface.

To dest. organization: TWTest

Clone

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 MSP > Configure > Cross-org synchronization

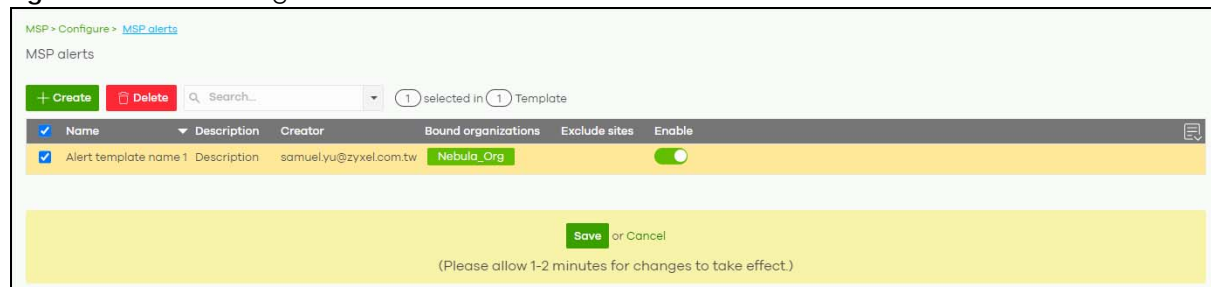
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cross-Org setting sync	
From source organization	Select the organization to copy settings from.
Org. setting	Select the settings that you want to copy from the source to the destination organization. Select All org-wide settings to copy everything.
To dest. organization	Select the organization to copy settings to.
Sync	Click this to copy the selected settings from the source to the destination organization.
Cross-Org site clone with device movement	
From source organization	Select the organization to copy settings from. Then select one or more sites. Select All sites to copy all sites from the source to the destination organization. Select Move site devices to cloned site in destination organization to include the Nebula Devices. Enable Keep Management/WAN interface to copy the WAN connection settings for the Nebula Devices to the destination organization.
To dest. organization	Select the organization to copy the selected sites to.
Clone	Click this to copy the selected organization and sites from the source to the destination organization.

4.7 MSP Alerts

The MSP administrator can configure **MSP alerts** to monitor Nebula Devices for unexpected events (for example, online / offline events). This screen will list the alert templates you have created. See [Section 4.7.1 on page 130](#) for details on creating an alert template.

To access this screen, click **MSP > Configure > MSP alerts** in the navigation panel.

Figure 31 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
+ Create	Click this button to add a new alert template (see Section 4.7.1 on page 130).
Delete	Click this button to remove alert templates already created.

Table 21 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Specify your desired search criteria to filter the list of alerts.
selected in	This shows the number of alerts that match your filter criteria after you perform a search.
Template	This shows the number of alert templates you have created.
Name	This shows a descriptive name of the alert template.
Description	This shows more details on the alert template.
Creator	This shows your email address.
Bound organizations	This shows All organizations or a list of the selected organizations to send alerts to.
Exclude sites	This shows the sites that will not receive any alerts.
Enable	Click this to activate the alert template.
Note: To edit the Name , Description , Creator , Bound organizations , and Exclude sites fields, just click the field and the Update alert screen will appear.	

4.7.1 Alert Settings

Use this screen to set which alerts are created and emailed, and set the email addresses to which an alert is sent. Click **MSP > Configure > MSP alerts > Create** to access this screen.

Note: NCC's Smart Alert Engine uses knowledge of network topology and cross-device functionality to only generate alerts for unexpected events. This helps avoid unnecessary emails and notifications.

For example, an AP is receiving power from a PoE switch. If the AP loses power because its Ethernet cable is disconnected, NCC generates an alert. If the AP loses power because the switch has a PoE schedule that disables power to the AP, NCC does not generate an alert.

Figure 32 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts > Create/Update alert

Create alert
✕

General

Template name

Description

Email recipient ⓘ

Apply to
 All organizations
 Select organizations

Exclude sites
 Select organizations Select sites + Add to exclude list

Enable

System alerts ⓘ

Wireless
 minutes after AP goes offline
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Switches
 minutes after Switches goes offline
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

minutes goes down
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Security gateway
 minutes after the gateway goes offline
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Any DHCP lease pool is exhausted
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

A VPN connection is established or disconnected
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

WAN connectivity status changed
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Mobile router
 minutes after the mobile router goes offline
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Other
 Configuration settings are changed
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Security alerts

CDR containment ⓘ
 Email to receive containment alerts
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Security Report

Notification mode
 Email to receive security alerts by SecuReporter
 ⓘ Show additional recipients

Email subject ⓘ (Optional, maximum character is 64.)

Email description ⓘ (Optional, maximum character is 255.)

Notification interval
 Select notification interval if events were triggered

Event severity
 Select severity level for email information

Event threshold

Category		Severity		
Network Security	Attack counts	High	<input type="text" value="1"/>	times of highest severity attacks within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Attack counts	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	times attacks within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Alert counts	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	count(s) of Malware/IPS(highest severity)/ADP(protocol anomaly) within 1 minute.
Network Security	Malware/virus detection	Medium	<input type="text" value="2"/>	times of same malware/virus is detected within 15 minutes.
Network Security	Malware/virus detection	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	count(s) of malware/virus attack within 5 minutes.
Network Security	URL Threat Filter	High	<input type="text" value="5"/>	times of connection to threat websites within 60 minutes.
Network Security	DNS Threat Filter	High	<input type="text" value="5"/>	times of connection to threat/block DNS domain within 60 minutes.
Network Security	Sandboxing	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	times destroyed malicious files within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Sandboxing	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	times destroyed suspicious files within 5 minutes.
Network Security	IP Reputation-Incoming	High	<input type="text" value="10"/>	times over of attacks to the internal network from external threat IP address within 10 minutes.
Network Security	IP Reputation-Outgoing	High	<input type="text" value="1"/>	times over of connections to threat websites within 60 minutes
Anomaly	Login failure	Medium	<input type="text" value="10"/>	times of login failures within 1 minute.
Anomaly	Traffic anomaly	High	<input type="text" value="1"/>	times of traffic anomaly scans/floods detected within 5 minutes.
Anomaly	Protocol anomaly	High	<input type="text" value="1"/>	times of protocol anomaly TCP/UDP/ICMP/IP decoders within 5 minutes.

Close Create

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts > Create/Update alert

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Template name	Enter a descriptive name for the alert template (up to 64 alphanumeric characters including spaces).
Description	Enter more details of the alert template (up to 64 alphanumeric characters including spaces).
Email recipient	<p>Enter the email addresses to which you want to send alerts.</p> <p>Note: Recipients belonging to Base organizations will not receive email alerts, except if the recipient's account includes an MSP license. In general, only the organizations with activated MSP license will receive email alerts.</p> <p>For example, ORG 1 is a Base tier organization, and ORG 2 is a Professional tier organization. An MSP alert template is created to monitor AP offline events. If there are three email recipients in both ORG 1 and ORG 2 with the following licenses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • REP 1 (recipient 1) has an account which includes an MSP license. • REP 2 (recipient 2) and REP 3 (recipient 3) has accounts which does not include an MSP license. <p>When an AP offline event occurs, an email alert will only be sent to REP 1 in ORG 1. While an email alert will be sent to all recipients (REP 1, REP 2, and REP 3) in ORG 2.</p>
Apply to	Select All organizations or specify the selected organizations to send alerts to.
Exclude sites	Select the sites in organizations that will not receive any alerts.

Table 22 MSP > Configure > MSP alerts > Create/Update alert (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	Click this to activate the alert template.
System alerts	
Notification Type	For each alert, you can set how to receive alert notifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Email: Alert notifications are sent by email to configured recipients. • In-app Push: Alert notifications are sent to site administrators who are logged into the Nebula Mobile app. This type of notification is not available for some features. • Both: Alert notifications are sent by email and app notification. • Disabled: No alerts are sent.
Show additional recipients	Add additional user accounts who will receive email and in-app notifications for the alert.
System Alerts	
Wireless	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when an access point goes offline.
Switches	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when a port or a switch goes offline.
Security gateway	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when the following events occur: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A gateway device goes offline. • Any DHCP pool on the gateway device runs out of IP addresses to assign. • A VPN connection to or from the gateway device is created or terminated. • The WAN connectivity goes offline.
Mobile router	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when an mobile router goes offline.
Other	Specify whether to send an alert each time configuration settings are changed.
Security alerts	
CDR containment	Specify whether to send an alert each time a CDR block or containment action is triggered.
Show additional recipients	Add additional user accounts who will receive email and in-app notifications for the alert.
Security Report	
Notification mode	Select whether to receive email security reports from SecuReporter.
Show additional recipients	Add additional user accounts who will receive email and in-app notifications for the alert.
Email subject	Enter an email title here.
Email description	Enter a description of the emails to be sent here. For example, maybe these emails are just for high severity events.
Notification interval	Specify how often to receive a SecuReporter report. If no security events were triggered, SecuReporter will not send a report.
Event severity	Select the severity level of events that will be included in each report.
Event threshold	This table lists the events that trigger SecuReporter security alerts. You can set the alert threshold. For example, X count(s) of malware/virus attack within 5 minutes means SecuReporter includes a report in the email if the total number of combined malware and virus detection events exceed X within a 5 minute time period.

PART III

Manage by Deployment: Group, Organization, Site

CHAPTER 5

Group-wide

5.1 Introduction

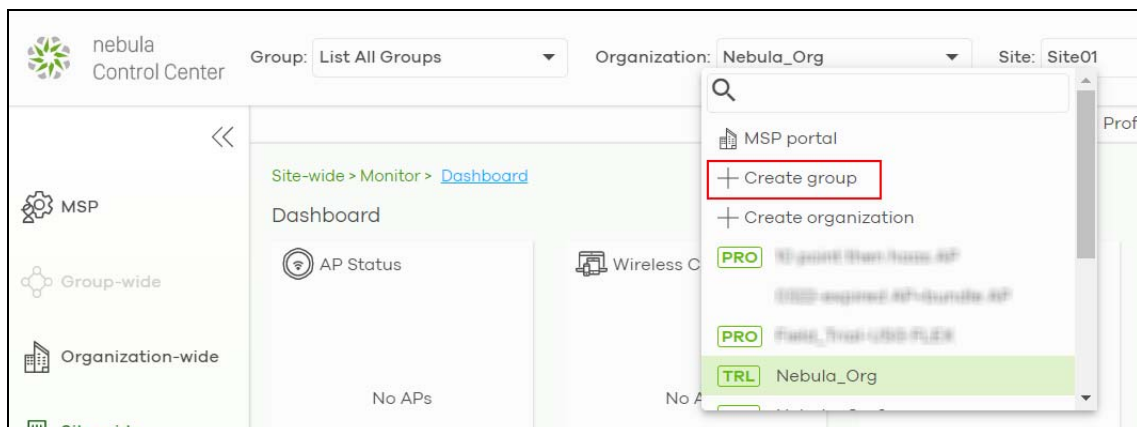
This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor and manage your groups settings.

A group is a collection of two or more organizations. Groups allow you to view and manage multiple organizations, and create VPN links between groups in the organization.

5.1.1 Creating a Group

Follow the steps below to create a group.

- 1 Ensure that you are the owner of two or more Pro Pack organizations that are not currently in a group.
- 2 Click the **Organization** list, and then select **Create Group**.



- 3 In the **Create group** window, enter a group name and then select two or more organizations to add to the group. You must be the group owner, and each group must have a Pro Pack license. Then click **OK**.

Create group [X]

Group name: Test Group [X]

Group member: test TestOrg2

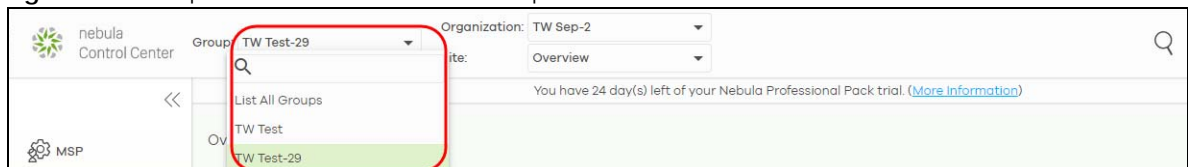
Note: You could select organizations own by you to join Group.

Cancel OK

5.1.2 Group-Wide Menu

The **Group-wide** menu and the **Group** list appear when you create at least one group. You can select a group to manage by selecting it in the **Group** list.

Figure 33 Group > Monitor > Overview: Group



5.2 Monitor

The **Group** menus allow you to monitor and configure group settings, and also the inventories and logs of the sites and organizations in the group.

5.2.1 Overview

The overview screen allows you to view the status of organizations in a group. Click **Group-wide > Monitor > Overview** to access this screen.

Figure 34 Group-wide > Monitor > Overview

Status	Organization	Type	NCC license status	Payment mode	NCC license expiration (UTC)
O	Nebula_Org2	Nebula Professional Pack (Trial)	OK		2021-04-30
O	test	Nebula Professional Pack (Trial)	OK		2021-04-30
O	TestOrg2	Nebula Professional Pack (Trial)	OK		2021-04-25

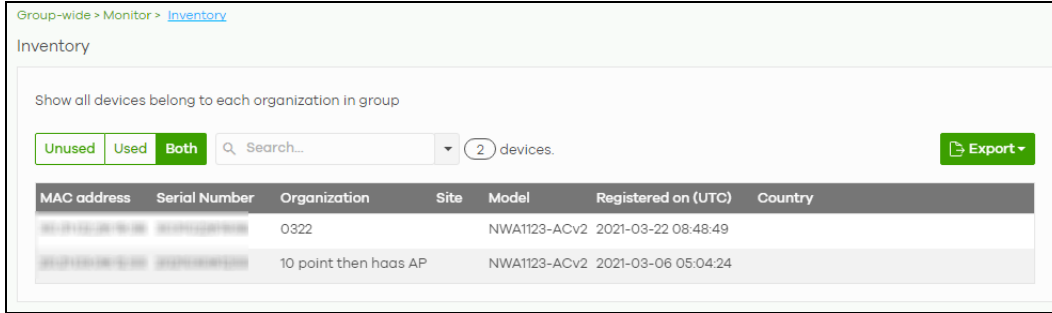
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Group-wide > Monitor > Overview

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of organizations.
matches in	This shows the number of organizations that match your filter criteria after you perform a search.
N Organizations	This shows the number of organizations (N) in the group.
Status	This shows the status of Nebula Devices in the organization. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: All Nebula Devices are online and have no alerts. Amber: One or more Nebula Devices have alerts. Red: One or more Nebula Devices are offline. Gray: All Nebula Devices have been offline for 7 days or more. White: No Nebula Devices.
Organization	This shows the descriptive name of the organization.
Type	This shows the NCC license type of the organization.
NCC License Status	This shows whether the license is valid (OK), the license has expired and the organization downgraded from NCC Pro or Plus Pack to the base tier (Expired), or this is a free organization and an NCC license is not required (N/A).
Payment mode	This shows the payment method of the organization's license if you arranged a special payment method with Zyxel. If you bought the license through the Zyxel web store or a third-party vendor, the value will be blank.
NCC License expiration (UTC)	This shows the date when the license will expire, or N/A when there are no Nebula Devices in the organization or if this is a free organization and an NCC license is not required.
Sites	This shows the number of sites belonging to this organization.
Devices	This shows the number of Nebula Devices in the organization that have one of the following status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: The Nebula Device is online and has no alerts. Amber: The Nebula Device has alerts. Red: The Nebula Device has been offline for less than 7 days. Gray: The Nebula Device has been offline for 7 days or more.
AP	This shows the number of Nebula Access Points in the organization.
SW	This shows the number of Nebula Switches in the organization.
SA	This shows the number of NSG and USG FLEX, ATP series, and USG20(W)-VPN Security Appliances connected to the sites in this organization.

5.2.2 Inventory

Use this screen to view all Nebula Devices in the organizations of the selected group. Click **Group-wide > Monitor > Inventory** to access this screen.

Figure 35 Group-wide > Monitor > Inventory

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 24 Group-wide > Monitor > Inventory

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Unused	Click this button to show the Nebula Devices which are not assigned to a site yet.
Used	Click this button to show the Nebula Devices which are assigned to a site.
Both	Click this button to show all Nebula Devices which are registered for the organizations in the group.
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of connected Nebula Devices. Open the search box drop-down list to filter the search results by site, model, and country.
Devices	This shows the number of the Nebula Devices in the list.
Export	Click this button to save the Nebula Device list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device. Click on the MAC address to view the Nebula Device details page.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Organization	This shows the organization of the Nebula Device.
Site	This shows the name of the site to which the Nebula Device is connected.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Registered on (UTC)	This shows the date and time that the Nebula Device was registered at the NCC.
Country	This shows the country where the Nebula Device is located.

5.2.3 Change Log

Use this screen to view logged messages for changes in all organizations in the group. Click **Group-wide > Monitor > Change log** to access this screen.

When the log is full, it deletes older entries one by one to make room for newer ones.

Figure 36 Group-wide > Monitor > Change log

Change log

Keyword:

From: 2021-03-16 03:59 To: 2021-03-26 03:59 UTC+0

Max range is 30 days, the dates will be auto-adjusted.

< Newer **Older** > 9 change logs within the time filtered. Changes date back to 2021-03-15 07:21 (UTC)

Time (UTC)	Admin	Page	Label	Old value	New value
2021-03-23 06:45:19	svd nsbu	Administrator	Added Admin (Full)		Added, Organizati...
2021-03-23 06:07:51	svd nsbu	Administrator	Updated Tech-wri...	Removed: Organiz...	Added: Organizati...
2021-03-23 06:02:12	svd nsbu	Administrator	Changed Tech-wr...	Organization: Rea...	Organization: Full
2021-03-23 05:59:56	svd nsbu	Administrator	Added Tech-write...		Added, Organizati...
2021-03-23 03:29:45	svd nsbu	Administrator	Added Admin (Full)		Added, Organizati...
2021-03-23 03:28:51	svd nsbu	Administrator	Added Admin (Full)		Added, Organizati...
2021-03-23 03:28:14	svd nsbu	Administrator	Updated sdd9.rd...	Removed: Organiz...	Added: Organizati...
2021-03-23 03:28:05	svd nsbu	Administrator	Added Admin (Full)		Added, Organizati...
2021-03-23 03:25:57	svd nsbu	Group/Settings	Group members	Added: 10 point th...	10 point then haas ...

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Group-wide > Monitor > Change log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Keyword	Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of log entries.
Range/Before	Select a filtering option, set a date, and then click Search to filter log entries by date. Range: Display log entries from the first specified date to the second specified date. Before: Display log entries from the beginning of the log to the selected date.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
Reset filters <input type="button" value="X"/>	Click this to return the search criteria to the previously saved time setting.
Newer/Older	Click to sort the log messages by most recent or oldest.
N change logs within the time filtered.	This shows the total number of the log messages that match the search criteria. It also shows the date and time the very first log was created.
Export	Click this button to download the log list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Time (UTC)	This shows the date and time in UTC+00:00 (or UTC+0) when the log was recorded. UTC is a standard time for use around the world (formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time or GMT). UTC is an international abbreviation that is neither French nor English. It means both "Temps Universel Coordonné" and "Coordinated Universal Time".
Admin	This shows the name of the NCC administrator account that made the changes.
Page	This shows the name of the NCC menu in which the change was made.
Label	This shows the action that triggered the log entry
Old value	This shows the old setting or state that was overwritten with the new value.
New value	This shows the new setting or state.
<input type="button" value="More"/>	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

5.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to create a new group and manage group general settings, administrator accounts and VPN members.

5.3.1 Group Settings

Use this screen to change your general group settings, such as the group name and members. Click **Group-wide > Configure > Settings** to access this screen.

Figure 37 Group-wide > Configure > Settings

Group-wide > Configure > [Settings](#)

Settings

Group information

Group name: Zyxel

Description:

Group members

Organizations:

- Nebula_Org2
- TestOrg2

Note: You could select organizations own by you to join Group.

Delete this group: You can delete this group only when:

- + No any Pro Pack organization belong to it
- + AutoVPN is off

Delete Group

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 26 Group-wide > Configure > Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group name	Enter a descriptive name for the group.
Description	Enter a description for the group.

Table 26 Group-wide > Configure > Settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group members	Click in the box to add an organization to the group. Click X to remove an organization from the group. Note: You must be the group owner, and each group must have a Pro license.
Delete this group	Click this to delete the group. Note: You can only delete a group if it contains no organizations, and Hub to Hub VPN is disabled at Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN .

5.3.2 Org-to-Org VPN

Org-to-Org VPN allows devices in different organizations in a group to access each other's services, such as a website, database, or ERP server, through VPN tunnels.

5.3.2.1 Configure Org-to-Org VPN

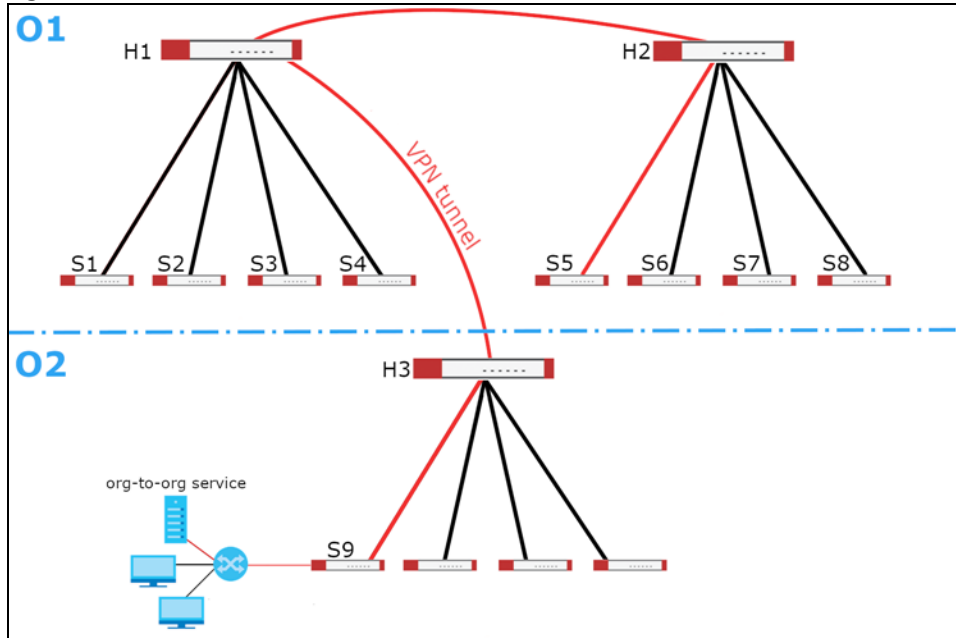
Follow the steps below to configure Org-to-Org VPN in the group.

- 1 Configure Smart VPN for each organization you want included in the Org-to-Org VPN.
 - 1a In the **Organization** list, select the organization.
 - 1b Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator**.
 - 1c Configure a VPN area with hub-and-spoke topology, and then assign at least one site as a hub. If a site contains a server that you want to share between organizations, then ensure the server is in a hub site or that **Branch to Branch VPN** is enabled.
- 2 Go to **Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN**, and then enable **Hub to Hub VPN**.
- 3 Click + **Hub**. In the **Select Hubs** window, add at least one hub site from each organization to the **Within Org-to-Org** list.
- 4 Click + **Org-to-Org Service**, and add a server's fully qualified domain name (FQDN) and IP address.
- 5 Devices in the organizations included in the Org-to-Org VPN are now able to access the server by IP address or FQDN.

5.3.2.2 Org-to-Org VPN Example

[Figure 38](#) shows organization **O1** with two VPN areas and hubs **H1** and **H2**. **Area communication** and **Branch to Branch VPN** are both enabled. It shows another organization **O2** with its own set of sites and a hub. **H1** and **H3** belong to the **Org-to-Org VPN**. The server behind **S9** is listed as an **org-to-org service**. If a Nebula Device behind **S5** wants to access the server behind **S9**, traffic will pass through its hub **H2** and then to **H1** and **H3**.

Figure 38 Org-to-Org VPN Example



5.3.2.3 Org-to-Org VPN Screen

Click **Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN** to access this screen.

Figure 39 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN

The screenshot shows the 'Org-to-Org VPN' configuration screen. At the top, there is a breadcrumb: 'Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN'. Below this, the title 'Org-to-Org VPN' is displayed. The configuration is organized into several sections:

- Reserved IP Address Pool:** A dropdown menu showing '10.255.255.0/24'.
- AutoVPN:** A section with a toggle for 'Hub to Hub VPN' which is currently turned on (green). Below it is a table with columns 'Organization' and 'Hub', containing one entry 'Hub'.
- Service:** A section with a table with columns 'Organization', 'FQDN', and 'IP Address', containing one entry 'Org-to-Org Service'.

At the bottom of the screen, there is a yellow bar with a 'Save' button and the text 'or Cancel'. Below this bar, a note reads: '(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)'

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

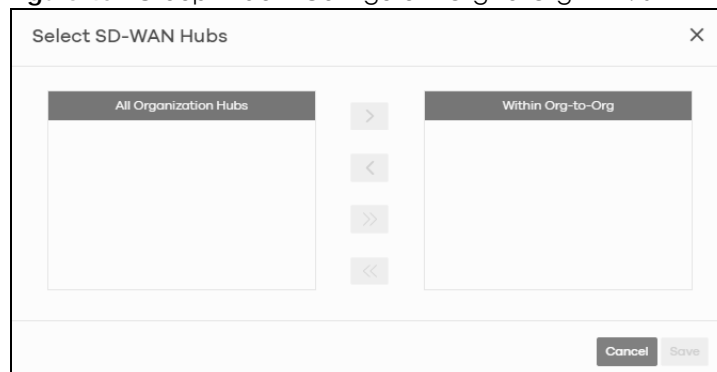
Table 27 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reserved IP Address Pool	Specify the IP addresses that Nebula Devices use to create the VPN tunnels between the gateway devices in the org-to-org VPN network. You can select a set or custom range. This IP address range must not overlap with any IP address ranges already in use within any sites in the org-to-org VPN.
AutoVPN	
Hub to Hub VPN	Turn the switch to On to enable create VPN tunnels between the hubs in the list. This is required to enable Org-to-Org VPN. When this setting is disabled, Org-to-Org VPN will not work and can only be configured.
Organization	This column lists down the organization to which the hub site belongs.
Hub	This column lists down the names of the hub sites included in the Org-to-Org VPN .
+Hub	Click this to set up which hub site you want to add to the Org-to-Org VPN .
Service	
Organization	This displays the organization to which the network service belongs.
FQDN	This displays the Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) associated with the network service which Security Gateway devices and Nebula Devices behind them are given access.
IP Address	This displays the IP address of the network service which Security Gateway devices and Nebula Devices behind them are given access.
+Org-to-Org Service	Click this to add a service that can be accessed within the org-to-org VPN.
Save	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

5.3.2.4 Add Hub

Click the **+Hub** button on the **Group-wide > Configuration > Org-to-Org VPN** screen to access the following screen. If **Hub to Hub VPN** is enabled, use this screen to select which hubs you want to include in the **Org-to-Org VPN**.

Figure 40 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN: SD-WAN Hubs



Hubs are listed in this screen and you may choose whether to include them in the org-to-org network or not by clicking the "<" and ">" buttons. The "<<" and ">>" buttons move all hubs at once. Details about this screen are described in the table below.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN: SD-WAN Hubs

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
All Organization Hubs	This box lists all hub sites in the group that are outside the org-to-org network. It shows the name of the hub followed by the Organization it belongs to in parentheses.
Within Org-to-Org	This box lists all hub sites inside the org-to-org network. It shows the name of the hub followed by the Organization it belongs to in parentheses.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.
Save	Click Save to add the hubs to the org-to-org network.

5.3.2.5 Service

Use this screen to add a service accessible through the org-to-org VPN. Note that you can choose to add only the FQDN or only the IP address. Click **+Org-to-Org Service** and then the following screen appears.

Figure 41 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN: Service

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 Group-wide > Configure > Org-to-Org VPN: Service

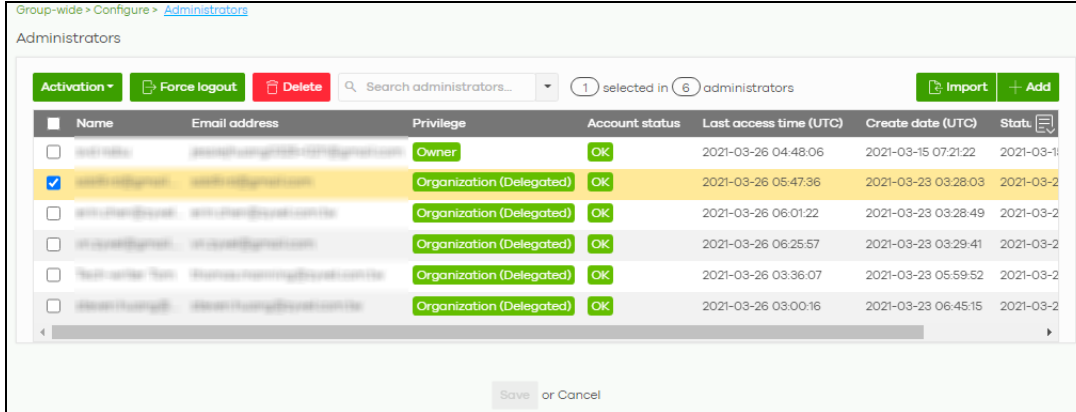
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Organization	Select the organization to which the service you want to add is linked to.
FQDN	Enter the Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) associated with the service. An FQDN starts with a host name and continues all the way up to the top-level domain name. For example, www.zyxel.com.tw is a fully qualified domain name, where "www" is the host, "zyxel" is the third-level domain, "com" is the second-level domain, and "tw" is the top level domain. Underscores are not allowed. Use "*" as a prefix in the FQDN for a wildcard domain name (for example, *.example.com).
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the service you want to add to the org-to-org VPN.
Save	Click Save to allow access to the service through the org-to-org VPN.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

5.3.3 Administrators

Group Administrator accounts can be added, modified, or deleted through this screen. A group administrator has administrator privileges in all organizations in the group. Group administrators are registered using their NCC account email address.

Click **Group-wide > Configure > Administrators** to access this screen.

Figure 42 Group-wide > Configure > Administrators




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Group-wide > Configure > Administrator

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Activation	Click this button to Activate/Deactivate the selected accounts. Then, click Update .
Force logout	Click this button to force the selected accounts to log out of NCC.
Delete	Click this button to remove group administrator privileges for the selected accounts.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of administrator accounts.
administrators	This shows the number of administrator accounts in the list.
Import	Click this button to create administrator accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new administrators in an Excel file. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Bulk Import ×</p> <p>"Bulk Import" supports for faster inputting. Please follow this template to import</p> <div style="border: 1px dashed gray; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Browse</p> <p>Or drag file here...</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right;">Close</p> </div>
Add	Click this button to create a new group administrator account. See Section 5.3.3.1 on page 146 .
Name	This shows the name of the administrator account.
Email address	This shows the email address of the administrator account.

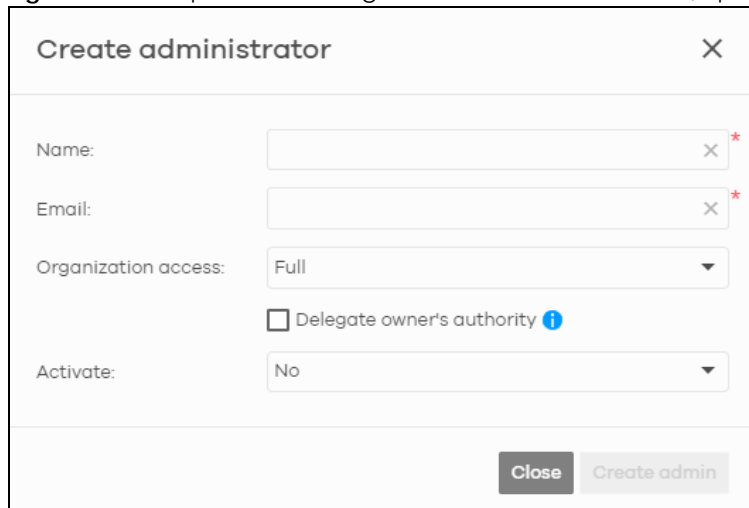
Table 30 Group-wide > Configure > Administrator (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Privilege	<p>This shows the privileges the administrator has within all organizations in the group.</p> <p>Full: the administrator can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization.</p> <p>Read-only: the administrator account has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.</p> <p>Delegate owner's authority: The administrator account has delegated owner privileges. This type of account can perform all of the same actions as the organization owner, except for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete organization • Transfer organization ownership • Assign delegate owner privileges to an administrator account.
Account status	This shows whether the administrator account has been validated (OK). It shows Deactivated if an administrator account has been created but cannot be used. This may happen since you can only have up to five active administrator accounts in the NCC base tier.
Last access time	This shows the last date and time traffic was sent from the administrator account.
Create date	This shows the date and time the administrator account was created.
Status change date	This shows the last date and time the administrator account status was changed.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

5.3.3.1 Create/Update Administrator

In the **Group-wide > Configure > Administrator** screen, click the **Add** button to add a new group administrator account or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 43 Group-wide > Configure > Administrator: Create/Update administrator



Create administrator [X]

Name: [X] *

Email: [X] *

Organization access: Full [v]

Delegate owner's authority ⓘ

Activate: No [v]

[Close] [Create admin]

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Group-wide > Configure > Administrator: Create/Update administrator

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the administrator account.
Email	Enter the email address of the administrator account, which is used to log into the NCC. This field is read-only if you are editing an existing account.
Organization access	This shows the privileges the administrator has within all organizations in the group. Full: the administrator can edit settings, create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Read-only: the administrator account has no write access to the organization, but can be a site administrator.
Delegate owner's authority	This setting is only available when Organization access is set to Full . Select this setting to grant delegate owner privileges to an organization full administrator account. An account with delegate owner privileges can perform all of the same actions as the organization owner, except for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete organization • Transfer organization ownership • Assign delegate owner privileges to an administrator account.
Activate	Select Yes to enable the account or No to temporarily disable the account.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create admin/ Update admin	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

CHAPTER 6

Organization-wide

6.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor your organization and manage sites, Nebula Devices, accounts, licenses, and VPN members for the organization.

6.2 Monitor

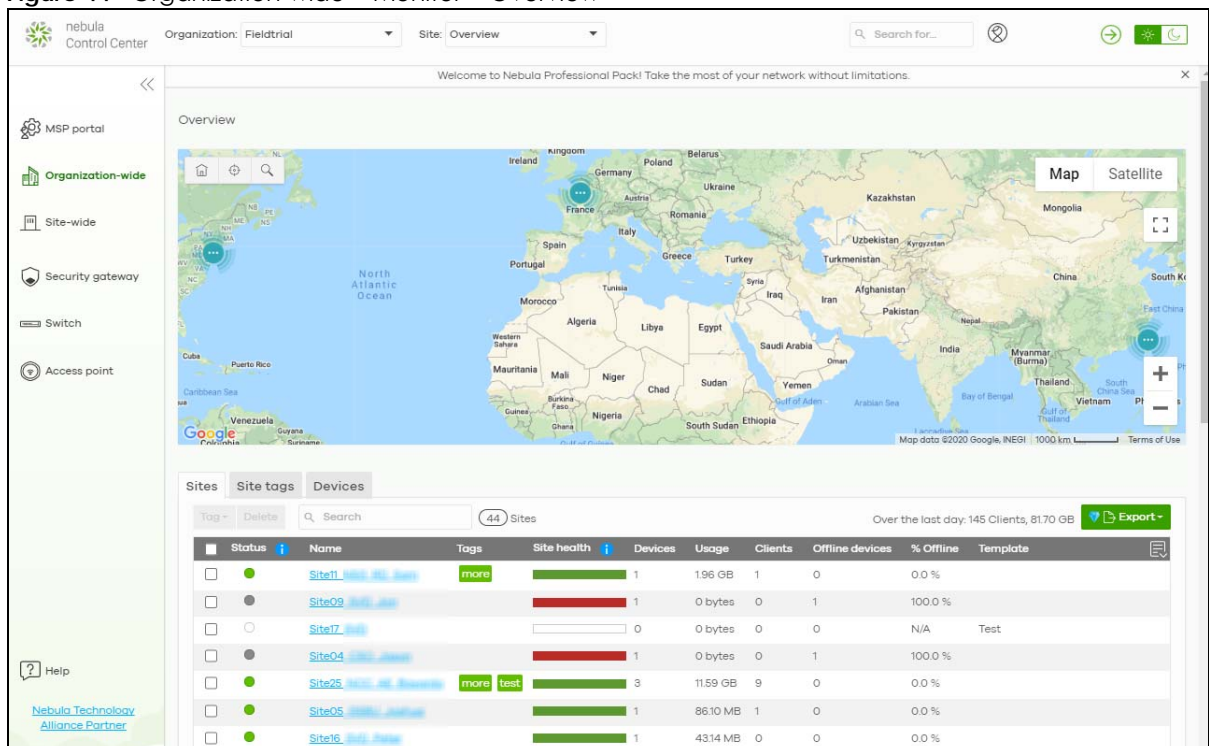
Use the **Monitor** menus to check the site and Nebula Device information and change logs for the selected organization.

6.2.1 Organization Overview

This screen shows you the site locations on a Google map and the summary of sites, site tags and connected Nebula Devices for the selected organization.

Click **Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview** to access this screen.

Figure 44 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview



6.2.1.1 Sites

Click the **Sites** tab in the **Overview** screen to view detailed information of the sites which are associated with the selected organization.

Figure 45 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Sites


Status	Name	Usage	Client	Tag	Site health	Device	Offline device	% Offline
Green	Site11	37.57 MB	0		Green	1	0	0.0 %
Red	Site09	0 bytes	0		Red	1	1	100.0 %
White	Site17	0 bytes	0		White	0	0	N/A
Red	Site04	0 bytes	0		Red	1	1	100.0 %
Green	Site25	12.09 GB	9	more test	Green	4	0	0.0 %
Green	Site05	204.27 MB	1		Green	1	0	0.0 %
Red	Site16	21.56 MB	0		Red	1	1	100.0 %
Red	Site01	0 bytes	0		Red	1	1	100.0 %
Red	Site14	0 bytes	0		Red	1	1	100.0 %
Red	Site30	11.36 GB	30		Red	6	1	16.7 %

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Sites

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tag	Select one or multiple sites and click this button to create a new tag for the sites or delete an existing tag.
Delete	Select the sites and click this button to remove it.
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of sites.
Sites	This shows the number of sites in this organization.
Over the last day	This shows how many clients are associated with the sites in this organization and the total amount of data transmitted or received by the clients in the past day.
Export	Click this button to save the site list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Status	This shows the status of Nebula Devices in the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: All Nebula Devices are online and have no alerts. Amber: Some Nebula Devices have alerts. Red: Some Nebula Devices are offline. Gray: All Nebula Devices have been offline for 7 days or more. White: No Nebula Devices.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the site.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the site.
Client	This shows the number of clients connected to Nebula Devices in the site.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag that is added to the site.
Site Health	This shows the percentage of uptime in a given time interval to indicate the site's network availability. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: 95 – 100% network uptime Dark green: 75 – 95% network uptime Brown: 50 – 75% network uptime Red: < 50% network uptime Grey: No uptime data

Table 32 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Sites (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Device	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices deployed in the site.
Offline device	This shows the number of Nebula Devices which are added to the site but not accessible by the NCC now.
% Offline	This shows what percentage of the connected clients are currently offline.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.2.1.2 Site tags

Click the **Site tags** tab in the **Overview** screen to view the tags created and added to the sites for monitoring or management purposes.


Figure 46 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Site tags



Client	Device	% Offline	Offline device	Offline site	Site	Status	Tag	Usage
10	5	0.0 %	0	0	1	●	more	7.93 GB
10	5	0.0 %	0	0	1	●	test	7.93 GB

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Site tags

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of tags.
Site tags	This shows the number of site tags created and added to the sites in this organization.
Over the last day	This shows the number of clients associated with the sites in this organization and the total amount of data transmitted or received by the clients in the past day.
Export	Click this button to save the tag list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Status	This shows the status of Nebula Devices in sites with the specified tag. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: All Nebula Devices are online and have no alerts. Amber: Some Nebula Devices have alerts. Red: Some Nebula Devices are offline. Gray: All Nebula Devices have been offline for 7 days or more. White: No Nebula Devices.
Tag	This shows the name of the specified tag.
Site	This shows the total number of sites with the specified tag.
Offline device	This shows the number of offline Nebula Devices in all sites with the specified tag.
Client	This shows the number of clients in sites with the specified tag.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data consumed in all sites with the specified tag.
Device	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices deployed to all sites with the specified tag.
Offline site	This shows the number of offline sites with the specified tag.
% Offline	This shows what percentage of all sites with the specified tag are currently offline.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.2.1.3 Devices

Click the **Devices** tab in the **Overview** screen to view the detailed information about Nebula Devices which are connected to the sites in the selected organization.

Figure 47 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Devices


Client	MAC address	Model	Name	Site	Status	Tag	Usage
0	B8EC:A3:B4:CD:9F	NSG50	B8.EC:A3.B4:CD:9F	Site11 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
0	B8EC:A3:B4:CC:67	NSG50	B8.EC:A3.B4:CC:67	Site09 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
0	B8EC:A3:B4:CF:B5	NSG50	B8.EC:A3.B4:CF:B5	Site04 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
9	8CE2B05C01FE	NSG50	Home GW	Site25 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
0	B8EC:A3:B4:CD:34	NSW200-28P	Office NSW200	Site25 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
3	B8B8F31A4675	NAP102	OfficeNAP102-MESH	Site25 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
5	40219784D713	NAP102	HomeNAP102	Site25 NSG_40_Sum	●	Home	2.61 GB
9	B8EC:A3:B4:7F:4D	NSW100-10P	Home NSW100	Site25 NSG_40_Sum	●		2.69 GB
1	B8EC:A3:B4:CD:87	NSG50	B8.EC:A3.B4:CD:87	Site05 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes
0	B8EC:A3:B4:CC:43	NSG50	B8.EC:A3.B4:CC:43	Site16 NSG_40_Sum	●		0 bytes

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Devices

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of connected Nebula Devices.
Devices	This shows the number of Nebula Devices assigned to the sites in this organization.
Over the last day	This shows the number of clients associated with the sites in this organization and the total amount of data transmitted or received by the clients in the past day.
Export	Click this button to save the Nebula Device list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Status	This shows the status of the Nebula Device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: The Nebula Device is online. Amber: The Nebula Device recently had alerts. Red: The Nebula Device was recently offline. Gray: The Nebula Device has been offline for more than 6 days.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Site	This shows the name of the site to which the Nebula Device is connected.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
Client	This shows the number of the clients which are currently connected to the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.

Table 34 Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Devices (continued)

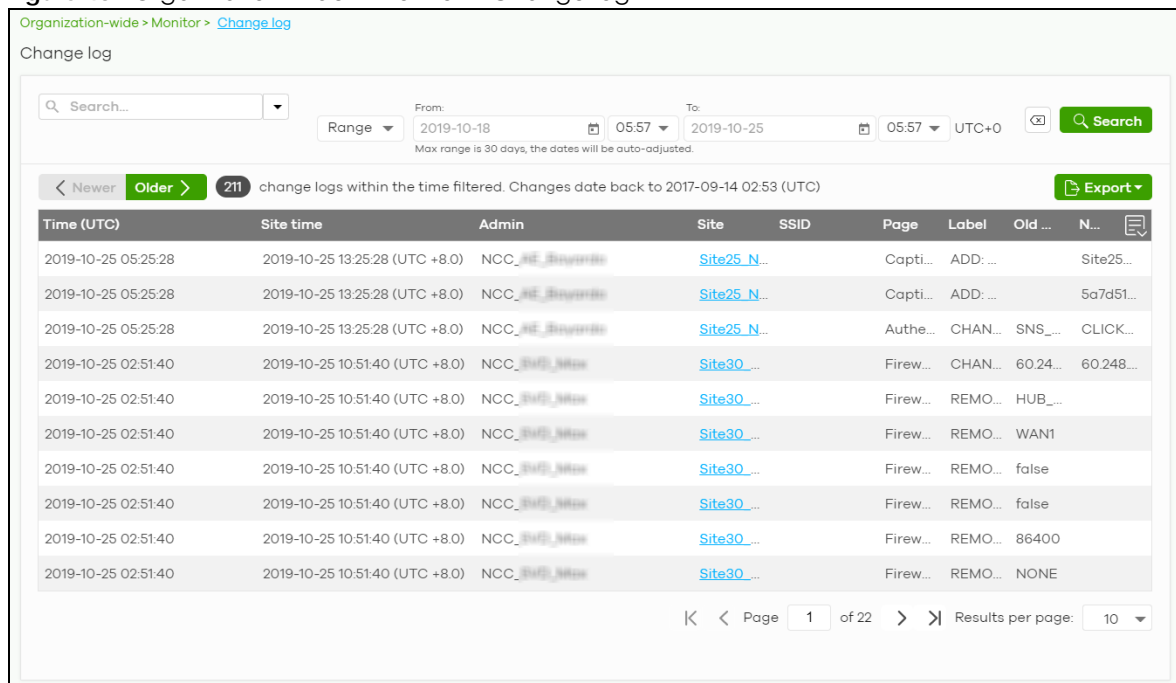
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Connectivity	This shows the Nebula Device connection status. The red time slot indicates the connection to the NCC is down, and the green time slot indicates the connection is up. Move the cursor over a time slot to see the actual date and time when a Nebula Device is connected or disconnected.
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.2.2 Change Log

Use this screen to view logged messages for changes in the specified organization. Click **Organization-wide > Monitor > Change log** to access this screen.

When the log is full, it deletes older entries one by one to make room for new ones.

Figure 48 Organization-wide > Monitor > Change log



Organization-wide > Monitor > [Change log](#)

Change log

Search... Range: 2019-10-18 05:57 To: 2019-10-25 05:57 UTC+0 Search

Max range is 30 days, the dates will be auto-adjusted.

< Newer Older > 211 change logs within the time filtered. Changes date back to 2017-09-14 02:53 (UTC) Export

Time (UTC)	Site time	Admin	Site	SSID	Page	Label	Old ...	N...
2019-10-25 05:25:28	2019-10-25 13:25:28 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site25_N...		Capti...	ADD: ...		Site25...
2019-10-25 05:25:28	2019-10-25 13:25:28 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site25_N...		Capti...	ADD: ...		5a7d51...
2019-10-25 05:25:28	2019-10-25 13:25:28 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site25_N...		Authe...	CHAN... SNS...		CLICK...
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	CHAN... 60.24...		60.248...
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... HUB...		
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... WAN1		
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... false		
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... false		
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... 86400		
2019-10-25 02:51:40	2019-10-25 10:51:40 (UTC +8.0)	NCC_...@...@...	Site30_...		Firew...	REMO... NONE		

Page 1 of 22 Results per page: 10

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Organization-wide > Monitor > Change log



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Click to enter one or more key words as the search criteria to filter the list of logs.
Range/Before	Select Range to set a time range or select Before to choose a specific date/time and the number of hours/minutes to display only the log messages generated within a certain period of time (before the specified date/time). The maximum allowable time range is 30 days.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
Reset filters 	Click this to return the search criteria to the previously saved time setting.

Table 35 Organization-wide > Monitor > Change log (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Newer/Older	Click to view a list of log messages with the most recent or oldest message displayed first.
	This shows the total number of the log messages that match the search criteria. It also shows the date and time the very first log was created.
Export	Click this button to save the log list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Time (UTC)	This shows the date and time in UTC+00:00 (or UTC+0) when the log was recorded. UTC is a standard time for use around the world (formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time or GMT). UTC is an international abbreviation that is neither French nor English. It means both "Temps Universel Coordonné" and "Coordinated Universal Time".
Site Time	This shows the date and time of the site, to which the change was applied, when the log was recorded.
Admin	This shows the name of the administrator who made the changes.
Site	This shows the name of the site to which the change was applied.
SSID	This shows the SSID name to which the change was applied.
Page	This shows the name of the NCC menu in which the change was made.
Label	This shows the reason for the log.
Old value	This shows the old setting that was discarded and overwritten with the new attribute value.
New value	This shows the new setting that was adopted.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to create new sites, register or unregister a Nebula Device, change organization general settings, and manage licenses, user accounts, administrator accounts or VPN members in the organization.

6.3.1 Organization Settings

Use this screen to change your general organization settings, such as the organization name and security. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Settings** to access this screen.

Figure 49 Organization-wide > Configure > Settings

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36 Organization-wide > Configure > Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the organization.
Country	Select the country where the organization is located. Note: This field is only for reference. It does not affect any other fields or features in NCC.
Security	
Idle timeout	Select ON and enter the number of minutes each user can be logged in and idle before the NCC automatically logs out the user. Select OFF if you do not want the NCC to log out idle users.

Table 36 Organization-wide > Configure > Settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Login IP ranges	Select ON and specify the IP address range of the computers from which an administrator is allowed to log into the NCC. Select OFF to allow any IP address of the computer from which an administrator can log into the NCC.
Import certificate	
Use my certificate	Select ON to import a certificate that can be used by connected Nebula Access Points in WPA2 authentication.
Name	Enter a name for the certificate (up to 64 letters).
File Path	Click to find the certificate file you want to upload.
Import	Click this button to save a new certificate to the NCC.
Password	Enter the certificate file's password.
Override device ownership	Select ON to prevent others from changing the ownership of the Nebula Device in your organization by simply scanning the QR code through the Nebula Mobile app. You can still transfer or unregister the Nebula Device through your myZyxel account.
Delete this organization	Click the Delete organization button to remove the organization when it does not have any sites, Nebula Devices or users. Note: You will be redirected to the Choose organization page after this organization is deleted.

6.3.2 Create Site

After an organization is created, click **Organization-wide > Configure > Create Site** to add a site (network) to your organization.

- 1 Enter a descriptive name of up to 64 printable characters for the site.
- 2 If you already have one or more than one sites in the organization and you want to copy the site settings of an existing one, select the **Clone from** check box and then the site name.

If you have created a configuration template (see [Section 6.3.7 on page 187](#)), you can select to bind the new site to the specified template.
- 3 Select the type of Security Gateway that you will add to the site (see [Table 1 on page 11](#) for the supported Security Gateways). You can skip this selection if you do NOT plan to add a Security Gateway at the moment.
- 4 Choose the time zone of the site's location.
- 5 Click **Create site** to add the new site to your organization.

Figure 50 Organization-wide > Configure > Create Site

Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.

Organization-wide > Configure > [Create site](#)

Create site

Site name:

Configuration:

- Default configuration
- Clone from
- Bind to template

Security Appliance type: [What is this?](#)

If either do not plan to use a Security Appliance or have not yet decided which Security Appliance you will use, you can skip this selection.

Local time zone:

Devices: Add devices from your organization's inventory or add them using serial number and MAC address.
All your devices are currently in use. You can [register](#) more devices to this site.

[Create site](#)

- You will be re-directed to the **Site-wide > Configure > Add devices** screen. Search and select the name of the registered Nebula Device that is to be added to this site. See [Section 7.2.5 on page 236](#) for information on adding Nebula Devices.

6.3.3 License & Inventory

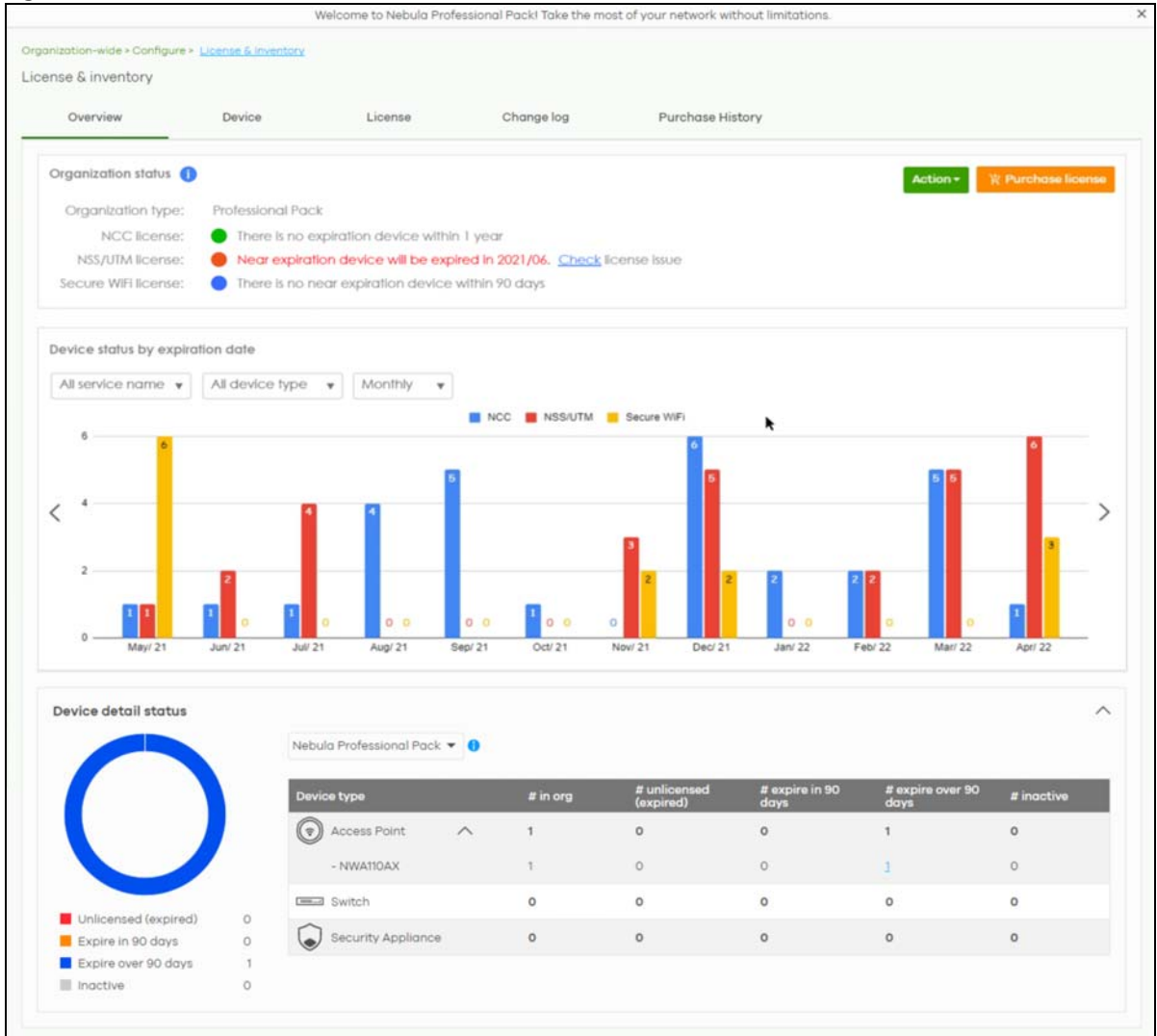
The following section describes license management screens in NCC.

Unused licenses can be transferred from a Nebula Device in an Organization to another Nebula Device in an Organization.

6.3.3.1 License & Inventory Overview Screen

Use these screens to view licenses and Nebula Devices in the organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview** to access this screen.

Figure 51 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 37 Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Overview

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Organization Status	
Action	<p>Click this button to add licenses and/or Nebula Devices to the organization. Choose one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Add more devices: Add new Nebula Devices to the organization, by serial number and MAC address. For details, see Section 6.3.3.2 on page 159. Add more licenses: Add new licenses to the organization, by license key. For details, see Section 6.3.3.3 on page 160. Install wizard: Add Nebula Devices and licenses to the organization, assign the licenses to the Nebula Devices, and then upgrade the organization if required. For details, see Section 6.3.3.4 on page 161.

Table 37 Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Overview (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Purchase License	<p>Click this button to go to a window that will ask if you wish to be redirected to the Zyxel Circle web site (if the NCC account has a Circle account).</p> <p>If you do not have a Circle account, you can do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select what license to purchase and set the target expiration date to keep the Pro/Plus tier features/services running. 2. You may export the list of required licenses to your computer. 3. After calculating the license to purchase, click the Zyxel license marketplace (Check out) button to complete your purchase. Purchased licenses are directly assigned to Nebula Device(s). <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: right;">☐ ✕</p> <p>Purchase License</p> <p>Before we start</p> <p>Requirement collecting</p> <p>Order items</p> <p>Summary</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; background-color: #fff9c4; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>If you are Zyxel partner and would like to do Subscription Alignment, please apply Circle program here</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> I will manage Nebula by myself, don't ask me again.</p> </div> <p>Organization status</p> <p>Organization type: Professional Pack</p> <p>NCC license: ● Device(s) with over 90 days but less than 1 year license.</p> <p>Security license: ● Device(s) expired or unlicensed.</p> <p>Secure WiFi license: ● Device(s) expired or unlicensed.</p> <p>CNP license: ● Device(s) expired or unlicensed.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Next Cancel</p> </div> <p>Unused licenses assigned to your organization will not be counted as it is not yet assigned to a Nebula Device.</p> <p>This button is available only for the Full (Delegated) administrator privilege or Owner administrator account with a registered Nebula Device(s).</p>
Upgrade Now	<p>Click this button to upgrade the organization to Plus or Pro tier.</p> <p>The button is only available if you have a Plus or Pro license for every Nebula Device in the organization.</p>
Downgrade Now	<p>Click this button to downgrade the organization from Plus or Pro to Base tier, or from Pro to Plus tier.</p> <p>All active NCC licenses in the organization will stay active and continue to count down to their expiry time.</p>
Organization type	<p>This shows the licensing tier of the organization. Possible values are: Base, Plus Pack, Professional Pack, and Trial.</p>
NCC license	<p>This shows whether there are any Nebula Devices with near expiring licenses.</p>
NSS/UTM license	<p>This shows whether the current site has an active NSS or UTM license.</p>
Secure WiFi license	<p>This shows whether the current site has an active Secure WiFi license. A Secure WiFi license unlocks the Remote AP feature. Remote AP allows users connected to an off-site (remote) AP to connect to on-site resources behind the Nebula Device through a secure IPsec VPN tunnel.</p>
Device status by expiration date	<p>Click this button to select the data to be shown in the graph. Choose one from each of the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All service name, Nebula Professional Pack, Nebula Plus Pack, Nebula Security Pack, UTM Security Pack, or Secure WiFi: select the category of licenses to display. • All device type, Access Point, Switch, or Security Gateway: select the category of Nebula Device to display. • Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly: select the period of time to display.
Device detail status	

Table 37 Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory > Overview (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
License type	Select the license type to filter your selection (Nebula Professional Pack, Nebula Plus Pack, Gold Security Pack, Nebula Security Pack, UTM Security Pack, Content Filter Pack, Secure WiFi, Connect & Protect).
Device type	This shows the category of Nebula Device (Access Point, Switch, Security Appliance, Mobile Router) and Nebula Device model.
# in org	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices of the specified category and model that are in the organization.
# unlicensed (expired)	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices of the specified category and model that have: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No NCC Pro or Plus license. An expired NCC Pro or Plus license.
# near expiration in 90 days	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices of the specified category and model that have an NCC Pro or Plus license that will expire within 90 days.
# expiration over 90 days	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices of the specified category and model that have an NCC Pro or Plus license that have more than 90 days before expiration.
# inactive	This shows the total number of Nebula Devices of the specified category and model that have an NCC Pro or Plus license that has not been activated.

6.3.3.2 Add Devices Screen

Use this screen to add Nebula Devices to an organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview > Action > Add more devices** to access this screen.


Figure 52 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add devices

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add devices

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
template	Click this to download an XLSX file that you can use as a template to import a large number of Nebula Devices at once. Follow the instructions and formatting in the template to add the Nebula Device's serial numbers and MAC addresses.
import	Click this to upload a completed template XLSX file and import all Nebula Devices in the file.
MAC address	Enter the MAC address of the new Nebula Device.
Serial Number	Enter the serial number of the new Nebula Device.

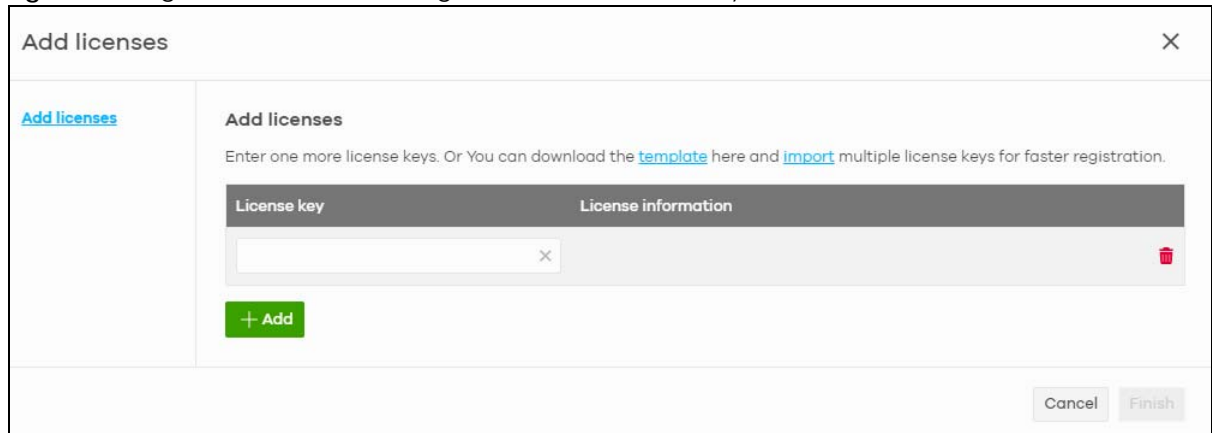
Table 38 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add devices (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device being added.
License info	This shows the type of NCC license activated on the Nebula Device, if there is one.
Expiration date	This shows the expiration date of the NCC license activated on the Nebula Device, if there is one.
Assign licenses from inventory	Click here to assign unassigned licenses already in the organization to the Nebula Device. Note: If the organization is a Pro or Plus tier, you must assign a Pro or Plus license to the Nebula Device within 15 days.
	Click the remove icon to delete the entry.
Add another device	Click this to add another Nebula Device to the organization.
Acknowledge	Select this to confirm that your NCC account will be the owner of the new Nebula Devices.
Finish	Click this to add the Nebula Devices to the organization.
Cancel	Click this to close the screen without saving.

6.3.3.3 Add Licenses Screen

Use this screen to add licenses to an organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview > Action > Add more licenses** to access this screen.

Figure 53 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add licenses



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add licenses


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
template	Click this to download an XLSX file that you can use as a template to import a large number of licenses at once. Follow the instructions and formatting in the template to add the license keys.
import	Click this to upload a completed template XLSX file and import all licenses in the file.
License key	Enter the license key of the new license.
License information	This shows the license type and validity period of the license being added.
	Click the remove icon to delete the entry.
Add	Click this to add another license to the organization.

Table 39 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview: Add licenses (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Finish	Click this to add the license to the organization.
Cancel	Click this to close the screen without saving.

6.3.3.4 Install Wizard

Use this wizard to add licenses and Nebula Devices to an organization, assign licenses to the new Nebula Devices, and then upgrade the organization if required. Follow the steps below to use the wizard.

- 1 Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Overview > Action > Install wizard**. After the wizard window opens, click **Next**.

- 2 Add the MAC address and serial number of one or more Nebula Devices, select **Acknowledge**, and then click **Next**. For more information on this page, see [Section 6.3.3.2 on page 159](#).

- 3 Add the license keys of one or more licenses, and then click **Next**. For more information on this page, see [Section 6.3.3.3 on page 160](#).

- 4 NCC automatically tries to assign an unused license to each matching Nebula Device. Reassign unused licenses for each Nebula Device manually by clicking **Select # of license**. Then click **Next**.

Devices	Sites	Device tags	Model	Serial number	MAC address	Expiration date	Select
BC:CF:4F:E3:7C:BC	ZyNet TW		NWA110AX	S202L4524S202	BC:CF:4F:E3:7C:BC	NCC 2025-08-17 -> 2027-08-18	Nebula Pro

- 5 If the organization is on the base tier and you have added sufficient licenses for all Nebula Devices, you are given the option to upgrade to the Pro or Plus tier. Select **Yes** or **No**, and then click **Finish**.

6.3.3.5 License & Inventory Device Screen

Use these screen to view and manage Nebula Devices in the organization. Click **Organization-wide** > **Configure** > **License & Inventory** > **Device** to access this screen.

Figure 54 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Device

Organization-wide > Configure > License & inventory

License & inventory

Overview **Devices** Licenses Change log Purchase History

1 Access Point 0 Switch 1 Security Appliance 1 Mobile Router

Actions: In use Unused Both Search... 3 devices. + Add Export

Device	Device type	Site	Model	Serial number	MAC address	Device tag	Claim date	Unused / In use	Country	License expiration date	License info
<input type="checkbox"/> BC:CF:4F:E3:7C:99	Access Point	ZyNet.TW	NWA110AX	S202L45240204	BC:CF:4F:E3:7C:99		2021-10-05	In use		2025-08-17	Nebula Professi
<input type="checkbox"/> B8:EC:A3:13:72:F4	Firewall	ZyNet.TW	USG FLEX 500	S162L45290122	B8:EC:A3:13:72:F4		2021-10-01	In use		2023-11-14	Nebula Professi
<input type="checkbox"/> D8:EC:E5:20:80:56	Mobile Router	ZyNet.TW	NR7101	S210Z45007757	D8:EC:E5:20:80:56		2022-01-10	In use		2023-01-11	Nebula Professi

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Device

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
N Access Point	This shows the total number of access points (N) in the organization.
N Switch	This shows the total number of switches (N) in the organization.
N Security Appliance	This shows the total number of Security Gateway devices (N) in the organization.
N Mobile Router	This shows the total number of Mobile Router devices (N) in the organization.

Table 40 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Device (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
<p>Actions</p>	<p>Select one or more Nebula Devices and then click this button to perform one of the following actions:</p> <p>Change organization: Moves the Nebula Device to an organization. The organizations must have the same owners.</p> <p>Change site assignment: Moves the selected Nebula Devices to a site, or remove them from their current site while leaving them in the organization.</p> <p>Note: When you change the site for a Security Firewall (see Table 1 on page 11 for information on the supported Security Firewall devices), select the deployment method for management by Nebula (see Step 6: Set up the Deployment Method on page 48 for more information), configure the WAN settings and choose the installation method.</p> <p>Remove from organization: Remove the Nebula Devices from NCC. You can manage the Nebula Devices in standalone mode, or re-add them to NCC later.</p> <p>Assign license: Assign licenses to the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>Undo assign: Unlink the inactive licenses from the associated Nebula Devices. After unlinking, the license will be categorized as unused in Inventory. An inactive license is a license that has been assigned to a Nebula Device but is not yet in use or queued.</p> <p>Transfer license: Moves the unused licenses linked to a Nebula Device to another Nebula Device. Nebula Devices can be in the same organization or in a different organization. The Nebula Devices must have the same owner. Bundled, Trial, and Promotion licenses cannot be transferred.</p> <p>Purchase license: Select what license to purchase and target expiration date to keep the Pro/Plus tier features/services running. You may export the list of required licenses to your computer. Then click the Zyxel license marketplace (Check out) button to complete your purchase.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: right;">☐ ×</p> <p>Purchase License</p> <p>Requirement collecting</p> <p>Order items</p> <p>Summary</p> <p>Please select license and choose target expiration date. NCC will calculate # of licenses.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nebula Pro/Plus Pack</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Nebula Professional Pack 2026-08-18</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Nebula Plus Pack</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Connect & Protect Plus</p> <p>Note: Calculator will not consider those unused license in stock.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Next Cancel</p> </div> <p>Unused licenses assigned to your organization will not count as it is not yet assigned to a Nebula Device.</p> <p>This button is available only for the Organization (Delegated) or Owner administrator account with a registered Nebula Device(s).</p>
<p>In use / Unused / Both</p>	<p>Select to display the Nebula Device currently in a site (In use), not current (Unused), or show all (Both).</p>
<p>Search</p>	<p>Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Devices.</p>
<p>+ Add</p>	<p>Add one or more new Nebula Devices to the organization, by entering the Nebula Device's MAC address and serial number. For details, see Section 6.3.3.2 on page 159.</p>
<p>Export</p>	<p>Click this button to save the Nebula Device list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.</p>
	<p>Select an entry's check box to select a specific Nebula Device. Otherwise, select the check box in the table heading row to select all Nebula Devices.</p>

Table 40 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Device (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Device	This shows the hostname of the Nebula Device.
Device type	This shows the category of Nebula Device (Access Point, Switch, Security Appliance, Firewall, Mobile Router) and Nebula Device model.
Site	This shows the site that the Nebula Device is currently in. If the Nebula Device is not in any site, the value is blank.
Model	This shows the Nebula Device's model.
Serial Number	This shows the Nebula Device's serial number.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device's first Ethernet port.
Device tag	This shows the tag created and added to the Nebula Device.
Claim date	<p>This shows the date on which the Nebula Device was added to NCC. If the Security Firewall has NOT yet connected to NCC (see Table 1 on page 11 for the list of Security Firewalls):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Native mode. Click this button and select Nebula Native mode in the Deployment Method. Follow the instructions to connect the Security Firewall to NCC. • Waiting ZTP will be shown if Native mode is not available. Click the Waiting ZTP button and select Zero Touch Provisioning in Deployment Method to configure the ZTP settings.
Unused / In use	This shows Unused if the Nebula Device is not assigned to a site, or In use if the Nebula Device is currently in a site.
Country	This shows the country in which the Nebula Device is located.
License expiration date	This shows the date on which the Nebula Device's NCC license will expire.
License info	<p>This shows the type of NCC license assigned to the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Note: Move the pointer over this field to see information about all licenses associated with this Nebula Device.</p>
Action	<p>Select one or more Nebula Devices and then click this button to perform one of the following actions:</p> <p>Change organization: Moves the Nebula Device to an organization. The organizations must have the same owners.</p> <p>Change site assignment: Moves the selected Nebula Devices to a selected site, or removes them from their current site while leaving them in the organization.</p> <p>Note: When you change the site for a Security Firewall (see Table 1 on page 11 for information on the supported Security Firewall devices), select the deployment method for management by Nebula (see Step 6: Set up the Deployment Method on page 48 for more information), configure the WAN settings and choose the installation method.</p> <p>Remove from organization: Remove the Nebula Devices from NCC. You can manage the Nebula Devices in standalone mode, or re-add them to NCC later.</p> <p>Assign license: Assign unassigned licenses to the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>Undo assign: Unlink the inactive licenses from the associated Nebula Devices. After unlinking, the license will be categorized as unused in Inventory. An inactive license is a license that has been assigned to a Nebula Device but is not yet in use or queued.</p> <p>Transfer license: Moves unused licenses linked from one Nebula Device to another Nebula Device. The Nebula Devices can be in the same organization or in a different organization. The Nebula Devices must have the same owner. Bundled, Trial, and Promotion licenses cannot be transferred.</p>

6.3.3.6 License & Inventory License Screen

Use these screen to view and manage licenses in the organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > License** to access this screen.

Figure 55 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > License

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > License

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
N assigned	This shows the total number of licenses (N) in the organization that are assigned to a Nebula Device and activated.
N unused (Pro Pack, 1MO/1YR/ 2YR/4YR/7YR) or N unused (Plus Pack, 1MO/1YR/ 2YR)	This shows the total number of Pro/Plus Pack licenses (N) in the organization that are not assigned to a Nebula Device.
N unused (UTM Pack, 1MO/1YR/ 2YR)	This shows the total number of UTM Security Pack licenses (N) in the organization that are not assigned to a Nebula Device.

Table 41 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > License (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Actions	<p>Select one or more Nebula Devices and then click this button to perform one of the following actions:</p> <p>Change organization: Moves the selected licenses to an organization. The organizations must have the same owners.</p> <p>Assign License: Assign the selected licenses to one or more Nebula Devices. Only the licenses applicable for the Nebula Device can be selected.</p> <p>Undo assign: Unlink the inactive licenses from the associated Nebula Devices. After unlinking, the license will be categorized as unused in Inventory. An inactive license is a license that has been assigned to a Nebula Device but is not yet in use or queued.</p> <p>Transfer license: Moves the unused licenses linked to a Nebula Device to another Nebula Device. The Nebula Devices can be in the same organization or in a different organization. The Nebula Devices must have the same owner. Bundled, Trial, and Promotion licenses cannot be transferred.</p>
Search	Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of licenses.
N licenses	This shows the total assigned and unassigned licenses in the organization.
+ Add	Add one or more new licenses to the organization, by entering their license keys. For details, see Section 6.3.3.3 on page 160 .
Export	Click this button to save the license list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
License Key	This shows the key of license, including bundled licenses.
Service	This shows the service that license is for, for example "Nebula Professional Pack".
License states	<p>This shows the current status of the license:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Active: The license is assigned to a specific Nebula Device and activated. • Inactive: The license is assigned to a specific Nebula Device but not activated. • Expired: The license is past its validity. • Queued: The license is assigned to a specific Nebula Device, and the license is waiting for the currently active license to expire. • Unused: The license is not assigned to a specific Nebula Device.
License expiration date	<p>This shows the date on which the license will expire.</p> <p>Queued means there are multiple licenses assigned to the Nebula Device, and the license is waiting for the currently active license to expire.</p>
Remaining days	This shows how days remain until the license expires.
Claim date	<p>This shows the date on which the license was added to NCC. If the Security Firewall has NOT yet connected to NCC:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Native mode. Click this button and select Nebula Native mode in Deployment Method. Follow the instructions to connect the Security Firewall to NCC. • Waiting ZTP will be shown if Native mode is not available. Click the Waiting ZTP button and select Zero Touch Provisioning in Deployment Method to configure the ZTP settings.
Activate date	This shows the date on which the license was activated.
Associated device	This shows the name and model of the Nebula Device that the license is assigned to.

Table 41 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > License (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Associated site	This shows the name of the site that the license is being used in. Click the site to go to its dashboard.
Action	<p>Click this button to perform the following actions:</p> <p>Change organization: Moves the selected licenses to an organization. The organizations must have the same owners.</p> <p>Assign License: Assign the selected licenses to one or more Nebula Devices. Only the licenses applicable for the Nebula Device can be selected.</p> <p>Undo assign: Unlink the inactive licenses from the associated Nebula Devices. After unlinking, the license will be categorized as unused in Inventory. An inactive license is a license that has been assigned to a Nebula Device but is not yet in use or queued.</p> <p>Transfer license: Moves the unused licenses linked to a Nebula Device to another Nebula Device. The Nebula Devices can be in the same organization or in a different organization. The Nebula Devices must have the same owner. Bundled, Trial, and Promotion licenses cannot be transferred.</p>

6.3.3.7 License & Inventory Change Log Screen



Use this screen to view a record of Nebula Device and license actions within the organization. The log also shows the change in state of the organization, as a before and after, as a result of each action. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Change log** to access this screen.

Figure 56 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Change log

Date and time	Action	Before	After	Admin
2021-03-31 08:30:52	Downgraded license(s)DOWNGRADED	NCC Pro	NCC Base	
2021-03-31 08:00:55	Removed device(s) # removed from ORG-Nebula_Org			
2021-03-31 08:00:54	Removed device(s) # removed from SITE-Site01			
2021-03-31 08:00:53	Upgraded license(s)UPGRADED	NCC Base	NCC Pro	
2021-03-31 07:34:05	Added device(s) # added to SITE-Site01			MS Wang
2021-03-31 07:33:17	Added device(s) # added to ORG-Nebula_Org			MS Wang
2021-03-31 07:33:17	Downgraded license(s)DOWNGRADED	NCC Pro	NCC Base	
2021-03-31 07:30:56	Removed device(s) # removed from ORG-Nebula_Org			
2021-03-31 07:30:55	Removed device(s) # removed from SITE-Site01			
2021-03-31 07:30:53	Upgraded license(s)UPGRADED	NCC Base	NCC Pro	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

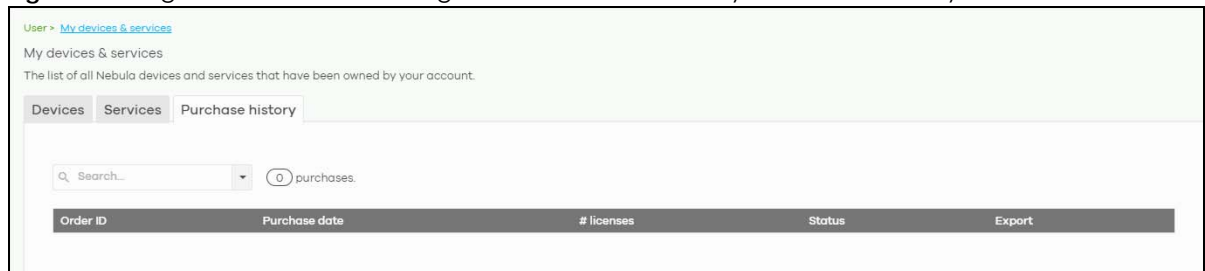
Table 42 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Change Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Keyword	Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of log entries.
Range / Before	Select a filtering option, set a date, and then click Search to filter log entries by date. Range: Display log entries from the first specified date to the second specified date. Before: Display log entries from the beginning of the log to the selected date.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
Reset filters 	Click this to return the search criteria to the previously saved time setting.
Newer/Older	Click to view the list of log messages with the most recent or oldest message displayed first.
	This shows the total number of the log messages that match the search criteria. It also shows the date and time the very first log was created.
Export	Click this button to save the log list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Date and time	This shows the date and time in UTC+00:00 (or UTC+0) when the log was recorded. UTC is a standard time for use around the world (formerly known as Greenwich Mean Time or GMT). UTC is an international abbreviation that is neither French nor English. It means both "Temps Universel Coordonné" and "Coordinated Universal Time".
Action	This shows the action that triggered the log entry.
Before	This shows the old setting or state that was overwritten with the new value.
After	This shows the new setting or state.
Admin	This shows the name of the NCC administrator account that made the changes.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3.3.8 License & Inventory Purchase History Screen

Use this screen to view a record of Nebula Device license purchased within the organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Purchase History** to access this screen.

Figure 57 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Purchase History



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Purchase History

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Keyword	Enter a keyword or specify one or more filter criteria to filter the list of purchased license entries.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
N purchases	This displays the total purchased licenses in the organization.
Order ID	This displays a unique code that identifies the order. Clicking this link will take you to the Marketplace > Order History screen.

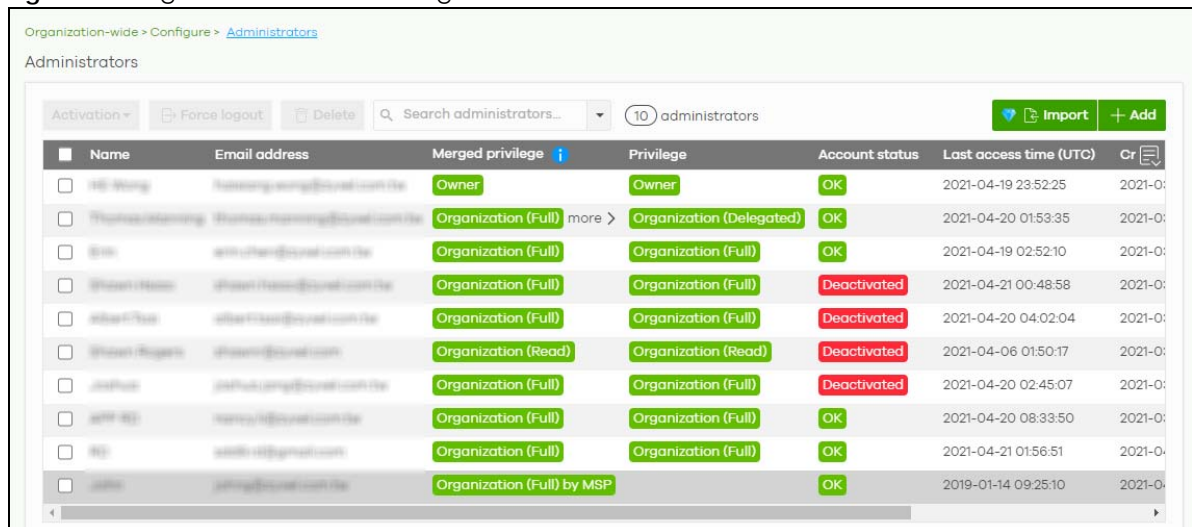
Table 43 Organization-wide > Configure > License & Inventory > Purchase History (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Purchase date	This displays the date that the order was created.
# licenses	This displays the number of licenses purchased for the specified license type.
Purchase by	This displays the email address of the NCC account that created the order.
Status	This displays the current status of the order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Done: The order has been paid for and the license was successfully activated on the target Nebula Device. Processing: The license activation on the target Nebula Device is still under process. Failed: The license was not successfully activated on the target Nebula Device.
Export	Click this to download the order details as a CSV or XML file to your computer. This includes the Order ID and each license's assigned device information.

6.3.4 Administrators

Use this screen to view, manage and create administrator accounts for the specified organization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators** to access this screen.

Figure 58 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators



The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 44 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Activation	Click this button to Activate/Deactivate the selected accounts. Then click Update .
Force logout	Click this button to force the selected accounts to log out of the NCC.
Delete	Click this button to remove the selected accounts.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of administrator accounts.
administrators	This shows the number of administrator accounts in the list.

Table 44 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Change owner	<p>This button is only available if you are the organization owner.</p> <p>Click this button to transfer ownership of the organization to another user account. The new owner account must be an organization full administrator.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Change organization owner ✕</p> <hr/> <p>Please select current organization admin to become new owner.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> Tom - Thomas.Turning@cytel.com.br ▼ </div> <p><input type="checkbox"/> This action will cause you lose ownership rights include Nebula devices under this organization. Do you want to continue?</p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;"> No Yes </div> </div> <p>After transferring ownership, NCC performs the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes your account from organization owner to organization full administrator. Transfers all Nebula Devices and licenses in the organization to the new owner. Sends the new owner an email, notifying them of the change.
Import	<p>Click this button to create administrator accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new administrators in an Excel file.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Bulk Import ✕</p> <hr/> <p>"Bulk Import" supports for faster inputting. Please follow this template to import</p> <div style="border: 1px dashed #ccc; padding: 10px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-bottom: 5px;">Browse</div> <p>Or drag file here...</p> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;"> Close </div> </div>
Add	Click this button to create a new administrator account. See Section 6.3.4.1 on page 172 .
Name	This shows the name of the administrator account.
Email address	This shows the email address of the administrator account.
Merged privilege	<p>This shows the final privilege the account has in the organization, when organization privileges configured on different screens are combined and prioritized. Organization privileges can be configured on the following screens; the highest privilege level takes priority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Admins MSP > Configure > Admins & teams > Teams Group-wide > Configure > Administrators Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators <p>For more information, see Section 4.6.0.1 on page 121.</p>

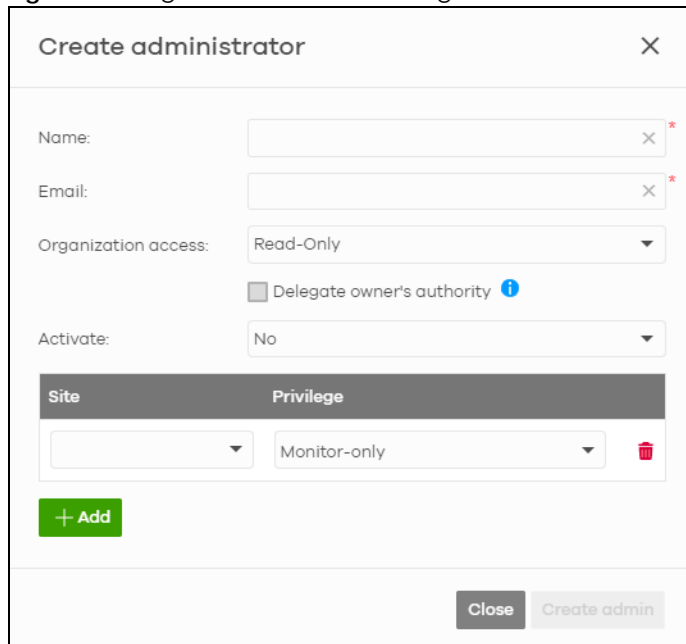
Table 44 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrators (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Privilege	<p>This shows whether the administrator account has read-only, monitor-only, guest ambassador, or read and write (full) access to the organization and sites.</p> <p>Installer indicates that the administrator account can register Nebula Devices at a site.</p> <p>Owner indicates that the administrator account is the creator of the organization, who has full access to that organization and cannot be deleted by other administrators.</p> <p>Organization (Delegated) means that the administrator account has delegated owner privileges. This type of account can perform all of the same actions as the organization owner, except for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete organization • Transfer organization ownership • Assign delegate owner privileges to an administrator account.
Account status	This shows whether the administrator account has been validated (OK). It shows Deactivated if an administrator account has been created but cannot be used. This may happen since you can only have up to five active administrator account on Nebula (free).
Last access time	This shows the last date and time traffic was sent from the administrator account.
Create date	This shows the date and time the administrator account was created.
Status change date	This shows the last date and time the administrator account status was changed.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3.4.1 Create/Update Administrator

In the **Organization-wide > Configure > Administrator** screen, click the **Add** button to create a new administrator account or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 59 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrator: Create/Update administrator



The screenshot shows a 'Create administrator' dialog box with the following elements:

- Title:** Create administrator (with a close 'X' icon)
- Name:** Text input field with a clear 'X' icon and a red asterisk indicating it is required.
- Email:** Text input field with a clear 'X' icon and a red asterisk indicating it is required.
- Organization access:** Dropdown menu currently set to 'Read-Only'.
- Delegate owner's authority:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked, with an information icon to its right.
- Activate:** Dropdown menu currently set to 'No'.
- Site:** A dropdown menu with a clear 'X' icon.
- Privilege:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Monitor-only', with a clear 'X' icon and a red trash can icon to its right.
- Buttons:** A green '+ Add' button at the bottom left, and 'Close' and 'Create admin' buttons at the bottom right.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 45 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrator: Create/Update administrator

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the administrator account.
Email	Enter the email address of the administrator account, which is used to log into NCC. This field is read-only if you are editing an existing account.
Organization access	Set the administrator account's access to the organization. When an administrator account has read and write (Full) access, the administrator can create or delete other administrator accounts, create or delete a site, and add or renew licenses for Nebula Devices in the organization. Note: The administrator account you use to create an organization is the organization creator account that has full access to that organization. The organization creator account cannot be deleted by other organization administrators. If you select Read-only , the administrator account can be the organization administrator (that has no write access to the organization) and also be a site administrator. If you select None , the administrator account can only be a site administrator.
Delegate owner's authority	This setting is only available when Organization access is set to Full . Select this setting to grant delegate owner privileges to an organization full administrator account. An account with delegate owner privileges can perform all of the same actions as the organization owner, except for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete organization • Transfer organization ownership • Assign delegate owner privileges to an administrator account.
Activate	Select Yes to enable the account or No to temporarily disable the account.
YES, I want to do it.	The check box displays only when an administrator that has full access to the organization selects No in the Activate field to disable his/her own account. Note: After you select the check box and click Update admin , you lose administrator privileges and cannot manage the organization again. If you have other organizations created on your account, you can click and select another organization to manage in the MSP Portal screen.
Site	This field is available only when you set the account's organization access to Read-only or None . Select the site to which you want to set the account's access. You can also select the site tag created using the Organization-wide > Monitor > Overview: Sites screen.
Privilege	This field is available only when you set the account's organization access to Read-only or None . Set the administrator account's access to the site. You can select from Read-only , Monitor-only , Guest Ambassador , Installer and Full (read and write). An administrator account that has Guest Ambassador access can create, remove or manage guest accounts using the Cloud Authentication screen (see Section 6.3.5 on page 174). Installer access allows an administrator to register Nebula Devices at this site.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry in order to configure the account's access to another site.

Table 45 Organization-wide > Configure > Administrator: Create/Update administrator (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create admin/ Update admin	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

6.3.5 Cloud Authentication

Use this screen to view and manage the user accounts which are authenticated using the NCC user database, rather than an external RADIUS server. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication** to access this screen.

Note: The changes you made in this screen apply to all sites in the organization. To change the cloud authentication settings for a specific site, go to **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication** (see [Section 7.2.7 on page 240](#)).

6.3.5.1 User Account Types

NCC has the following types of user accounts. For details on using these accounts for WiFi and network authentication, see [Section 12.3.2 on page 476](#).

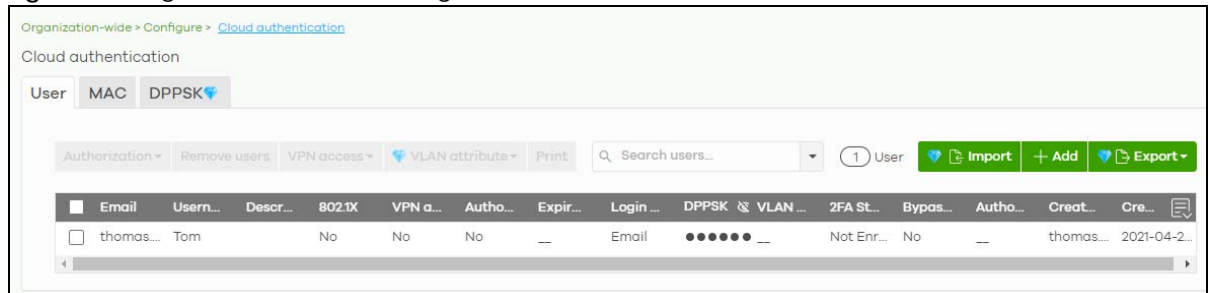
Table 46 Cloud Authentication: User Account Types

ACCOUNT TYPE	DESCRIPTION	AUTHENTICATION METHODS
User	The user account can gain access to the networks by authenticating using a pre-created user name and password, or their email address. This type of user account also supports DPPSK and two-factor authentication.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> WiFi authentication (WPA-Enterprise) Network access through captive portal VPN Access WiFi authentication + network authentication through DPPSK
MAC	The Nebula Device account that can gain access to the networks by authenticating using its MAC address.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> MAC-based Nebula Device authentication (combined with DPPSK)
DPPSK	A user that can gain access to the network using a unique dynamic Personal Pre-Shared key that is linked to their user account.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> WiFi authentication + network authentication through DPPSK

6.3.5.2 Cloud Authentication User Screen

Use this screen to view and manage regular NCC network user accounts. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User** to access this screen.

Figure 60 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Note: Some of the actions on this screen are only available if your administrator account has full access to the organization.

Table 47 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User

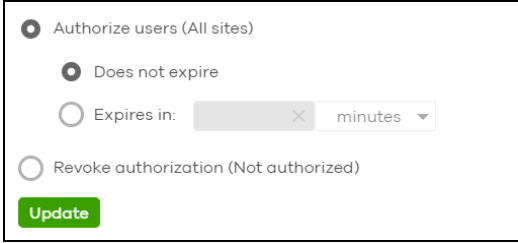
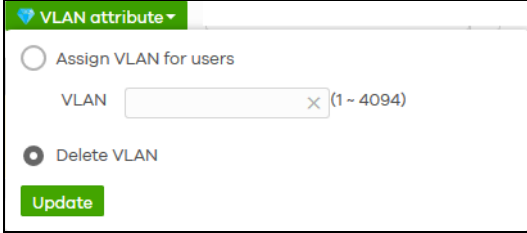

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorization	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts.</p> 
Remove users	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.</p>
VPN access	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure whether the accounts can be used to connect to the organization's networks through VPN.</p>
VLAN attribute	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to assign the users to a specific VLAN ID, or clear the VLAN ID. Then click Update.</p> 
Print	<p>Click this button to print information about each selected user account, such as their user name and password.</p>
Search users	<p>Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.</p>
N User	<p>This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.</p>
Import	<p>Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file.</p> this template to import'. Below is a dashed box containing a 'Browse' button and the text 'Or drag file here...'. At the bottom right is a 'Close' button." data-bbox="306 721 761 888"/>

Table 47 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this button to create a new user account. See Section 6.3.5.3 on page 176 .
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
Username	This shows the user name of the user account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
802.1X	This shows whether 802.1X (WPA-Enterprise) authentication is enabled on the account.
VPN access	This shows whether the accounts can be used to connect to the organization's networks through VPN.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized or not (No). If the user is authorized, it shows All sites or the name of the site to which the user is allowed access.
Expire in (UTC)	This shows the date and time that the account expires. This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account. This shows Never if the account never expires. This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.
Login by	This shows whether the user needs to log in with the email address and/or user name.
DPPSK	This shows the account's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK), if one is set.
VLAN assignment	This field is available only when the account type is set to User . This shows the VLAN assigned to the user.
2FA Status	This shows whether the account has set up two-factor authentication yet.
Bypass 2FA	This shows whether the account is allowed to bypass two-factor authentication, if two-factor authentication is enabled on a captive portal or VPN gateway.
Authorized by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that authorized the user. If the account has been authorized by different admins across different sites, it shows Multiple value .
Created by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that created the user.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3.5.3 Create/Update User Account

In the **Site-wide** or **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User** screen, click the **Add** button to create a new user account or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 61 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User: Create/Update user

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User: Create/Update user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Account type	This shows the type of the user account.
Email	Enter the email address of the user account, which is used to log into the networks.
Username	Enter a user name for this account. Note: This field is optional if Login by is set to Email .
Description	Enter a descriptive name for the account.
Password	Enter the password of this user account. It can consist of 4 – 31 alphanumeric characters. You can click Generate to have NCC create a password for the account automatically.
DPPSK	Enter a dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK) for this DPPSK user account, if you want to be able to authenticate using DPPSK in addition to a user name and password. It can consist of 8 – 31 alphanumeric characters. You can click Generate to have the NCC create a DPPSK for the account automatically.
802.1X	Select this to allow the account to be used for single sign-on (SSO) network and WiFi authentication using 802.1X (WPA-Enterprise).
VPN Access	Select this to allow the account to be used to connect to the organization's networks through VPN.

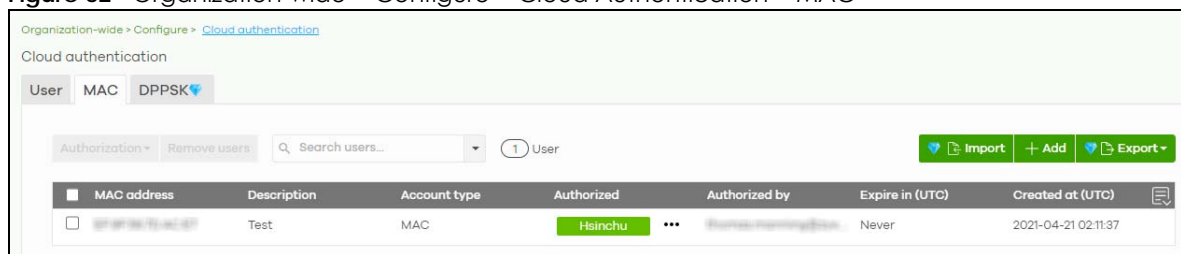
Table 48 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User: Create/Update user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorized	Set whether you want to authorize the user of this account. You can select to authorize the user's access to All Sites or Specified Sites in the organization. If you select Specified Sites , a field displays allowing you to specify the sites to which the user access is authorized.
Expire in	This field is available only when the user is authorized. Click Change to specify the number of minutes/hours/days/weeks the user can be logged into the network in one session before the user of this account has to log in again. Note: If the account has been set with different Expire in values across different sites, it will show Multiple value and the Change link. Otherwise, select Never and the user of this account will never be logged out.
Login by	Select whether the user needs to log in with the email address and/or user name.
VLAN assignment	This allows you to assign a user to a specific VLAN based on the user credentials instead of using a RADIUS server.
Bypass two-factor authentication	This shows whether the account is allowed to bypass two-factor authentication, if two-factor authentication is enabled on a captive portal or VPN gateway.
Email account information to user	Select this to send a copy of the information on this screen to the account email address, after the account has been created.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Print	Click this button to print the account information.
Create user	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

6.3.5.4 Cloud Authentication MAC Screen

Use this screen to view and manage NCC Nebula Device user accounts, used for MAC-based authorization. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC** to access this screen.

Figure 62 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC



The screenshot shows the 'Cloud authentication' interface with the 'MAC' tab selected. It features a search bar, 'Import', 'Add', and 'Export' buttons, and a table of user accounts.

MAC address	Description	Account type	Authorized	Authorized by	Expire in (UTC)	Created at (UTC)
00:00:00:00:00:00	Test	MAC	Heinchu	Heinchu	Never	2021-04-21 02:11:37

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Note: Some of the actions on this screen are only available if your administrator account has full access to the organization.

Table 49 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC

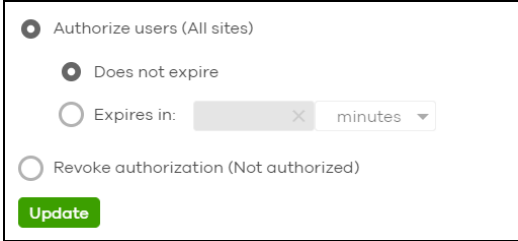
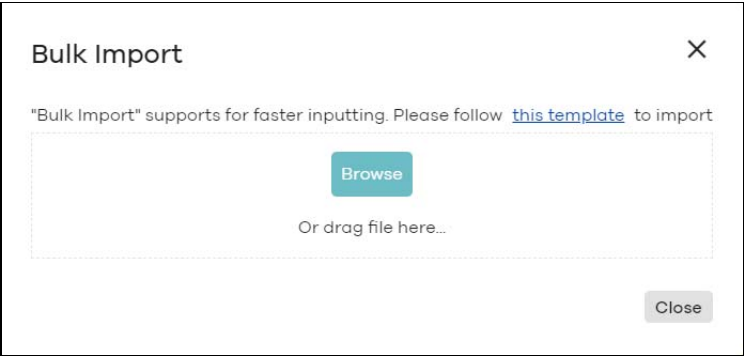

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorization	<p>Select one or more than one account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts.</p> 
Remove users	Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.
Search users	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.
N User	This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.
Import	<p>Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file.</p> 
Add	Click this button to create a new user account. See Section 6.3.5.5 on page 180 .
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the user account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
Account type	This shows the type of user account: USER, MAC, or DPPSK.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized or not (No). If the user is authorized, it shows All sites or the name of the site to which the user is allowed access.
Authorized by	<p>This shows the email address of the administrator account that authorized the user.</p> <p>If the account has been authorized by different admins across different sites, it shows Multiple value.</p>

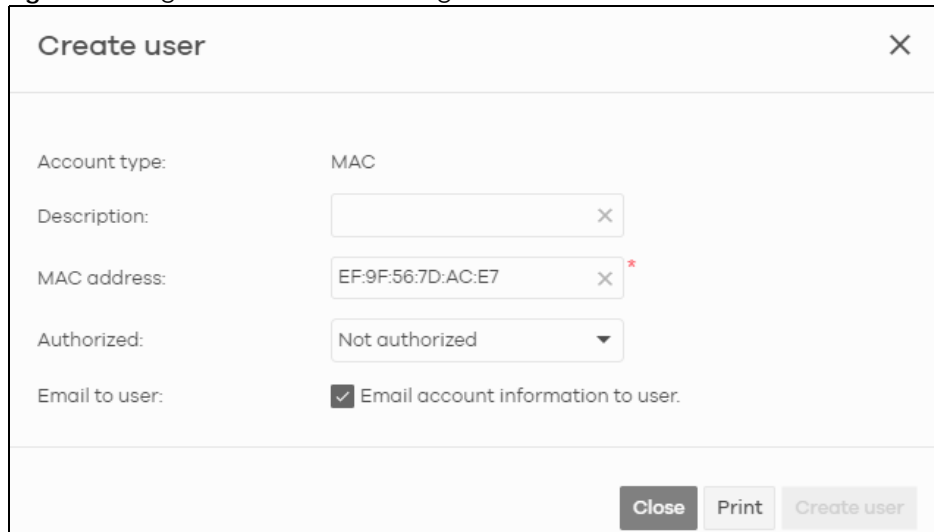
Table 49 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Expire in (UTC)	This shows the date and time that the account expires. This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account. This shows Never if the account never expires. This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3.5.5 Create/Update MAC Account

In the **Site-wide** or **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC** screen, click the **Add** button to create a new user account or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 63 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC: Create/Update user



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC: Create/Update user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Account type	This shows the type of the user account.
Description	Enter a descriptive name for the account.
MAC address	Enter a MAC address for this account.
Authorized	Set whether you want to authorize the user of this account. You can select to authorize the user's access to All Sites or Specified Sites in the organization. If you select Specified Sites , a field displays allowing you to specify the sites to which the user access is authorized.
Email account information to user	Select this to send a copy of the information on this screen to the account email address after the account has been created.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.

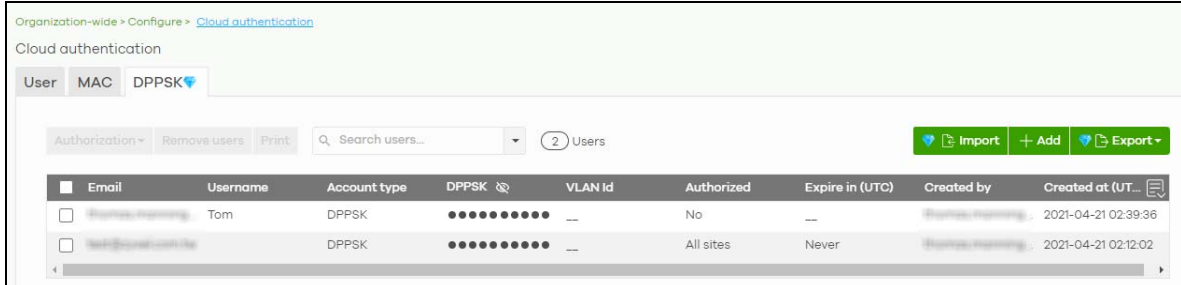
Table 50 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC: Create/Update user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Print	Click this button to print the account information.
Create user	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

6.3.5.6 Cloud Authentication DPPSK Screen

Use this screen to view and manage DPPSK network user accounts. Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK** to access this screen.

Figure 64 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK

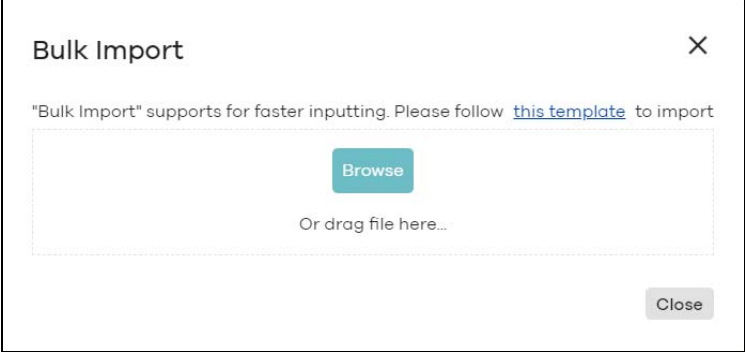



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorization	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorize users (All sites)</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Does not expire</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Expires in: <input type="text" value=""/> minutes</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Revoke authorization (Not authorized)</p> <p><input type="button" value="Update"/></p> </div>
Remove users	Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.
Print	<p>Click this button to print the unique dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK) and expiry time of each selected user account.</p> <p>The account details can be cut into cards, and then given to users in order to grant them WiFi network access.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>DPPSK</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; display: inline-block;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> nduzjauv9f Expired in: Never </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> paatdtcgh4 Expired in: Never </div> </div> </div> </div>
Search users	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.
N Users	This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.

Table 51 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Import	<p>Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file.</p> 
Add	<p>Click this button to create a single new account, or a batch of accounts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Single DPPSK: See Section 6.3.5.7 on page 182. • Batch create DPPSK: See Section 6.3.5.8 on page 184.
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
Username	This shows the user name of the user account.
Account type	This shows the type of user account: USER, MAC, or DPPSK.
DPPSK	This shows the account's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK).
VLAN ID	This shows the VLAN assigned to the account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized or not (No). If the user is authorized, it shows All sites or the name of the site to which the user is allowed access.
Expire in (UTC)	<p>This shows the date and time that the account expires.</p> <p>This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account.</p> <p>This shows Never if the account never expires.</p> <p>This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.</p>
Created by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that created the user.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

6.3.5.7 Add/Edit DPPSK Account

In the **Site-wide** or **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK** screen, click **Add > Single DPPSK** to create a new user account or double-click an existing account entry to modify the account settings.

Figure 65 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK: Create/Update DPPSK user

Create single DPPSK user [X]

Account type: DPPSK

Email: test2@zyxel.com.tw [X]

Username: [X]

Description: [X]

DPPSK: [DPPSK] [Generate]

VLAN id: [X]

Authorized: All sites [v]

Expire in: Never [Change](#)

Email to user: Email account information to user.

[Close] [Print] [Create user]

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK: Create/Update DPPSK user

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Account type	This shows the type of the user account.
Email	Enter the email address of the user account, which is used to log into the networks.
Username	Enter a user name for this account.
Description	Enter a descriptive name for the account.
DPPSK	Enter a dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK) for this DPPSK user account. It can consist of 8 – 31 alphanumeric characters. You can click Generate to have the NCC create a DPPSK for the account automatically.
VLAN id	Enter the ID of a VLAN to assign a user to a specific VLAN.
Authorized	Set whether you want to authorize the user of this account. You can select to authorize the user's access to All Sites or Specified Sites in the organization. If you select Specified Sites , a field displays allowing you to specify the sites to which the user access is authorized.
Expire in	This field is available only when the user is authorized. Click Change to specify the number of minutes/hours/days/weeks the user can be logged into the network in one session before the user of this account has to log in again. Note: If the account has been set with different Expire in values across different sites, it will show Multiple value and the Change link. Otherwise, select Never and the user of this account will never be logged out.
Email account information to user	Select this to send a copy of the information on this screen to the account email address, after the account has been created.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Print	Click this button to print the account information.
Create user	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

6.3.5.8 Batch Create DPPSK Accounts

To have NCC create multiple DPPSK user accounts, each with a unique dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK), go to the **Site-wide** or **Organization-wide** > **Configure** > **Cloud Authentication** > **DPPSK** screen, click **Add**, and then select **Batch Create DPPSK**.

Figure 66 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication: Batch Create DPPSK

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication: Batch Create DPPSK

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Number of accounts	Enter how many DPPSK user accounts you want to create.
VLAN id	Assign the users to a specific VLAN based on the user's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK).
E-mail account info to	Send a copy of each user account's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK) and expiry date to the specified email address. This information is in a printable format. The expiry date includes a time and date in UTC format.
Authorized	Set whether you want to authorize the user of this account. You can select to authorize the user's access to All Sites or Specified Sites in the organization. If you select Specified Sites , a field displays allowing you to specify the sites to which the user access is authorized.
Expire in	This field is available only when the user is authorized. Click Change to specify the number of minutes/hours/days/weeks the user can be logged into the network in one session before the user of this account has to log in again. Note: If the account has been set with different Expire in values across different sites, it will show Multiple value and the Change link. Otherwise, select Never and the user of this account will never be logged out.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create user	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

6.3.6 Configuration Management

Configuration synchronization allows you to easily copy configurations from one site or Nebula Device to another. Use this screen to synchronize the configuration between sites or switch ports. You can also back up the current configurations for sites or switches to the NCC and restore the configuration at a later date.

Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management** to access this screen.

Figure 67 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management

Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration management

Configuration management

Synchronization

Settings:

From source site:

To site(s):

[What will be synchronized?](#)

Switch settings clone

From source device:

To device(s):

Include uplink port settings

[What will be cloned?](#)

Backup & restore Beta

Site(s) settings

Backup	Description	Date (UTC)	Admin
1	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>

[What is this?](#)

Switch settings

Backup	Switch	Description	Model	Date (UTC)	Admin
1	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value=""/>	Never	<input type="text" value=""/>

[What is this?](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Synchronization	
Settings	Specify whether general site configuration or just SSID settings of a site will be propagated to other sites. Click What will be synchronized? to view detailed information.
From source site	Select the site from which you want to copy its site configuration to other sites.
To Site(s)	Select one or more sites to which you want to import the copied site configuration. You can also select the site tags created using the Organization > Monitor > Overview: Sites screen.
Sync	Click this button to start synchronizing configuration settings between the selected sites.
Switch settings clone	
From source device	Select the Nebula Switch from which you want to copy its Switch port settings to other Nebula Devices.
To device(s)	Select one or more Nebula Switches to which you want to import the copied Switch port settings. Note: Only Nebula Switches of the same model can synchronize. Both Switches should be registered to a site in the organization.
Clone	Click this button to start synchronizing Switch port settings between the selected Nebula Devices.
Backup & Restore	
Note: To back up or restore a previously saved configuration, your administrator account should have full access to the organization.	
Site(s) settings	You can create up to three site configuration backups for the organization. The NCC automatically creates and saves one backup when you perform configuration restoration. The automatic backup cannot be deleted.
Backup	This shows the index number of the site configuration backup.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the backup. Note: When you click Add to create a new backup, you need to enter a name for the backup in order to save it to the NCC.
Date (UTC)	This shows the date and time the backup was saved on the NCC server.
Admin	This shows the name of the administrator account who performed the backup.
Remove	Click the remove icon to delete the backup.
Add	Click this button to create a new configuration backup of all the sites in the organization.
Restore from backup	Select the backup you want to restore.
Restore to site(s)	Select one or more sites to which you want to restore the specified configuration backup.
Restore	Click this button to overwrite the settings of the sites with the selected configuration backup.
Switch settings	At the time of writing, only one backup is allowed per Nebula Device.
Backup	This shows the index number of the Switch configuration backup.
Switch	This shows the name of the Switch.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the backup. Note: When you click Add to create a new backup, you need to enter a name for the backup in order to save it to the NCC.
Model	This shows the model number of the Switch.

Table 54 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Management (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Date (UTC)	This shows the date and time the backup was saved on the NCC server.
Admin	This shows the name of the administrator account who performed the backup.
Remove	Click the remove icon to delete the backup.
Add	Click this button to create a new configuration backup of a specific Switch. This button is selectable only when you have at least one Switch in the organization.
Restore from backup	Select the backup you want to restore.
Restore to device(s)	Select one or more Nebula Switches to which you want to restore the specified configuration backup. Note: You can restore the backup to the same Switch or Switches of the same model and registered to a site in the organization.
Restore	Click this button to overwrite the settings of the Switches with the selected configuration backup.

6.3.7 Configuration Template

A configuration template is a virtual site. The settings you configured in a template will apply to the real sites which are bound to the template. If you do not want to apply any new settings from the template to a site, just unbind that site. If you want to configure some specific settings directly in a site after the site is bound to a template, turn on the local override function (see [Section 6.3.7.3 on page 189](#)).

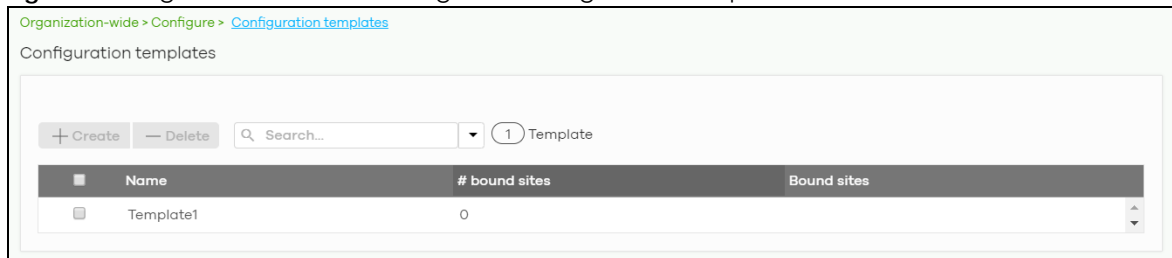
Use this screen to create and manage configuration templates. You can then bind or unbind a site from the template (see [Section 6.3.7.1 on page 188](#)).

Note: A site can only be bound to one template. The same template can be used by multiple sites. The sites and the template should belong to the same organization for binding.

Note: If the NCC service is downgraded from Nebula Professional Pack to Nebula Base, all the sites will be unbound from the templates but retain the settings already applied from the template.

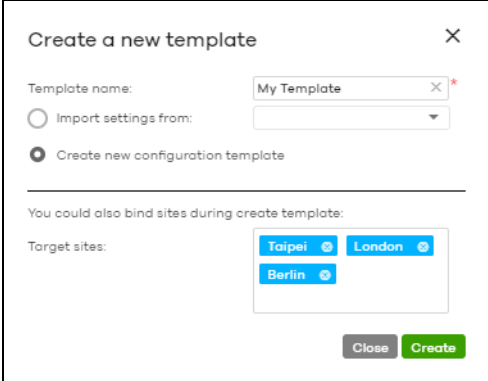
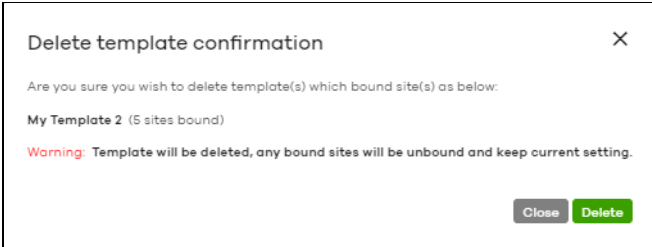
Click **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates** to access this screen.

Figure 68 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates



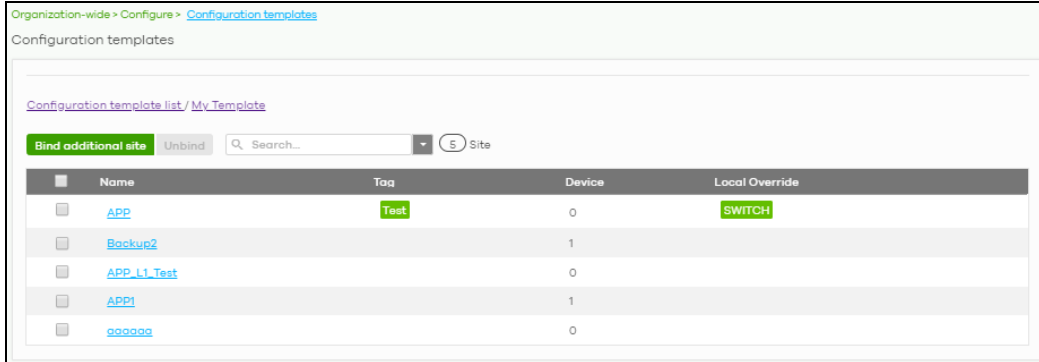
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration templates

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Create	<p>Click this button to create a new configuration template. You can copy settings from an existing site or configuration template, or have a new template with default settings. It is optional to bind one or more sites to the template when you are creating a template.</p> 
Delete	<p>Click this button to remove the selected templates. A window pops up asking you to confirm that you want to delete the templates.</p> <p>If you remove a template that is being used by a site, the site will be unbound from the template automatically and retain the settings previously applied from the template.</p> 
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of templates.
Templates	This shows how many templates match the filter criteria and how many templates are created in total.
Name	This shows the name of the template.
# Bound sites	This shows the number of the sites bound to the template.
Bound sites	This shows the name of the sites bound to the template.


6.3.7.1 Site Binding

Use this screen to bind or unbind a site from a template. Click an existing template from the list in the **Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Template** screen to access this screen. To go back to the previous screen, click the **Configuration template list** link.

Figure 69 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Template: Template

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 Organization-wide > Configure > Configuration Template: Template

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bind additional site	Click this button to bind more sites to the template. A window displays. Select the name of the sites in the Target sites field and click Bind . 
Unbind	Click this button to remove the selected sites from the template. The site which is unbound from the template still retains the settings applied from the template.
Search	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of sites.
Sites	This shows how many sites match the filter criteria and how many sites are bound to the template in total.
Name	This shows the name of the site bound to the template.
Tag	This shows the tags added to the site.
Device	This shows the number of Nebula Devices which are assigned to the site.
Local override	This shows which settings in the template do not apply to the site.

6.3.7.2 Template settings

An administrator that has full access to the organization can modify the template configurations. To access a template's configuration screen, select the template name from the **Site** field in the NCC title bar. It also shows the number of sites that are bound to the template on each configuration screen.

Note: At the time of writing, you can use a template to configure site-wide, Switch, and access point settings.

6.3.7.3 Local Override

When a site is bound to a template, you can see the name of the template on the site's configuration screens (which are also available in a template and can be configured).

There is also an option to make the changes you made locally to a site persist. If you select the override check box of the site's configuration screen, all the configuration screens under the same menu tab (**Site-Wide** or **Switch**) are configurable. Settings in these screens will not be affected and modified by the

template. If the override check box is not selected, any changes of the same configuration screen in the template apply to the site.

6.3.7.4 Switch Port Profile and Configuration

Just as a configuration template is a virtual site, so is a profile to a Switch. The settings you configured in a profile will apply to the Switches which are bound to the profile. If you do not want to apply any new settings from the profile to a Switch, just unbind that Switch. If you want to configure some specific settings directly in a Switch (For example, a port's **Broadcast (pps)** value. See [Section 11.3.1.1 on page 426](#) for details.) after the Switch is bound to a profile, turn on the local override function (see [Section 6.3.7.3 on page 189](#)).

6.3.8 Security Profile Sync

Security profile sync allows you to share the same Security Firewall gateway device security service settings with multiple sites in an organization. This replaces the Unified Threat Management (UTM) settings configured for each site at **Firewall > Configure > Security Service**.

6.3.8.1 Configuring Security Profile Sync

Follow the steps below to enable security profile sync in an organization.

- 1 Go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Security profile sync**. Select **Enabled**, and then under **Sync sites** add the sites that you want to share security settings.

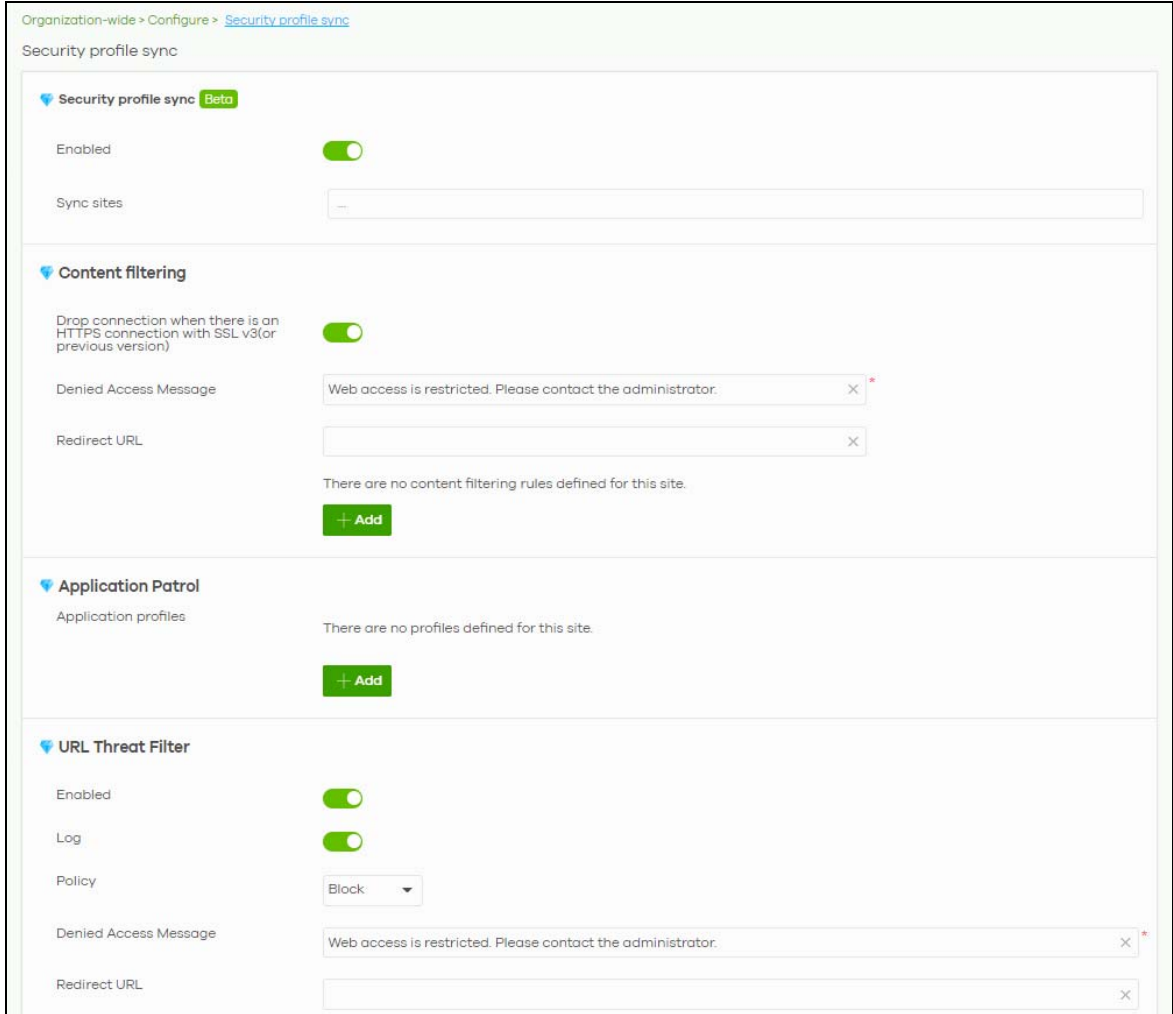
Note: You can only add sites that have a Security Firewall gateway device.

- 2 Configure security service settings for **Content filtering, Application Patrol, URL Threat Filter, Anti-Malware, and Intrusion Detection / Prevention**. Then click **Save**. All security settings are synced to the selected sites.
- 3 If you change the settings in the **Security profile sync** screen, the changes will be copied to all selected sites.
- 4 If you want to modify security settings for an individual site, go to **Firewall > Configure > Security service** and select **Override security profile sync**.

6.3.8.2 Security Profile Sync Screen

Use this screen to enable and configure security profile sync. Click **Organization-Wide > Configure > Security profile sync** to access this screen.

Figure 70 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync



The screenshot displays the configuration interface for Security Profile Sync. It is divided into several sections:

- Category list:** A grid of checkboxes for various threat categories: Anonymizers, Malicious Sites, Spyware/Adware/Keyloggers, Browser Exploits, Phishing, Malicious Downloads, and Spam URLs. All are checked.
- Block list:** A text input field for FQDN (support wildcard) with a clear button (X).
- Allow list:** A text input field for FQDN (support wildcard) with a clear button (X).
- Anti-Malware:**
 - Enabled:** A green toggle switch.
 - Scan mode:** Two buttons: 'Stream mode' (selected) and 'Express mode' (with an info icon).
 - Cloud Query:** A dropdown menu currently showing '--'.
 - Block list:** A text input field for File Pattern with a clear button (X).
 - Allow list:** A text input field for File Pattern with a clear button (X).
- Intrusion Detection / Prevention:**
 - Detection:** A green toggle switch.
 - Prevention:** A grey toggle switch.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security profile sync	
Enabled	Click this to enable or disable security profile sync for the organization.
Sync sites	Select one or more sites that you want to sync the security settings on this screen to. Select All sites to sync security settings with all sites in the organization. Note: You can only add sites that have a Security Firewall gateway device.
Content Filtering	
Drop connection when HTTPS connection with SSL V3 or previous version	Select On to have the Security Gateway block HTTPS web pages using SSL V3 or a previous version.

Table 57 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync (continued)





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Denied Access Message	<p>Enter a message to be displayed when content filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0–9a–zA–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator".</p> <p>It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect URL field. In this case if the content filter blocks access to a web page, the security gateway just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.</p>
Redirect URL	<p>Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by content filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message.</p> <p>Use "http://" or "https://" followed by up to 262 characters (0–9a–zA–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.</p>
Enabled	Select the check box to enable the content filtering profile.
Description	Enter a description for this profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this to create a content filtering profile. See Section 9.3.8.1 on page 321 for more information.
Application Patrol Application profiles	
Name	Enter a name for this profile for identification purposes.
Description	Enter a description for this profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this icon to create an application patrol profile. See Section 9.3.8.2 on page 324 for more information.
URL Threat Filter	
Enabled	Select On to turn on the rule. Otherwise, select Off to turn off the rule.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log (log), log and alert (log alert) or not (no) when the policy is matched to the criteria listed above.
Policy	<p>Select Pass to allow users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p> <p>Select Block to prevent users from accessing web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized. When the external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Content Filter General screen along with the category of the blocked web page.</p> <p>Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p>
Denied Access Message	<p>Enter a message to be displayed when content filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0–9a–zA–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator".</p> <p>It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect URL field. In this case if the content filter blocks access to a web page, the Nebula Device just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.</p>

Table 57 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Redirect URL	<p>Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by content filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message.</p> <p>Use "http://" or "https://" followed by up to 262 characters (0-9a-zA-Z/?:@&=#\$\._~*()%). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.</p>
Category List	<p>These are categories of web pages based on their content. Select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.</p>
Block list	<p>Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.bad-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are also blocked. For example, entering "bad-site.com" also blocks "www.badsite.com", "partner.bad-site.com", "press.bad-site.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to block all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0-9 a-z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Allow list	<p>Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.good-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are allowed. For example, entering "zyxel.com" also allows "www.zyxel.com", "partner.zyxel.com", "press.zyxel.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to allow all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0-9 a-z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Anti-Malware	
Enabled	<p>Select On to turn on the rule. Otherwise, select Off to turn off the rule.</p>
Scan Mode	
Express Mode	<p>In this mode you can define which types of files are scanned using the File Type For Scan fields. The Nebula Device then scans files by sending each file's hash value to a cloud database using cloud query. This is the fastest scan mode.</p>
Stream Mode	<p>In this mode the Nebula Device scans all files for viruses using its anti-malware signatures to detect known virus patterns. This is the deepest scan mode.</p>
File decompression (ZIP and RAR)	<p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device scan a compressed file (the file does not need to have a "zip" or "rar" file extension). The Nebula Device first decompresses the file and then scans the contents for malware.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device decompresses a compressed file once. The Nebula Device does NOT decompress any files within a compressed file.</p>
Destroy compressed files that could not be decompressed	<p>When you select this check box, the Nebula Device deletes compressed files that use password encryption.</p> <p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device delete any compressed files that it cannot decompress. The Nebula Device cannot decompress password protected files or a file within another compressed file. There are also limits to the number of compressed files that the Nebula Device can concurrently decompress.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device's firmware package cannot go through the Nebula Device with this check box enabled. The Nebula Device classifies the firmware package as a file that cannot be decompressed and then deletes it. Clear this check box when you download a firmware package from the Zyxel website. It is OK to upload a firmware package to the Nebula Device with the check box selected.</p>

Table 57 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cloud Query	Select the Cloud Query supported file types for the Nebula Device to scan for viruses.
Block list	<p>This field displays the file or encryption pattern of the entry. Enter a file pattern that would cause the Nebula Device to log and modify this file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use up to 80 characters. Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), question marks (?) and asterisks (*) are allowed. • A question mark (?) lets a single character in the file name vary. For example, use "a?.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify aa.zip, ab.zip and so on. • Wildcards (*) let multiple files match the pattern. For example, use "*a.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify any file that ends with "a.zip". A file named "testa.zip" would match. There could be any number (of any type) of characters in front of the "a.zip" at the end and the file name would still match. A file named "test.zipa" for example would not match. • A * in the middle of a pattern has the Nebula Device check the beginning and end of the file name and ignore the middle. For example, with "abc*.zip", any file starting with "abc" and ending in ".zip" matches, no matter how many characters are in between. • The whole file name has to match if you do not use a question mark or asterisk. • If you do not use a wildcard, the Nebula Device checks up to the first 80 characters of a file name.
Allow list	<p>When you select this check box, the Nebula Device deletes compressed files that use password encryption.</p> <p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device delete any compressed files that it cannot decompress. The Nebula Device cannot decompress password protected files or a file within another compressed file. There are also limits to the number of compressed files that the Nebula Device can concurrently decompress.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device's firmware package cannot go through the Nebula Device with this check box enabled. The Nebula Device classifies the firmware package as a file that cannot be decompressed and then deletes it. Clear this check box when you download a firmware package from the Zyxel website. It is okay to upload a firmware package to the Nebula Device with the check box. This field displays the file or encryption pattern of the entry.</p> <p>Enter the file or encryption pattern for this entry. Specify a pattern to identify the names of files that the Nebula Device should not scan for viruses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use up to 80 characters. Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), question marks (?) and asterisks (*) are allowed. • A question mark (?) lets a single character in the file name vary. For example, use "a?.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify aa.zip, ab.zip and so on. • Wildcards (*) let multiple files match the pattern. For example, use "*a.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify any file that ends with "a.zip". A file named "testa.zip" would match. There could be any number (of any type) of characters in front of the "a.zip" at the end and the file name would still match. A file named "test.zipa" for example would not match. • A * in the middle of a pattern has the Nebula Device check the beginning and end of the file name and ignore the middle. For example, with "abc*.zip", any file starting with "abc" and ending in ".zip" matches, no matter how many characters are in between. • The whole file name has to match if you do not use a question mark or asterisk. • If you do not use a wildcard, the Nebula Device checks up to the first 80 characters of a file name.

Table 57 Organization-wide > Configure > Security Profile Sync (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Intrusion Detection/Prevention	
Detection	Select On to enable Detection.
Prevention	Select On to enable Prevention.

6.3.9 VPN Orchestrator

VPN Orchestrator enables you to automatically create Virtual Private Network (VPN) connections between sites within an organization. This allows the Security Gateway of each site and the Nebula Devices behind it to communicate securely.

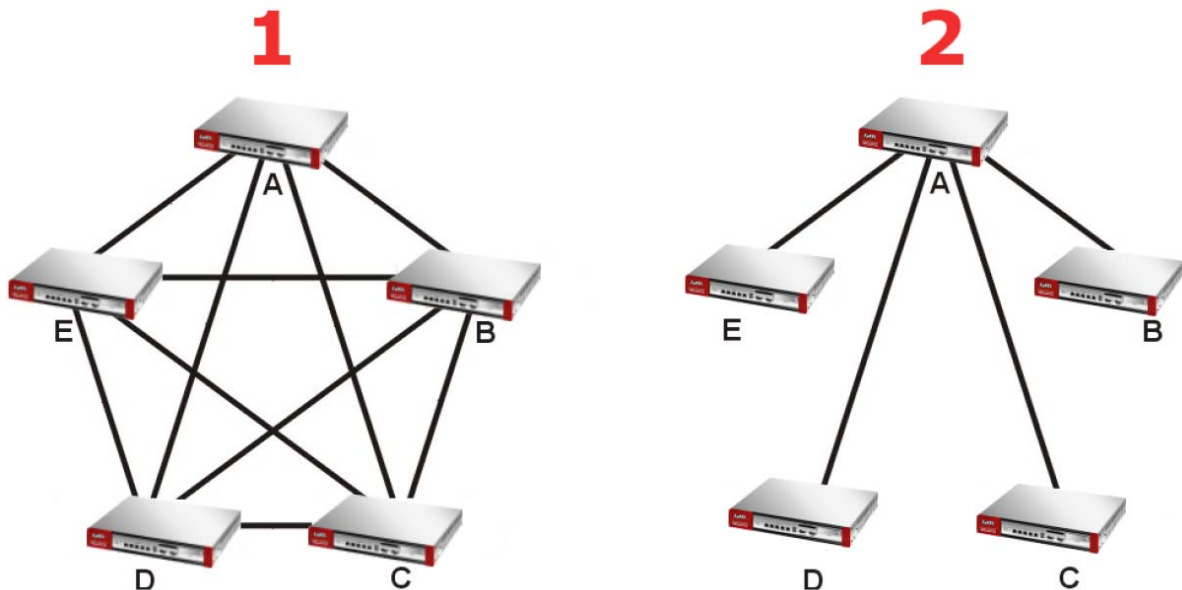
Note: You can manually create VPN connections between sites at **Gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** or **Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN**.

6.3.9.1 Topology Overview

There are two topologies you can use when creating a site-to-site VPN.

- **Fully Meshed:** In a fully-meshed VPN topology (1 in the figure below), there is a VPN connection between every two sites in the organization. Sites can communicate directly with each other, but having permanent tunnels between every site takes up more resources.
- **Hub-and-spoke:** In a hub-and-spoke topology (2 in the figure below), every site is either a hub or a spoke. There is a VPN connection between each spoke site (B, C, D, and E) and the hub site (A). Traffic from each spoke site must first go through the hub site. If the hub site fails, the site-to-site VPN network fails. To avoid this, you can assign more than one hub site.

Figure 71 VPN Topologies (Fully Meshed and Hub-and-Spoke)



6.3.9.2 VPN Areas

An organization can contain multiple VPN areas. Each VPN area is an independent VPN with its own sites, settings, and topology. Every organization has a default VPN area called Default, which cannot be

deleted. Sites in different VPN areas within the same organization can communicate if you enable the **Area communication** setting.

6.3.9.3 VPN Orchestrator Screen

Use this screen to manage and create site-to-site VPNs within the current organization. Click **Organization-Wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator** to access this screen.

Figure 72 Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator

The screenshot displays the VPN Orchestrator interface. At the top, there's a breadcrumb trail: Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator. Below this, the 'VPN Topology' section shows a world map with several VPN connections represented by colored lines (red for disconnected, green for connected). A legend at the bottom of the map identifies the connection types: VPN connected (green), VPN disconnected (red), Partial VPN connected (grey), Non-Nebula VPN connected (green), and Non-Nebula VPN disconnected (red).

The 'Smart VPN' section is currently configured with:

- VPN Area: Default
- Topology: Hub-and-Spoke
- Branch to Branch VPN: Disabled
- Security Gateway: 1 security gateway

There are two main configuration tables:

Hub site: 1

Site	Model	VPN enable	Subnet(s)	NAT traversal	Area communication	Gateway status	VPN status	WAN status
1	Site01_USG_FLEX500	USG FLEX 500	192.168.10/24 192.168.20/24		Enabled	Online	Connected	wan1: 192.168.188.48 Public IP: 111.249.86.250 wan2: Public IP:

Spoke site: 4

Site	Model	VPN enable	Subnet(s)	NAT traversal	Area communication	Gateway status	VPN status	WAN status
	Site02_USG_FLEX500	USG FLEX 500	192.168.80/24 192.168.90/24		Disabled	Online	Connected	wan1: 192.168.188.53 Public IP: 111.249.86.250
	Site03_USG_FLEX200	USG FLEX 200	192.168.160/24 192.168.170/24		Disabled	Online	Connected	wan1: 192.168.188.51 Public IP: 111.249.86.250
	Site04_USG_FLEX200	USG FLEX 200	192.168.240/24 192.168.250/24		Disabled	Online	Connected	wan1: 192.168.188.49 Public IP: 111.249.86.250 wan2: Public IP:
	Site05_HSG_200	NS0200			Disabled	Online	Disconnected	WAN1: 192.168.188.21

Non-Nebula VPN peers

Enabled	Name	Public IP	Private subnet	IPsec policy	Pre-shared secret	Address (physical location)
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		x *	x *	Default		x *

At the bottom left of the Non-Nebula VPN peers table, there is a '+ Add' button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Organization-Wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VPN Topology	
VPN Area	Select the name of a VPN area to view on the map. Select Overview to view all VPN areas in this organization on the map.
Smart VPN	
VPN Area	Select the name of a VPN to configure. Select + Create VPN area to create a new VPN within the organization.
	Click the remove icon to delete the VPN area.
Topology	Click this to select a topology for the VPN area. For details on topologies, see Section 6.3.9.1 on page 196 . Select Disable to disable VPN connections for all sites in the VPN area.
The following settings are shown when Topology is set to Hub-and-Spoke .	
Branch to Branch VPN	Enable this to allow spoke sites to communicate with each other in the VPN area. When disabled, spoke sites can only communicate with hub sites.
Spoke	Select one or more sites and then click this to assign the sites as spokes. The sites are added to the spoke list.
Hub	Select one or more sites and then click this to assign the sites as hubs. The sites are added to the hubs list.
Security Gateway	Enter the name of a site or Nebula Device to filter the list of sites.
Hub site	This shows the number of hub site. Note: Only one hub site is supported.
Spoke site: N	This shows the number of spoke sites (N) in the spoke list.
#	This shows the priority of the hub site. If the VPN area contains multiple hub sites, then the spoke sites always send traffic through the available hub with the highest priority. You can change the priority of a site by clicking the move icon () , and then dragging the site up or down in the list.
Site	This shows the name of the site in the VPN area.
Model	This shows the model of the site's Security Gateway device.
VPN enable	Click this to enable or disable site-to-site VPN on the site's Security Gateway. If you disable this setting, the site will leave the VPN area.
Subnets	This shows the IP subnets of all LAN interfaces behind the site's Security Gateway.
NAT traversal	If the Security Gateway is behind a NAT router, enter the public IP address or the domain name that is configured and mapped to the Security Gateway on the NAT router.
Area communication	Enable this to allow the site to communicate with sites in different VPN areas within the organization. If Topology is set to Site-to-Site , then you must assign at least one site in each VPN area as the Area Leader . The area leaders create VPN tunnels between VPN areas.
Gateway status	This shows whether the site's Security Gateway is currently online.
VPN status	This shows whether the VPN is currently connected.
WAN status	This shows the IP address of the WAN interface and the public IP address of the site's Security Gateway.

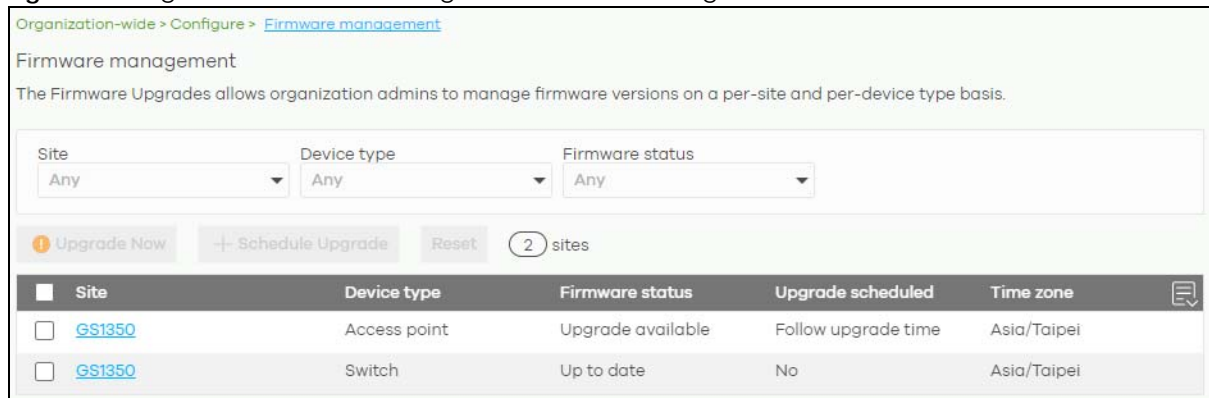
Table 58 Organization-Wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Non-Nebula VPN peers	Configure this section to add a non-Nebula gateway, such as a ZyWALL ATP device, to the VPN area.
+ Add	Click this button to add a non-Nebula gateway to the VPN area.
Enabled	Select the check box to enable VPN connections to the non-Nebula gateway.
Name	Enter the name of the non-Nebula gateway.
Public IP	Enter the public IP address of the non-Nebula gateway.
Private Subnet	Enter the IP subnet that will be used for VPN connections. The IP range must be reachable from other Nebula Devices in the VPN area.
IPSec policy	Click to select a pre-defined policy or have a custom one. See Section 10.3.6.1 on page 382 for detailed information.
Preshared secret	Enter a pre-shared key (password). The Nebula Security Gateway and peer gateway use the key to identify each other when they negotiate the IKE SA.
Address	Enter the address (physical location) of the Nebula Device.
	Click the remove icon to delete the entry.

6.3.10 Firmware Management

Use this screen to upgrade Nebula Device firmware, or schedule a firmware upgrade for Nebula Devices within the organization. Click **Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management** to access this screen.

Figure 73 Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management





Organization-wide > Configure > [Firmware management](#)

Firmware management

The Firmware Upgrades allows organization admins to manage firmware versions on a per-site and per-device type basis.

Site: Any Device type: Any Firmware status: Any

 Upgrade Now  Schedule Upgrade Reset 2 sites

Site	Device type	Firmware status	Upgrade scheduled	Time zone
<input type="checkbox"/> GS1350	Access point	Upgrade available	Follow upgrade time	Asia/Taipei
<input type="checkbox"/> GS1350	Switch	Up to date	No	Asia/Taipei

You can select Nebula Devices by device type and by site, but you cannot select individual Nebula Devices. For example, you can upgrade all Switches in Site A and all APs in site B. To upgrade individual Nebula Devices, go to **Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management**.

Note: This is a Nebula Professional Pack feature. If your Nebula Professional Pack license expires, existing firmware upgrades will still run as scheduled.

6.3.10.1 Firmware Upgrade Priority

NCC prioritizes the different Nebula Device firmware upgrade schedules as follows, from highest to lowest:

1. Individual Nebula Device upgrade schedule (set at **Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management**).

2. Organization-wide or site-wide upgrade schedule. If both are set, the schedule that was most recently set takes priority.
3. NCC default per-device upgrade schedule (90 days after new firmware is released).

6.3.10.2 Firmware Management Screen

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Site/Device Type/ Firmware Status	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Devices.
Upgrade Now	Click this to immediately upgrade the firmware on all selected Nebula Device types. This button is selectable only when there is firmware update available for the selected Nebula Devices.
Schedule Upgrade	Click this to pop-up a window where you can set a specific date and time to upgrade the firmware on the selected Nebula Devices.  <p>Note: Nebula Devices are upgraded according to the time zone of the site they are in, rather than the time zone of NCC (UTC).</p>
Reset	Click this button to clear the individual upgrade schedules of each selected Nebula Device. The Nebula Devices will go back to following the upgrade schedule of their site.
Site	This shows which site the Nebula Device is in. Click the site name to go to the site's Dashboard.
Device Type	This shows the type of the Nebula Device.
Firmware status	This shows whether the firmware on the Nebula Device is Up to date , there is firmware update available for the Nebula Device (Upgrade available), custom firmware was installed manually (Custom), a specific version of firmware has been installed by Zyxel customer support (Dedicated) or the Nebula Device goes offline and its firmware status is not available (N/A). The status changes to Upgrading... after you click Upgrade Now to install the firmware immediately.
Upgrade scheduled	This shows the date and time when a new firmware upgrade is scheduled to occur. Follow upgrade time means the Nebula Device is following the site-wide or organization-wide firmware schedule. No means the firmware on the Nebula Device is up-to-date, or the Nebula Device is offline and its firmware status is not available. A lock icon means a specific firmware schedule has been created for the Nebula Device. This means the Nebula Device firmware will not be upgraded according to the schedule configured for the site or organization.

Table 59 Organization-Wide > Configure > Firmware management (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Time zone	This shows the time zone settings of the Nebula Device's site.
	Click this icon to show and hide columns in the table.

CHAPTER 7

Site-wide

7.1 Monitor

Use the **Monitor** menus to check the dashboard, summary report, map and floor plan, network topology and client list of the Nebula Devices for the selected site.

7.1.1 Dashboard

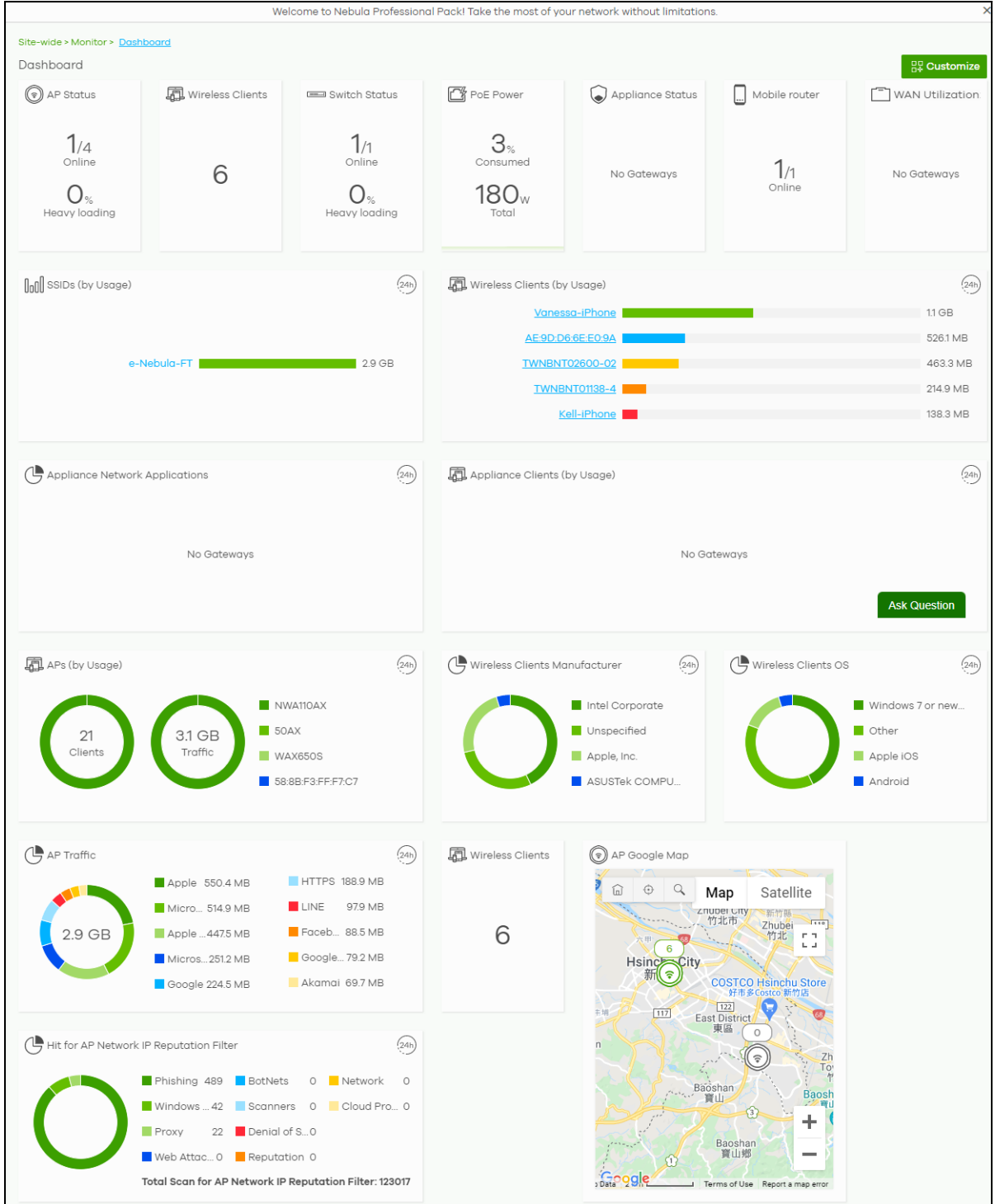
If a site is created and selected, the **Dashboard** is always the first menu you see when you log into the NCC. You can also click **Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard** to access this screen.

It shows the status and information for all types of Nebula Devices connected to the selected site by default.

Note: The banner **N Switches are currently protected by Auto Configuration Recovery** will display when the Nebula Switch(es) is locked by NCC. Click **N Switches** to go to **Switch > Monitor > Switches** for more information.

Click **Customize** to show the **Widget**, **Reset** and **Close** buttons. You can then rearrange widgets by selecting a block and holding it to move around. You can also click the **Widget** button to collapse, add and close individual widgets. Click **Reset** to return the widget settings to the defaults.

Figure 74 Site-Wide > Monitor > Dashboard



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Site-Wide > Monitor > Dashboard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Status	This shows the number of assigned and connected Nebula Access Points, and what percentage of the Access Points become overloaded, that is, the number of online Access Points that exceed the maximum client device number (in Access Point > Configure > Traffic shaping) by total number of online Access Points in the site.
Wireless Clients	This shows the number of WiFi clients currently connected to the managed Access Points.
Switch Status	This shows the number of Nebula Switches assigned and connected, and what percentage of the Switches become overloaded, that is, the number of online Nebula Switches that exceed 70% of their upstream bandwidth by total number of online Nebula Switches in the site.
PoE Power	This shows the total PoE power budget on the Switch and the current amount of power consumed by the powered devices.
Appliance Status	This shows the number of Nebula Security Appliances assigned and connected, and what percentage of the Security Appliance's processing capability is currently being used if the CPU goes over 93% usage.
WAN Utilization	This shows the data rate of inbound/outbound traffic in Kbps (kilobits per second) or Mbps (megabits per second) that has been transmitted through the WAN interface. If the Security Appliance supports multiple WAN interfaces and more than one are active, use the arrow to switch and view the throughput of each WAN interface.
Security Alert	This shows the total number of the latest alerts sent to the administrator in the last 24 hours.
Mobile router	This shows the number of Nebula mobile routers assigned and connected.
Appliance Network Applications	This shows the top ten applications used by the Nebula Security Appliance in the past 24 hours.
Appliance Clients (by Usage)	This shows the top five clients of the Nebula Security Appliance with the highest percentage of bandwidth usage in the past 24 hours.
Wireless Clients	This shows the number of WiFi clients connected (clients of the Access Points only).
SSIDs (by Usage)	This shows the top five SSIDs with the highest percentage of bandwidth usage in the past 24 hours. You can click a WiFi network name to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Summary report screen.
Wireless Clients (by Usage)	This shows the top five WiFi clients (clients of the Access Points only) with the highest percentage of bandwidth usage in the past 24 hours. You can click a client's name to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Clients: Client list screen.
Wireless Clients Manufacturer	This shows the top five manufacturers of WiFi client devices in the past 24 hours. You can click a manufacturer name to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Clients screen and view the client devices which are made by the manufacturer.
Hit for Collaborative Detect & Response	This shows the total number of malicious traffic detected from wired and WiFi clients that are blocked and quarantined using Collaborative Detection & Response (CDR) in the past 7 days.
Wireless Clients OS	This shows the top five operating systems used by WiFi client devices in the past 24 hours. You can click an operating system to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Clients screen and view the client devices which use this operating system.
APs (by Usage)	This shows the top five managed Access Points with the highest percentage of bandwidth usage in the past 24 hours. This also shows the number of WiFi clients associated with the Access Points. You can click an Access Point's name to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: AP Details screen.
AP Traffic	This shows the usage statistic of the top ten applications used in the site in the past 24 hours.

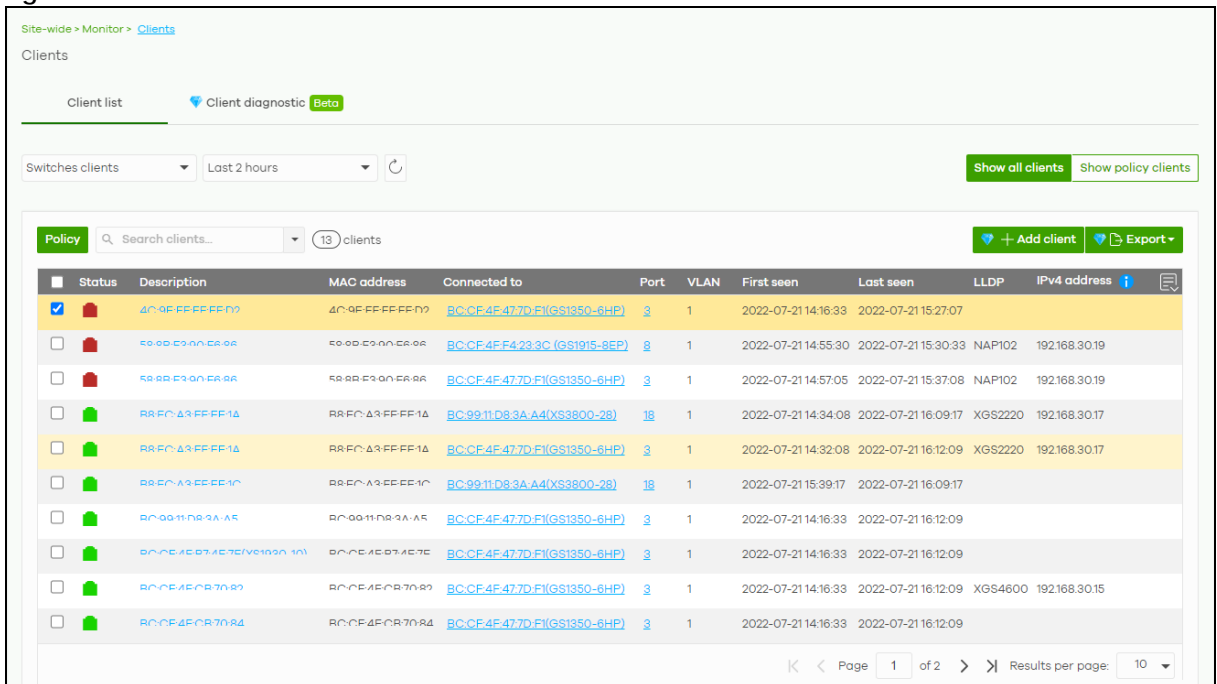
Table 60 Site-Wide > Monitor > Dashboard (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Google Map	This shows the locations of Access Points on the Google map.
Hit for AP Network IP Reputation Filter	This shows the total number of times packets coming from an IPv4 address with a bad reputation occur and the number of times connection attempts to an IPv4 address with a bad reputation occur in the past 24 hours.

7.1.2 Clients

This screen shows a list of all wired and WiFi clients connected to Nebula Devices (Access Points, Switches, Security Appliances, Security Firewalls, Mobile Routers) in the site. You can also block or allow clients. Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients** to access this screen.

Figure 75 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list



The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 61 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clients list	Select to filter the list of clients, based on what type of Nebula Device (access point, Switch, Security Appliance, Security Firewall, Mobile Router) the client is connected to. You can also set a time; the list shows each client's connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month.
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Show all clients	Click this to show all clients that have been online during the selected time period.
Show policy clients	Click this to show clients that have a white-listed or blocked policy applied to them, regardless of when they were last online. The client's usage data is calculated according to the selected time period.
Usage	Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.

Table 61 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received by the client in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Policy	<p>Select the clients from the table below, and then choose the security policy that you want to apply to the selected clients. Choose one of the following policies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allowed: The selected clients to bypass captive portal authentication. • Blocked: The selected clients cannot connect to the site. How a client is blocked depends on the connected Nebula Device type selected under Clients. AP: The client is blocked by MAC address from connecting to any AP in the site. Switch: The client is blocked by MAC address from sending or receiving network traffic. Gateway: The Security Appliance will not route traffic for the client's IP address. • To specific SSID: Selectively apply captive portal authentication to specific_SSIDs on an AP. • Normal: The selected clients have no policies applied to them.
Search clients	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of clients.
N clients	This shows the number of clients (N) connected to the gateway in the site network.
Add client	Click this button to open a window where you can specify a client's name and IP address to apply a policy before it is connected to the gateway's network.
Export	Click this button to save the client list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
General fields	
	Select an entry's check box to select a specific client. Otherwise, select the check box in the table heading row to select all clients.
Status	<p>This shows whether the client is online (green) or offline (red), and whether the client is wired or wireless.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clients connected to an Access Point are reported as wireless. • Clients connected to a Switch or Security Appliance are reported as wired.
Description	<p>This shows the descriptive name of the client. By default, this is the client's MAC address.</p> <p>Click the name to display the individual client statistics. See wireless: Section 7.1.2.1 on page 207 and wired: Section 7.1.2.2 on page 210.</p>
Connected to	<p>This shows the name of the Nebula Device to which the client is connected in this site.</p> <p>Click the Nebula Device name to display the screen where you can view detailed information about the Nebula Device.</p>
MAC address	<p>This shows the MAC address of the client.</p> <p>Click the MAC address to display the individual client statistics. See wireless: Section 7.1.2.1 on page 207 and wired: Section 7.1.2.2 on page 210.</p>
IPv4 address	This shows the IP address of the client.
First seen	This shows the first date and time the client was discovered over the specified period of time.
Last seen	This shows the last date and time the client was discovered over the specified period of time.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer of the client hardware.
Policy	This shows the security policy applied to the client.
Note	This shows additional information about the client.
LLDP	This shows the LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) information received from the client.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the AP (uplink + downlink) since it was last connected.
User	This shows the user account information used to log into the NCC through captive portal, using Facebook login or 802.1x with Nebula cloud authentication or a RADIUS server. This field is blank if the user logs in through Facebook WiFi or web authentication is disabled.
OS	This shows the operating system running on the client device.

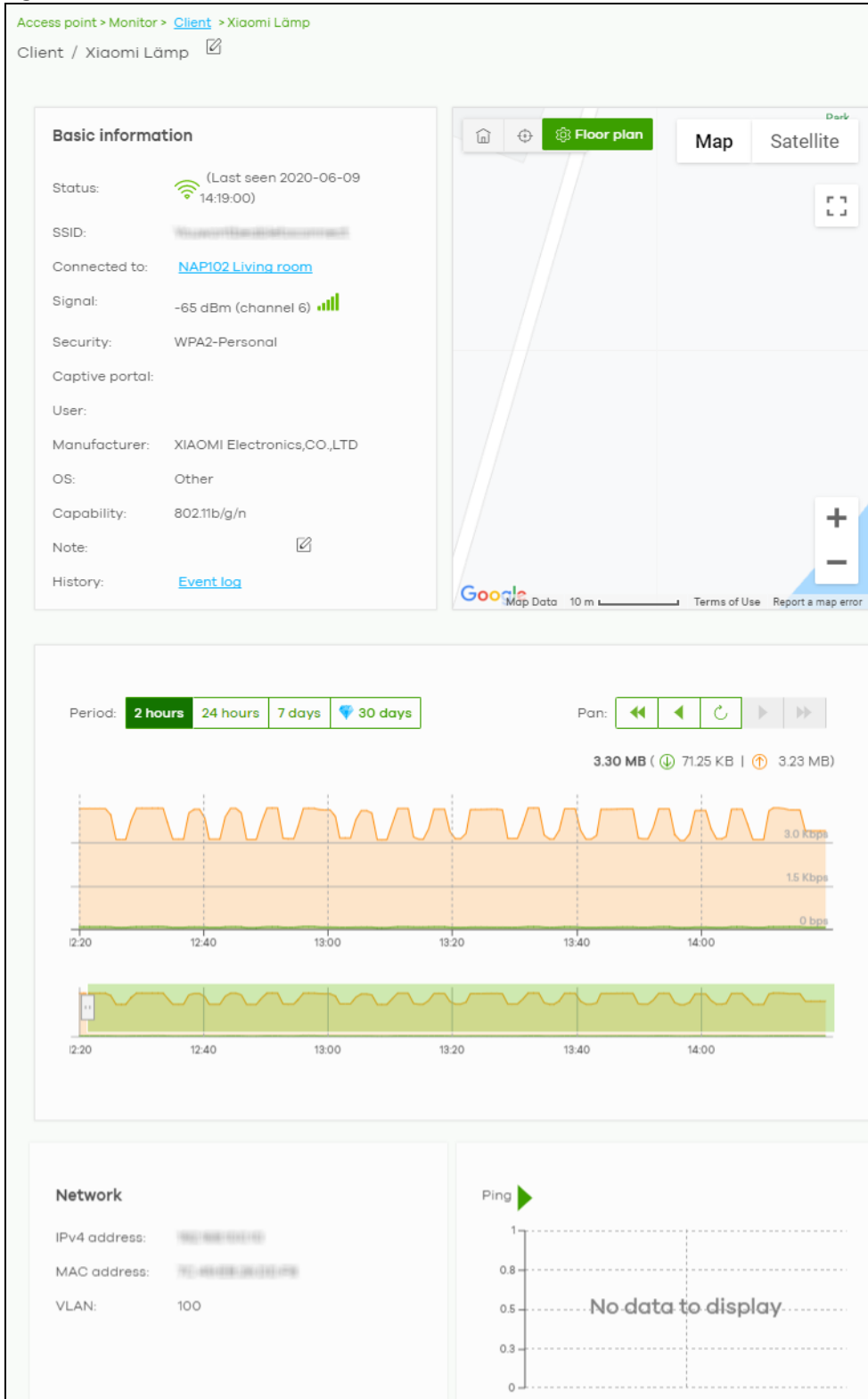
Table 61 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.
AP-related fields	
Channel	This shows the channel ID the client is using.
Band	This shows the WiFi frequency band currently being used by the client.
Signal strength	This shows the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the client's WiFi connection, and an icon showing the signal strength. Icon default thresholds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green/5 blocks: signal is greater than -67 dBm, strong signal • Amber/4 blocks: signal -67 to -73 dBm, average signal • Amber/3 blocks: signal -74 to -80 dBm, below average signal • Red/2 blocks: signal is less than -80 dBm, weak signal
Security	This shows which secure encryption method is being used by the client to connect to the Nebula Device.
Tx Rate	This shows maximum transmission rate of the client.
Rx Rate	This shows maximum reception rate of the client.
Download	This shows the amount of data received by the client since it was last connected.
Upload	This shows the amount of data transmitted from the client since it was last connected.
Association time	This shows the date and time the client associated with the Nebula Device.
Capability	This shows the WiFi standards supported by the client or the supported standards currently being used by the client.
Authentication	This shows the authentication method used by the client to access the network. This shows Unauthorized if the captive portal page displays but the client has not proceeded with the authentication process. The field is blank if web authentication is disabled.
VLAN	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the client belongs.

7.1.2.1 Wireless Client Details

Click a WiFi client entry in the **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list** screen to display individual client statistics.

Figure 76 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list: WiFi Client Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

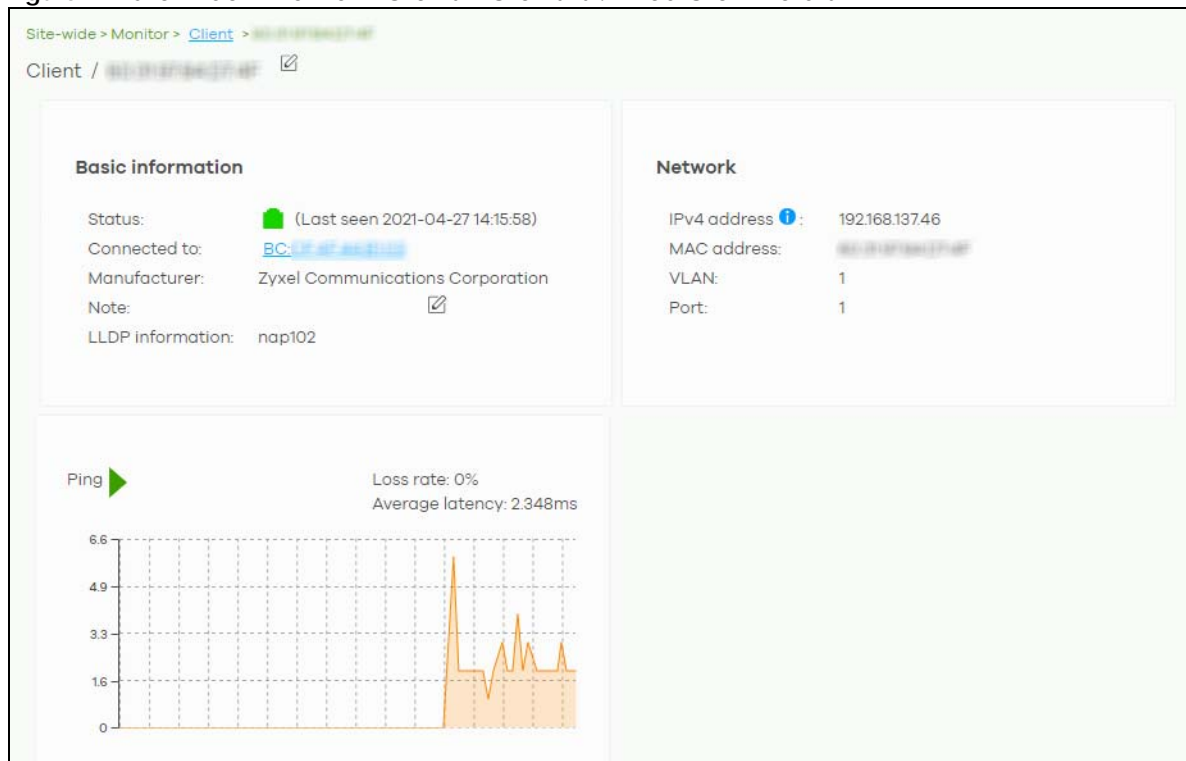
Table 62 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list: WiFi Client Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This shows whether the client is online (green), or goes offline (red). It also shows the last date and time the client was discovered.
SSID	This shows the name of the Access Point's WiFi network to which the client is connected.
Connected to	This shows the name of the Nebula managed Access Point to which the client is connected. Click the name to display the individual Access Point statistics. See Section 12.2.1.1 on page 453 .
Signal	This shows the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the client's WiFi connection, and an icon showing the signal strength. Icon default thresholds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green/5 blocks: signal is greater than -67 dBm, strong signal Amber/4 blocks: signal -67 to -73 dBm, average signal Amber/3 blocks: signal -74 to -80 dBm, below average signal Red/2 blocks: signal is less than -80 dBm, weak signal
Security	This shows the encryption method used to connect to the Access Point.
Captive portal	This shows the web authentication method used by the client to access the network.
User	This shows the number of users currently connected to the network through the client device.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer of the device connected to the Access Point.
OS	This shows the operating system running on the client device, if known.
Capability	This shows the WiFi standards supported by the client or the supported standards currently being used by the client.
Note	This shows additional information for the client. Click the edit icon to change it.
History	Click Event log to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Event log screen.
Map	This shows the location of the client on the Google map.
Period	Select to view the statistics in the past two hours, day, week or month.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by two hours or one day.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received by the client in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Network	
IPv4 address	This shows the IP address of the client.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the client. If you applied a security policy to a client using the Add client button in the Access Point > Monitor > Clients screen, and the client has never been connected to the Access Point's network, an edit icon appears allowing you to modify the client's MAC address,
VLAN	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the client belongs.
Ping	Click the button to ping the client's IP address from the Nebula AP to test connectivity.
Loss rate	This shows the rate of packet loss when you perform ping.
Average latency	This shows the average latency in ms when you perform ping.

7.1.2.2 Wired Client Details

Click a wired client's descriptive name in the **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list** screen to display individual client statistics.

Figure 77 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list: Wired Client Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list: Wired Client Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Client	Click the edit icon to change the client name.
Status	This shows whether the client is online (green) or offline (red). It also shows the last date and time the client was discovered, and whether the client is wired or wireless.
Connected to	This shows the name of the Security Appliance to which the client is connected.
User	This shows the number of users currently connected to the network through the client device.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer of the client device.
OS	This shows the operating system running on the client device, if known.
Note	Enter information about this Nebula Device, for yourself or for other administrators.
History	Click Event log to go to the Firewall > Monitor > Event log screen.
LLDP information	This shows the LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) information received from the remote device.
Network	
IPv4 address	This shows the IP address of the client.
Interface	This shows the interface on the Security Appliance to which the client belongs.
Port forwarding	This shows the port forwarding rules set for this client.

Table 63 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Clients list: Wired Client Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Public IP	This shows the port forwarding and 1:1 NAT IP addresses for each 1:1 NAT rule configured for this client.
Period	Select to view the client connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by two hours or one day.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received by the client in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Top Application	A donut chart shows the percentage of usage for each application used by the client, if any. The number in the center of the donut chart indicates the amount of the application's traffic which has been transmitted or received by the client. Click View More to display the application statistics. Click Hide Info to hide them.
Application	This shows the name of the application. Click an application name to view information about the clients who used the application. For details, see Section 7.1.10 on page 223 .
Category	This shows the name of the category to which the application belongs.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the application used by the client.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the application used by the client.
Ping	Click the button to ping the client's IP address from the gateway to test connectivity.

7.1.3 Client Diagnostic

Use this screen to view all related event logs between Access Points and WiFi clients, and DHCP logs of Nebula Security Appliances (NSG, ZyWALL USG FLEX, ATP, and USG20(W)-VPN). Association, Authentication, Disconnection, and DHCP event logs that occur are summarized in chronological order to aid in troubleshooting. Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Client diagnostic** to access this screen.

Note: This feature is available for Nebula Pro Pack license only.

Figure 78 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Client diagnostic

Site-wide > Monitor > Clients

Clients

Client list Client diagnostic Beta

Last 24 hours All event types Shaw-iPhone

Connection time	Connected to	Event type	Detail Issue
2022-02-24 09:20:21	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has associated on Channel: 161, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 5GH
2022-02-23 18:39:25	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has associated on Channel: 161, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 5GH
2022-02-23 12:35:47	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has associated on Channel: 161, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 5GH
2022-02-23 09:52:57	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has reassociated on Channel: 161, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 5GH
2022-02-23 09:52:54	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has reassociated on Channel: 6, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 2.4G
2022-02-23 09:49:53	BC-99:11:AA-51:BC	Association	Station: dd:ea:96:3b:1f:dd has reassociated on Channel: 161, SSID: e-Nebula-FT-CTC, 5GH

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

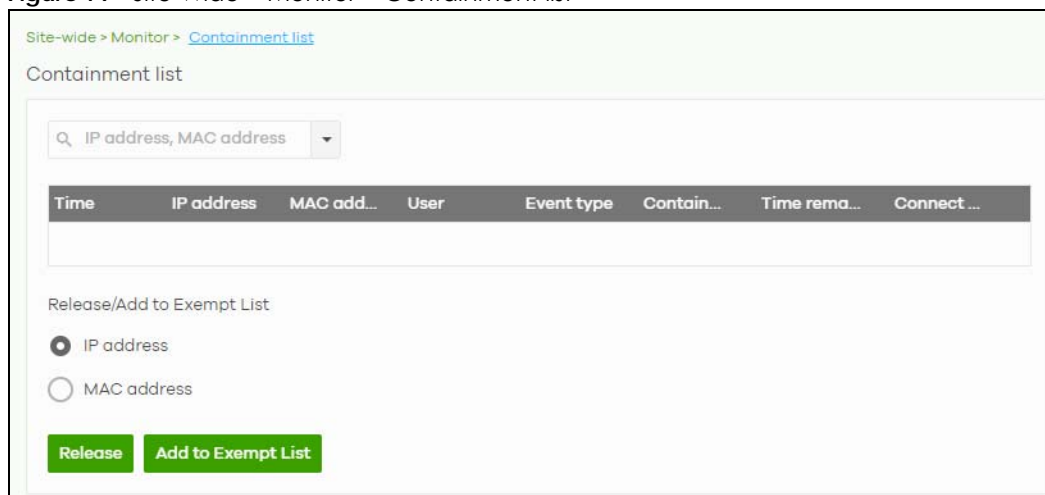
Table 64 Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients > Client diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clients list	Select a time; the list shows each client's event logs in the past hour, last 12 hours, last day, or custom range (from 15 minutes to one day within the last month). Select to filter the list of client's event logs, based on the event type (Association, Authentication, Disconnect, DHCP) that occurred. Select the client, only one client can be selected.
Connection time	This shows the starting time period from which the event log is recorded.
Connected to	This shows the name (if available) or MAC address of the connected client.
Event type	This shows the event type (Association, Authentication, Disconnection, DHCP) that occurred.
Detail issue	This shows a summary of the Access Points and Security Appliances (NSG, USG FLEX, ATP, and USG20(W)-VPN) event logs in chronological order.

7.1.4 Containment List

This screen shows a list of clients that are currently blocked in the site by the CDR security service. You can use this screen to release blocked clients. Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Containment list** to access this screen.

Figure 79 Site-Wide > Monitor > Containment list



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 Site-Wide > Monitor > Containment list

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search	Enter a MAC or IP address to filter the list of clients.
Time	This field displays the date and time CDR contained this client.
IP address	This field displays the IPv4 address of the client contained by CDR.
MAC address	This field displays the MAC address of the client contained by CDR.
User	This field displays the user name of a client contained by CDR who has been authenticated for Internet access. The field is blank if user authentication is not required.
Event type	This field displays details on the category of signature that triggered CDR: Web Filtering, Anti-Malware or IPS (IDP).

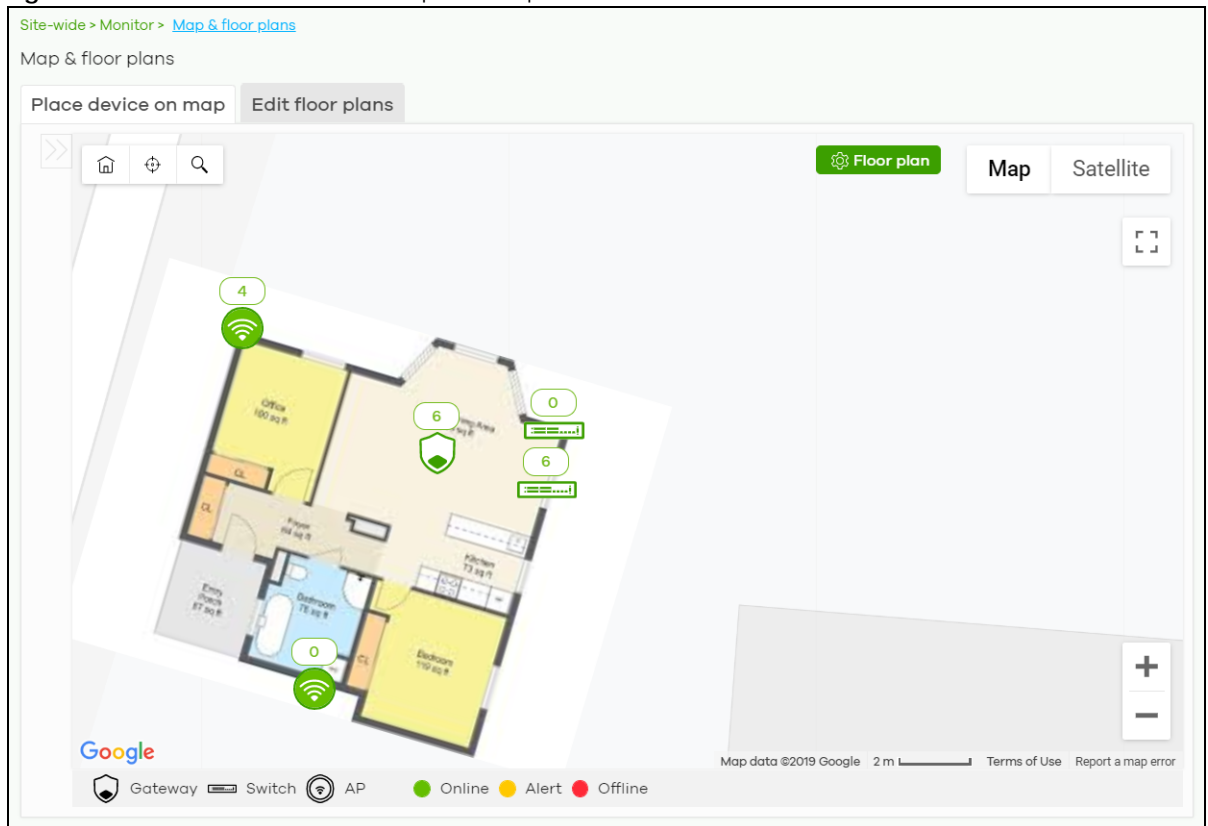
Table 65 Site-Wide > Monitor > Containment list (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Containment	This field displays if the client is blocked, quarantined or just triggers an alert.
Time Remaining (mins.)	This field displays the amount of time left until this client is released by CDR.
Connect to	This field displays the description of the Access Point or the interface of the Nebula Device that the contained client is connected to.
Release/Add to Exempt List	
Release	Select a client and then click this to release this Nebula Device from CDR containment.
Add to Exempt List	Select a client, select an IPv4 address or MAC address, and then click OK to release this Nebula Device from CDR containment. This Nebula Device's IP or MAC address is exempt from future CDR checking.

7.1.5 Map & Floor Plans

This screen allows you to locate a Nebula Device on the world map and use a floor plan to show where Nebula Devices are physically located. Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Map & floor plans** to access this screen.

Figure 80 Site-Wide > Monitor > Map & floor plans



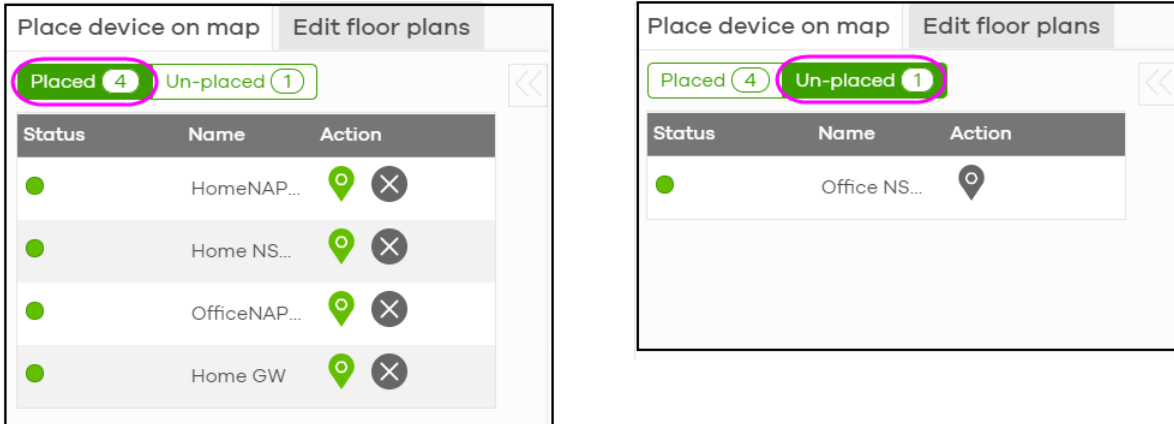
Place devices on map

You can mark on the map the places where the Nebula Devices are located. Click the **Place device on map** tab to display the Nebula Device list for the selected site. Click the arrow (<<) on the upper left corner of the **Map & floor plans** screen to collapse or expand the list.

Click the **Placed** button to show the Nebula Devices that you have pinned on the map and/or the floor plan. Click the **Un-placed** button to show the Nebula Devices that remain to be pinned on the map. To pin a Nebula Device, select the Nebula Device from the **Un-placed** list, then drag and drop it on the map.

The pin icon next to a Nebula Device name is green (📍) if you have marked the Nebula Device on the map. Otherwise, the pin icon is gray (📍). Click the ✕ icon to remove a Nebula Device from the map.

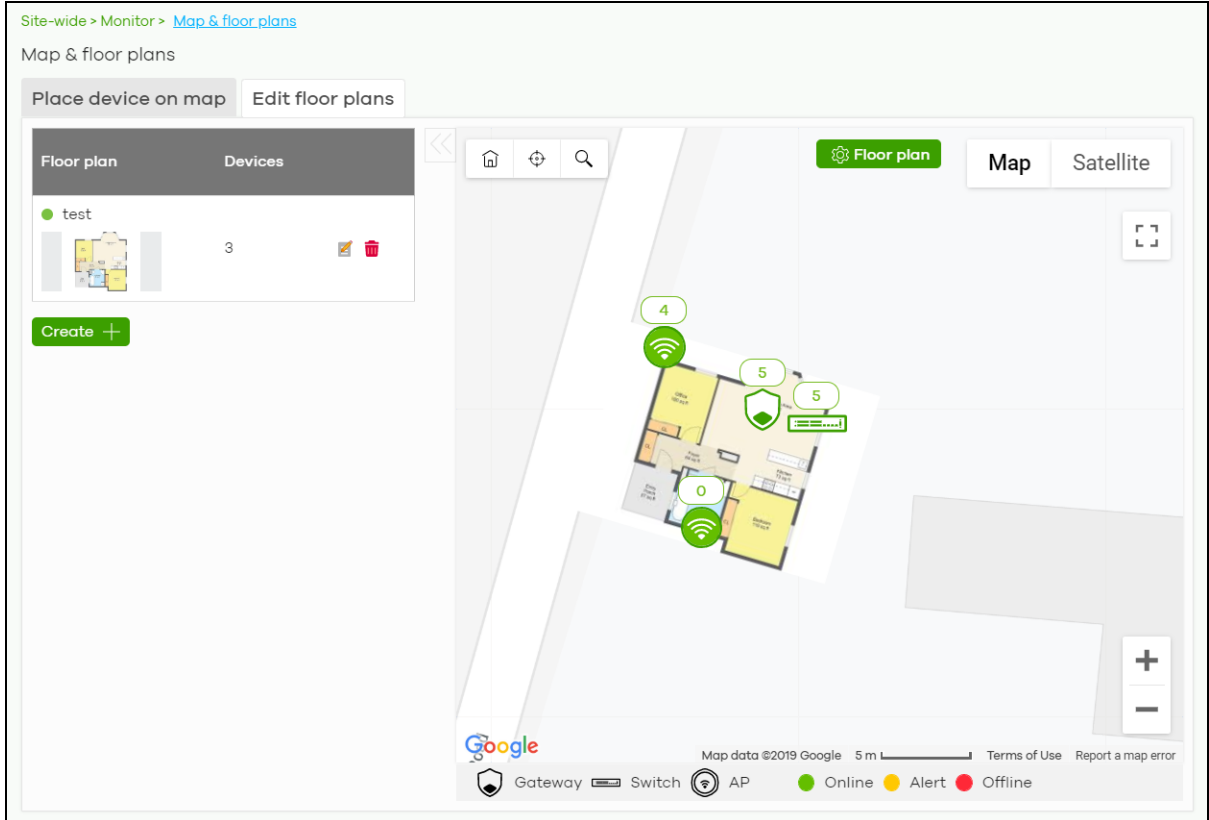
Figure 81 Site-Wide > Monitor > Map & floor plans: Place device on map



Edit floor plans



Click the **Edit floor plans** tab to display the list of existing floor plan, a drawing that shows the rooms scaled and viewed from above. Click the arrow (<<) on the upper left corner of the **Map & floor plans** screen to collapse or expand the list.

Use the **Create+** button to upload a new floor plan. The floor plan then shows on the Google map at the right side of the screen. Use your mouse to move the floor plan, and use the icons at the top of the map to rotate, change the transparency, resize or hide the floor plan. Click **Set position** to apply your changes. If you want to relocate the floor plan, select the floor plan from the list and click its edit icon.

Figure 82 Site-Wide > Monitor > Map & floor plans: Edit floor plans

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 Site-Wide > Monitor > Map & floor plans: Edit floor plans

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Floor plan	This shows the descriptive name of the floor plan.
Devices	This shows the number of Nebula Devices marked on this floor plan.
	Click this icon to open a screen, where you can modify the name, address and/or dimension of the floor plan.
	Click this icon to delete the floor plan.

7.1.6 Topology

Use this screen to view the links between Nebula Devices in the site. Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Topology** to access this screen.

The icon of a node in the network topology indicates its Nebula Device type and the color shows whether the Nebula Device is online (green), has alerts (amber), or is offline (red).

Move the pointer over a node to view detailed Nebula Device information, such as its name, model number, number of connected clients, and MAC address. Click **Reboot** to restart the Nebula Device.

Move the pointer over a link to view link details, such as type (Ethernet or wireless mesh), speed, and data usage from the past 24 hours. If the link is supplying power to a node using Power over Ethernet (PoE), you can click **Reset** to perform a power cycle on the port. This action temporarily disables PoE and then re-enables it, in order to reboot connected PoE devices.

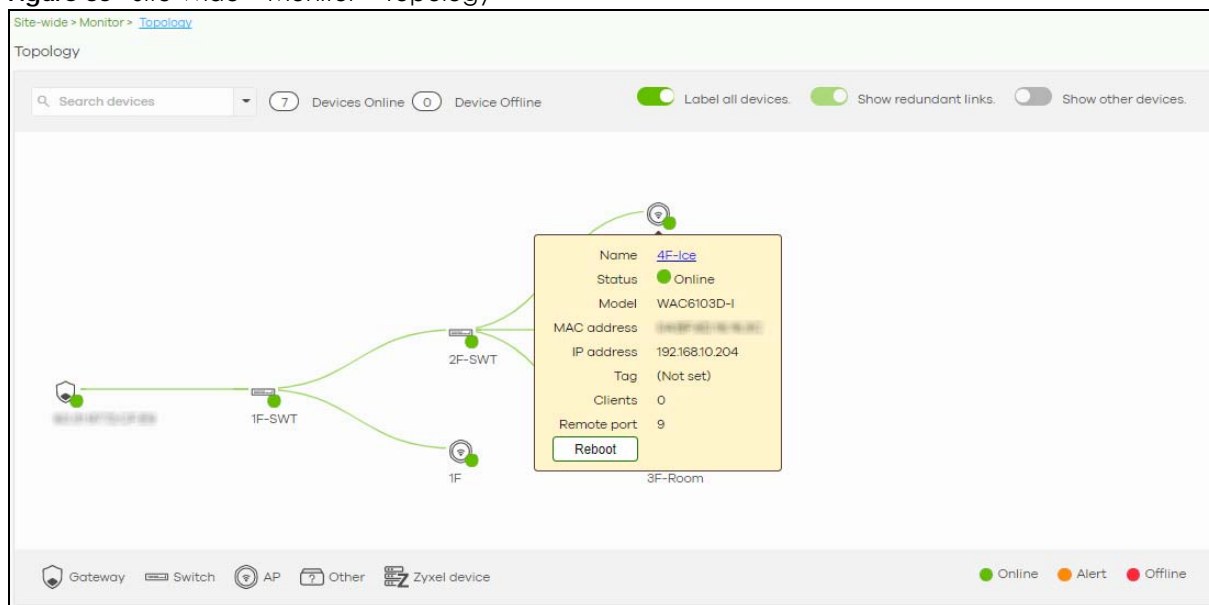
Enable **Label all devices** to show Nebula Device information, such as MAC address in the network topology diagram.

Enable **Show redundant links** to display the secondary connection between two nodes, if any.

Enable **Show other devices** to also display the Nebula Devices that are connected to your network but cannot be identified by the NCC. This on/off switch is configurable only when there is a non-Nebula Device installed in the network and detected by the NCC through LLDP packets.

Zyxel device is a device manufactured by Zyxel but not registered at the NCC or unable to work in Nebula cloud management mode.

Figure 83 Site-Wide > Monitor > Topology



7.1.7 Vouchers

A voucher is a unique printable code that allows a user to authenticate with a WiFi network for a limited period of time. A user connects to the WiFi network's SSID and then enters the code in a captive portal. After a successful login, the expiry time of the voucher starts counting down.

Vouchers are useful in situations where you want to give individual users time-limited WiFi access. For example: A customer can purchase a voucher for 2 hours of Internet access in a hotel or coffee shop.

Note: You can only enable voucher authentication for one SSID per site.

7.1.7.1 Using Vouchers

- 1 Go to **Access Point > Configure > SSID settings**, and create a dedicated SSID for voucher-based WiFi access. For example, "Hotel_Guest_Network".
For details on configuring SSIDs, see [Section 12.3.1 on page 474](#).
- 2 Go to **Access Point > Configure > Authentication**, select the SSID, and then under **Sign-in method** select **Voucher**.
For details, see [Section 12.3.2 on page 476](#).

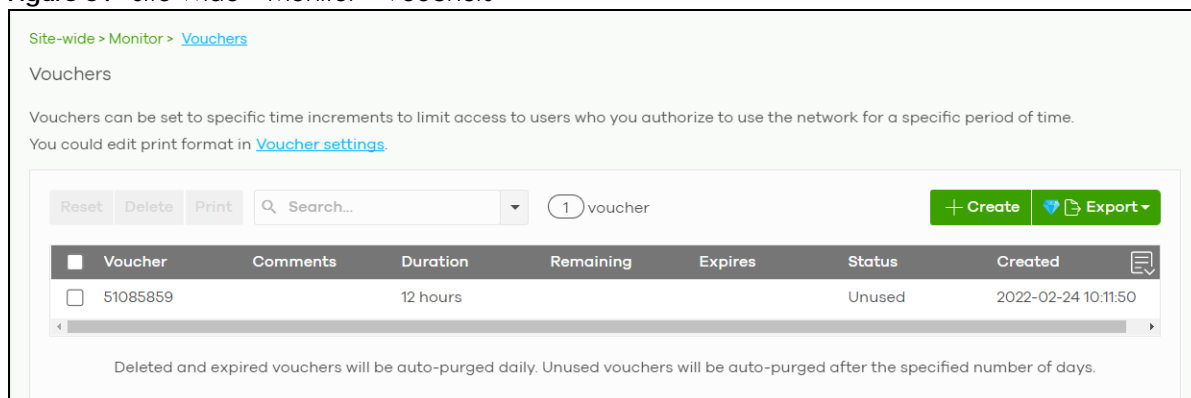
- 3 Go to **Site-wide > Configure > General settings > Voucher settings** to configure how the vouchers will look when printed.
For details, see [Section 7.2.1 on page 226](#).
- 4 Go to **Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers**, and then click **Create** to create one or more vouchers.

7.1.7.2 Vouchers Screen

This screen allows you to create and manage vouchers for WiFi network authentication.

Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers** to access this screen.

Figure 84 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 67 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reset	Select one or more vouchers and then click this button to reset the vouchers back to their original states. Each voucher's status is set to Unused and time remaining is reset to the time configured in Duration .
Delete	Select one or more vouchers and then click this button to delete the vouchers.
Print	Select one or more vouchers and then click this button to print the vouchers. You can modify how vouchers look when printed at Site-wide > Configure > General settings .
Search	Use this field to search for vouchers, by voucher code, duration, and/or status.
Create	Click this button to create one or more vouchers. For details, see Section 7.1.7.3 on page 218 .
Export	Click this button to export the voucher table and all information in it to a CSV or XML file.
Voucher	This displays the voucher's unique authentication code.
Comments	This displays information about the voucher.
Duration	This displays how long the voucher is valid from when it is activated, in hours.
Remaining	This displays how much time is left before the voucher expires. NCC only starts counting this time after the voucher has been activated.
Expire in	This displays the date and time that the voucher will expire.

Table 67 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	<p>This displays the current status of the voucher:</p> <p>Unused: The voucher has not yet been used for authentication.</p> <p>Active: A user has used the voucher for authentication. NCC has started counting down the duration.</p> <p>Expire: The voucher has reached the end of its duration period and can no longer be used.</p> <p>Delete: The voucher is unused and has reached the time set under Purge after (days).</p> <p>Note: NCC automatically deletes vouchers with the status Expire or Delete after 24 hours. You can see a history of these automatic deletions in the NCC event log.</p>
Created	This displays the date and time that the voucher was created.

7.1.7.3 Create Vouchers Screen

Use this screen to create one or more new vouchers.

Figure 85 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers > Create

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers > Create

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Quantity	<p>Sets the number of vouchers you want to create.</p> <p>The valid range for this setting is 1 – 999.</p>
Code length	<p>Sets the length of the unique code on each voucher.</p> <p>The valid range for this setting is 6 – 10.</p>
Comment	Enter information about the voucher that might be useful for other administrators.
Duration (hours)	<p>Sets how long the voucher is valid after it has been activated, in hours.</p> <p>The valid range for this setting is 1 – 72.</p>

Table 68 Site-Wide > Monitor > Vouchers > Create (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Purge after (days)	Sets how long a non-activated voucher is valid for, in days. The valid range for this setting is 1 – 180.
Print after created	Select this to print the vouchers immediately after clicking Create .
Save as default	Click this to make the settings on this page the default settings for new vouchers.

Note: Dynamic Personal Pre-Shared Keys (DPPSKs) also allow you to give individual users a printable password and time-limited WiFi access. For details, see [Section 12.3.2 on page 476](#).

7.1.8 Cloud Intelligence Logs

This screen displays events from the Security Appliance within the selected site, such as CDR service events, alerts, and firmware management.

Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Cloud intelligence logs** to access this screen.

Figure 86 Site-Wide > Monitor > Cloud intelligence logs

Site-wide > Monitor > [Cloud intelligent logs](#)

Cloud intelligent logs

Feature: Keyword: Category:

From: To:

Max range is 30 days, the dates will be auto-adjusted.

40786 Logs



Time	Feature	Category	Detail
2021-03-29 14:35:32	CDR	Block	Release contained client: Time's up: IP:192.168.2.37, [MAC: 08:00:27:00:00:00]
2021-03-29 14:35:32	CDR	Block	CDR event detected: IP:192.168.2.37, [MAC: 08:00:27:00:00:00]
2021-03-29 09:29:56	CDR	Block	Release contained client: Time's up: IP:192.168.47160, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:56	CDR	Block	CDR event detected: IP:192.168.47160, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:26	CDR	Block	Release contained client: Time's up: IP:192.168.47159, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:26	CDR	Block	CDR event detected: IP:192.168.47159, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:26	CDR	Block	Release contained client: Time's up: IP:192.168.47158, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:26	CDR	Block	CDR event detected: IP:192.168.47158, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]
2021-03-29 09:29:26	CDR	Block	Release contained client: Time's up: IP:192.168.47157, [MAC: 78:27:0a:28:18:03]

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 Site-Wide > Monitor > Cloud intelligent logs

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Feature	Select the features that you want to view logs for.
Keyword	Enter a keyword to filter the list of log entries.
Category	Select the type of log messages you want to view. The available categories will depend on the features you have selected under Feature .

Table 69 Site-Wide > Monitor > Cloud intelligent logs (continued)

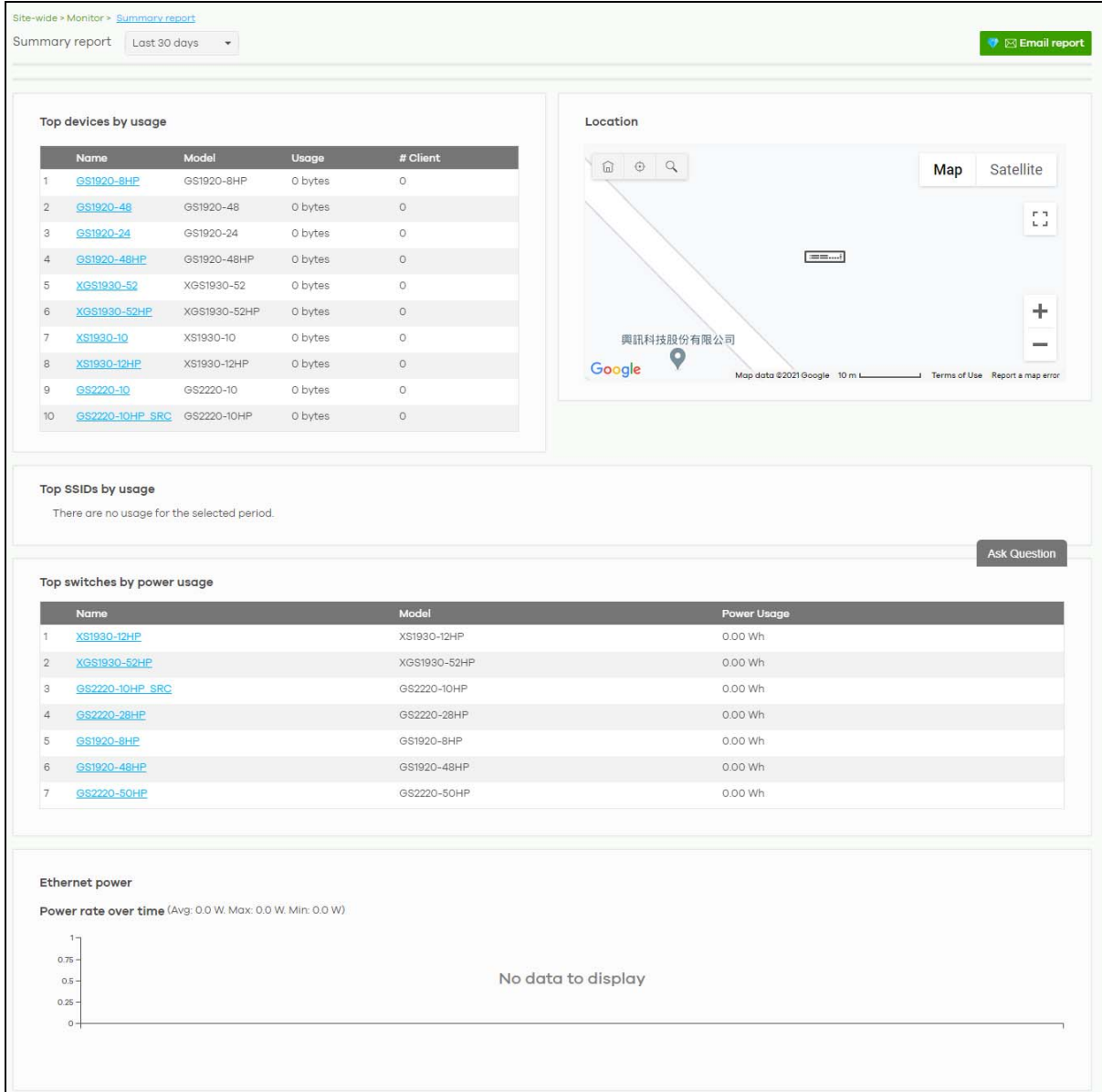
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Range/Before	Select filtering options, set a date, and then click Search to filter log entries by date. Range: Display log entries from the first specified date to the second specified date. Before: Display log entries from the beginning of the log to the selected date.
Reset filters 	Click this to return the search criteria to the previously saved time setting.
Search	Click this to update the list of logs based on the search criteria.
Newer/Older	Click to sort the log messages by most recent or oldest.
N Logs	This shows the number of log messages (N) in the list.
Export	Click this button to download the log list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Time	This shows the date and time when the log was recorded. It uses the local time set for the site at Site-wide > Configure > General settings .
Feature	Select the feature that created the log message.
Category	This shows the type of log message, for example "Block". The available categories will depend on the feature.
Detail	This shows the details of the event. Note: Click the Nebula Device name link for an Auto configuration recovery alert to go to Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details screen for more information.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

7.1.9 Summary Report

Use this screen to view statistics for the Nebula Devices and networks in the selected site.

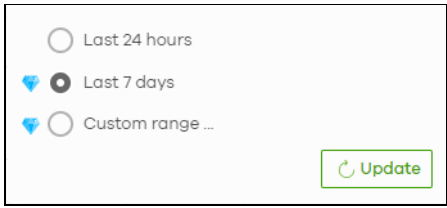
Click **Site-wide > Monitor > Summary report** to access this screen.

Figure 87 Site-wide > Monitor > Summary report



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 Site-wide> Monitor > Summary Report

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Summary report	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the logo and set email schedules.
Top devices by usage	
	This shows the index number of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device. You can click the name to view the Nebula Device details.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted by or through the Nebula Device.
Client	This shows the number of clients currently connected to the Nebula Device.
Location	
This shows the location of the site's gateway device on the map.	
Top SSIDs by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the SSID.
SSID	This shows the SSID network name.
Encryption	This shows the encryption method use by the SSID network.
# Client	This shows how many WiFi clients are connecting to this SSID.
% Client	This shows what percentage of associated WiFi clients are connecting to this SSID.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted or received by clients connecting to this SSID.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the clients connecting to this SSID.
Top switches by power usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Switch.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Switch.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Switch.
Power Usage	This shows the total amount of power consumed by the Nebula Switch's connected PoE devices during the specified period of time.
Ethernet power	This graph shows power used by all PoE Switch ports in the site within the specified time, in Watts.
Avg	This shows the average power consumption for all Switch ports.
Max	This shows the maximum power consumption of the Switch ports.
Min	This shows the minimum power consumption of the Switch ports.
y-axis	The y-axis shows how much power is used by all Switches in the site, in Watts.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which power consumption is recorded.

7.1.10 Applications

This screen displays usage statistics for applications used in the site. An application can be a specific app or service (for example, Facebook) or a general protocol (for example, HTTP). You can also block or restrict bandwidth for applications at the gateway, and for multiple applications by category.

Click **Site-Wide > Monitor > Applications** to access this screen.

Note: You can view this screen by application or by category.

Figure 88 Site-Wide > Monitor > Applications: Application View

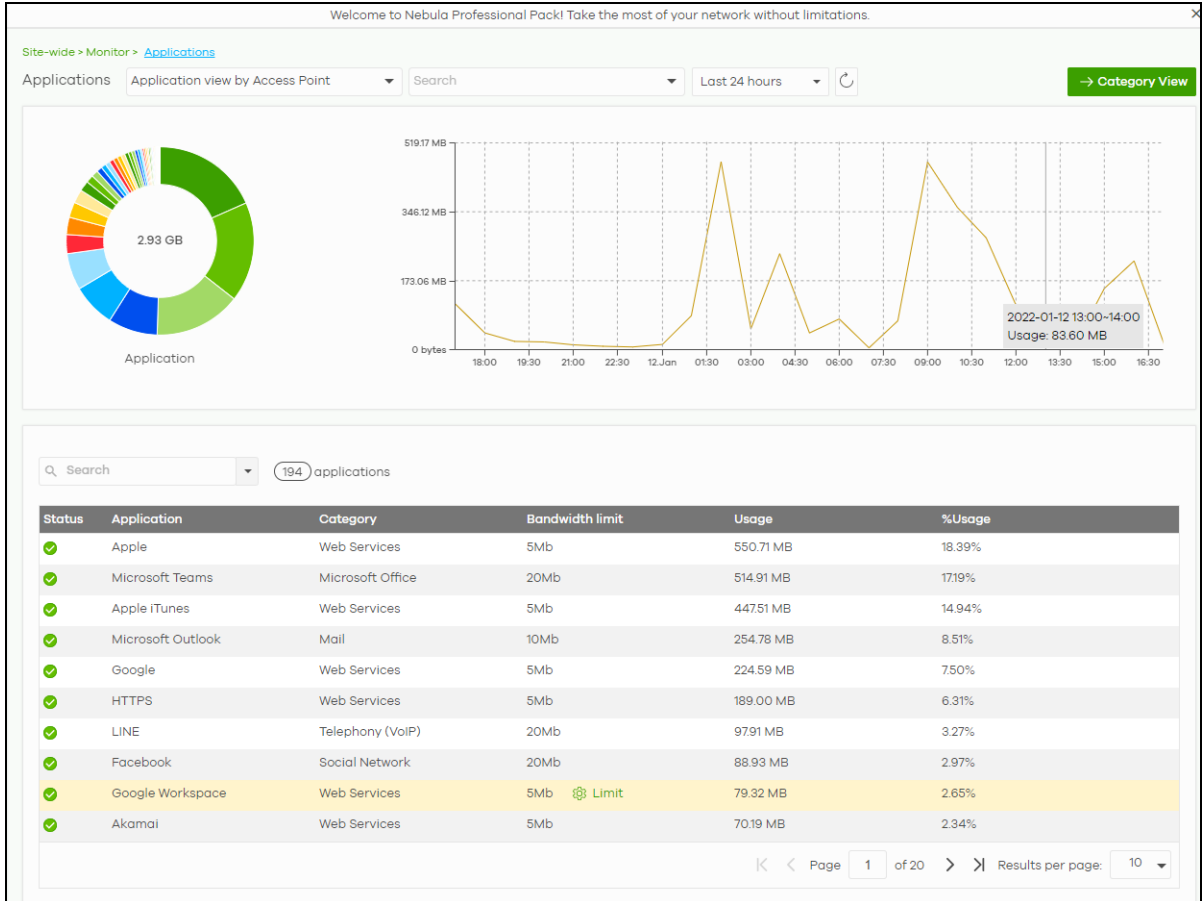
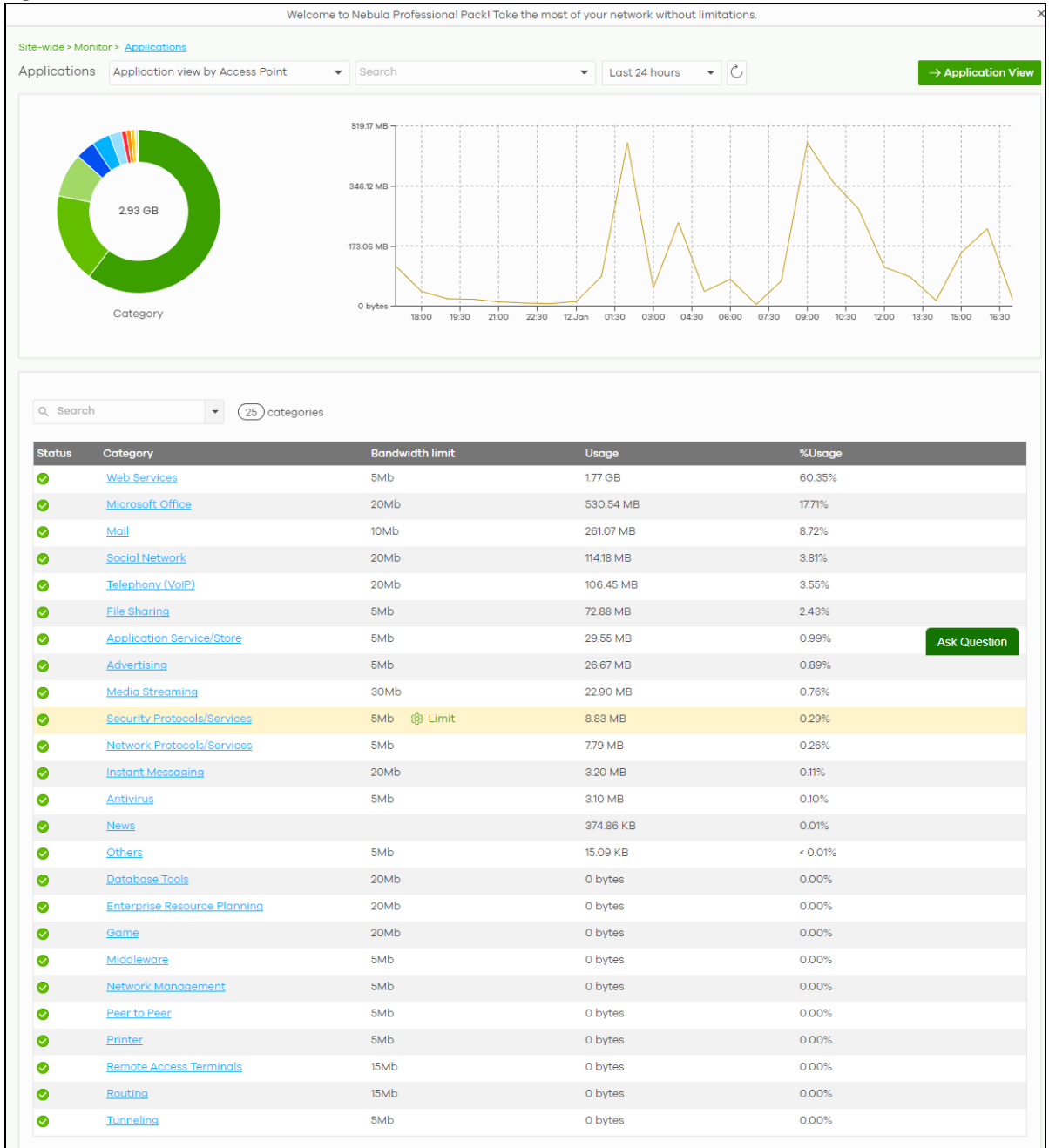
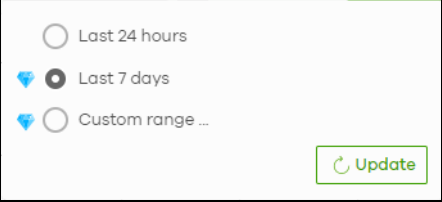



Figure 89 Site-Wide > Monitor > Applications: Category View



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 Site-Wide > Monitor > Applications

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Applications	<p>In Application view, select to view all applications of Nebula Security Appliances / Nebula Access Points, or only applications with bandwidth or block policies applied to Nebula Security Appliances.</p> <p>In Category view, select to view all applications of Nebula Security Appliances / Nebula Access Points only.</p> <p>Select to view the report for the past day or week. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Category View / Application View	Click this button to view statistics by application or category.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the total amount of data used by applications or categories in the site.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the data usage occurred.
Keyword	Enter a keyword to filter the list of log entries.
N applications/categories	This shows the number of applications/categories (N) in the list.
Application/Category-View Fields	
Status	This shows whether the application or category is blocked or allowed within the current site.
Application	This shows the application name.
Category	<p>This shows the name of the category to which the application belongs.</p> <p>Note: Click this field in Category view to see all applications in the category.</p>
Bandwidth limit	This shows the bandwidth restriction policy for the application.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the application, or all applications in the category.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the application or category.
Limit	<p>Click this to limit the bandwidth for the application on the site's gateway.</p> <p>You can apply the restrictions per gateway interface, or for all interfaces.</p>

7.2 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to set the general and email alert settings for the selected site, or register a new Nebula Device and assign it to the site.

7.2.1 General Settings

Use this screen to change the general settings for the site, such as the site name, Nebula Device login password and firmware upgrade schedule. Click **Site-Wide > Configure > General settings** to access this screen.

Figure 90 Site-Wide > Configure > General settings

Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.

This site is bound to template [SSID Template2](#)

Site-wide > Configure > [General settings](#) Override site-wide configuration

General settings

Site information

Site name: ZyNet TW

Security Appliance type: Firewall

Local time zone: Taiwan Asia - Taipei (UTC +8.0)

Configuration template: This site uses the configuration of the template [SSID Template2](#)

Device configuration

Local credentials

Username: admin (Firewall username is *support*)

Password:

Smart guest/VLAN network: [Beta](#) [What is this?](#)

Password must be at least 8 characters in length and consists of letters and numerals. The valid characters are letters, numerals and symbols as follow: ~!@#\$%^&*()_+~-={};<>.

Captive portal reauthentication

For my AD server users:

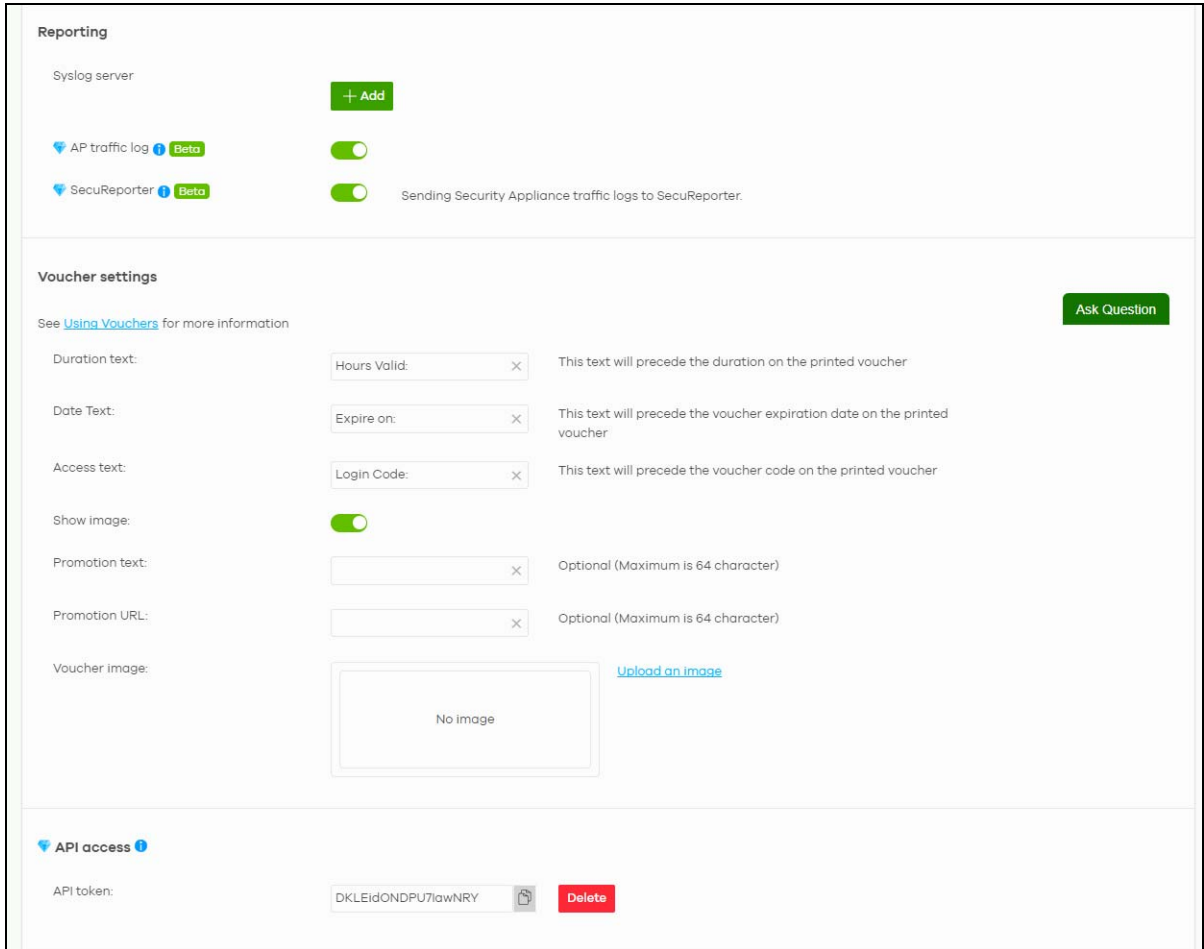
For my RADIUS server users:

For click-to-continue users:

For cloud authentication users

SNMP

SNMP access:



The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 72 Site-Wide > Configure > General settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Site Information	
Site name	Enter a descriptive name for the site.
Security Appliance type	Click this to select whether the sites will contain a ZyWALL USG FLEX, ATP, USG20(W)-VPN, or NSG device as its Security Appliance. This choice changes which settings are available within the site, and changes the gateway menu between Security Appliance and Firewall . If you have added a Security Appliance device to the site, then this field is set automatically and cannot be edited. This shows Firewall if the site contains a ZyWALL USG FLEX, ATP, or USG20(W)-VPN device. Otherwise, this shows Security Appliance if the site contains an NSG device.
Local time zone	Choose the time zone of the site's location.
Configuration template	The name of the template that the site is bound to is shown here. Click Unbind to release the site from using the configuration template. The site which is unbound from the template still retains the settings applied from the template.
Device configuration	
Local credentials	The default password is generated automatically by the NCC when the site is created. You can specify a new password to access the status page of the Nebula Device's built-in web-based configurator. The settings here apply to all Nebula Devices in this site.

Table 72 Site-Wide > Configure > General settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Smart guest/ VLAN network	<p>Click On to enable this feature. This allows the NCC to check if the VLAN ID and guest network settings are consistent on the APs and Security Appliance in the same site to ensure guest network connectivity.</p> <p>The guest settings you configure for a gateway interface (in Security Gateway > Configure > Interface addressing) will also apply to the WiFi networks (SSIDs) associated with the same VLAN ID (in Access Point > Configure > SSID settings). For example, if you set a gateway interface in VLAN 100 as a guest interface, the SSID that belongs to VLAN 100 will also act as a guest network.</p>
Captive portal reauthentication	
For my AD server users	Select how often the user (authenticated by an AD server) has to log in again.
For my RADIUS server users	Select how often the user (authenticated by a RADIUS server) has to log in again.
For click-to-continue users	Select how often the user (authenticated through the captive portal) has to log in again.
For cloud authentication users	Select how often the user (authenticated using the NCC user database) has to log in again.
SNMP	
SNMP access	Select V1/V2c to allow SNMP managers using SNMP to access the Nebula Devices in this site. Otherwise, select Disable .
SNMP community string	<p>This field is available when you select V1/V2c.</p> <p>Enter the password for the incoming SNMP requests from the management station.</p>
Reporting	
Syslog server	Click Add to create a new entry.
Server IP	Enter the IP address of the server.
Types	<p>Select the type of logs the server is for.</p> <p>Note: Besides sending Gateway traffic log to a Syslog server, you can also set the Security Appliance (through its Web Configurator) to save a copy of the logs to a connected USB storage device. Gateway traffic log includes the traffic information (such as its source, destination or usage) of the Security Appliance clients.</p>
Action	Click the Delete icon to remove the entry.
AP traffic log	<p>Log traffic for APs in the site that have NAT mode enabled. You can also send the logs to a Syslog server, by selecting AP traffic log under Syslog server > Types.</p> <p>For details on configuring NAT mode, see Section 12.3.2 on page 476.</p>
SecuReporter	<p>Click On to enable this feature. This allows the NCC to send traffic logs to SecuReporter.</p> <p>Note: Disable this option if you have configured sending of traffic logs to an external syslog server.</p>

Table 72 Site-Wide > Configure > General settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Voucher settings	<p>Use these settings to configure how WiFi network authentication vouchers for this site look when printed.</p>  <p>For more information on vouchers, see Section 7.1.7 on page 216.</p>
Duration Text	Sets the text that precedes the duration on the voucher. The text must consist of 1 – 16 characters.
Access Text	Sets the text that precedes the access code on the voucher. The text must consist of 1 – 16 characters.
Show image	Sets whether to display an image at the top-left of the voucher. This image is optional.
Promotion Text	Sets the promotional text on the voucher. This text is optional. The text must consist of 1 – 64 characters.
Promotion URL	Sets the promotional URL on the voucher. This URL is optional. The URL is displayed as a QR code on the voucher.
Voucher image	This shows the uploaded image that will be displayed at the top-left of the voucher.
Upload an image	Click this button to upload an image from your local computer. The Choose File button appears. Click this button to locate the PNG (preferred for its transparency) / JPEG/GIF image file. The maximum image file size is 200 KB.
Replace this image	Click this button to change the uploaded image.
Remove this image	Click this button to delete the uploaded image.
API access	API access allows third-party software to integrate with the DPPSK feature in NCC. For more information, please contact Zyxel.
API token	Generate an API token for DPPSK third-party integration.
Generate	Click this button to create a new API key.
Copy	Click this button to copy the API key to the system's clipboard.
Delete	Click this button to delete the API key.

7.2.2 Collaborative Detection & Response

Collaborative Detection & Response (CDR) allows you to detect wired and WiFi clients that are sending malicious traffic in your network and then block or quarantine traffic coming from them. In this way, malicious traffic is not spread throughout the network. Secure policies can block malicious traffic for specific traffic flows, but CDR can block malicious traffic from the sender. Malicious traffic is identified using a combination of Web Filtering, Anti-Malware and IPS (IDP) signatures.

Figure 91 Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative Detection & Response

Site-wide > Configure > Collaborative detection & response

Collaborative detection & response

Collaborative detection & response

Enable


Policy

Category	Event type	Occurrence	Duration (Minutes)	Containment
Malware	Malware detected	2 <input type="text"/> × *	60 <input type="text"/> × *	Alert
IDP	Vulnerability exploit detected	2 <input type="text"/> × *	10 <input type="text"/> × *	Alert
Web Threats	Connections to malicious web sites detected	3 <input type="text"/> × *	30 <input type="text"/> × *	Alert

Containment

General

Theme



Default Modern Ask Question

Logo Upload a logo

No logo

Notification message

There are malicious network activities found on your device. Please contact network administrator.

Redirect external URL URL:

To use custom captive portal page, please download the zip file and edit them.
[Download](#) the customized captive portal page example.

Containment period

Block

Block wireless client

Quarantine

Quarantine VLAN Set

Exempt list

IP or MAC

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative Detection & Response

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Collaborative detection & response	
Enable	Select this check box to activate Collaborative Detection & Response. Make sure you have active Web Filtering, Anti-Malware, IPS (Intrusion Prevention System), and CDR (Collaborative Detection & Response) licenses.
Policy	
Category	Category refers to the signature type that identified the malicious traffic: Malware (Anti-Malware, Anti-Virus), IDP (IPS), and Web Threat (Content Filtering and URL Threat Filtering).
Event Type	This displays some details on the category of malicious traffic detected.
Occurrence (1–100)	Enter the number of security events that need to occur within the defined Duration to trigger a CDR Containment action.
Duration (1–1440)	Enter the length of time in minutes the event should occur from a client the Occurrence number of times to trigger a CDR Containment action. For example, Occurrence is set to 10, and Duration is set to 100. If the NCC detects 10 or more occurrences of malicious traffic in less than 100 minutes, then CDR Containment is triggered.
Containment	Select the action to be taken when the number of security events exceed the threshold within the defined duration. Alert: Select this if you just want to issue a notification in NCC. Block: Select this if you want to block traffic from a suspect client at the NCC, or from a suspect WiFi client at the AP connected to the NCC. Traffic is still broadcast to other clients in the same subnet. A 'notification' web page is displayed when this action is triggered. Quarantine: Select this if you want to isolate traffic from a suspect client at the NCC in a quarantine VLAN. Traffic is not broadcast to other clients in the same subnet. A 'notification' web page is displayed to the client when this action is triggered.
Containment	Use this section to configure the selection containment action.
General	
Theme	Configure the CDR block page. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Click the Preview icon at the upper right corner of a theme image to display the block page in a new frame.Click the Copy icon to create a new custom theme (block page).
Logo	This shows the logo image that you uploaded for the customized block page. Click Choose File and specify the location and file name of the logo graphic or click Browse to locate it. You can use the following image file formats: GIF, PNG, or JPG. File size must be less than 200 KB, and images larger than 244 x 190 will be resized.
Notification message	Enter the message that is displayed on the CDR block page. The client is redirected here when a Block or Quarantine action is triggered. For example, "Malicious traffic is coming from your device so traffic is temporarily stopped. Please contact the network administrator." Redirect external URL: Enter a URL in "http://domain" or "https://domain" format to an external notification page. The client is redirected here when a Block or Quarantine action is triggered. Make sure the external notification page is accessible from the NCC.
Redirect external URL	Enable this setting, and then enter a URL in "http://domain" or "https://domain" format to an external notification page. The client is redirected to this page when a Block or Quarantine action is triggered. You can download a sample block page by clicking Download . Note: The external notification page must be accessible from NCC.

Table 73 Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative Detection & Response (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Containment Period	Enter how long the client should be blocked or quarantined. This should be at least twice the DHCP server lease time in order to prevent false positives.
Block	Enter how long a suspect client should be blocked or quarantined. You can enter from 1 minute to 1 day (1,440 minutes). 0 means the suspect is blocked forever until released in Monitor > CDR > Containment List .
Block wireless client	Select this to have traffic from the suspect client blocked at the AP. Clear this to have traffic from the suspect client blocked at the NCC.
Quarantine	
Quarantine VLAN	Click Set to configure a VLAN in order to isolate traffic from suspect clients. Traffic from a suspect client is broadcast to all members in the VLAN.
Exempt list	Enter IPv4 and /or MAC addresses of Nebula Devices that are exempt from CDR checking.

7.2.3 Quarantine Interface Configuration

Click **Set** at **Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative detection & response > Containment > Quarantine** to configure the VLAN and interface used to isolate a client when a quarantine action is triggered. The following screen appears.

Note: Only IPv4 addresses can be used in quarantine VLANs.

Figure 92 Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative detection & response > Containment > Quarantine

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Quarantine interface configuration". It is organized into three main sections:

- Interface Properties:**
 - Interface name: Quarantine
 - Port group: LAN Group 1
 - VLAN ID: 44 (range 1 - 4094)
- IP address assignment:**
 - IP address: 10.254.252.1
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.254.0
- DHCP server:**
 - IP pool start address: 10.254.252.2
 - Pool size: 510

At the bottom right, there are "Cancel" and "Ok" buttons.

Each field is explained in the following table.

Table 74 Site-Wide > Configure > Collaborative detection & response > Containment > Quarantine

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface Properties	
Interface Name	This field is read-only. The default name is "Quarantine".
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to belong.
Base Port	Select the Ethernet interface on which the VLAN interface runs.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved)
IP address assignment	This is a 3-bit field within a 802.1Q VLAN tag that is used to prioritize associated outgoing VLAN traffic. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
IP address	Enter the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
DHCP Server	
Get Automatically	Enter the IP address from which the Security Appliance begins allocating IP addresses. If you want to assign a static IP address to a specific computer, click Add new under Static DHCP Table.
IP pool start address	Enter the IP address from which the Security Appliance begins allocating IP addresses for this VLAN.
Pool size	Enter the total number of IP addresses the DHCP server will hand out.
OK	Click OK to save your changes back to the NCC.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

7.2.4 Alert Settings

Use this screen to set which alerts and reports are created and emailed. You can also set the email addresses to which an alert is sent. Click **Site-Wide > Configure > Alert settings** to access this screen.

Note: NCC's Smart Alert Engine uses knowledge of network topology and cross-device functionality to only generate alerts for unexpected events. This helps avoid unnecessary emails and notifications.

For example, an Access Point is receiving power from a PoE switch. If the Access Point loses power because its Ethernet cable is disconnected, NCC generates an alert. If the Access Point loses power because the Switch has a PoE schedule that disables power to the Access Point, NCC does not generate an alert.

Figure 93 Site-Wide > Configure > Alert settings

Site-wide > Configure > [Alert settings](#)

Alert settings

Recipient

All site administrators Email to all site administrators

Custom email recipient

System alerts ⓘ

Wireless minutes after AP goes offline

Switches minutes after Switches goes offline

minutes goes down

Security gateway minutes after the gateway goes offline

Any DHCP lease pool is exhausted

A VPN connection is established or disconnected

WAN connectivity status changed

Other Configuration settings are changed

Security alerts

CDR containment ⓘ Email to receive containment alerts

Security Report

Notification mode Email to receive security alerts by SecuReport

Email subject (Optional, maximum character is 64.)

Email description (Optional, maximum character is 255.)

Notification interval Select notification interval if events were triggered

Event severity Select severity level for email information

Event threshold

Category	Event Type	Severity	Alert criteria
Network Security	Attack counts	High	Highest severity attacks within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Attack counts	High	<input type="text" value="10"/> times attacks within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Malware/virus detection	High	<input type="text" value="10"/> count(s) of malware/virus attack within 5 minutes.
Network Security	Malware/virus detection	Medium	The same malware/virus is detected over 2 times within 15 minutes.
Network Security	Alert counts	High	<input type="text" value="10"/> count(s) of Malware/IP(highest severity)/ADP(protocol anomaly) hits count exceed 10 within 1 mins.
Anomaly	Login failure	Medium	Number of login failures is over 10 times within 1 minutes.
Anomaly	Traffic anomaly	High	<input type="text" value="1"/> times of traffic anomaly scans/floods detected within 5 minutes.
Anomaly	Protocol anomaly	High	<input type="text" value="1"/> times of protocol anomaly TCP/UDP/CMP/IP decoders within 5 minutes.
Network Security	URL Threat Filter	High	<input type="text" value="5"/> times of connection to threat websites within 60 minutes.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 Site-Wide > Configure > Alert settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Recipient	
All site administrators	Select this to send alerts to all site administrators for the current site.
Custom email addresses	Enter the email addresses to which you want to send alerts.
Notification Type	For each alert, you can set how to receive alert notifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Email: Alert notifications are sent by email to configured administrators, custom email recipients, and additional recipients. • In-app Push: Alert notifications are sent to site administrators who are logged into the Nebula Mobile app. This type of notification is not available for some features. • Both: Alert notifications are sent by email and app notification. • Disabled: No alerts are sent.
Show additional recipients	Add additional user accounts who will receive email and in-app notifications for the alert.
System Alerts	

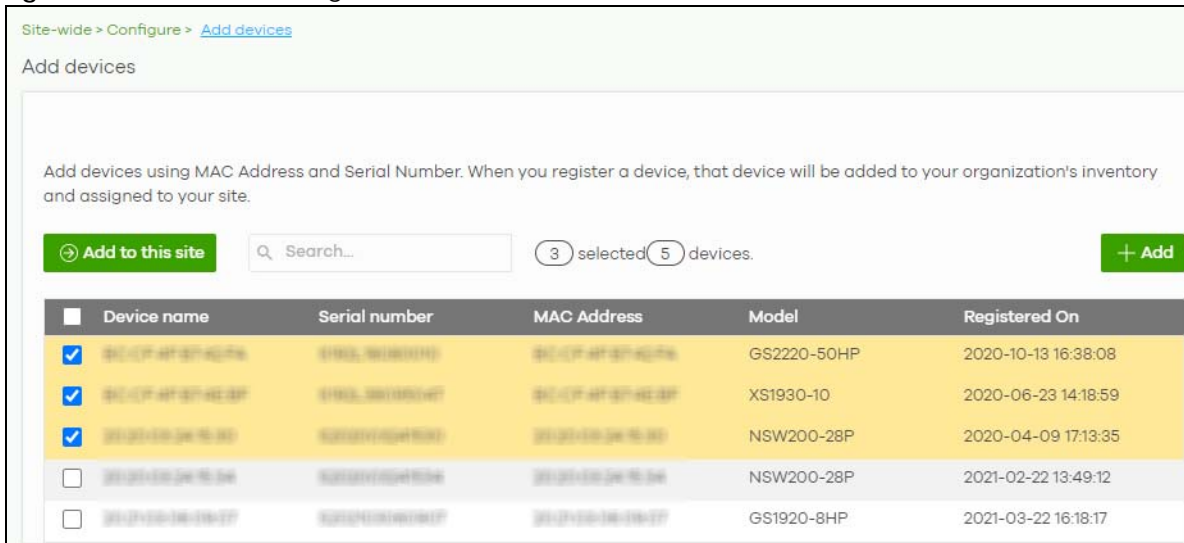
Table 75 Site-Wide > Configure > Alert settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when an AP becomes offline.
Switches	Specify how long in minutes the NCC waits before generating and sending an alert when a port or a Switch goes offline.
Security gateway	Select the check box to have the NCC generate and send an alert by email when the following events occur: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Security Appliance goes offline. • Any DHCP pool on the Security Appliance runs out of IP addresses. • A VPN connection to or from the Security Appliance is established or disconnected. • The WAN connectivity status changed.
Other alerts	Specify whether to send an alert each time configuration settings are changed.
Security alerts	
CDR containment	Specify whether to send an alert each time a CDR block or containment action is triggered.
Security Report	
Notification mode	Select whether to receive email security reports from SecuReporter.
Notification interval	Specify how often to receive a SecuReporter report. If no security events were triggered, SecuReporter will not send a report.
Event severity	Select the severity level of events that will be included in each report.
Event threshold	This table lists the events that trigger SecuReporter security alerts. For some events, you can set the alert threshold. For example, X count(s) of malware/virus attack within 5 minutes means SecuReporter includes a report in the email if the total number of combined malware and virus detection events exceed X within a 5 minute time period.

7.2.5 Add Devices

Use this screen to register a Nebula Device and add it to the site. Click **Site-Wide > Configure > Add devices** to access this screen.

Note: You have to contact Zyxel customer support if you need to change the Nebula Device owner at myZyxel or remove an Organization from the NCC. Please configure your Nebula Device owners and organizations carefully. See also [Section 6.3.3 on page 156](#).

Figure 94 Site-Wide > Configure > Add devices

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 Site-Wide > Configure > Add devices

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add to this site	Click this button to assign the selected Nebula Devices to the site. If you have selected a Security Firewall (see Table 1 on page 11 for a list of Security Firewalls), a pop-up window for you to select the deployment method appears. See Step 6: Set up the Deployment Method on page 48 for more information.
Search	Enter a keyword to filter the list of Nebula Devices by device name, serial number, MAC address, or model.
N devices	This shows the number of registered Nebula Devices (N) which have not been assigned to a site.
+ Add	This button is available only for an organization administrator or site administrator that has full access. Click this button to pop up a window where you can enter a Nebula Device's serial number and MAC address to register it at the NCC. For details, see Section 6.3.3.2 on page 159 .
Device name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model name of the Nebula Device.
Registered On	This shows the time and date that the Nebula Device was added to NCC.

7.2.6 Firmware Management

Use this screen to schedule a firmware upgrade. You can make different schedules for different types of Nebula Devices in the site or create a schedule for a specific Nebula Device. Click **Site-Wide > Configure > Firmware management** to access this screen.

Figure 95 Site-Wide > Configure > Firmware management

This site is bound to template [SSID_Template2](#).

Site-wide > Configure > [Firmware management](#)

Firmware management Override site-wide configuration

Upgrade time UTC+8:0 [What is this?](#)

All APs The APs in this site are using the latest available firmware.

All Switches No switch is installed in this site.

Firewall The appliance in this site is using the latest available firmware.

Mobile Router The Mobile Router in this site is using the latest available firmware.

Status Device type Tag Model Current version Firmware status Locked

3 selected in 3 devices

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Device type	Model	MAC	S/N	Current ver...	Firmware st...	Upgrade scheduled
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Firewall	USG FLEX 500	B8:EC:A3:13:72:EC	S162L4529012S	N/A	N/A	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Mobile router	NR7101	D8:EC:E5:20:80:EC	S210Z4500775S	N/A	N/A	No
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Access point	NWA110AX	BC:CF:4FE3:7C:EC	S202L4524020S	N/A	N/A	No

The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 77 Site-Wide > Configure > Firmware management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upgrade time	Select the day of the week and time of the day to install the firmware. The changes you make here also apply to the Site-Wide > Configure > General setting screen after you click Save .
All APs	This section is grayed out if there is no AP in this site. Set a new schedule for the firmware upgrade and select On to enable the schedule. The changes you make here also apply to the Site-Wide > Configure > General setting screen after you click Save .
All Switches	This section is grayed out if there is no Switch in this site. Set a new schedule for the firmware upgrade and select On to enable the schedule. The changes you make here also apply to the Site-Wide > Configure > General setting screen after you click Save .
Security Gateway	This section is grayed out if there is no Security Appliance in this site. Set a new schedule for the firmware upgrade and select On to enable the schedule. The changes you make here also apply to the Site-Wide > Configure > General setting screen after you click Save .

Table 77 Site-Wide > Configure > Firmware management (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Status/Device Type/Tag/Model/Current Version/Firmware Status/Locked	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Devices.				
Upgrade Now	<p>Click this to immediately install the firmware on the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>This button is selectable only when there is firmware update available for all the selected Nebula Devices.</p>				
Schedule Upgrade	<p>Click this to pop up a window where you can create a new schedule for the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>You can select to upgrade firmware according to the site-wide schedule configured for all Nebula Devices in the site, create a recurring schedule, or edit the schedule with a specific date and time when firmware update is available for all the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>With a recurring schedule, the NCC will check and perform a firmware update when a new firmware release is available for any of the selected Nebula Devices. If the NCC service is downgraded from Nebula Professional Pack to Nebula Base, the Nebula Devices automatically changes to adhere to the side-wide schedule.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Schedule firmware ✕</p> <p>Site timezone: UTC +8.0</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Follow global setting. What is this?</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Every Week on Monday at 02:00</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Schedule the upgrade for: 2019-10-25 at 00:00 What is this?</p> <p>Below devices will be upgrade as required time.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Device type</th> <th style="text-align: right;"># of devices</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Switch</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;">Cancel Add</p> </div>	Device type	# of devices	Switch	1
Device type	# of devices				
Switch	1				
Status	<p>This shows the status of the Nebula Device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green: The Nebula Device is online and has no alerts. Amber: The Nebula Device has alerts. Red: The Nebula Device is offline. Gray: The Nebula Device has been offline for 7 days or more. 				
Device Type	This shows the type of the Nebula Device.				
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.				
Tag	This shows the tag created and added to the Nebula Device.				
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.				
MAC	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.				
S/N	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.				
Current version	This shows the version number of the firmware the Nebula Device is currently running. It shows N/A when the Nebula Device goes offline and its firmware version is not available.				

Table 77 Site-Wide > Configure > Firmware management (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Firmware status	<p>This shows whether the firmware on the Nebula Device is Up to date, there is firmware update available for the Nebula Device (Upgrade available), custom firmware was installed manually (Custom), a specific version of firmware has been installed by Zyxel customer support (Dedicated) or the Nebula Device goes offline and its firmware status is not available (N/A).</p> <p>The status changes to Upgrading... after you click Upgrade Now to install the firmware immediately.</p>
Upgrade scheduled	<p>This shows the date and time when a new firmware upgrade is scheduled to occur. Otherwise, it shows Follow upgrade time and the Nebula Device sticks to the site-wide schedule or No when the firmware on the Nebula Device is up-to-date or the Nebula Device goes offline and its firmware status is not available.</p> <p>A lock icon displays if a specific schedule is created for the Nebula Device, which means the Nebula Device firmware will not be upgraded according to the schedule configured for all Nebula Devices in the site.</p>
Last upgrade time	This shows the last date and time the firmware was upgraded on the Nebula Device.
Schedule upgrade version	This shows the version number of the firmware which is scheduled to be installed.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

7.2.7 Cloud Authentication

Use this screen to view and manage the user accounts which are authenticated using the NCC user database, rather than an external RADIUS server. Click **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud authentication** to access these screen.

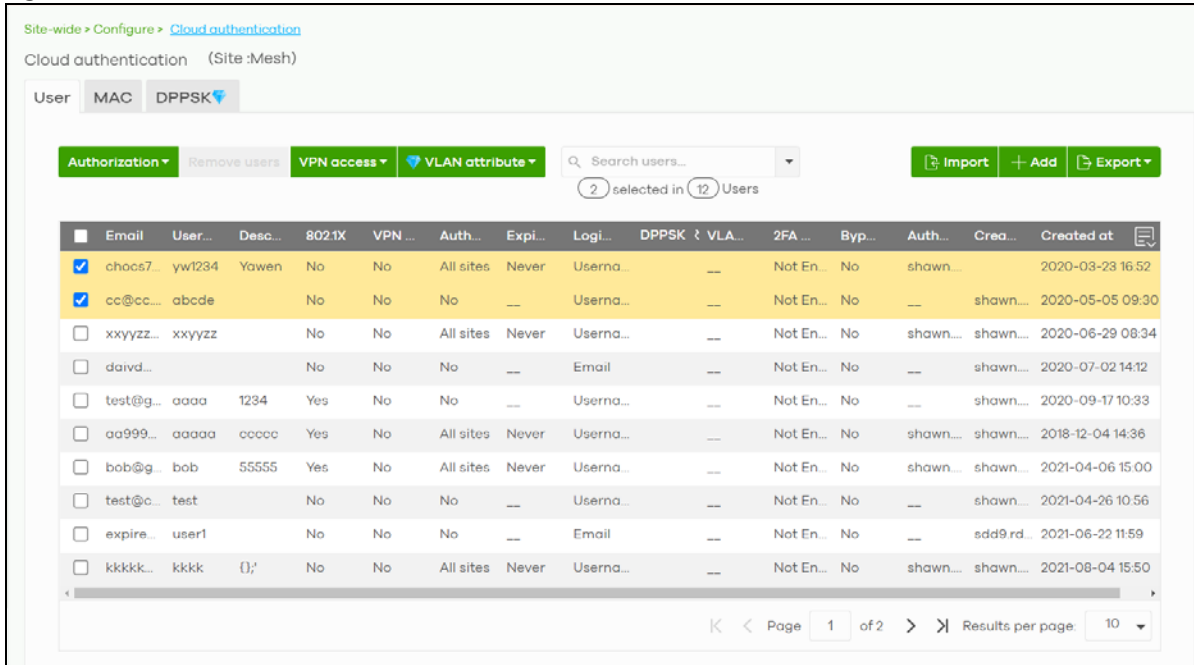
Note: The changes you made in this screen apply only to the current site. To change the cloud authentication settings for all sites in the organization, go to **Organization-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication** (see [Section 7.2.7 on page 240](#)).

Note: For more information on user account types, see [Section 6.3.5.1 on page 174](#).

7.2.7.1 Cloud Authentication User Screen

Use this screen to view and manage regular NCC network user accounts. Click **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User** to access these screen.

Figure 96 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Note: Some of the actions on this screen are only available if your administrator account has full access to the organization.

Table 78 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorization	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorize users (this site only)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Does not expire <input type="radio"/> Expires in: <input type="text" value=""/> minutes <p><input type="radio"/> Revoke authorization (this site only)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Update</p> </div>
Remove users	Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.
VPN access	Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure whether the accounts can be used to connect to the organization's networks through VPN.

Table 78 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User (continued)

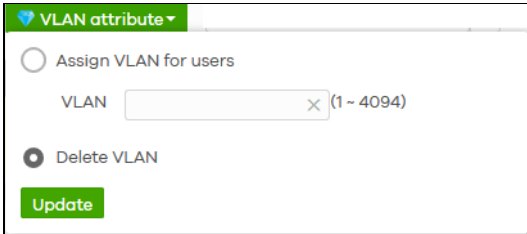
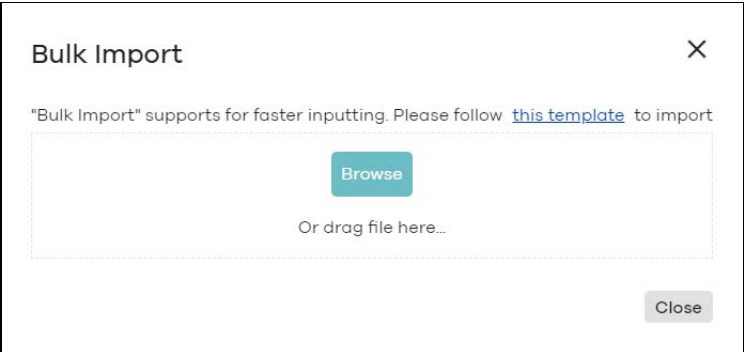

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN attribute	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to assign the users to a specific VLAN ID, or clear the VLAN ID. Then click Update.</p> 
Print	Click this button to print information about each selected user account, such as their user name and password.
Search users	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.
N User	This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.
Import	<p>Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file.</p> 
Add	Click this button to create a new user account. See Section 7.2.7.2 on page 243 .
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
Username	This shows the user name of the user account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
802.1X	This shows whether 802.1X (WPA-Enterprise) authentication is enabled on the account.
VPN access	This shows whether the accounts can be used to connect to the organization's networks through VPN.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized in this site or not.
Expire in (UTC)	<p>This shows the date and time that the account expires.</p> <p>This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account.</p> <p>This shows Never if the account never expires.</p> <p>This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.</p>
Login by	This shows whether the user needs to log in with the email address and/or user name.
DPPSK	This shows the account's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK), if one is set.
VLAN assignment	<p>This field is available only when the account type is set to User.</p> <p>This shows the VLAN assigned to the user.</p>

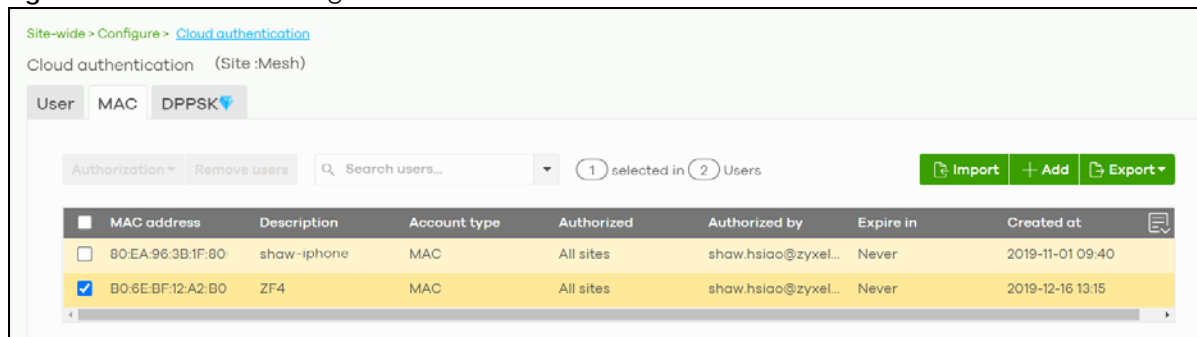
Table 78 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > User (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
2FA Status	This shows whether the account has set up two-factor authentication yet.
Bypass 2FA	This shows whether the account is allowed to bypass two-factor authentication, if two-factor authentication is enabled on a captive portal or VPN gateway.
Authorized by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that authorized the user. If the account has been authorized by different administrators across different sites, it shows Multiple value .
Created by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that created the user.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

7.2.7.2 Cloud Authentication MAC Screen

Use this screen to view and manage Nebula Device user accounts, used for MAC-based authorization. Click **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC** to access this screen.

Figure 97 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC



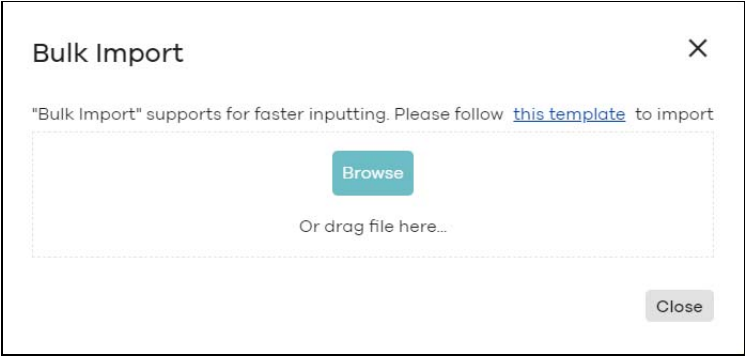

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Note: Some of the actions on this screen are only available if your administrator account has full access to the organization.

Table 79 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authorization	Select one or more than one account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorize users (this site only) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Does not expire <input type="radio"/> Expires in: <input type="text" value="x"/> minutes <input type="radio"/> Revoke authorization (this site only) <p style="text-align: center;">Update</p> </div>
Remove users	Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.
Search users	Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.

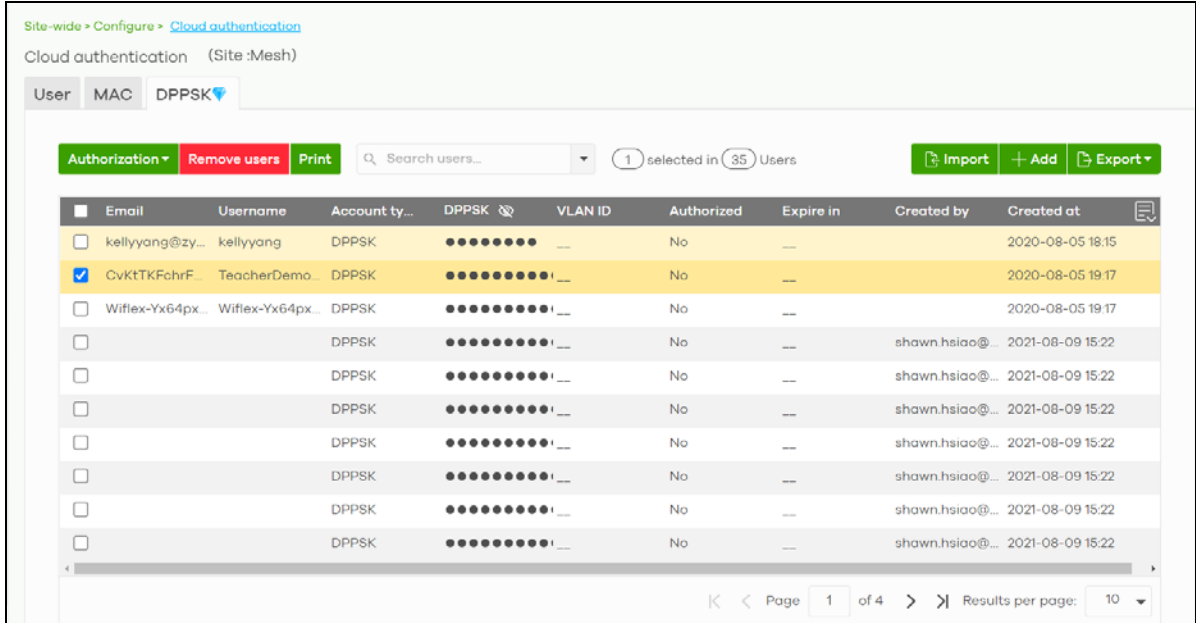
Table 79 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > MAC (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
N User	This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.
Import	Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file. 
Add	Click this button to create a new user account. See Section 7.2.7.3 on page 244 .
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the user account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
Account type	This shows the type of user account: USER, MAC, or DPPSK.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized in this site or not.
Authorized by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that authorized the user. If the account has been authorized by different administrators across different sites, it shows Multiple value .
Expire in (UTC)	This shows the date and time that the account expires. This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account. This shows Never if the account never expires. This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

7.2.7.3 Cloud Authentication DPPSK Screen

Use this screen to view and manage DPPSK network user accounts. Click **Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK** to access this screen.

Figure 98 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 80 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Authorization	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to configure the authorization settings for the selected user accounts.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorize users (this site only)</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Does not expire</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Expires in: <input type="text" value=""/> minutes</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Revoke authorization (this site only)</p> <p><input type="button" value="Update"/></p> </div>		
Remove users	<p>Select one or more than one user account and click this button to remove the selected user accounts.</p>		
Print	<p>Click this button to print the unique dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK) and expiry time of each selected user account.</p> <p>The account details can be cut into cards, and then given to users in order to grant them WiFi network access.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">DPPSK</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; border-right: 1px dashed black; padding: 5px;"> nduzjauv9f Expired in: Never </td> <td style="width: 50%; padding: 5px;"> paatdtcgh4 Expired in: Never </td> </tr> </table> </div>	nduzjauv9f Expired in: Never	paatdtcgh4 Expired in: Never
nduzjauv9f Expired in: Never	paatdtcgh4 Expired in: Never		
Search users	<p>Enter a key word as the filter criteria to filter the list of user accounts.</p>		

Table 80 Site-wide > Configure > Cloud Authentication > DPPSK (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
N Users	This shows how many user accounts (N) match the filter criteria and how many user accounts of the selected type are created in total.
Import	<p>Click this button to create user accounts in bulk by importing a complete list of all new users in an Excel file.</p> this template to import'. There is a dashed box containing a 'Browse' button and the text 'Or drag file here...'. At the bottom right of the dialog is a 'Close' button." data-bbox="305 198 761 366"/>
Add	<p>Click this button to create a single new account, or a batch of accounts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Single DPPSK: See Section 6.3.5.7 on page 182. • Batch create DPPSK: See Section 6.3.5.8 on page 184.
Export	Click this button to save the account list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Email	This shows the email address of the user account.
Username	This shows the user name of the user account.
Account type	This shows the type of user account: USER, MAC, or DPPSK.
DPPSK	This shows the account's dynamic personal pre-shared key (DPPSK).
VLAN ID	This shows the VLAN assigned to the account.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the user account.
Authorized	This shows whether the user has been authorized in this site or not.
Expire in (UTC)	<p>This shows the date and time that the account expires.</p> <p>This shows -- if authentication is disabled for this account.</p> <p>This shows Never if the account never expires.</p> <p>This shows Multiple value if the account has different Expire in values across different sites.</p>
Created by	This shows the email address of the administrator account that created the user.
Created at	This shows the date and time that the account was created.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

PART IV

Manage by Device Type

CHAPTER 8

Mobile Router

8.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor the Nebula-managed Mobile Routers in your network and configure settings even before a NCC is deployed and added to the site.

A Nebula Mobile Router is an LTE or NR cellular 5G indoor or outdoor router that can be managed by Nebula. It is referred to as a NCC in this chapter. To identify whether your NCC is an outdoor or indoor device and view the list of the NCCs that can be managed through the NCC, go to **Help > Support tools > Device function table**.

8.2 Configuration

From the navigation panel, click **Mobile router** and the following screen appears. The **Mobile router > Configuration** screen allows you to view the information of your indoor or outdoor NCC in a selected site. To edit the **Name**, **MAC address**, **Serial number**, **Description**, **Address**, and **Tags** of your NCC, click the edit icon (✎) in the **Configuration** field.

Note: Only one NCC is allowed per site.

Figure 99 Mobile Router > Configuration (Indoor)

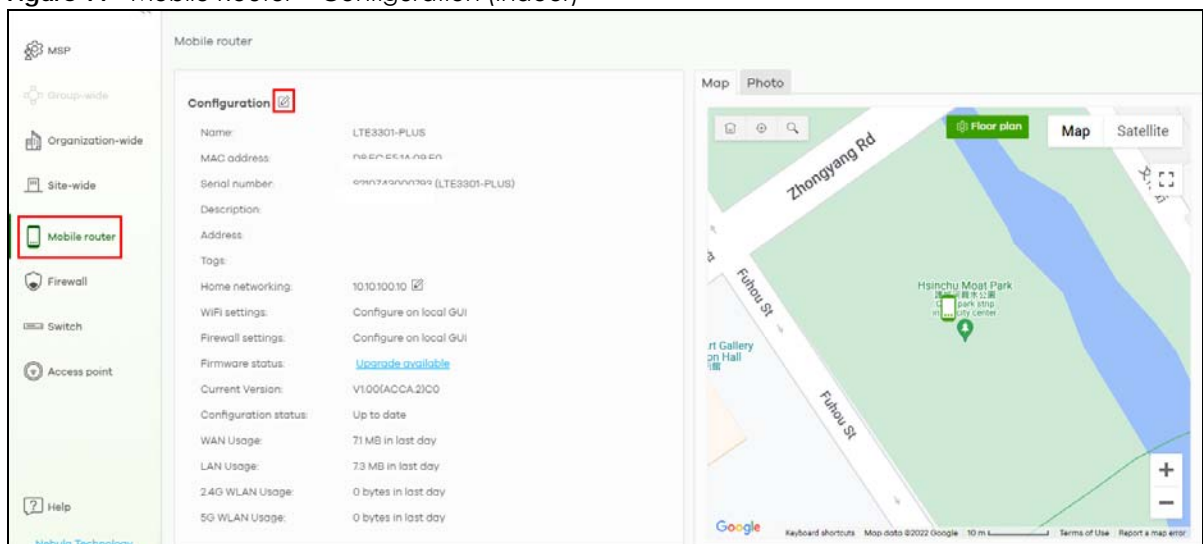
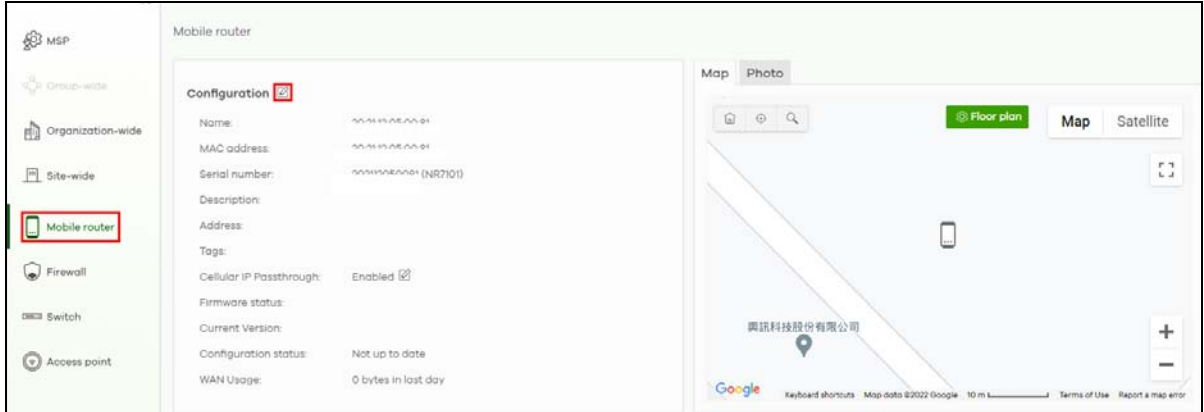


Figure 100 Mobile Router > Configuration (Outdoor)



8.2.1 Configuration: Edit

The following screen displays after you click the edit icon. Use the **Mobile router > Configuration: Edit** screen to configure your indoor and outdoor NCC information. You can also move the NCC to another site.

Figure 101 Mobile Router > Configuration: Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 Mobile Router > Configuration: Edit

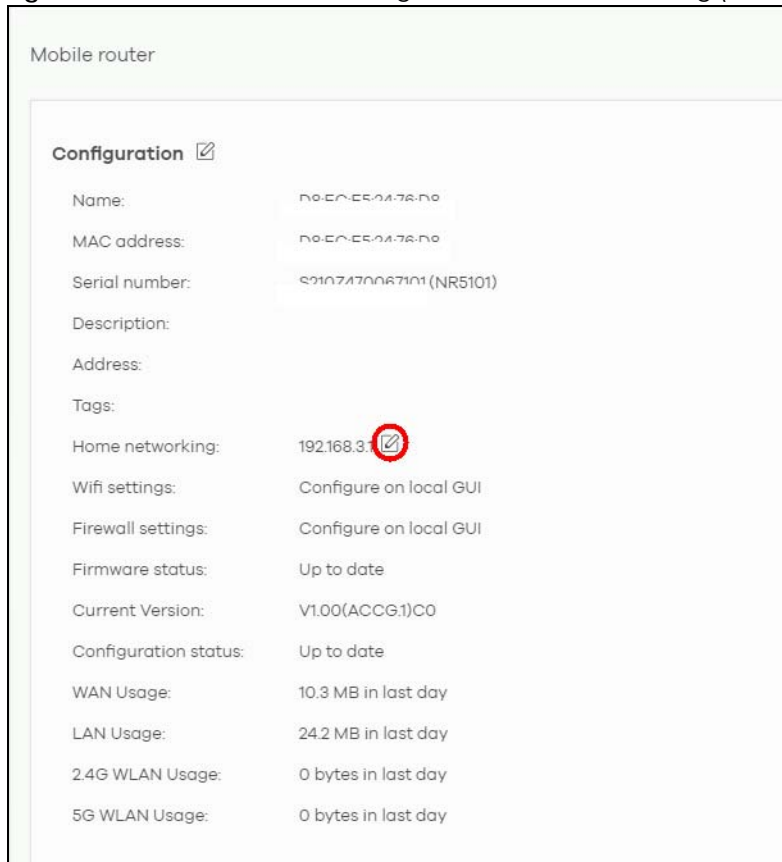
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Description	Enter a user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Address	Enter a user-specified address for the Nebula Device.
Tags	Enter a user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
Save	Click Save to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.

8.2.2 Home Networking

To configure the **Home networking** setting, click the edit icon (✎) in the **Home networking** field.

Note: Home Networking is only available for the LTE3301-PLUS and NR5101.

Figure 102 Mobile Router > Configuration: Home networking (Indoor)



The following **Mobile router > Configuration > Home networking: Edit** screen displays. Use this screen to configure the LAN IP address and DHCP server settings of your indoor NCC.

Figure 103 Mobile Router > Configuration > Home networking: Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Mobile Router > Configuration > Home networking: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP address assignment	
IP address	Enter the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
DHCP setting	
DHCP Server	Select this to disable or enable the DHCP server.
IP pool start address	Enter the IP address from which the Nebula Device begins allocating IP addresses.
Pool size	Enter the number of IP addresses to allocate. This number must be at least one and is limited by the interface's Subnet mask . For example, if the Subnet mask is 255.255.255.0 and IP pool start address is 10.10.10.10, the security gateway can allocate 10.10.10.10 to 10.10.10.254, or 245 IP addresses.
Lease time	Specify how long each computer can use the information (especially the IP address) before it has to request the information again. Choices are: Infinite – select this if IP addresses never expire; days, hours, minutes – select this to enter how long IP addresses are valid.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

8.2.3 Cellular IP Passthrough

To configure the cellular IP passthrough setting, click the edit icon (🔗) in the **Cellular IP Passthrough** field. IP passthrough allows a LAN computer on the local network of the NCC to have access to web

services using a public IPv4 address. When IP passthrough is configured, all traffic is forwarded to the LAN computer and will not go through NAT.

Note: As of this writing, cellular IP passthrough is for NR7101 and LTE7461 only.

Figure 104 Mobile Router > Configuration: Cellular IP Passthrough (Outdoor)

Mobile router

Configuration

Name: D8:EC:E5:20:80:D8

MAC address: D8:EC:E5:20:80:D8

Serial number: S210Z45007101 (NR7101)

Description:

Address:

Tags:

Cellular IP Passthrough: Enabled

Firmware status:

Current Version:

Configuration status: Not up to date

WAN Usage: 0 bytes

The following **Mobile router > Configuration > Cellular IP Passthrough: Edit** screen displays. Use this screen to disable or enable IP passthrough on your outdoor NCC. Slide the switch to the right to enable IP passthrough.

Figure 105 Mobile Router > Configuration > Cellular IP Passthrough: Edit

Edit

IP Passthrough mode:

Note:
Enable IP Passthrough to allow Internet traffic to go to the LAN computer behind the router without going through NAT.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 83 Mobile Router > Configuration > Cellular IP Passthrough: Edit

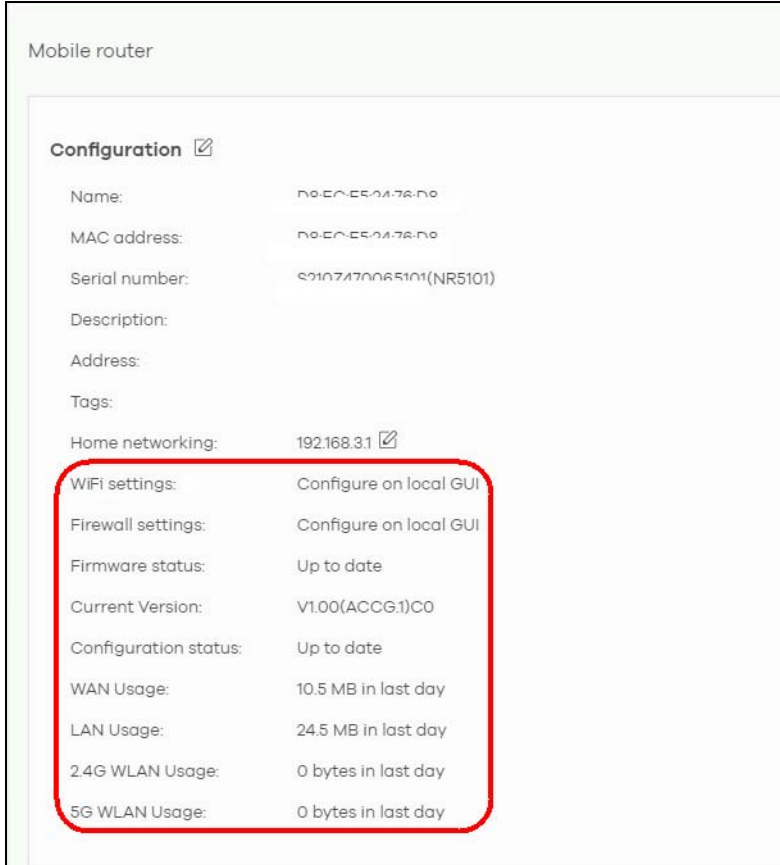
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Passthrough mode	This displays if IP passthrough is enabled on the NCC.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

8.2.4 Firmware Status

Go back to the **Mobile router > Configuration** screen to view the firmware version and WAN/LAN/WLAN usage of your indoor or outdoor NCC.

Note: **LAN Usage**, **2.4G WLAN Usage** and **5G WLAN Usage** are only available for indoor NCCs.

Figure 106 Mobile Router > Configuration > Firmware status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 84 Mobile Router > Configuration > Firmware status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WiFi settings	Configure the Nebula Device's WiFi settings using its Web Configurator. Refer to the Nebula Device's User's Guide for more information. Note: This field is NOT configurable.
Firewall settings	Configure the Nebula Device's firewall settings using its Web Configurator. Refer to the Nebula Device's User's Guide for more information. Note: This field is NOT configurable.
Firmware status	The NCC automatically detects whether the firmware is up-to-date or not. Click Custom in the Firmware status field to go to the Site-wide > Configure > Firmware management screen and configure your Firmware management settings.
Current Version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.

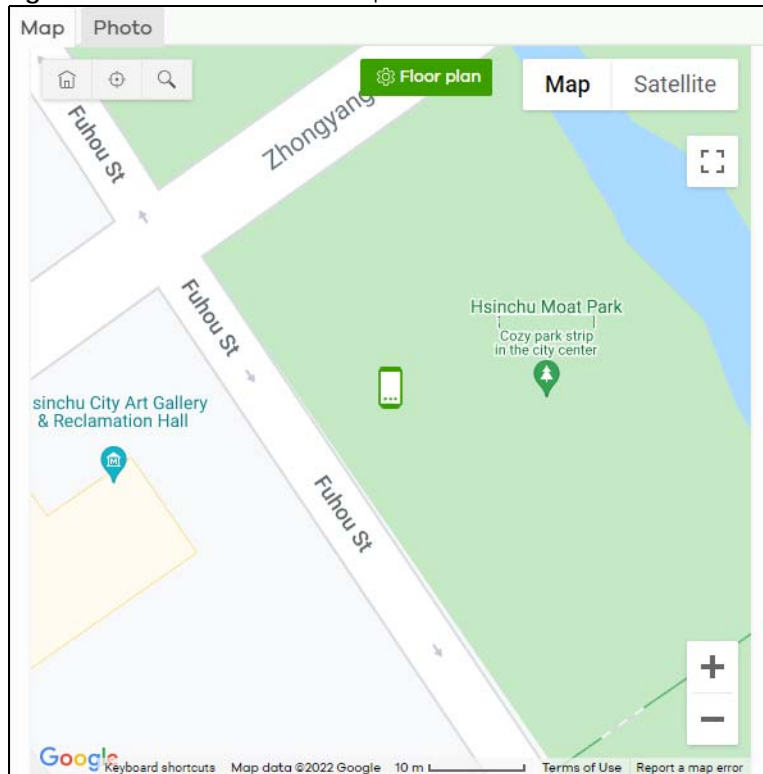
Table 84 Mobile Router > Configuration > Firmware status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Usage	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device on the WAN (uplink/downlink) in the past 24 hours.
LAN Usage (indoor NCCs only)	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device on the LAN (uplink/downlink) in the past 24 hours.
2.4G WLAN Usage (indoor NCCs only)	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device on the 2.4G WiFi network (uplink/downlink) in the past 24 hours.
5G WLAN Usage (indoor NCCs only)	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device on the 5G WiFi network (uplink/downlink) in the past 24 hours.

8.3 Map/Photo

Click the **Map** tab. This shows the location of the NCC on Google map. To upload a photo of the NCC, select the **Photo** tab.

Figure 107 Mobile Router > Map



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

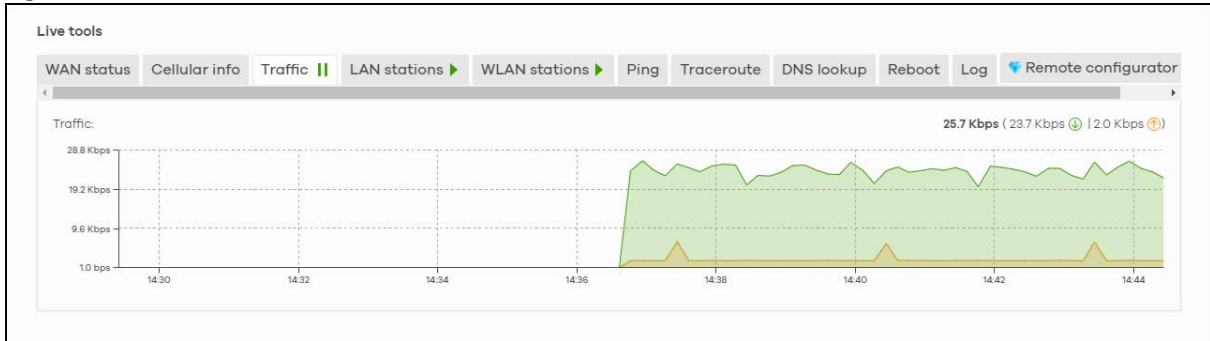
Table 85 Mobile Router > Map/Photo



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Map	This shows the location of the Nebula Device on Google map.
Photo	This shows the photo of the Nebula Device. Click Add to upload up to five photos of your NCC. Click the remove icon (🗑️) to delete a photo.

8.4 Live Tools

Use live tools to view various interface information, system/security logs, perform diagnostics, reboot or establish a remote connection to the NCC.

Figure 108 Mobile Router > Live tools > Traffic (Example)



Note: In the **Traffic**, **LAN stations**, and **WLAN stations** screens, click the pause icon () to stop getting data for the respective screens. Alternatively, click the play icon () to continue.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 Mobile Router > Live tools

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Status	This shows the connection status of the Ethernet WAN interface. See Section 8.4.1 on page 256 for more information.
Cellular info	This shows the connection status of the cellular WAN interface. See Section 8.4.2 on page 257 for more information.
Traffic	This shows the Nebula Device traffic statistics. The y-axis represents the transmission rate for uplink and downlink traffic. The x-axis represents the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
LAN stations	This shows the Nebula Device's connected LAN clients' MAC address and IPv4 Address .
WLAN stations (indoor NCCs only)	This shows the Nebula Device's connected WiFi clients' MAC address , SSID name , IPv4 address , Signal strength , Security , Channel , Tx rate , Rx rate , Tx/Rx , and Capability . See Section 8.4.4 on page 263 for more information.
Ping	Enter the hostname or IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping from the Nebula Device in order to test a connection and click Ping . This can be used to determine if the Nebula Device and the computer are able to communicate with each other.
Traceroute	Enter the domain name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform traceroute from the Nebula Device and click Run . This determines the path a packet takes to the specified computer.
DNS lookup	Enter a host domain name and click Run to resolve the IP address for the specified domain name.
Reboot	Click this button to restart the Nebula Device.

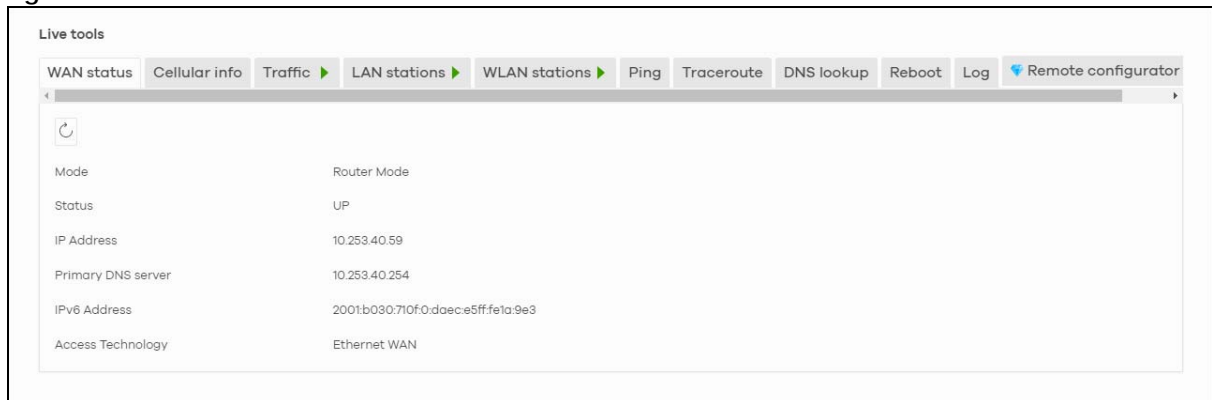
Table 86 Mobile Router > Live tools (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Log	Select this to display System log and Security log entries in the past 24 hours.
Remote configurator	<p>Click Establish to use TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) port 443 to establish a remote connection to this Nebula Device. The Nebula Device will create a reverse SSH (Secure Shell) connection.</p> <p>After clicking OK, NCC will provide a remote connection IPv4 address and service port number. For example, https://63.35.218.205:31479. Use this IPv4 address and port to connect to the Nebula Device to open the Web Configurator. The remote session will be available for 30 minutes.</p> <p>In case the connection cannot be established, confirm that the network allows Port 443.</p> <p>Note: Remote configuration is only available if the Nebula Device is running the latest firmware. Otherwise, Device firmware is not up to date, please update it. will appear when you click Establish.</p>

8.4.1 WAN Status

Go to the **Mobile router > Live tools > WAN status** screen to view the Ethernet WAN status of the Nebula Device.

Figure 109 Mobile Router > Live tools > WAN status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 Mobile Router > Live tools > WAN status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Mode	This displays which operating mode the NCC is assigned to.
Status	This displays whether the NCC is online/offline.
IP Address	This shows the LAN IPv4 address of the NCC.
Primary DNS server	The shows the first DNS server address assigned by the ISP.
IPv6 Address	This shows the LAN IPv6 address of the NCC.
Access Technology	This displays the type of the network (such as NR, LTE, Ethernet WAN) to which the NCC is connecting.
Signal Strength	This show the signal strength of the NCC.

8.4.2 Cellular Info

Go to the **Mobile router > Live tools > Cellular Info** screen to view the cellular WAN status of the Nebula Device.

Figure 110 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info

The screenshot shows the 'Cellular info' tab selected in the 'Live tools' menu. The interface is divided into several sections, each with a list of parameters and their values.

Module Information		Service Information	
IMEI	357927100010811	Access Technology	LTE
Module SW Version	EG06ALAR02A07M4G	Band	LTE_BC7
SIM Status		RSSI	-57
SIM Card Status	Available	Cell ID	81552675
IMSI	466924000089642	Physical Cell ID	95
ICCID	89886920040000896422	UL Bandwidth (MHz)	10
PIN Protection	Disable	DL Bandwidth (MHz)	10
PIN Remaining Attempts	3	RFCN	3400
IP Passthrough Status		RSRP	-87
IP Passthrough Enable	Enable	RSRQ	-10
IP Passthrough Mode	Dynamic	RSCP	0
Cellular Status		EcNo	0
Cellular Status	Up	TAC	13700
Data Roaming	Disable	LAC	0
Operator	Chunghwa Telecom	RAC	0
PLMN	46692	BSIC	0
NR-NSA Information		SINR	14
MCC		CQI	8
MNC		MCS	0
Physical Cell ID	0	RI	2
RFCN	0	PMI	0
Band		SCC Information	
RSRP	0		
RSRQ	0		
SINR	0		
GNSS Information			
Enable	true		
Scan OnBoot	false		
Scan Status			
HDOP	0.0		
Display Format			
Latitude	0		
Longitude	0		
Elevation	0.0		
Positioning Mode	0		
Course Over Ground	0.0		
Speed Over Ground	0.0		
Last Fix Time	None		
Number Of Satellites	0		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Module Information	
IMEI	This shows the International Mobile Equipment Identity of the NCC.
Module SW Version	This shows the software version of the cellular network module.
SIM Status	
SM Card Status	This displays the SIM card status: None – the NCC does not detect that there is a SIM card inserted. Available – the SIM card could either have or does not have PIN code security. Locked – the SIM card has PIN code security, but you did not enter the PIN code yet. Blocked – you entered an incorrect PIN code too many times, so the SIM card has been locked. Call the ISP (Internet Service Provider) for a PUK (Pin Unlock Key) to unlock the SIM card. Error – the NCC detected that the SIM card has errors.
IMSI	This displays the International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) of the installed SIM card. An IMSI is a unique ID used to identify a mobile subscriber in a mobile network.
ICCID	Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID). This is the serial number of the SIM card.
PIN Protection	A PIN (Personal Identification Number) code is a key to a SIM card. This field shows Enable if PIN Protection is enabled. Otherwise, this field shows Disable .
PIN Remaining Attempts	This is how many more times you can try to enter the PIN code before the ISP blocks your SIM card.
IP Passthrough Status	
IP Passthrough Enable	This displays if IP passthrough is enabled on the NCC. IP passthrough allows a LAN computer on the local network of the NCC to have access to web services using the public IP address. When IP passthrough is configured, all traffic is forwarded to the LAN computer and will not go through NAT.
IP Passthrough Mode	This displays the IP passthrough mode. This displays Dynamic and the NCC will allow traffic to be forwarded to the first LAN computer requesting an IP address from the NCC. This displays Fixed and the NCC will allow traffic to be forwarded to a specific LAN computer on the local network of the NCC.
Cellular Status	
Cellular Status	This displays the status of the cellular Internet connection.
Data Roaming	This displays if data roaming is enabled on the NCC. 4G roaming is to use your NCC in an area which is not covered by your service provider. Enable roaming to ensure that your NCC is kept connected to the Internet when you are traveling outside the geographical coverage area of the network to which you are registered.
Operator	This displays the name of the service provider.
PLMN	This displays the PLMN (Public Land Mobile Network) number.
NR-NSA Information	This displays the status of the cellular Internet connection.
MCC	This shows the Mobile Country Code (MCC). MCC is a unique code that identifies the country where a Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) is at.

Table 88 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MNC	This shows the Mobile Network Code (MNC). MNC is a unique code that identifies a Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) in a country. MCC and MNC combined together are used to identify a globally unique PLMN.
Physical Cell ID	This shows the Physical Cell ID (PCI), which are queries and replies between the NCC and the mobile network it is connecting to. The normal range is 1 to 504.
RFCN	<p>This displays the Radio Frequency Channel Number of DL carrier frequency used by the mobile network to which the NCC is connecting.</p> <p>The value depends on the type of the mobile network (such as LTE, UMTS, GSM) to which the NCC is connecting:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For UMTS (3G), it is the UARFCN (UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) as specified in 3GPP-TS.25.101. • For LTE/5G, it is the EARFCN (E-UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.101. The value is '0' (zero) or 'N/A' if there is no network connection.
Band	This displays the current cellular band of your NCC.
RSRP	<p>This displays the Reference Signal Receive Power (RSRP), which is the average received power of all Resource Element (RE) that carry cell-specific Reference Signals (RS) within the specified bandwidth.</p> <p>The received RSRP level of the connected E-UTRA cell, in dBm, is as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.214.</p> <p>The reporting range is specified in 3GPP-TS.36.133.</p> <p>An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example -140 dBm.</p> <p>This parameter is for LTE only. The normal range is -30 to -140. The value is -140 if the Current Access Technology is not LTE. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>
RSRQ	<p>This displays the Reference Signal Receive Quality (RSRQ), which is the ratio of RSRP to the E-UTRA carrier RSSI and indicates the quality of the received reference signal.</p> <p>The received RSRQ level of the connected E-UTRA cell, in 0.1 dB, is as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.214.</p> <p>An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example -240.</p> <p>This parameter is for LTE only. The normal range is -30 to -240. The value is -240 if the Current Access Technology is not LTE. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>
SINR	This displays the Signal to Interference plus Noise Ratio (SINR) of the SCC.
Service Information	If the cellular service provider supports carrier aggregation (CA), then this section displays statistics for the connection's primary component carrier (PCC).
Access Technology	This displays the type of the network (such as NR, LTE, Ethernet WAN) to which the NCC is connecting.
Band	This displays the current cellular band of your NCC.
RSSI	This displays the cellular signal strength between an associated cellular station and the NCC for this SCC.
Cell ID	<p>This shows the cell ID, which is a unique number used to identify the Base Transceiver Station to which the NCC is connecting.</p> <p>The value depends on the Current Access Technology:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For GPRS, it is the Cell Identity as specified in 3GPP-TS.25.331. • For UMTS, it is the Cell Identity as defined in SIB3 3GPP-TS.25.331, 3GPP-TS.24.008. • For LTE/5G, it is the 28-bit binary number Cell Identity as specified in SIB1 in 3GPP-TS.36.331. <p>The value is '0' (zero) or 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>

Table 88 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Physical Cell ID	This displays the Physical Cell ID (PCI) of the SCC.
UL Bandwidth (MHz)	This shows the uplink cellular channel bandwidth from the NCC to the base station. According to 3GPP specifications, the bandwidths defined by the standard are 1.4, 3, 5, 10, 15, and 20 MHz. The wider the bandwidth the higher the throughput.
DL Bandwidth (MHz)	This shows the downlink cellular channel bandwidth from the base station to the NCC. According to 3GPP specifications, the bandwidths defined by the standard are 1.4, 3, 5, 10, 15, and 20 MHz. The wider the bandwidth the higher the throughput.
RFCN	This displays the Radio Frequency Channel Number of DL carrier frequency used by the mobile network to which the NCC is connecting. The value depends on the type of the mobile network (such as LTE, UMTS, GSM) to which the NCC is connecting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For UMTS (3G), it is the UARFCN (UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) as specified in 3GPP-TS.25.101. • For LTE/5G, it is the EARFCN (E-UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.101. The value is '0' (zero) or 'N/A' if there is no network connection.
RSRP	This displays the Reference Signal Receive Power (RSRP), which is the average received power of all Resource Element (RE) that carry cell-specific Reference Signals (RS) within the specified bandwidth. The received RSRP level of the connected E-UTRA cell, in dBm, is as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.214. The reporting range is specified in 3GPP-TS.36.133. An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example –140 dBm. This parameter is for LTE only. The normal range is –30 to –140. The value is –140 if the Current Access Technology is not LTE. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.
RSRQ	This displays the Reference Signal Receive Quality (RSRQ), which is the ratio of RSRP to the E-UTRA carrier RSSI and indicates the quality of the received reference signal. The received RSRQ level of the connected E-UTRA cell, in 0.1 dB, is as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.214. An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example –240. This parameter is for LTE only. The normal range is –30 to –240. The value is –240 if the Current Access Technology is not LTE. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.
RSCP	This displays the Received Signal Code Power, which measures the power of channel used by the NCC. The received signal level, in dBm, is of the CPICH channel (Ref. 3GPP TS 25.133). An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example –120 dBm. This parameter is for UMTS only. The normal range is –30 to –120. The value is –120 if the Current Access Technology is not UMTS. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.
EcNo	This displays the ratio (in dB) of the received energy per chip and the interference level. The measured EcNo is in 0.1 dB and is received in the downlink pilot channel. An undetectable signal is indicated by the lower limit, example –240 dB. This parameter is for UMTS only. The normal range is –30 to –240. The value is –240 if the Current Access Technology is not UMTS or there is no network connection.

Table 88 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TAC	<p>This displays the Tracking Area Code (TAC), which is used to identify the country of a mobile subscriber.</p> <p>The physical cell ID of the connected E-UTRAN cell, is as specified in 3GPP-TS.36.101.</p> <p>This parameter is for LTE only. The value is '0' (zero) or 'N/A' if the Current Access Technology is not LTE or there is no network connection.</p>
LAC	<p>This displays the 2-octet Location Area Code (LAC), which is used to identify a location area within a PLMN.</p> <p>The LAC of the connected cell is as defined in SIB 1 [3GPP-TS.25.331]. The concatenation of PLMN ID (MCC+MNC) and LAC uniquely identifies the LAI (Location Area ID) [3GPP-TS.23.003].</p> <p>This parameter is for UMTS or GPRS. The value is '0' (zero) if the Current Access Technology is not UMTS or GPRS. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>
RAC	<p>This displays the RAC (Routing Area Code), which is used in mobile network "packet domain service" (PS) to identify a routing area within a location area.</p> <p>In a mobile network, the NCC uses LAC (Location Area Code) to identify the geographical location for the old 3G voice only service, and uses RAC to identify the location of data service like HSDPA or LTE.</p> <p>The RAC of the connected UTRAN cell is as defined in SIB 1 [3GPP-TS.25.331]. The concatenation of PLMN ID (MCC+MNC), LAC, and RAC uniquely identifies the RAI (Routing Area ID) [3GPPTS. 23.003].</p> <p>This parameter is for UMTS or GPRS. The value is '0' (zero) if the Current Access Technology is not UMTS or GPRS. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>
BSIC	<p>The Base Station Identity Code (BSIC), which is a code used in GSM to uniquely identify a base station.</p> <p>This parameter is for GPRS only. The value is '0' (zero) if the Current Access Technology is not GPRS. The value is 'N/A' if there is no network connection.</p>
SINR	<p>This displays the Signal to Interference plus Noise Ratio (SINR) in dB. This is also a measure of signal quality and used by the UE (User Equipment) to calculate the Channel Quality Indicator (CQI) that it reports to the network. A negative value means more noise than signal.</p>
CQI	<p>This displays the Channel Quality Indicator (CQI). It is an indicator carrying the information on how good or bad the communication channel quality is.</p>
MCS	<p>MCS stands for modulation coding scheme. The base station selects MCS based on current radio conditions. The higher the MCS the more bits can be transmitted per time unit.</p>
RI	<p>This displays the Rank Indication, one of the control information that a UE will report to eNodeB (Evolved Node-B) on either PUCCH (Physical Uplink Control Channel) or PUSCH (Physical Uplink Shared Channel) based on uplink scheduling.</p>
PMI	<p>This displays the Precoding Matrix Indicator (PMI).</p> <p>PMI is for transmission modes 4 (closed loop spatial multiplexing), 5 (multi-user MIMO), and 6 (closed loop spatial multiplexing using a single layer).</p> <p>PMI determines how cellular data are encoded for the antennas to improve downlink rate.</p>
SCC Information	<p>If the cellular service provider supports carrier aggregation (CA), then this section displays statistics for the connection's secondary component carriers (SCCs).</p>
GNSS Information	<p>Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) sends position and timing data from high orbit artificial satellites. It works with GPS navigational satellites to provide better receiver accuracy and reliability than just using GPS alone. This is necessary for 5G networks that require very accurate timing for time and frequency synchronization. With GNSS, you can easily locate the Nebula Device with accurate information.</p>

Table 88 Mobile Router > Live tools > Cellular Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	This shows if GNSS is enabled. Note: This can only be configured by a qualified service technician.
Scan OnBoot	This shows Enable if Scan OnBoot is enabled, so that GNSS runs automatically after the Zyxel Device is turned on. Note: This can only be configured by a qualified service technician.
Scan Status	This shows GNSS error codes for debugging by a qualified service technician.
HDOP	Horizontal Dilution of Precision (HDOP) shows how accurate data collected by the Nebula Device is according to the current satellite configuration. A smaller value of HDOP means a higher precision.
Display Format	This shows the latitude and longitude display modes. There are three modes: 0, 1, and 2. Below are examples for these modes shown in latitude/longitude. 0 – ddmm.mmmmN/S, dddmm.mmmmE/W 1 – ddmm.mmmmmm, N/S, dddmm.mmmmmm, E/W 2 – (-)dd.ddddd, (-)ddd.ddddd N/S/E/W: North/South/East/West “-” : Negative values refer to South latitude/West longitude respectively. Positive values refer to North latitude/East longitude respectively.
Latitude	This shows the latitude coordinate of the Nebula Device. These positioning values (latitude, longitude, and altitude) help you locate the Nebula Device accurately.
Longitude	This shows the longitude coordinate of the Nebula Device.
Elevation	This shows the altitude of the Nebula Device above sea level in meters.
Positioning Mode	This shows the GNSS positioning mode. 2D ("2") GNSS positioning mode displays latitude and longitude coordinates; 3D ("3") GNSS positioning mode displays latitude and longitude coordinates, and elevation.
Course Over Ground	This shows the course of the Nebula Device based on true North. Course Over Ground (COG) is different from the direction an object is headed, but the path derived from its actual motion (considered as Track), since the motion of an object is often with respect to other factors like wind and tides.
Speed Over Ground	This shows the Speed Over Ground (SOG) of the Nebula Device. SOG is the true object speed over the surface of the Earth.
Last Fix Time	This shows the last time in UTC format that the position of the Nebula Device was updated.
Number of Satellites	This shows the number of current active satellites. GNSS requires at least four satellites to determine the position of the Nebula Device.

8.4.3 LAN Stations



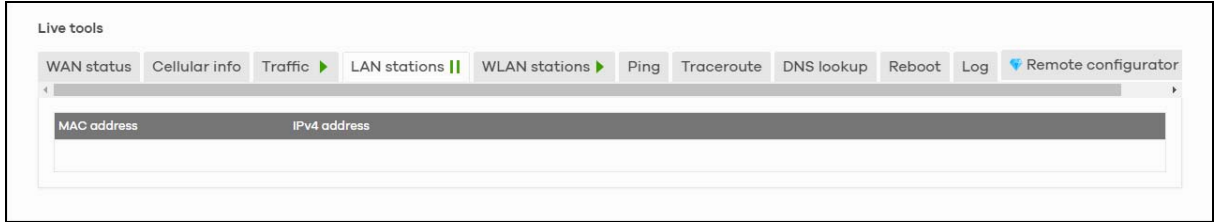
Go to the **Mobile router > Live tools > LAN stations** screen to view the LAN status of the Nebula Device. Click the pause icon () to stop scanning for LAN stations. Alternatively, click the play icon () to continue scanning.

Figure 111 Mobile Router > Live tools > LAN stations

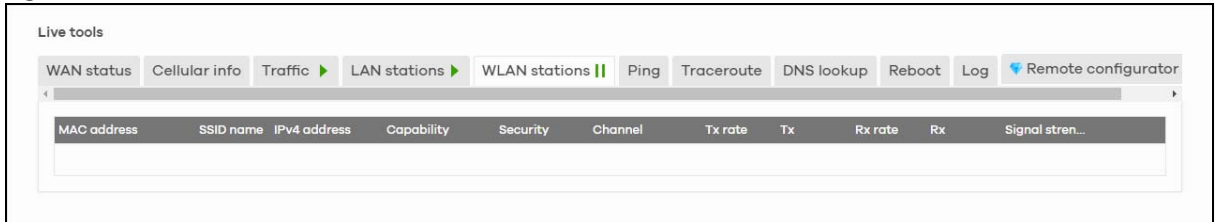
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 89 Mobile Router > Live tools > LAN stations

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC address	This field displays the MAC address of the LAN station.
IPv4 address	This indicate the IPv4 address of the LAN station.

8.4.4 WLAN Stations

Go to the **Mobile router > Live tools > WLAN stations** screen to view the WiFi status of the Nebula Device. Click the pause icon (||) to stop scanning for WiFi stations. Alternatively, click the play icon (▶) to continue scanning.

Figure 112 Mobile Router > Live tools > WLAN stations

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

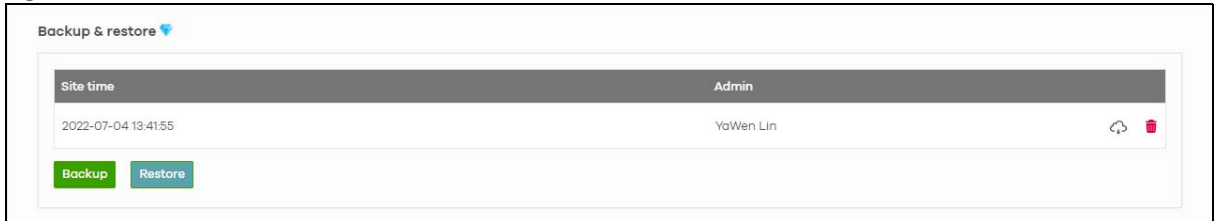
Table 90 Mobile Router > Live tools > WLAN stations

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated WiFi station.
SSID name	This is the descriptive name used to identify the NCC in a WiFi network.
IPv4 address	This indicate the IPv4 address of the gateway that helps forward this route's traffic.
Capability	This shows the WiFi standard supported by the client or the supported standards currently used by the client.
Security	This displays the type of security mode the WiFi interface is using in the WiFi network.
Channel	This is the channel number currently used by the WiFi interface.
Tx rate	This shows the maximum transmission rate of the client.
Tx	This shows the amount of data transmitted by the client since it last connected.
Rx rate	This shows the maximum reception rate of the client.
Rx	This shows the amount of data received by the client since it last connected.
Signal strength	This shows the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the client's WiFi connection.

8.5 Backup & Restore

Use the **Mobile router > Backup & restore** screen to back up your configuration settings to the cloud or restore your current setting to the backup configuration.

Figure 113 Mobile Router > Backup & restore



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

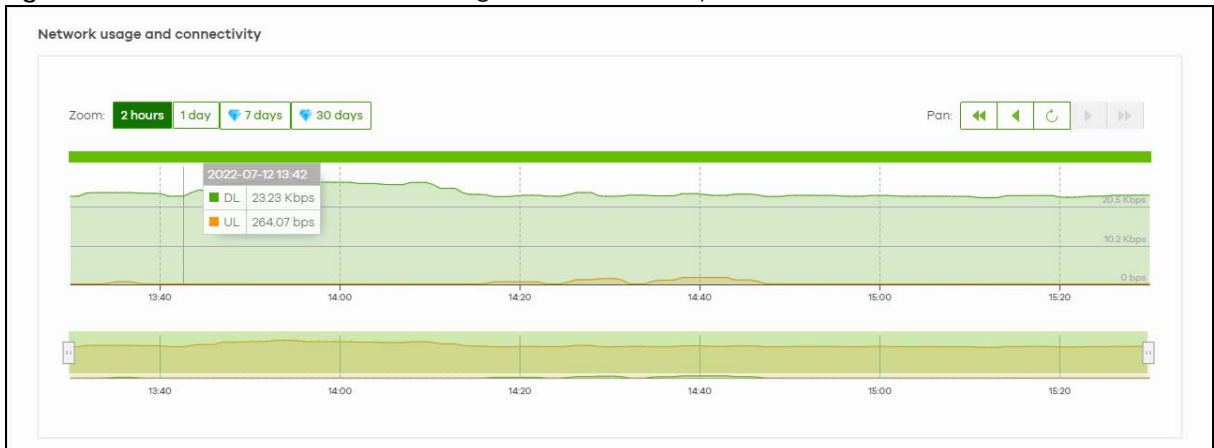
Table 91 Mobile Router > Backup & restore

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup & restore	
Site time	This shows the date and time of the site, to which the change was applied, when the log was recorded.
Admin	This shows the name of the administrator who made the back up.
Backup	Click this button to create a new backup of the current configuration of the NCC to the NCC. Click the Download icon (📄) to download the configuration file to your computer or laptop. Click the Delete icon (🗑️) to remove the configuration file on the NCC.
Restore	Click this button to overwrite the settings of the NCC with the selected configuration backup.

8.6 Network Usage and Connectivity

Go to the **Mobile router > Network usage and connectivity** screen and then move the cursor to see the transmission rate (uplink/downlink) of a specific time.

Figure 114 Mobile Router > Network usage and connectivity



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 92 Mobile Router > Network usage and connectivity

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Network usage and connectivity	Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.
Zoom	Select a time period to view the statistics in the past 2 hours, day, week, or month.
Pan	Use this to move backward or forward by one day or a week.

CHAPTER 9

Firewall

9.1 Overview

This chapter describes the menus used to monitor and configure the Hybrid Security Firewall devices that acts as a security gateway in the current organization.

Nebula Device (also called Security Firewall device) refers to ZyWALL ATP / USG FLEX / USG20(W)-VPN Series devices in this chapter. The **Firewall** menus are shown for Security Firewall devices only.

9.2 Monitor

Use the **Monitor** menus to check the Nebula Device information, client information, event log messages and summary report for the Nebula Device in the selected site.

9.2.1 Firewall

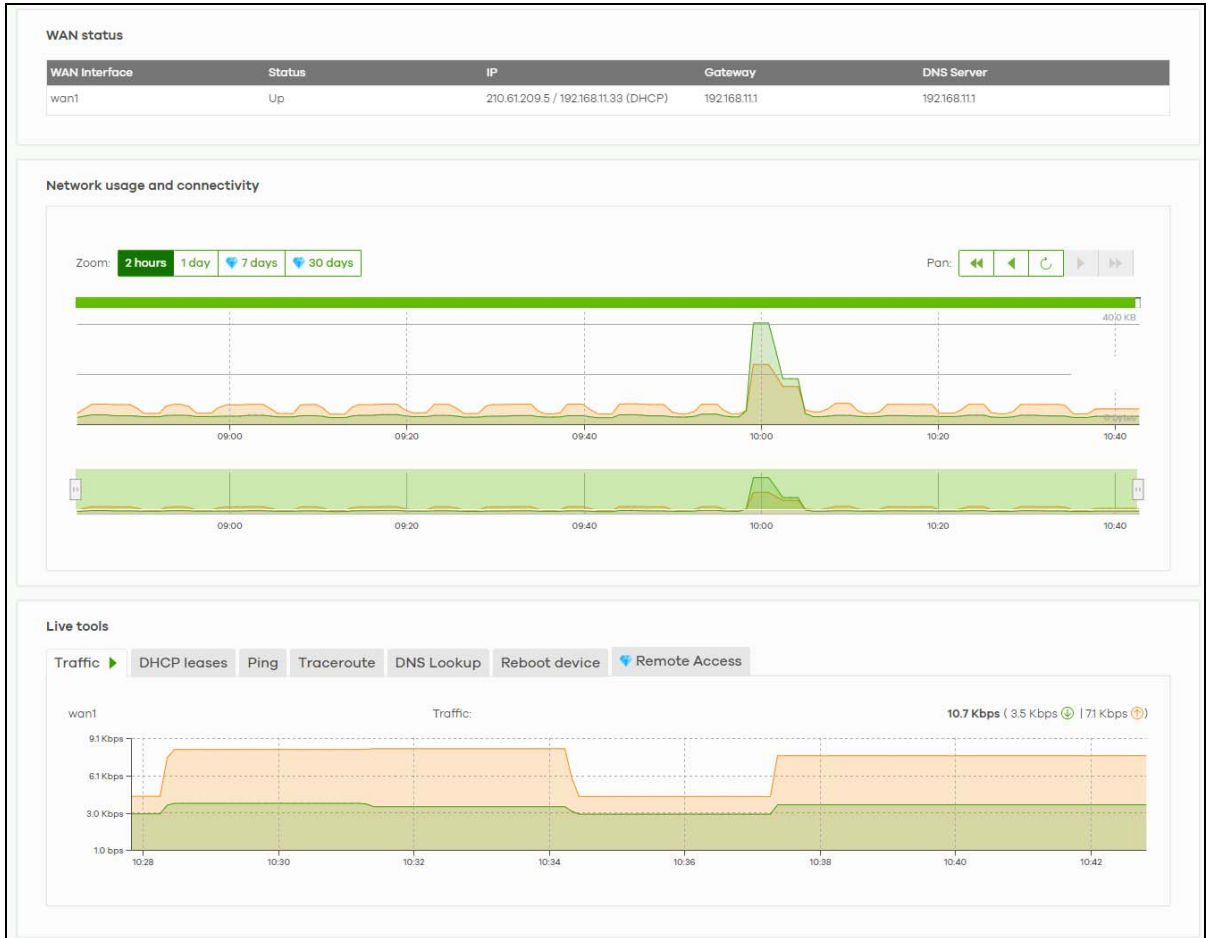
This screen allows you to view the detailed information about the Nebula Device in the selected site. Click **Firewall > Monitor > Firewall** to access this screen.

Figure 115 Firewall > Monitor > Firewall

The screenshot displays the 'Firewall > Monitor > Firewall' page. It is divided into several sections:

- Configuration:** A table with fields for Name (BC:CF:4F:DD:BC:CF), MAC address (BC:CF:4F:DD:BC:CF), Serial number (S202L37140202 (ATP100W)), Description, Address, and Tags.
- Port:** A row of five port icons labeled 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6.
- Map:** A Google Maps interface with a 'Floor plan' overlay, a red location pin, and navigation controls. It includes a search bar, home button, and zoom controls.
- Status:** A summary section with the following data:
 - CPU usage: %
 - Memory usage: %
 - Session:
 - Channel (Band):
 - Usage: No usage in the last 2 hours
 - Topology: [Show](#)
 - History: [Event log](#)
 - Configuration status: Not up to date
 - Firmware: [Up to date](#)
 - Current version:

An 'Ask Question' button is located in the bottom right corner of the status section.



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 93 Firewall > Monitor > Firewall

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click the edit icon to change the Nebula Device name, description, tags and address (physical location). You can also move the Nebula Device to another site.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device's WAN port.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Address	This shows the user-specified address (physical location) for the Nebula Device.
Tags	This shows the user-specified tags for the Nebula Device.
Port	This shows the ports on the Nebula Device. The port is highlighted in green color when it is connected and the link is up. Move the pointer over a port to see additional port information, such as its name, MAC address, type, and connection speed.
Port	This shows the identity number of the selected port.
Port Group	This shows the name of the port group that the port belongs to.

Table 93 Firewall > Monitor > Firewall (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This shows the connection status of the port.
Map	This shows the location of the Nebula Device on Google Maps.
Photo	This shows the photo of the Nebula Device. Click Add to upload one or more photos. Click x to remove a photo.
Status	
CPU usage	This shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's processing capability is currently being used.
Memory usage	This shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's RAM is currently being used.
Session	This shows how many sessions the Nebula Device currently has. A session is a unique established connection that passes through, from, to, or within the Nebula Device.
Channel (Band)	This shows the channel ID and WiFi frequency band currently being used by the Nebula Device. Note: This field only appears for ZyWALL ATP100W, USG FLEX 100W, and USG20W-VPN.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted or received by the Nebula Device's clients.
Topology	Click Show to go to the Site-Wide > Monitor > Topology screen. See Section 7.1.6 on page 215 .
History	Click Event log to go to the Firewall > Monitor > Event log screen.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is Up-to-date .
Firmware	This shows whether the firmware installed on the Nebula Device is Up-to-date .
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
WAN status	
WAN Interface	This shows the descriptive name of the active WAN connection.
Status	This shows the connection status of the WAN interface (up or down).
IP	This shows the IP address of the WAN interface, and whether it was assigned automatically (DHCP), manually (Static IP), or by PPPoE.
Gateway	This shows the IP address of the default Nebula Device assigned to the WAN interface.
DNS Server	This shows the IP addresses of the DNS servers assigned to the WAN interface.
Network usage and connectivity	
Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.	
Zoom	Select to view the statistics in the past 2 hours, 24 hours, 7 days, or 30 days.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by one day or week.
Live tools	
Traffic	This shows the WAN port statistics. The y-axis represents the transmission rate for uploads and downloads. The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
DHCP leases	This shows the IP addresses currently assigned to DHCP clients.
Ping	Enter the host name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping in order to test a connection and click Ping . You can select the interface through which the Security Firewall sends queries for ping.
Traceroute	Enter the host name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform the traceroute function. This determines the path a packet takes to the specified computer.
DNS Lookup	Enter a host name and click Run to resolve the IP address for the specified domain name.

Table 93 Firewall > Monitor > Firewall (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reboot device	Click the Reboot button to restart the Nebula Device.
Remote Access	This option is available only for the Nebula Device owner. Establish a remote command line interface (CLI) connection to the Nebula Device by specifying the Port number and clicking Establish .

9.2.2 Clients

This menu item redirects to **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients**, with type set to **Security gateway clients**. For details, see [Section 7.1.2 on page 205](#).

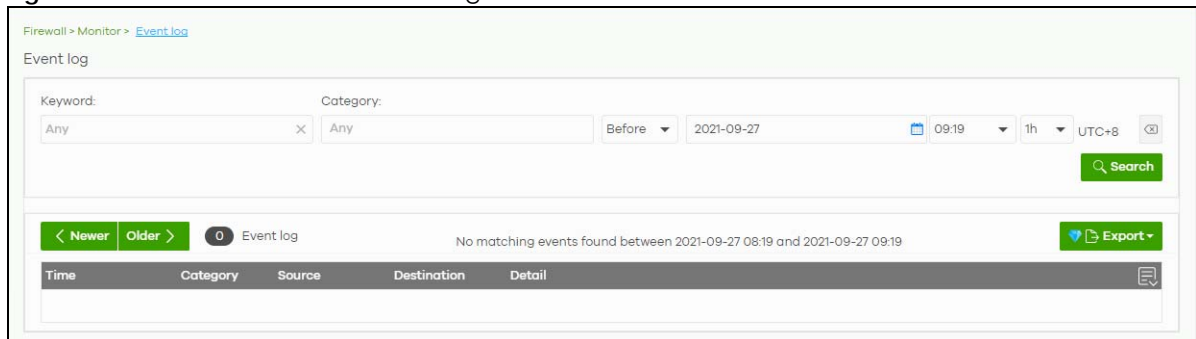
9.2.3 Event Log

Use this screen to view Nebula Device log messages. You can enter a key word, select one or multiple event types, or specify a date/time or a time range to display only the log messages that match these criteria.

Select **Range** to set a time range or select **Before** to choose a specific date/time and the number of hours/minutes to display only the log messages generated within a certain period of time (before the specified date/time). Then click **Search** to update the list of logs based on the search criteria. The maximum allowable time range is 30 days.

Click **Firewall > Monitor > Event log** to access this screen.

Figure 116 Firewall > Monitor > Event log



9.2.4 VPN Connections

Use this screen to view the status of site-to-site IPSec VPN connections and L2TP VPN connections.

Note: If the peer gateway is not a Nebula Device, go to the **Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** screen to view and configure a VPN rule. See [Section 9.3.5 on page 294](#) for more information.

Click **Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections** to access this screen.

Figure 117 Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections

Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections

VPN connections

Connection status

Configuration: This security gateway is exporting 4 subnet over the VPN: 192.168.128.0/24, 192.168.2.0/24, 192.168.10.0/24, 192.168.100.0/24

Site connectivity

Location	Subnet	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat

Non-Nebula VPN peers connectivity

Location	Subnet	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat

Remote AP VPN

Name	Status	Inbound	Outbound	Tunnel Up Time	Last Heartbeat

Client to site VPN login account

User Name	Hostname	Assigned IP	Public IP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data on this page.
Connection Status	
Configuration	This shows the number and address of the local networks behind the Nebula Device, on which the computers are allowed to use the VPN tunnel.
Site Connectivity	
Location	This shows the name of the site to which the Nebula peer gateway is assigned. Click the name to go to the Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN screen, where you can modify the VPN settings.
Subnet	This shows the address of the local networks behind the Nebula peer gateway.
Status	This shows whether the VPN tunnel is connected or disconnected.
Last heartbeat	This shows the last date and time a heartbeat packet is sent to determine if the VPN tunnel is up or down.
Non-Nebula VPN peers connectivity	
Location	This shows the name of the site to which the Non-Nebula peer gateway is assigned. Click the name to go to the Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN screen, where you can modify the VPN settings.
Subnet	This shows the address of the local networks behind the Non-Nebula peer gateway.
Status	This shows whether the VPN tunnel is connected or disconnected.
Inbound	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the Non-Nebula peer gateway to the Nebula Device since the VPN tunnel was established.
Outbound	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the Nebula Device to the Non-Nebula peer gateway since the VPN tunnel was established.

Table 94 Firewall > Monitor > VPN connections (continued)

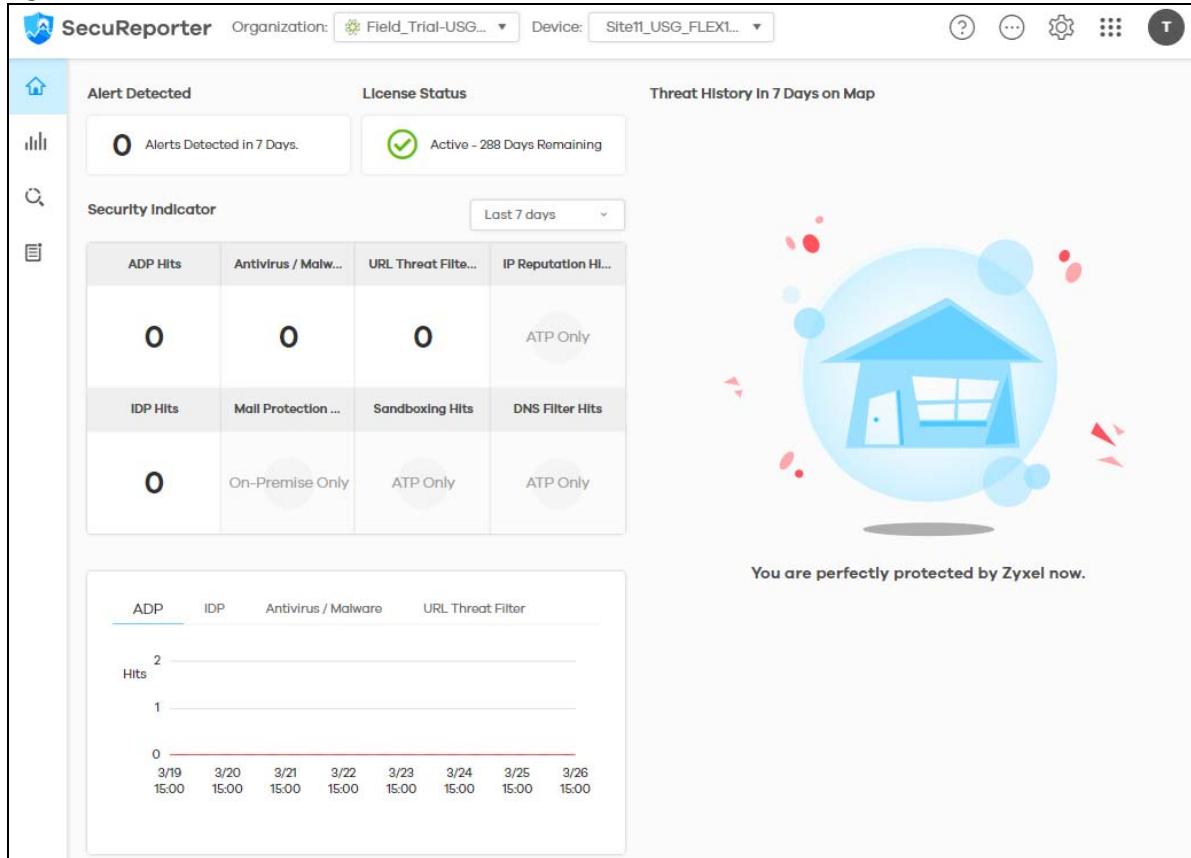
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tunnel up time	This shows how many seconds the VPN tunnel has been active.
Last heartbeat	This shows the last date and time a heartbeat packet was sent to determine if the VPN tunnel is up or down.
Remote AP VPN	
Name	This shows the name of the remote access point (AP).
Status	This shows whether the VPN tunnel is connected or disconnected.
Inbound	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the remote AP to the Nebula Device since the VPN tunnel was established.
Outbound	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the Nebula Device to the remote AP since the VPN tunnel was established.
Tunnel up time	This shows how many seconds the VPN tunnel has been active.
Last heartbeat	This shows the last date and time a heartbeat packet is sent to determine if the VPN tunnel is up or down.
Client to site VPN login account	
User Name	This shows the remote user's login account name.
Hostname	This shows the name of the computer that has this L2TP VPN connection with the Nebula Device.
Tunnel up time	This shows how many seconds the VPN tunnel has been active.
Assigned IP	This shows the IP address that the Nebula Device assigned for the remote user's computer to use within the L2TP VPN tunnel.
Public IP	This shows the public IP address that the remote user is using to connect to the Internet.

9.2.5 SecuReporter

Click **Firewall > Monitor > SecuReporter** to open SecuReporter for the current organization and site. SecuReporter allows you to view statistics for the following Nebula Security Services (NSS): Content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), application patrol, anti-virus, anti-malware, URL threat filter.

Note: For more details, see the SecuReporter User's Guide.

Figure 118 Firewall > Monitor > SecuReporter

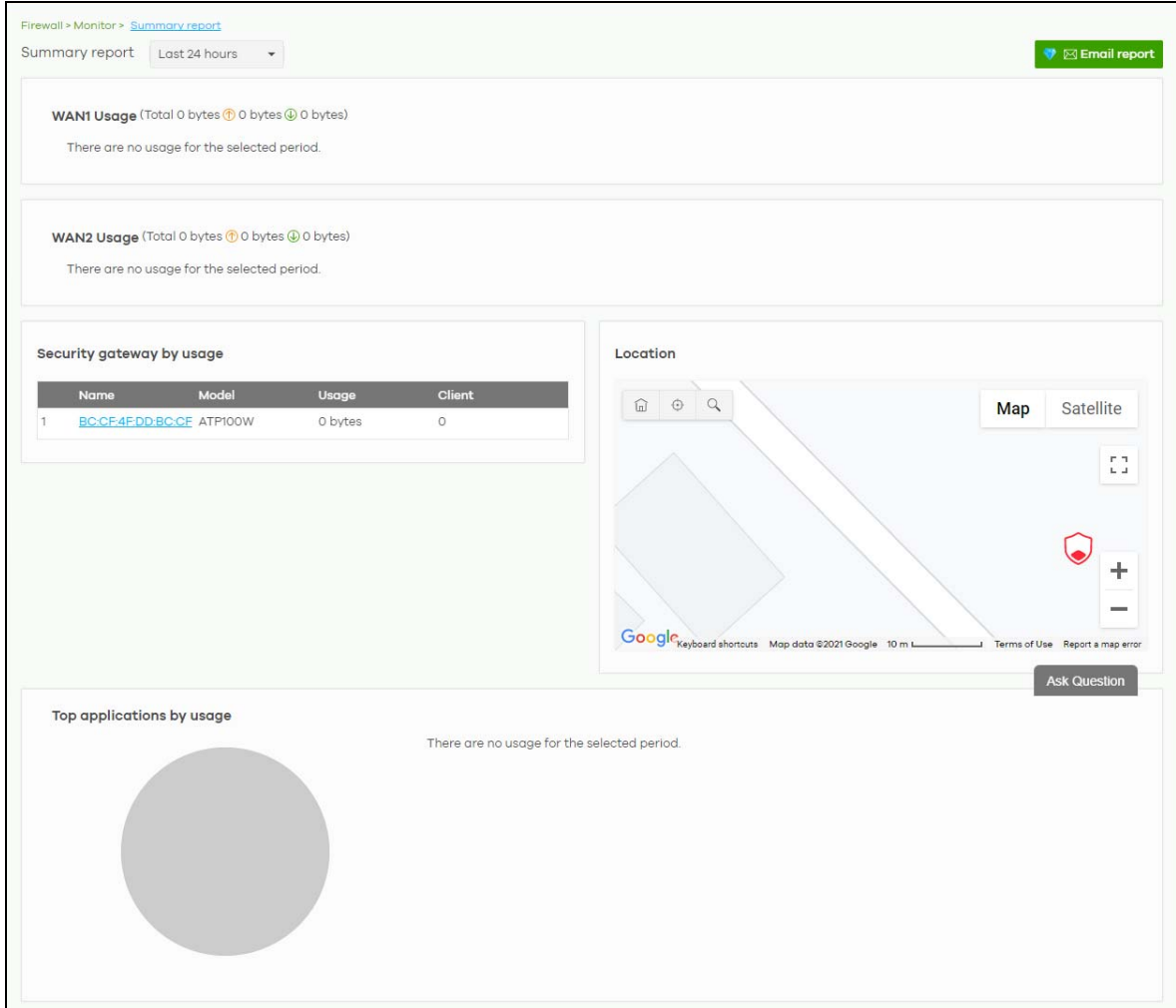


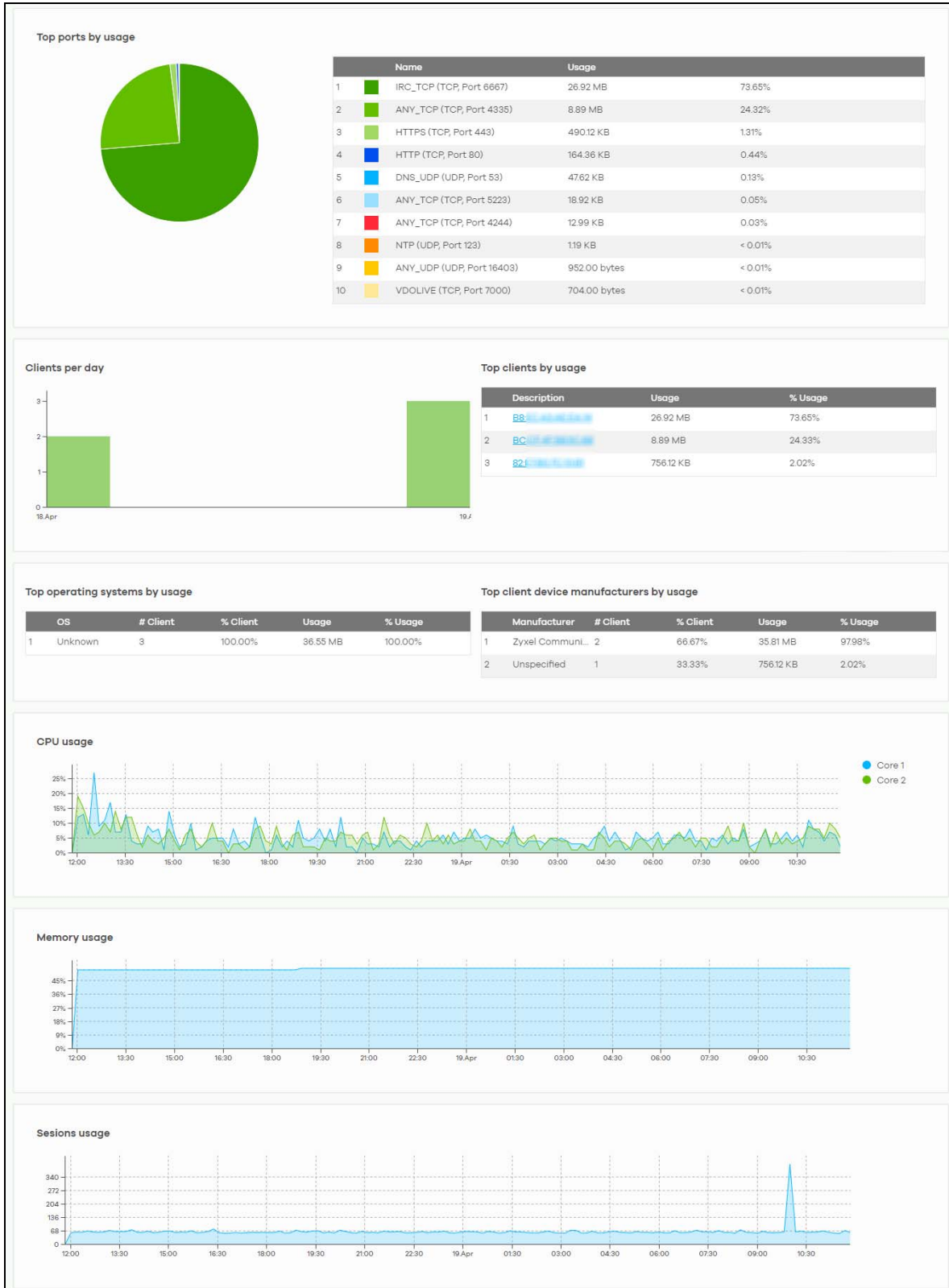
9.2.6 Summary Report

This screen displays network statistics for the Nebula Device of the selected site, such as WAN usage, top applications and/or top clients.

Click **Firewall > Monitor > Summary report** to access this screen.

Figure 119 Firewall > Monitor > Summary report





The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 95 Firewall > Monitor > Summary report

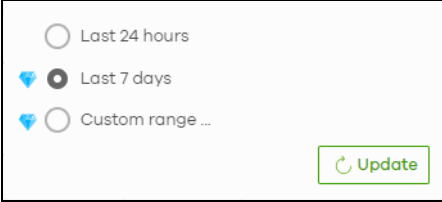
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security gateway – Summary report	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the logo and set email schedules.
WAN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the WAN connection in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
VPN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the VPN tunnel in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Nebula VPN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the VPN tunnels, in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Non-Nebula VPN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through VPN tunnels, in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Remote AP VPN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the VPN tunnel between the Nebula Device and remote APs, in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Security gateway by usage	
	This shows the index number of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted through the Nebula Device's WAN port.
Client	This shows the number of clients currently connected to the Nebula Device.
Location	
This shows the location of the Nebula Devices on the map.	
Top applications by usage	
	This shows the index number of the application.
Application	This shows the application name.

Table 95 Firewall > Monitor > Summary report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Category	This shows the name of the category to which the application belongs.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the application.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the application.
Top ports by usage	
	This shows the top ten applications/services and the ports that identify a service.
Name	This shows the service name and the associated port numbers.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the service.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the service.
Clients per day	
y-axis	The y-axis represents the number of clients.
x-axis	The x-axis represents the date.
Top clients by usage	
	This shows the index number of the client.
Description	This shows the descriptive name or MAC address of the client.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted and received by the client.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client.
Top operating systems by usage	
	This shows the index number of the operating system.
OS	This shows the operating system of the client device.
# Client	This shows how many client devices use this operating system.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which use this operating system.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for top client devices which use this operating system.
Top client device manufacturers by usage	
	This shows the index number of the client device.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer name of the client device.
Client	This shows how many client devices are made by the manufacturer.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which are made by the manufacturer.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted and received by the client device.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client device.
CPU usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's processing capability is currently being used.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Memory usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's RAM is currently being used.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Sessions usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows how many sessions, both established and non-established, that were create from, to, or within the Nebula Device, or passed through the Nebula Device.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.

9.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to configure interface addressing, firewall, site-to-site VPN, captive portal, traffic shaping, authentication server and other gateway settings for the Nebula Device of the selected site.

9.3.1 Port

Use this screen to configure port groups on the Nebula Device. To access this screen, click **Firewall > Configure > Port**.

Figure 120 Firewall > Configure > Port

The screenshot shows the 'Port' configuration page in the Nebula Professional Pack. At the top, it says 'Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.' Below that, the breadcrumb 'Firewall > Configure > Port' is visible. The main content area is titled 'Port' and contains a table for configuring port groups. The table has columns for ports P1 through P8. The 'Port Type' row shows P1 as 'Optional' (yellow), P2 and P3 as 'WAN' (blue), P4 as 'Optional' (yellow), and P5 through P8 as 'Optional' (yellow). Below this are two sections: 'WAN Port Group' and 'LAN Port Group'. Each section has two rows (WAN Group 1/2 and LAN Group 1/2) with radio buttons for each port. In the WAN section, P2 is selected for WAN Group 1 and P3 is selected for WAN Group 2. In the LAN section, P4, P7, and P8 are selected for LAN Group 1, and P5 and P6 are selected for LAN Group 2. There are '+ Add' buttons for both sections and a trash icon for the LAN Group 2 row.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 96 Firewall > Configure > Port



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Group	<p>Port groups create a hardware connection between physical ports at the layer-2 (data link, MAC address) level.</p> <p>The physical LAN Ethernet ports, for example P1, P2, P3, are shown at the top of the screen. The port groups are shown at the left of the screen. Use the radio buttons to select which ports are in each port group.</p> <p>For example, to add port P3 to LAN Group 1, select P3's radio button in the LAN Group 1 row.</p> <p>Note: See Table 1 on page 11 for the list of Nebula Device that do NOT have a P1 port.</p>
Port Type	This shows whether the port is a WAN port or a LAN port. Optional means the port can be assigned as either WAN or LAN, by adding it to a WAN or LAN group.
WAN Port Group	
WAN Group 1	<p>This shows the name of the WAN port group.</p> <p>Note: Each WAN port group can only contain one port.</p>
	Click this icon to remove a WAN port group.

Table 96 Firewall > Configure > Port (continued)

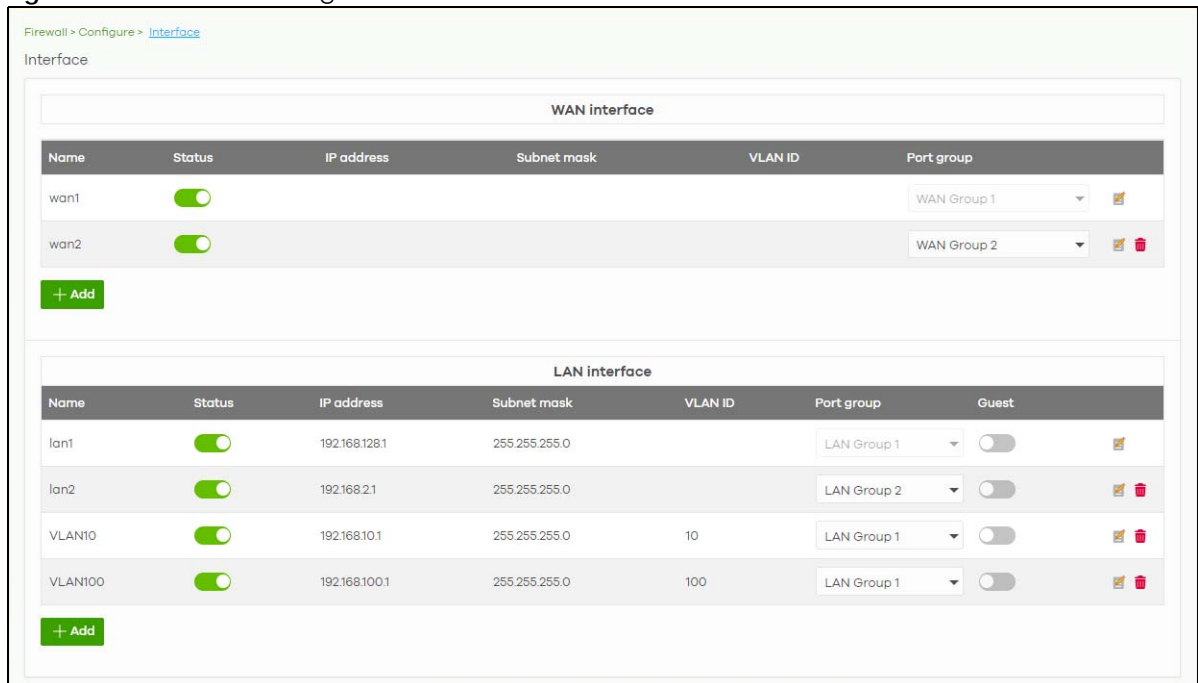
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this button to create a new WAN port group.
LAN Port Group	
LAN Group 1	This shows the name of the LAN port group.
	Click this icon to remove a LAN port group.
Add	Click this button to create a new LAN port group.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

9.3.2 Interface

Use this screen to configure network interfaces on the Nebula Device. An interface consists of a port group, a VLAN ID, and an IP address, plus other configuration settings.

To access this screen, click **Firewall > Configure > Interface**.




Figure 121 Firewall > Configure > Interface



Firewall > Configure > [Interface](#)








Interface

WAN interface

Name	Status	IP address	Subnet mask	VLAN ID	Port group	
wan1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				WAN Group 1	
wan2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				WAN Group 2	 

[+ Add](#)





LAN interface

Name	Status	IP address	Subnet mask	VLAN ID	Port group	Guest	
lan1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.128.1	255.255.255.0		LAN Group 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	
lan2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.2.1	255.255.255.0		LAN Group 2	<input type="checkbox"/>	 
VLAN10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.10.1	255.255.255.0	10	LAN Group 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	 
VLAN100	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	192.168.100.1	255.255.255.0	100	LAN Group 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	 

[+ Add](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 97 Firewall > Configure > Interface

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN Interface	
Name	This field is read-only if you are editing an existing WAN interface. Specify a name for the interface. The format of interface names is strict. Each name consists of 2 – 4 letters (interface type), followed by a number (x). For most interfaces, x is limited by the maximum number of the type of interface. For VLAN interfaces, x is defined by the number you enter in the VLAN name field. For example, VLAN interfaces are vlan0, vlan1, vlan2, and so on.
Status	Select this to activate the selected WAN interface.
IP address	This shows the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	This shows the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
VLAN ID	This shows the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.) Note: NCC will show an error message when the VLAN ID in the interface is configured to be the same as the WAN port's VLAN ID.
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
	Click the edit icon to modify the interface.
	Click the remove icon to delete the interface.
Add	Click this button to create a virtual WAN interface, which associates a VLAN with a WAN port group.
LAN Interface	
Name	This field is read-only if you are editing an existing LAN interface. Specify a name for the interface. The format of interface names is strict. Each name consists of 2 – 4 letters (interface type), followed by a number (x). For most interfaces, x is limited by the maximum number of the type of interface. For VLAN interfaces, x is defined by the number you enter in the VLAN name field. For example, VLAN interfaces are vlan0, vlan1, vlan2, and so on.
Status	Select this to activate the LAN interface.
IP address	This is the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	This is the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
VLAN ID	This is the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.) Note: NCC will show an error message when the VLAN ID in the NSG interface is configured to be the same as the WAN port's VLAN ID.
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
Guest	Select On to configure the interface as a Guest interface. Client devices connected to a Guest interface have Internet access but cannot communicate with each other directly or access networks behind the Nebula Device.
	Click the edit icon to modify it.
	Click the remove icon to delete it.
Add	Click this button to create a virtual LAN interface, which associates a VLAN with a LAN port group.

9.3.2.1 WAN Interface Configuration

Click the **Add** button or click the **Edit** button in the **WAN Interface** section to open the **Firewall > Configure > Interface > WAN interface configuration** screen.

Figure 122 Firewall > Configure > Interface > WAN interface configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 98 Firewall > Configure > Interface > WAN interface configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	Select this to enable the WAN interface.
Interface properties	
Interface name	Specify a name for the WAN interface.
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
SNAT	Select this to enable SNAT. When enabled, the Nebula Device rewrites the source address of packets being sent from this interface to the interface's IP address.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.)

Table 98 Firewall > Configure > Interface > WAN interface configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	Select the type of interface to create. DHCP: The interface will automatically get an IP address and other network settings from a DHCP server. Static: You must manually configure an IP address and other network settings for the interface. PPPoE: The interface will authenticate with an Internet Service Provider, and then automatically get an IP address from the ISP's DHCP server. You can use this type of interface to connect to a DSL modem. PPPoE with static IP: Assign a static IP address to the WAN interface and your WAN interface is getting an Internet connection from a PPPoE server.
IP address assignment	These fields are displayed if you select Static .
IP address	Enter the static IP address of this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask for this interface's IP address.
Default gateway	Enter the IP address of the Nebula Device through which this interface sends traffic.
First DNS server	Enter a DNS server's IP address. The Domain Name System (DNS) maps a domain name to an IP address and vice versa. The Nebula Device uses the first and second DNS servers, in that order to resolve domain names for VPN, DDNS and the time server. Leave the field blank if you do not want to configure DNS servers.
Second DNS server	Enter the IP address of another DNS server. This field is optional.
These fields are displayed if you selected PPPoE or PPPoE with static IP .	
Authentication Type	Select an authentication protocol for outgoing connection requests. Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chap/PAP – The Nebula Device accepts either CHAP or PAP when requested by the remote node. • Chap – The Nebula Device accepts CHAP only. • PAP – The Nebula Device accepts PAP only. • MSCHAP – The Nebula Device accepts MSCHAP only. • MSCHAP-V2 – The Nebula Device accepts MSCHAP-V2 only.
Username	Enter the user name provided by your ISP. You can use up to 31 alphanumeric characters and the underscore. Spaces are not allowed.
Password	Enter the password provided by your ISP. You can use up to 64 alphanumeric characters and the underscore. Spaces are not allowed.
Retype password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
Downstream bandwidth	Enter the downstream bandwidth of the WAN connection. This value is used for WAN load balancing by algorithms such as weighed round robin.
Upstream bandwidth	Enter the upstream bandwidth of the WAN connection. This value is used for WAN load balancing by algorithms such as weighed round robin.
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit. Enter the maximum size of each data packet, in bytes, that can move through this interface. If a larger packet arrives, the Nebula Device divides it into smaller fragments. Allowed values are 576 – 1500.
ADVANCED OPTIONS	
Connectivity check	The interface can periodically check whether it can connect to its default gateway (Default gateway), or to two user-specified servers (Check the two addresses below). If the check fails, the interface's status changes to Down . You specify how often the interface checks the connection, how long to wait for a response before the attempt is a failure, and how many consecutive failures are required before the Nebula Device stops routing to the gateway.

Table 98 Firewall > Configure > Interface > WAN interface configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Probe Succeeds When	This field applies when you select Check the two addresses and specify two domain names or IP addresses for the connectivity check. Select any one if you want the check to pass if at least one of the domain names or IP addresses responds. Select all if you want the check to pass only if both domain names or IP addresses respond.
Proxy ARP	Proxy ARP (RFC 1027) allows the Nebula Device to answer external interface ARP requests on behalf of a device on its internal interface. Click Add new to add the IP address or IP range of devices that the interface will answer proxy ARP requests for.
IP Address	Enter a single IPv4 address, an IPv4 CIDR (for example, 192.168.1.1/24) or an IPv4 Range (for example, 192.168.1.2–192.168.1.100). The Nebula Device answers external ARP requests if they match one of these target IP addresses. For example, if the IPv4 address is 192.168.1.5, then the Nebula Device will answer ARP requests coming from the WAN only if it contains 192.168.1.5 as the target IP address.
	Click the remove icon to delete the proxy ARP IP address.
MAC address Setting	Have the interface use either the factory-assigned default MAC address, or a manually specified MAC address.
DHCP client mode	Choices are Auto , Unicast and Broadcast .
DHCP option 60	DHCP Option 60 is used by the Security Firewall for identification to the DHCP server using the VCI (Vendor Class Identifier) on the DHCP server. The Nebula Device adds it in the initial DHCP discovery message that a DHCP client broadcasts in search of an IP address. The DHCP server can assign different IP addresses or options to clients with the specific VCI or reject the request from clients without the specific VCI. Enter a string using up to 63 of these characters [a-z A-Z 0-9 !"#\$\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@\[\]\^_`{}] to identify this Nebula Device to the DHCP server. For example, Zyxel-TW.
IGMP proxy	Select this to allow the Nebula Device to act as an IGMP proxy for hosts connected on the IGMP downstream interface.
IGMP Upstream	Enable IGMP Upstream on the interface which connects to a router running IGMP that is closer to the multicast server.
IGMP Downstream	Enable IGMP Downstream on the interface which connects to the multicast hosts.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

9.3.2.2 LAN Interface Configuration

Click the **Add** button or click the **Edit** button in the **LAN interface** section to open the **Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration** screen.

Figure 123 Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 99 Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable	Select this to enable the LAN interface.
Interface properties	
Interface name	Specify a name for the LAN interface.
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.)
IP address assignment	
IP address	Enter the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.

Table 99 Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration (continued)


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP setting	Select what type of DHCP service the Nebula Device provides to the network. Choices are: None – the Nebula Device does not provide any DHCP services. There is already a DHCP server on the network. DHCP Relay – the Nebula Device routes DHCP requests to one or more DHCP servers you specify. The DHCP servers may be on another network. DHCP Server – the Nebula Device assigns IP addresses and provides subnet mask, gateway, and DNS server information to the network. The Nebula Device is the DHCP server for the network.
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Relay.	
DHCP server 1	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server for the network.
DHCP server 2	This field is optional. Enter the IP address of another DHCP server for the network.
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Server.	
IP pool start address	Enter the IP address from which the Nebula Device begins allocating IP addresses. If you want to assign a static IP address to a specific computer, use the Static DHCP Table . If this field is blank, the Pool Size must also be blank. In this case, the Nebula Device can assign every IP address allowed by the interface's IP address and subnet mask, except for the first address (network address), last address (broadcast address) and the interface's IP address.
First DNS Server, Second DNS Server, Third DNS Server	Specify the IP addresses of up to three DNS servers for the DHCP clients to use. Use one of the following ways to specify these IP addresses. Custom Defined – enter a static IP address. From ISP – select the DNS server that another interface received from its DHCP server. This Gateway – the DHCP clients use the IP address of this interface and the Nebula Device works as a DNS relay.
Lease Time	Specify how long each computer can use the information (especially the IP address) before it has to request the information again. Choices are: infinite – select this if IP addresses never expire. days, hours, and minutes (Optional) – select this to enter how long IP addresses are valid.
Static DHCP table	Configure a list of static IP addresses the Nebula Device assigns to computers connected to the interface. Otherwise, the Nebula Device assigns an IP address dynamically using the interface's IP Pool Start Address and Pool Size.
IP address	Enter the IP address to assign to a device with this entry's MAC address.
MAC	Enter the MAC address to which to assign this entry's IP address.
Description	Enter a description to help identify this static DHCP entry. You can use alphanumeric and ()+/:=?!*#@\$_%- characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
	Select an entry in this table and click this to delete it.
Add New	Click this to create an entry in the Static DHCP table.
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit. Enter the maximum size of each data packet, in bytes, that can move through this interface. If a larger packet arrives, the Nebula Device divides it into smaller fragments. Allowed values are 576 – 1500. Usually, this value is 1500.
ADVANCED OPTIONS	

Table 99 Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP extended options	<p>This table is available if you select ADVANCED OPTIONS.</p> <p>Configure this table if you want to send more information to DHCP clients through DHCP packets.</p> <p>Click Add new to create an entry in this table. See Section 7.3.2.3 on page 189 for detailed information.</p>
First WINS server Second WINS server	<p>Enter the IP address of the WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server that you want to send to the DHCP clients. The WINS server keeps a mapping table of the computer names on your network and the IP addresses that they are currently using.</p>
PXE server	<p>PXE (Preboot eXecution Environment) allows a client computer to use the network to boot up and install an operating system through a PXE-capable Network Interface Card (NIC).</p> <p>PXE is available for computers on internal interfaces to allow them to boot up using boot software on a PXE server. The Nebula Device acts as an intermediary between the PXE server and the computers that need boot software.</p> <p>The PXE server must have a public IPv4 address. You must enable DHCP server on the Nebula Device so that it can receive information from the PXE server.</p>
PXE Boot loader file	<p>A boot loader is a computer program that loads the operating system for the computer. Enter the exact file name of the boot loader software file, including filename extension, that is on the PXE server. If the wrong filename is entered, then the client computers cannot boot.</p>
Default gateway	<p>If you set this interface to DHCP server, you can select to use either the interface's IP address or another IP address as the default router. This default router will become the DHCP clients' default gateway.</p>
IGMP proxy	<p>Select this to allow the Nebula Device to act as an IGMP proxy for hosts connected on the IGMP downstream interface.</p>
IGMP Upstream	<p>Enable IGMP Upstream on the interface which connects to a router running IGMP that is closer to the multicast server.</p>
IGMP Downstream	<p>Enable IGMP Downstream on the interface which connects to the multicast hosts.</p>
Close	<p>Click Close to exit this screen without saving.</p>
OK	<p>Click OK to save your changes.</p>

9.3.2.3 DHCP Option

Click the **Add new** button in the **DHCP extended options** section to open the **Firewall > Configure > Interface > LAN interface configuration: DHCP option** screen.

Figure 124 Firewall > Configure > Interface: LAN interface configuration: DHCP option

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 100 Firewall > Configure > Interface: LAN interface configuration: DHCP option

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Option	Select which DHCP option that you want to add in the DHCP packets sent through the interface.
Name	This field displays the name of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User defined in the Option field, enter a descriptive name to identify the DHCP option.
Code	This field displays the code number of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User defined in the Option field, enter a number for the option. This field is mandatory.
Type	This is the type of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User defined in the Option field, select an appropriate type for the value that you will enter in the next field. Misconfiguration could result in interface lockout.
Value	Enter the value for the selected DHCP option. For example, if you selected TFTP Server Name (66) and the type is TEXT , enter the DNS domain name of a TFTP server here. This field is mandatory.
First/Second/Third IP address	If you selected User defined / Time/NTP/SIP/TFTP server / CAPWAP AC in the Option field, enter up to three IP addresses.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

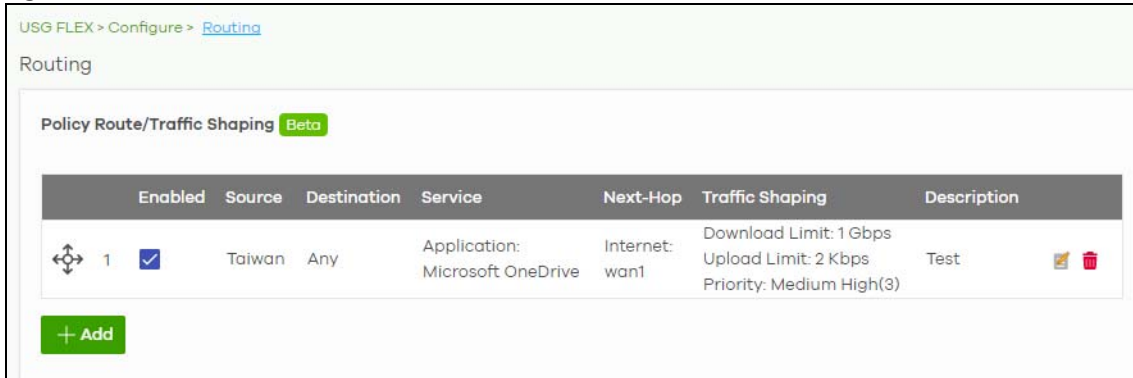
9.3.3 Routing

Use policy routes and static routes to override the Nebula Device's default routing behavior in order to send packets through the appropriate next-hop gateway, interface or VPN tunnel.

A policy route defines the matching criteria and the action to take when a packet meets the criteria. The action is taken only when all the criteria are met. Use this screen to configure policy routes.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping** to access this screen.

Figure 125 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 101 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Source	This shows the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. This could be an IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) object.
Destination	This shows the destination IP addresses to which this rule applies. This could be an IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) object.
Service	This is the name of the service object (port) or application. Any means all services. Select Protocol to specify a protocol by protocol ID number, as defined in the IPv4 header. For example, 1 = ICMP, 2 = IGMP.
Next Hop	This is the next hop to which packets are directed. It helps forward packets to their destinations and can be a router, VPN tunnel, or outgoing interface.
Traffic Shaping	This displays the maximum downstream and upstream bandwidth for traffic from an individual source IP address and the priority level.
Description	This is the descriptive name of the policy.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new policy route. See Section 9.3.7.1 on page 307 for more information.

9.3.3.1 Add/Edit Policy Route / Traffic Shaping Rule

Click the **Add** button or an edit icon in the **Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping: Add/Edit** screen to access this screen.

Figure 126 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 102 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Matching Criteria	
Description	Enter a descriptive name for the rule.
Source	Specify the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. You can add multiple IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) objects by pressing 'Enter', or enter a new IP address by clicking Add . Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses. Note: IP/CIDR, FQND, and GEO IP objects cannot be use at the same time.
Destination	Specify the destination IP addresses or subnet to which this rule applies. You can add multiple IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) objects by pressing 'Enter', or enter a new IP address by clicking Add . Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses. Note: IP/CIDR, FQND, and GEO IP objects cannot be use at the same time.

Table 102 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Route/Traffic Shaping: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service	Select a protocol to apply the policy route to. TCP, UDP, TCP & UDP, ICMP – Match packets from the specified network protocol, going to the optional destination port. Protocol – Match packets for the specified custom protocol. Enter the Protocol ID , 1 – 143 (1 for ICMP , 6 for TCP , 17 for UDP ; the Service will automatically select ICMP / TCP / UDP respectively). Application – Match packets from the application. Otherwise, select Any .
Policy Route	Select this to enable policy route.
Type	Select Internet Traffic to route the matched packets through the specified outgoing interface to a gateway (which is connected to the interface). Select Intranet Traffic to route the matched packets to the next-hop router or Switch you specified in the Next-Hop field. Select VPN Traffic to route the matched packets through the VPN tunnel you specified in the Next-Hop field.
Next-Hop	If you select Internet Traffic in the Type field, select the WAN interface to route the matched packets through the specified outgoing interface to a gateway connected to the interface. If you select Intranet Traffic in the Type field, enter the IP address of the next-hop router or Switch. If you select VPN Traffic in the Type field, select the remote VPN gateway's site name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only the VPN gateway sites belonging to the same VPN Area that you set in Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator will be available. See Section 6.3.9.3 on page 197 for more information). Setting a Policy Route to force traffic over a VPN tunnel between a Security Firewall and Nebula Security Gateway (NSG) is not supported. Both front/back end Nebula Devices must be the same type.
Traffic Shaping	Select this to restrict maximum downstream and upstream bandwidth for traffic in the policy route.
Download Limit	Set the maximum downstream bandwidth for traffic that matches the policy.
Upload limit	Set the maximum upstream bandwidth for traffic that matches the policy.
Priority	Enter a number between 1 and 6 to set the priority for traffic that matches this policy. The lower the number, the higher the priority. Traffic with a higher priority is given bandwidth before traffic with a lower priority.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.3.2 Static Route

Click the **Add** button in the **Static Route** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Routing: Static Route** screen to open the following screen.

Figure 127 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Static Route


Static Route

Subnet	Next Hop Type	Next Hop	Metric(0-127)	Description
<input type="text"/>	IP Address	<input type="text"/>	1	<input type="text"/>

+ Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 103 Firewall > Configure > Routing: Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Subnet	Enter an IP subnet mask. The route applies to all IP addresses in the subnet.
Next Hop Type	Select IP Address or Interface to specify if you want to send all traffic to the gateway or interface.
Next Hop	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway.
Metric (0–127)	Metric represents the "cost" of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be 0 – 127. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Description	This is the descriptive name of the static route.
	Click this icon to remove a static route.
Add	Click this button to create a new static route.

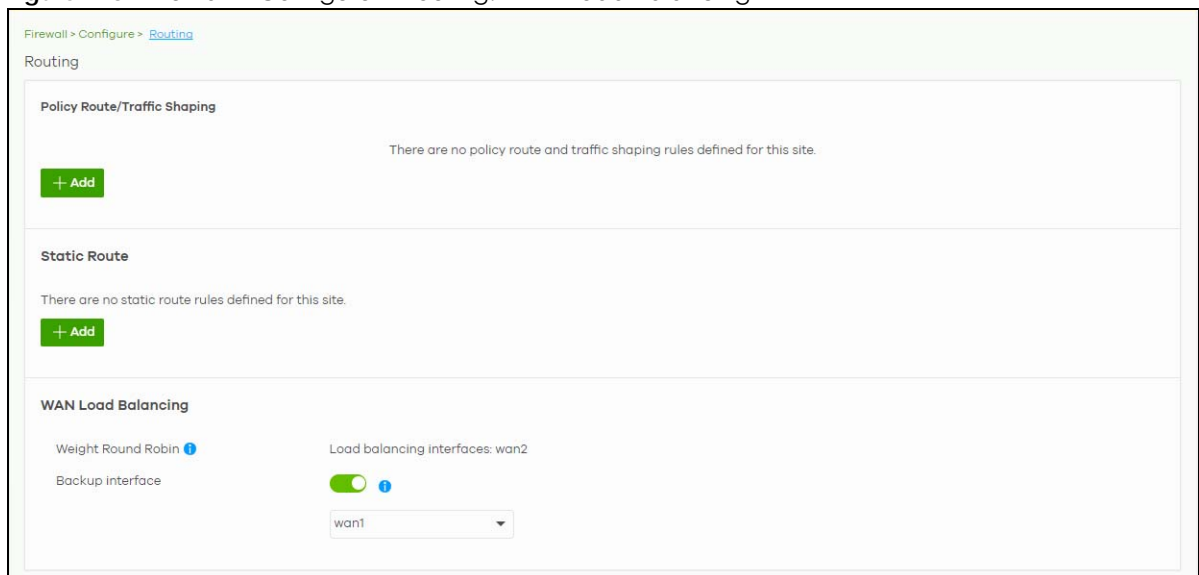
9.3.3.3 WAN Load Balancing

Go to **Firewall > Configure > Routing: WAN Load Balancing** to configure WAN load balancing.

By default, the Nebula Device adds all WAN interfaces to a load balancing group, and balances the traffic load between interfaces based on their respective weights (upload bandwidth). An interface with a larger weight gets more chances to transmit traffic than an interface with a smaller weight.

For example, if the weight ratio of WAN 1 and WAN 2 interfaces is 2:1, the Nebula Device chooses WAN 1 for two sessions' traffic and WAN 2 for one session's traffic in each round of three new sessions.

Figure 128 Firewall > Configure > Routing: WAN Load Balancing



The following table describes the labels in this section.

Table 104 Firewall > Configure > Routing: WAN Load Balancing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Weight Round Robin	Displays the WAN interfaces that are in the WAN load balancing group.
Backup interface	Select this to assign one WAN interface as the backup interface. The backup interface is removed from the WAN load balancing group, and handles all traffic if all load balancing interfaces are down.

9.3.4 NAT

The NAT summary screen provides a summary of all NAT rules and their configuration. In addition, this screen allows you to create new NAT rules and edit and delete existing NAT rules.

Note: When adding a NAT rule, based on the NAT setting NCC will automatically add the incoming security policy (firewall) rule.





To access this screen, click **Firewall > Configure > NAT**. The following screen appears, providing a summary of the existing NAT rules.

Figure 129 Firewall > Configure > NAT

The screenshot displays the NAT configuration interface. At the top, it shows the breadcrumb 'Firewall > Configure > NAT' and the title 'NAT'. The main section is titled 'Virtual Server' and contains a table with columns: Enable, Uplink, Protocol, Public IP, Public Port, LAN IP, and Local Port. A single rule is listed with ID 1, enabled, using the 'wan1' uplink, 'Both' protocol, 'Any' public IP, and redacted public, LAN, and local ports. Below the table is a '+ Add' button. The '1:1 NAT' section has an 'Enable' toggle (checked), a 'Name' field (SN_), 'Public IP', 'LAN IP', and 'Uplink' (wan1) fields. Below these is a table for 'Allowed inbound connections' with columns: Enable, Protocol, Local Port, and Remote IPs. A single rule is listed with ID 1, enabled, 'Both' protocol, redacted local port, and 'any' remote IP. There are '+ Add' buttons at the bottom of both sections.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 105 Firewall > Configure > NAT

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Virtual Server	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enable	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Uplink	Select the interface of the Nebula Device on which packets for the NAT rule must be received.
Protocol	Select the IP protocol to which this rule applies. Choices are: TCP , UDP , and Both .
Public IP	Enter the destination IP address of the packets received by the interface specified in this NAT rule. Note: To enable NAT loop-back, enter a specific IP address instead of Any in this field. NAT loop-back allows communications between two hosts on the LAN behind the Nebula Device through an external IP address,
Public Port	Enter the translated destination port or range of translated destination ports if this NAT rule forwards the packet.
LAN IP	Specify to which translated destination IP address this NAT rule forwards packets.
Local Port	Enter the original destination port or range of destination ports this NAT rule supports.
Allowed Remote IPs	Specify the remote IP addresses that are allowed to access the public IP address. You can specify a range of IP addresses. Any allows all IP addresses.
Description	This is the descriptive name of the policy.
	Click the remove icon to delete it.
Add	Click this to create a new entry.
1:1 NAT	
Enable	Select this to turn on the rule. Otherwise, turn off the rule.
Name	Enter the name of the NAT rule. The name is used to refer to the NAT rule. You may use 1 – 31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.
Public IP	Enter the destination IP address of the packets received by the interface specified in this NAT rule.
LAN IP	Specify to which translated destination IP address this NAT rule forwards packets.
Uplink	Select the interface of the Security Firewall on which packets for the NAT rule must be received.
Allowed Inbound connections	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enable	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Protocol	Select the IP protocol to which this rule applies. Choices are: TCP , UDP , and Both .
Local Port	Enter the original destination port or range of destination ports this NAT rule supports.
Remote IPs	Specify the remote IP addresses that are allowed to access the public IP address. You can specify a range of IP addresses. Any allows all IP addresses.
	Click the remove icon to delete it.
Add	Click this to create a new entry.

9.3.5 Site-to-Site VPN

A virtual private network (VPN) provides secure communications between sites without the expense of leased site-to-site lines. Use this screen to configure a VPN rule.

Note: Site-to-site VPN do not support both sites behind NAT scenario.

Click **Firewall** > **Configure** > **Site-to-Site VPN** to access this screen.

Figure 130 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN

Firewall > Configure > [Site-to-Site VPN](#)

Site-to-Site VPN

Configuring VPN with multiple sites is cumbersome. Use [VPN Orchestrator](#) to save your time.

Outgoing interface: AUTO

Preferred uplink: wan1

Local networks

Name	Subnet	Use VPN
lan1	192.168.128.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
lan2	192.168.2.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN10	192.168.10.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN100	192.168.100.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IPSec remote client VPN	192.168.200.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

VPN Area: Default

Nebula VPN enable:

Nebula VPN topology: Split tunnel (send only site-to-site traffic over the VPN)

Hub-and-Spoke: Hub-and-Spoke

Branch to branch VPN:

Hubs (peers connect to):

Area communication:

NAT traversal: None, Custom (NAT traversal) IP

Remote VPN participants:

Network	Subnet

Save or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

Non-Nebula VPN peers

Site-wide settings

Options in this section apply to this Nebula gateway only.

Enabled	Name	Public IP	Private subnet	IPsec policy	Pre-shared secret	Availability
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				Default		This si

+ Add

Org-wide settings

On this page is view only, please change the configure by [VPN Orchestrator](#) Page

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 106 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Outgoing Interface	Select the WAN interface to which the VPN connection is going. Select AUTO to use all available WAN interfaces to build the VPN tunnel.
Preferred uplink	Specify the primary WAN interface through which the Nebula Device forwards VPN traffic when you set Outgoing Interface to AUTO .
Local networks	This shows the local networks behind the Nebula Device. Note: Non-Nebula VPN peers use the first interface with a local policy. For example, both lan1 and lan2 are enabled. The first interface in the list 'lan1' will be used. Regardless of the order they are created.
Name	This shows the network name.
Subnet	This shows the IP address and subnet mask of the computer on the network.
Use VPN	Select ON to allow the computers on the network to use the VPN tunnel. Otherwise, select OFF .
VPN Area	Select the VPN area of the site. For details, see Section 6.3.9.2 on page 196 .
Nebula VPN enable	Click this to enable or disable site-to-site VPN on the site's Nebula Device. If you disable this setting, the site will leave the VPN area.
Nebula VPN Topology	Click this to select a topology for the VPN area. For details on topologies, see Section 6.3.9.1 on page 196 . Select disable to disable VPN connections for all sites in the VPN area.
Branch to branch VPN	Enable this to allow spoke sites to communicate with each other in the VPN area. When disabled, spoke sites can only communicate with hub sites.
Hubs (peers to connect to)	This field displays the hub sites that the current site is connected to, when Topology is set to Hub-and-Spoke . You can configure hub sites at Organization-wide > Configure > VPN Orchestrator .
Area communication	Enable this to allow the site to communicate with sites in different VPN areas within the organization.
NAT traversal	If the Nebula Device is behind a NAT router, select Custom to enter the public IP address or the domain name that is configured and mapped to the Nebula Device on the NAT router. Note: To allow a site-to-site VPN connection, the NAT router must have the following ports open: UDP 500, 4500.
Remote VPN participants	This shows all sites within the VPN area.
Non-Nebula VPN peers	Configure this section to add a non-Nebula gateway to the VPN area.
+ Add	Click this button to add a non-Nebula gateway to the VPN area.
Enabled	Select the check box to enable VPN connections to the non-Nebula gateway.
Name	Enter the name of the non-Nebula gateway.
Public IP	Enter the public IP address of the non-Nebula gateway.
Private subnet	Enter the IP subnet that will be used for VPN connections. The IP range must be reachable from other devices in the VPN area.
IPSec policy	Click to select a pre-defined policy or have a custom one. See Section 9.3.8.1 on page 321 for detailed information.

Table 106 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Preshared secret	Enter a pre-shared key (password). The Nebula Device and peer gateway use the key to identify each other when they negotiate the IKE SA.
Availability	Select which sites the non-Nebula gateway can connect to in the VPN area. Select All sites to allow the non-Nebula gateway to connect to any site in the VPN area. Select This site and the non-Nebula gateway can only connect to the Nebula Device in this site.
Address	Enter the address (physical location) of the device.

9.3.5.1 IPsec Policy

Click the **Default** button in the **Non-Nebula VPN peers** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** screen to access this screen.

Figure 131 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: IPsec Policy

The screenshot shows the IPsec Policy configuration interface. It is titled 'Custom' and includes the following settings:

- Preset:** Default
- Phase 1:**
 - IKE version: IKEv1
 - Encryption: AES128
 - Authentication: SHA128
 - Diffie-Hellman group: DH2
 - Lifetime (seconds): 86400
- Advanced:**
 - Phase 2:**

Set	Encryption	Authentication
Set 1	AES128	SHA128
Set 2	None	None
Set 3	None	None
 - PFS group: DH2
 - Lifetime (seconds): 28800
 - Connectivity check: (empty field)

Buttons for 'Close' and 'OK' are located at the bottom right of the window.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 107 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: IPsec Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Preset	Select a pre-defined IPsec policy, or select Custom to configure the policy settings yourself.
Phase 1	IPsec VPN consists of two phases: Phase 1 (Authentication) and Phase 2 (Key Exchange). A phase 1 exchange establishes an IKE SA (Security Association).
IKE version	Select IKEv1 or IKEv2 . IKEv1 and IKEv2 applies to IPv4 traffic only. IKE (Internet Key Exchange) is a protocol used in setting up security associations that allows two parties to send data securely.
Encryption	Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IKE SA. Choices are: DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm 3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm The Nebula Device and the remote IPsec router must use the same key size and encryption algorithm. Longer keys require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.
Authentication	Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IKE SA. Choices are SHA128 , SHA256 , SHA512 and MD5 . SHA is generally considered stronger than MD5, but it is also slower. The remote IPsec router must use the same authentication algorithm.
Diffie-Hellman group	Select which Diffie-Hellman key group (DHx) you want to use for encryption keys. Choices are: DH1 – use a 768-bit random number DH2 – use a 1024-bit random number DH5 – use a 1536-bit random number DH14 – use a 2048-bit random number The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.
Lifetime (seconds)	Enter the maximum number of seconds the IKE SA can last. When this time has passed, the Nebula Device and remote IPsec router have to update the encryption and authentication keys and re-negotiate the IKE SA. This does not affect any existing IPsec SAs, however.
Advanced	Click this to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.
Mode	Set the negotiation mode. Main encrypts the Nebula Device's and remote IPsec router's identities but takes more time to establish the IKE SA. Aggressive is faster but does not encrypt the identities.
Local ID	Enter an identifier used to identify the Nebula Device during authentication. This can be an IP address or hostname.

Table 107 Firewall > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: IPsec Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Peer ID	Enter an identifier used to identify the remote IPsec router during authentication. This can be an IP address or hostname.
Phase2	Phase 2 uses the SA that was established in phase 1 to negotiate SAs for IPsec.
Encryption	<p>Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IPsec SA. Choices are:</p> <p>(None) – no encryption key or algorithm</p> <p>DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPsec router must both have at least one proposal that uses the same encryption and the same key.</p> <p>Longer keys are more secure, but require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.</p>
PFS group	<p>Select whether or not you want to enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) and, if you do, which Diffie-Hellman key group to use for encryption. Choices are:</p> <p>None – disable PFS</p> <p>DH1 – enable PFS and use a 768-bit random number</p> <p>DH2 – enable PFS and use a 1024-bit random number</p> <p>DH5 – enable PFS and use a 1536-bit random number</p> <p>DH14 – enable PFS and use a 2048-bit random number</p> <p>PFS changes the root key that is used to generate encryption keys for each IPsec SA. The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.</p> <p>PFS is ignored in initial IKEv2 authentication but is used when re-authenticating.</p>
Lifetime (seconds)	Enter the maximum number of seconds the IPsec SA can last. Shorter life times provide better security. The Nebula Device automatically negotiates a new IPsec SA before the current one expires, if there are users who are accessing remote resources.
Connectivity check	Enter an IP address that the Nebula Device can ping, to check whether the non-Nebula VPN peer gateway is available.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.6 Remote Access VPN

Use this screen to configure the VPN client settings on the Nebula Device. This allows incoming VPN clients to connect to the Nebula Device in order to access the site's network. The clients have dynamic IP addresses and are also known as dial-in users. Only the clients can initiate the VPN tunnel.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN** to access this screen.

Figure 132 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN

Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN

Remote access VPN

WAN interface: Auto

Domain name: alpha-6b734c86.d2ns-nbl.com

IPSec VPN server:

Client VPN subnet:

IKE version: IKEv2

DNS name servers: Specify nameserver ...

Custom name servers:

One IP address in one line to specify your nameserver. Maximum number of nameservers is two.
 Example:
 192.168.1.1
 192.168.37.10

Upload bandwidth limit: Mbps

Policy: Default

Authentication: Nebula Cloud Authentication

Two-factor authentication with Captive Portal

SecuExtender IKEv2 VPN configuration provision: [Send Email](#)

L2TP over IPSec VPN server:

Client VPN subnet:

DNS name servers: Specify nameserver ...

Custom nameservers:

One IP address in one line to specify your nameserver. Maximum number of nameservers is two.
 Example:
 192.168.1.1
 192.168.37.10

Secret:

Authentication: Nebula Cloud Authentication

Policy: Default

VPN provision script: [Send Email](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 108 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WAN interface	Select the WAN interface which VPN users connect to.
Domain name	This displays the domain name of the NAT router if the VPN tunnel must pass through NAT (there is a NAT router between the IPsec devices). This field is available only when you select AUTO in the WAN interface field. Note: To allow an IPsec connection, the NAT router must have the following ports open: UDP 500, 4500.
IPsec VPN server	Select this to enable the IPsec VPN server.
Client VPN subnet	Specify the IP addresses that the Nebula Device uses to assign to the VPN clients.
IKE version	Select IKEv1 or IKEv2 . IKE (Internet Key Exchange) is a protocol used in setting up security associations that allows two parties to send data securely.
DNS name servers	Specify the DNS servers to assign to the remote users. Or select Specify nameserver to enter a static IP address.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the DNS name servers field, manually enter the DNS server IP addresses.
Upload Bandwidth Limit	This field is available only if you select IKEv2 in IKE version . Enter the maximum traffic load between VPN clients, 1 – 100 Mbps.
Secret	Enter the pre-shared key (password) which is used to set up the VPN tunnel. The password should be 8 – 32 characters.
Policy	Configure custom VPN tunnel settings. For details, see Section 9.3.6.1 on page 302 .
Authentication	Select how the Nebula Device authenticates a remote user before allowing access to the VPN tunnel.
Two-factor authentication with Captive Portal	Select this to require two-factor authentication for a user to access the Nebula Device through VPN. Note: Two-factor authentication is only supported with Zyxel SecuExtender IPsec client.
SecuExtender IKEv2 VPN configuration provision	Enter the email address to send new IKEv2 Remote Access VPN configuration file to VPN client. Then click Send Email . The VPN client needs to replace the IPsec VPN client configuration by importing the configuration file.
L2TP over IPsec VPN server	Select this to enable the L2TP over IPsec VPN server.
Client VPN subnet	Specify the IP addresses that the Nebula Device uses to assign to the VPN clients.
DNS name servers	Specify the DNS servers to assign to the remote users. Or select Specify nameserver to enter a static IP address.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the DNS name servers field, manually enter the DNS server IP addresses.
Secret	This field is available only if you select IKEv1 in IKE version . Enter the pre-shared key (password) which is used to set up the VPN tunnel. The password should be 8 – 32 characters.
Authentication	Select how the Nebula Device authenticates a remote user before allowing access to the VPN tunnel.

Table 108 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Policy	Configure custom VPN tunnel settings. For details, see Section 9.3.6.1 on page 302 .
VPN provision script	Send an email to help automatically configure VPN settings on client devices so that the devices can remotely access this Nebula Device. The email contains two scripts; one for mac OS and iOS devices, and one for Windows 8 and Windows 10 devices. You can send the email to one or more email addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If Authentication is set to Nebula Cloud Authentication, the default email address list contains all authorized VPN user email addresses and your email address. If Authentication is set to AD and RADIUS Authentication, the default email address list contains your user email address. This field is available only when you select L2TP over IPSec client in the Client VPN server field.

9.3.6.1 Remote Access VPN > Custom VPN Policy

Click **Default** in **Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN > Policy** to open the following screen.

Figure 133 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN: Default

Custom [X]

Preset: Default

Phase 1

IKE version: IKEv1

Encryption: 3DES

Authentication: SHA128

Diffie-Hellman group: DH2

Lifetime (seconds): 86400

Advanced

Phase 2

Set	Encryption	Authentication
Set 1	3DES	SHA128
Set 2	None	None
Set 3	None	None

PFS group: None

Lifetime (seconds): 86400

Close OK

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 109 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN: Default

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Custom	
Preset	Select a pre-defined IPSec policy, or select Custom to configure the policy settings yourself.
Phase 1	
Encryption	<p>Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IPSec SA. Choices are:</p> <p>(None) – no encryption key or algorithm</p> <p>DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPSec router must both have at least one proposal that use the same encryption and the same key.</p> <p>Longer keys are more secure, but require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IKE SA.</p> <p>Choices are SHA128, SHA256, SHA512 and MD5. SHA is generally considered stronger than MD5, but it is also slower.</p> <p>The remote IPSec router must use the same authentication algorithm.</p>
Diffie-Hellman group	<p>Select the Diffie-Hellman key group (DHx) you want to use for encryption keys. Choices are:</p> <p>DH1 – use a 768-bit random number</p> <p>DH2 – use a 1024-bit random number</p> <p>DH5 – use a 1536-bit random number</p> <p>DH14 – use a 2048-bit random number</p> <p>The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.</p>
Lifetime (seconds)	Enter the maximum number of seconds the IPSec SA can last. Shorter life times provide better security. The Nebula Device automatically negotiates a new IPSec SA before the current one expires, if there are users who are accessing remote resources.
Phase 2	
Set	This shows the index number of the IPSec policy.

Table 109 Firewall > Configure > Remote access VPN: Default (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Encryption	<p>Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IPsec SA. Choices are:</p> <p>(None) – no encryption key or algorithm</p> <p>DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPsec router must both have at least one proposal that use the same encryption and the same key.</p> <p>Longer keys are more secure, but require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IKE SA.</p> <p>Choices are None, SHA128, SHA256, SHA512 and MD5. SHA is generally considered stronger than MD5, but it is also slower.</p> <p>The remote IPsec router must use the same authentication algorithm.</p>
PFS group	<p>Select whether or not you want to enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) and, if you do, which Diffie-Hellman key group to use for encryption. Choices are:</p> <p>None – disable PFS</p> <p>DH1 – enable PFS and use a 768-bit random number</p> <p>DH2 – enable PFS and use a 1024-bit random number</p> <p>DH5 – enable PFS and use a 1536-bit random number</p> <p>DH14 – enable PFS and use a 2048 bit random number</p> <p>PFS changes the root key that is used to generate encryption keys for each IPsec SA. The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.</p> <p>PFS is ignored in initial IKEv2 authentication but is used when re-authenticating.</p>
Lifetime (seconds)	<p>Enter the maximum number of seconds the IPsec SA can last. Shorter life times provide better security. The Security Firewall automatically negotiates a new IPsec SA before the current one expires, if there are users who are accessing remote resources.</p>
Close	<p>Click this button to exit this screen without saving.</p>
OK	<p>Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.</p>

9.3.7 Security Policy

By default, a LAN user can initiate a session from within the LAN and the Nebula Device allows the response. However, the Nebula Device blocks incoming traffic initiated from the WAN and destined for the LAN. Use this screen to configure firewall rules for outbound traffic, application patrol and content filtering, schedule profiles and port forwarding rules for inbound traffic.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Security policy** to access this screen.

Note: The Nebula Device has the following hidden default firewall rules: LAN to WAN is allowed, WAN to LAN is blocked.

Figure 134 Firewall > Configure > Security policy

Firewall > Configure > Security policy

Security policy Customize

Security policy ⓘ

Enabled	Name	Action	Application Patrol / Content Filtering Policy	Protocol	Source	Destination
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	SF_*	Allow	-	Any	IP, IP range, CIDR, or FQDN...	IP, IP range, CIDR, or
Implicit allow rules ▲						
		Allow		Any	lan1_192.168.1.0/24 lan2_192.168.2.0/24	Any
		Allow		Any	lan1_192.168.1.0/24 lan2_192.168.2.0/24	Device
Implicit deny rule						
		Deny		Any	Any	Any

+ Add

Anomaly Detection and Prevention

Enable Anomaly Detection and Prevention

Session Control

UDP Session Time Out: X (1-28800 second)

Session per Host: X (0-8192, 0 is unlimited)

Schedule profiles

There are no schedule profiles defined for this site.

+ Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 110 Firewall > Configure > Security policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security policy	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Name	Enter the name of the security policy.
Action	Select what the Nebula Device is to do with packets that match this rule. Select Deny to silently discard the packets without sending a TCP reset packet or an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender. Select Allow to permit the passage of the packets.

Table 110 Firewall > Configure > Security policy (continued)




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Application Patrol/ Content Filtering Policy	<p>Click the "+" to add an Application Patrol or Content Filtering profile. The firewall takes the action set in the profile when traffic matches the profile's policy.</p> <p>Application Patrol manages the use of various applications on the network. It manages general protocols (for example, HTTP and FTP) and instant messenger (IM), peer-to-peer (P2P), Voice over IP (VoIP), and streaming (RSTP) applications. You can even control the use of a particular application's individual features (like text messaging, voice, video conferencing, and file transfers). See Section 9.3.7.1 on page 307 for how to create an Application Patrol profile.</p> <p>Content Filtering controls access to specific web sites or web content. See Section 9.3.7.2 on page 308 for how to create a Content Filtering profile.</p>
Protocol	Select the IP protocol to which this rule applies. Choices are: ICMP, TCP, UDP, TCP and UDP and Any .
Source	<p>Specify the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. You can add multiple IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) objects by pressing 'Enter', or enter a new IP address by clicking Add. Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses.</p> <p>Note: IP/CIDR, FQDN, and GEO IP objects cannot be used at the same time.</p>
Destination	<p>Specify the destination IP addresses or subnet to which this rule applies. You can add multiple IP, CIDR, FQDN, or GEO IP (country) objects by pressing 'Enter', or enter a new IP address by clicking Add. Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses.</p> <p>Note: IP/CIDR, FQDN, and GEO IP objects cannot be use at the same time.</p>
Dst Port	Specify the destination ports to which this rule applies. You can specify multiple ports by pressing 'Enter', or enter a new port by clicking Add . Enter any to apply the rule to all ports.
User	Select the External User Group name configured in Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings .
Schedule	Select the name of the schedule profile that the rule uses. Always means the rule is active at all times if enabled.
Description	Enter a descriptive name of up to 60 printable ASCII characters for the rule.
	Click this icon to remove the rule.
Implicit allow rules	<p>This shows the system generated Allow rules.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LAN interface / remote access VPN to Any • Guest interface to WAN interface • LAN interface / remote access VPN to Nebula Device • Guest interface to Nebula Device TCP (TCP:443, 80, 53) • Guest interface to Nebula Device UDP (UDP:53)
Implicit deny rule	<p>This shows the system generated Deny rule.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any to Any
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.
Anomaly Detection and Prevention	
Enable Anomaly Detection and Prevention	Select this to enable traffic anomaly and protocol anomaly detection and prevention.
Session Control	
UDP Session Time Out	Set how many seconds the Nebula Device will allow a UDP session to remain idle (without UDP traffic) before closing it.

Table 110 Firewall > Configure > Security policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Session per Host	Use this field to set a common limit to the number of concurrent NAT/Security Policy sessions each client computer can have. If only a few clients use peer to peer applications, you can raise this number to improve their performance. With heavy peer to peer application use, lower this number to ensure no single client uses too many of the available NAT sessions.
Schedule profiles	
Schedule name	This shows the name of the schedule profile and the number of the outbound rules that are using this schedule profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new schedule profile. See Section 9.3.7.3 on page 311 for more information.

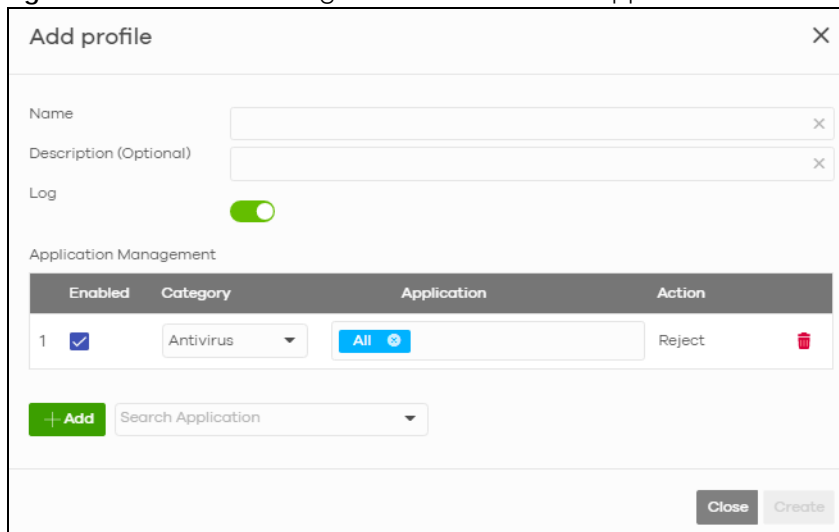
9.3.7.1 Add an Application Patrol Profile

Application patrol provides a convenient way to manage the use of various applications on the network. It manages general protocols (for example, HTTP and FTP) and instant messenger (IM), peer-to-peer (P2P), Voice over IP (VoIP), and streaming (RSTP) applications. You can even control the use of a particular application's individual features (like text messaging, voice, video conferencing, and file transfers).

An application patrol profile is a group of categories of application patrol signatures. For each profile, you can specify the default action the Nebula Device takes once a packet matches a signature (forward, drop, or reject a service's connections and/or create a log alert).

Click "+" in the **Application Patrol/Content Filtering Policy** field of the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall** screen to access this screen. Use the application patrol profile screens to customize action and log settings for a group of application patrol signatures.

Figure 135 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add an Application Profile



Add profile
✕

Name

Description (Optional)

Log

Application Management


	Enabled	Category	Application	Action
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Antivirus	All	Reject

+ Add

Close
Create

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 111 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add an Application Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for this profile for identification purposes.
Description (Optional)	Enter a description for this profile.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log (ON) or not (OFF) by default when traffic matches an application signature in this category.
Application Management	
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Category	Select an application category.
Application	Select All or select an application within the category to apply the policy.
Action	Select the default action for the applications selected in this category. Reject – the Nebula Device drops packets that matches these application signatures and sends notification to clients.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new application category and set actions for specific applications within the category.
	Enter a name to search for relevant applications and click Add to create an entry.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.7.2 Add a Content Filtering Profile

Click "+" in the **Application Patrol/Content Filtering Policy** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall** screen to access this screen.

Figure 136 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add a Content Filtering Profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 112 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add a Content Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for this profile for identification purposes.
Description (Optional)	Enter a description for this profile.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log (ON) or not (OFF) by default when traffic matches an application signature in this category.
DNS Content Filtering	Select whether to enable DNS content filtering, in addition to web content filtering. The DNS Content Filter allows the Nebula Device to block access to specific websites by inspecting DNS queries made by users on your network.
Block Web Pages	
Action for Unrated Web Pages	Select Pass to allow users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized. Select Block to prevent users from accessing web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized. When the external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Content Filter General screen along with the category of the blocked web page. Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.

Table 112 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add a Content Filtering Profile (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Action When Service is Unavailable	<p>Select Pass to allow users to access any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>Select Block to block access to any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>The following are possible causes for the external content filtering server not being available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is no response from the external content filtering server within the time period specified in the Content Filter Server Unavailable Timeout field. • The Nebula Device is not able to resolve the domain name of the external content filtering database. • There is an error response from the external content filtering database. This can be caused by an expired content filtering registration (External content filtering's license key is invalid").
Block Category	
Templates	Select the block category. Choices are Parental control , Productivity and Custom .
Test URL	<p>You can check which category a web page belongs to. Enter a web site URL in the text box.</p> <p>When the content filter is active, you should see the web page's category. The query fails if the content filter is not active.</p> <p>Content Filtering can query a category by full URL string (for example, http://www.google.com/picture/index.htm), but HTTPS Domain Filter can only query a category by domain name ("www.google.com"), so the category may be different in the query result. URL to test displays both results in the test.</p>
Search category	<p>Click to display or hide the category list.</p> <p>These are categories of web pages based on their content. Select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.</p>
Custom block web site	<p>Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.bad-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are also blocked. For example, entering "bad-site.com" also blocks "www.badsite.com", "partner.bad-site.com", "press.bad-site.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to block all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0 – 9 a – z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Add	Click this button to create a new application category and set actions for specific applications within the category.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Custom allow web site	<p>Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.good-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are allowed. For example, entering "zyxel.com" also allows "www.zyxel.com", "partner.zyxel.com", "press.zyxel.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to allow all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0 – 9 a – z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Add	Click this button to create a new application category and set actions for specific applications within the category.

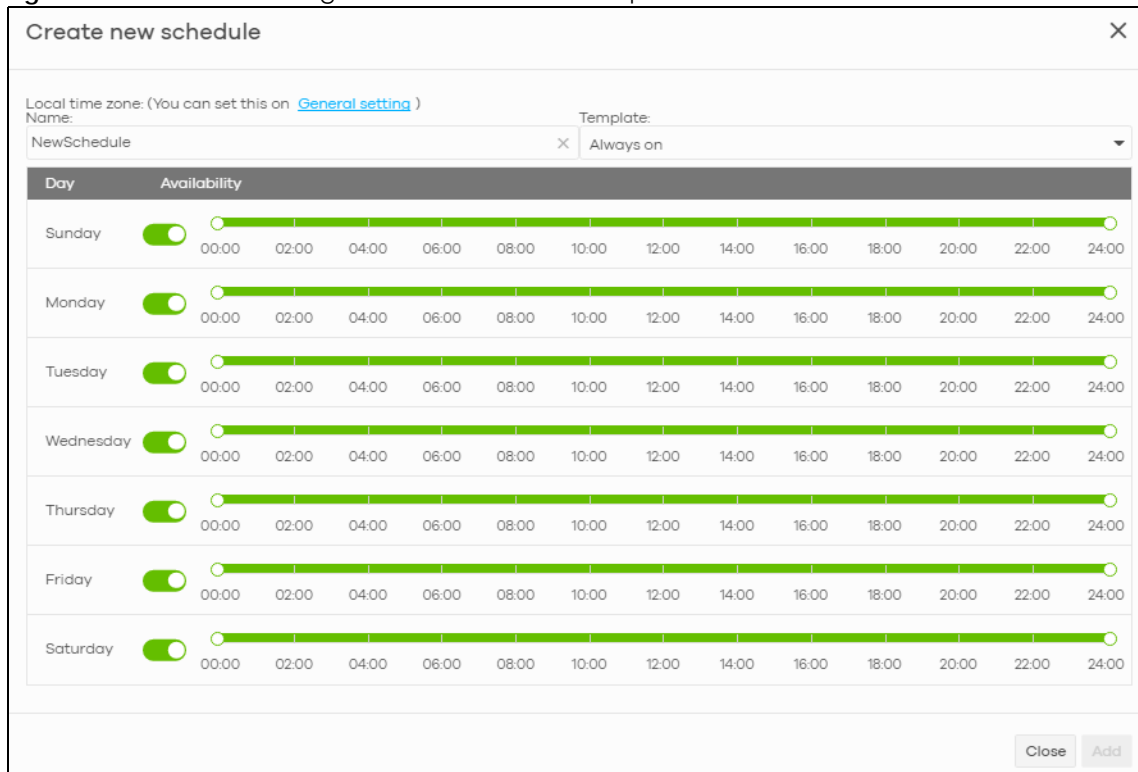
Table 112 Firewall > Configure > Firewall: Add a Content Filtering Profile (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.7.3 Create a New Schedule

Click the **Add** button in the **Schedule Profiles** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall > Schedule profiles** screen to access this screen.

Figure 137 Firewall > Configure > Firewall > Schedule profiles: Create a new schedule



The screenshot shows the 'Create new schedule' interface. At the top, there's a title bar with a close button. Below it, the 'Local time zone' is set to '(You can set this on [General setting](#))'. The 'Name' field contains 'NewSchedule' and the 'Template' dropdown is set to 'Always on'. The main area is a table with columns 'Day' and 'Availability'. Each row represents a day of the week, with a toggle switch and a time range slider from 00:00 to 24:00. The 'Close' and 'Add' buttons are located at the bottom right of the screen.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 113 Firewall > Configure > Firewall > Schedule profiles: Create a new schedule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this schedule for identification purposes.
Templates	Select a pre-defined schedule template or select Custom schedule and manually configure the day and time at which the associated firewall outbound rule is enabled.
Day	This shows the day of the week.
Availability	Click On to enable the associated rule at the specified time on this day. Otherwise, select Off to turn the associated rule off at the specified time on this day. Specify the hour and minute when the schedule begins and ends each day.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Add	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.8 Security Service

Use this screen to enable or disable the features available in the security pack for your Nebula Device, such as content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) and/or anti-virus. As to application patrol, go to the **Firewall** screen to configure it since you need to have a firewall rule for outbound traffic.

Content filtering allows you to block access to specific web sites. It can also block access to specific categories of web site content. IDP can detect malicious or suspicious packets used in network-based intrusions and respond instantaneously. Anti-virus helps protect your connected network from virus/spy-ware infection.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Security service** to access this screen.

Note: Packet inspection signatures examine packet content for malicious data. Packet inspection applies to OSI (Open System Interconnection) layer-4 to layer-7 contents. You need to subscribe for IDP service in order to be able to download new signatures.

Note: If Security Profile Sync (SPS) is enabled, you cannot configure security settings on this screen. For details, see [Section 6.3.8 on page 190](#).

Figure 138 Firewall > Configure > Security service

Firewall > Configure > Security service

Security service

Content filtering [Model list](#)

Drop connection when there is an HTTP connection with SSL v3(or previous version)

Denied Access Message: Web access is restricted. Please contact the administrator.

Redirect URL:

There are no content filtering rules defined for this site.

[+ Add](#)

Application Patrol [Model list](#)

Application profiles: There are no profiles defined for this site.

[+ Add](#)

IP Exception [Model list](#)

Enabled	Source IP	Destination IP	Description
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	-	-	-

[+ Add](#)

DNS/URL Threat Filter [Model list](#)

Signature information: Current Version:
 Released Date: -(UTC+08:00)

Log:

DNS Threat Filter:

DNS Threat Filter policy: Redirect

DNS Threat Filter Redirect IP: Default

URL Threat Filter:

URL Threat Filter policy: Block

URL Threat Filter Denied Access Message: Web access is restricted. Please contact the administrator.

URL Threat Filter Redirect URL:

Test Threat Category: [Test](#)

Category list:

- Anonymizers
- Malicious Sites
- Spyware(Adware)/Keyloggers
- Browser Exploits
- Phishing
- Malicious Downloads
- Spam URLs

Block list: [Ask Question](#)

FQDN(support wildcard)

Allow list:

FQDN(support wildcard)

URL Threat Filter external block list:

Enabled	Name	External DB	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[+ Add](#)

Schedule update: External DB schedule update

Daily

03:00

IP Reputation [Model list](#)

Signature information: Current Version: Released Date: - (UTC+08:00)

Enabled:

Log:

Policy: Block

Threat level threshold: Medium and above

Test Category:

Category list:

- Anonymous Proxies
- Denial of Service
- Exploits
- Negative Reputation
- Scanners
- Spam Sources
- Tor Proxies
- Web Attacks
- Phishing
- BotNets

Black list:

Allow list:

External block list:

Enabled	Name	External DB	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Schedule update: External DB schedule update
Daily
03:00

Anti-Malware [Model list](#)

Signature information: Current Version: Released Date: - (UTC+08:00)

Enabled:

Log:

Scan mode: Stream mode Express mode Hybrid mode

Cloud Query:

Block list:

File Types:

File Pattern:

Allow list:

File Pattern:

Sandboxing [Model list](#)

Enabled:

Log:

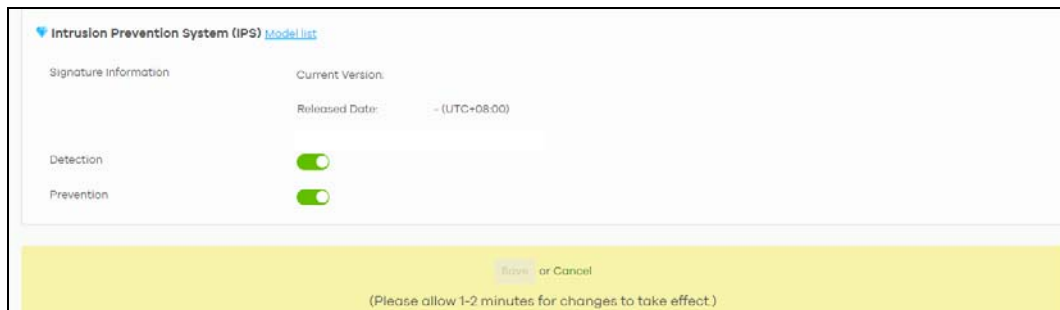
Policy: Allow

Inspect selected downloaded files:

File submission options:

- ZIP Archives (zip)
- Executables (exe)
- MS Office Documents (doc...)
- Macromedia Flash Data (swf)
- PDF Document (pdf)
- RTF Document (rtf)

File Types:



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Content Filtering	
Drop connection when HTTPS connection with SSL V3 or previous version	Select On to have the Nebula Device block HTTPS web pages using SSL V3 or a previous version.
Denied Access Message	Enter a message to be displayed when content filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z A–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator". It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect URL field. In this case if the content filter blocks access to a web page, the Nebula Device just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.
Redirect URL	Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by content filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message. Use "http://" or "https://" followed by up to 262 characters (0–9 a–z A–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.
Name	This shows the name of this content filtering profile.
Description	This shows the description for this profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this to create a content filtering profile. See Section 9.3.7.2 on page 308 for more information.
Application Patrol	
Application profiles	
Name	This shows the name of this Application Patrol profile.
Description	This shows the description for this profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this to create an Application Patrol profile. See Section 9.3.8.2 on page 324 for more information.
IP Exception	
Enabled	Select the check box to enable IP Exception. IP addresses listed here are not checked by security services.
Source IP	This field displays the source IP address of incoming traffic. It displays any if there is no restriction on the source IP address.

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Destination IP	This field displays the destination IP address of incoming traffic. It displays any if there is no restriction on the destination IP address.
Description	Enter a description for this profile.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
DNS/URL Threat Filter	<p>DNS filtering inspects DNS queries made by clients on your network and compares the queries against a database of blocked or allowed Fully Qualified Domain Names (FQDNs). If a user attempts to connect to a suspect site, where the DNS query packet contains an FQDN with a bad reputation, then a DNS query is sent from the user's computer and detected by the DNS Filter. The Nebula Device DNS filter will either drop the DNS query or reply to the user with a fake DNS response using the default dnsft.cloud.zyxel.com IP address (where the user will see a "Web Page Blocked!" page) or a custom IP address.</p> <p>When you enable the URL Threat filtering service, your Nebula Device downloads signature files that contain known URL Threat domain names and IP addresses. The Nebula Device will also access an external database, Cloud Query, that has millions of web sites categorized based on content. You can have the Nebula Device allow, block, warn and/or log access to web sites or hosts based on these signatures and categories.</p>
Signature information	This shows the Current Version of the DNS/URL threat definition and the Released Date .
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log when the policy is matched to the criteria listed above.
DNS Threat Filter	Select On to turn on the rule. Otherwise, select Off to turn off the rule.
DNS Threat Filter Policy	<p>Select Pass to have the Nebula Device allow the DNS query packet and not reply with a DNS reply packet containing a default or custom-defined IP address.</p> <p>Select Redirect to have the Nebula Device reply with a DNS reply packet containing a default or custom-defined IP address.</p>
DNS Threat Filter Redirect IP	Enter the IP address to have the Nebula Device reply with a DNS reply packet containing a default or custom-defined IP address when a DNS query packet contains an FQDN with a bad reputation. The default IP is the dnsft.cloud.zyxel.com IP address. If you select a custom-defined IP, then enter a valid IPv4 address in the text box.
URL Threat Filter	Select On to turn on the rule. Otherwise, select Off to turn off the rule.
URL Threat Filter Policy	<p>Select Pass to allow users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p> <p>Select Block to prevent users from accessing web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized. When the external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Content Filter General screen along with the category of the blocked web page.</p> <p>Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p>
URL Threat Filter Denied Access Message	<p>Enter a message to be displayed when content filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z A–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator".</p> <p>It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect URL field. In this case if the content filter blocks access to a web page, the Nebula Device just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.</p>
URL Threat Filter Redirect URL	<p>Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by content filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message.</p> <p>Use "http:///" or "https:///" followed by up to 262 characters (0–9 a–z A–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.</p>

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Test Threat Category	Enter a URL using http://domain or https://domain and click the Test button to check if the domain belongs to a URL threat category.
Category List	These are categories of web pages based on their content. Select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.
Block list	<p>Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.bad-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are also blocked. For example, entering "bad-site.com" also blocks "www.badsite.com", "partner.bad-site.com", "press.bad-site.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to block all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Allow list	<p>Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.good-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are allowed. For example, entering "zyxel.com" also allows "www.zyxel.com", "partner.zyxel.com", "press.zyxel.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to allow all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z). The casing does not matter.</p>
URL Threat Filter external block list	The Nebula Device uses black list entries stored in a file on a web server that supports HTTP or HTTPS. The Nebula Device blocks incoming and outgoing packets from the black list entries in this file.
Enabled	Select this to have the Nebula Device block the incoming packets that come from the listed addresses in the block list file on the server.
Name	Enter an identifying name for the block list file. You can use alphanumeric and ()+/:=?!*#@\$_%- characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
External DB	<p>Enter the exact file name, path and IP address of the server containing the block list file. The file type must be 'txt'.</p> <p>For example, http://172.16.107.20/blacklist-files/myip-ubl.txt</p> <p>The server must be reachable from the Nebula Device.</p>
Description	Enter a description of the block list file. You can use alphanumeric and ()+/:=?!*#@\$_%- characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
Schedule update	<p>The signatures for DNS Filter and URL Threat Filter are the same. These signatures are continually updated as new malware evolves. New signatures can be downloaded to the Nebula Device periodically if you have subscribed for the URL Threat filter signatures service.</p> <p>You need to create an account at myZyxel, register your Nebula Device and then subscribe for URL Threat filter service in order to be able to download new signatures from myZyxel.</p> <p>Select Daily to set the time of the day, or Weekly to set the day of the week and the time of the day.</p> <p>Schedule signature updates for a day and time when your network is least busy to minimize disruption to your network.</p>
IP Reputation	

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Signature information	This shows the Current Version of the signature set the Nebula Device is using and the Released Date .
Enabled	Select this option to turn on IP blocking on the Nebula Device.
Log	Select this option to create a log on the Nebula Device when the packet comes from an IPv4 address with bad reputation.
Policy	Select Pass to have the Nebula Device allow the packet to go through. Select Block to have the Nebula Device deny the packets and send a TCP RST to both the sender and receiver when a packet comes from an IPv4 address with bad reputation.
Threat level threshold	Select the threshold threat level to which the Nebula Device will take action (High, Medium and above, Low and above). The threat level is determined by the IP reputation engine. It grades IPv4 addresses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High: an IPv4 address that scores 0 to 20 points. • Medium and above: an IPv4 address that scores 0 to 60 points. • Low and above: an IPv4 address that scores 0 to 80 points. For example, a score of "10" will cause the Nebula Device to take action whether you set the Threat level threshold at High, Medium and above , or Low and above . But a score of "61" will not cause the Nebula Device to take any action if you set the Threat level threshold at Medium and above .
Test Category	Enter an IPv4 address of a website, and click the Test button to check if the website associates with suspicious activities that could pose a security threat to users or their computers.
Category list	Select the categories of packets that come from the Internet and are known to pose a security threat to users or their computers.
Block list	Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list. Add the IPv4 addresses that the Nebula Device will block the incoming packets.
Allow list	Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list. Add the IPv4 addresses that the Nebula Device will allow the incoming packets.
External block list	
Enabled	Select this check box to have the Nebula Device block the incoming packets that come from the listed addresses in the block list file on the server.
Name	Enter the identifying name for the block list file. You can use alphanumeric and ()+/:=?!*#@\$_%- characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
External DB	Enter the file name, path and IP address of the server containing the block list file. For example, http://172.16.107.20/blacklist-files/myip-ubl.txt
Description	Enter a description of the block list file. You can use alphanumeric and ()+/:=?!*#@\$_%- characters, and it can be up to 60 characters long.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Schedule update	<p>New IP reputation signatures can be downloaded to the Nebula Device periodically if you have subscribed for the IP reputation signatures service. You need to create an account at myZyxel, register your Nebula Device and then subscribe for IP reputation service in order to be able to download new signatures from myZyxel.</p> <p>Select Daily to set the time of the day, or Weekly to set the day of the week and the time of the day.</p> <p>Schedule signature updates for a day and time when your network is least busy to minimize disruption to your network.</p>
Anti-Malware	
Signature information	This shows the Current Version of the signature set the Nebula Device is using and the Released Date .
Enabled	Select On to turn on the rule. Otherwise, select Off to turn off the rule.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log when the policy is matched to the criteria listed above.
Scan Mode	
Express Mode	In this mode you can define which types of files are scanned using the File Type For Scan fields. The Nebula Device then scans files by sending each file's hash value to a cloud database using cloud query. This is the fastest scan mode.
Stream Mode	In this mode the Nebula Device scans all files for viruses using its anti-malware signatures to detect known virus patterns. This is the deepest scan mode.
Hybrid Mode	In this mode you can define which types of files are scanned using the File Type For Scan fields. The Nebula Device then scans files by sending each file's hash value to a cloud database using cloud query. It also scans files using anti-malware signatures, and Threat Intelligence Machine Learning. This mode combines Express Mode and Stream Mode to offer a balance of speed and security.
File decompression (ZIP and RAR)	<p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device scan a compressed file (the file does not need to have a "zip" or "rar" file extension). The Nebula Device first decompresses the file and then scans the contents for malware.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device decompresses a compressed file once. The Nebula Device does NOT decompress any files within a compressed file.</p>
Destroy compressed files that could not be decompressed	<p>When you select this check box, the Nebula Device deletes compressed files that use password encryption.</p> <p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device delete any compressed files that it cannot decompress. The Nebula Device cannot decompress password protected files or a file within another compressed file. There are also limits to the number of compressed files that the Nebula Device can concurrently decompress.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device's firmware package cannot go through the Nebula Device with this check box enabled. The Nebula Device classifies the firmware package as a file that cannot be decompressed and then deletes it. Clear this check box when you download a firmware package from the Zyxel website. It is okay to upload a firmware package to the Nebula Device with the check box selected.</p>
Cloud Query	Select the Cloud Query supported file types for the Nebula Device to scan for viruses.

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Block list	<p>This field displays the file or encryption pattern of the entry. Enter an MD5 hash or file pattern that would cause the Nebula Device to log and modify this file.</p> <p>File patterns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use up to 80 characters. Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), question marks (?) and asterisks (*) are allowed. • A question mark (?) lets a single character in the file name vary. For example, use "a?.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify aa.zip, ab.zip and so on. • Wildcards (*) let multiple files match the pattern. For example, use "*a.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify any file that ends with "a.zip". A file named "testa.zip" would match. There could be any number (of any type) of characters in front of the "a.zip" at the end and the file name would still match. A file named "test.zipa" for example would not match. • A * in the middle of a pattern has the Nebula Device check the beginning and end of the file name and ignore the middle. For example, with "abc*.zip", any file starting with "abc" and ending in ".zip" matches, no matter how many characters are in between. • The whole file name has to match if you do not use a question mark or asterisk. • If you do not use a wildcard, the Security Firewall checks up to the first 80 characters of a file name.
Allow list	<p>When you select this check box, the Nebula Device deletes compressed files that use password encryption.</p> <p>Select this check box to have the Nebula Device delete any compressed files that it cannot decompress. The Nebula Device cannot decompress password protected files or a file within another compressed file. There are also limits to the number of compressed files that the Nebula Device can concurrently decompress.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device's firmware package cannot go through the Nebula Device with this check box enabled. The Nebula Device classifies the firmware package as a file that cannot be decompressed and then deletes it. Clear this check box when you download a firmware package from the Zyxel website. It is okay to upload a firmware package to the Nebula Device with the check box. This field displays the file or encryption pattern of the entry.</p> <p>Enter the file or encryption pattern for this entry. Enter an MD5 hash or file pattern to identify the names of files that the Nebula Device should not scan for viruses.</p> <p>File patterns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use up to 80 characters. Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), question marks (?) and asterisks (*) are allowed. • A question mark (?) lets a single character in the file name vary. For example, use "a?.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify aa.zip, ab.zip and so on. • Wildcards (*) let multiple files match the pattern. For example, use "*a.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify any file that ends with "a.zip". A file named "testa.zip" would match. There could be any number (of any type) of characters in front of the "a.zip" at the end and the file name would still match. A file named "test.zipa" for example would not match. • A * in the middle of a pattern has the Nebula Device check the beginning and end of the file name and ignore the middle. For example, with "abc*.zip", any file starting with "abc" and ending in ".zip" matches, no matter how many characters are in between. • The whole file name has to match if you do not use a question mark or asterisk. • If you do not use a wildcard, the Nebula Device checks up to the first 80 characters of a file name.

Table 114 Firewall > Configure > Security service (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sandboxing	Sandboxing provides a safe environment to separate running programs from your network and host devices. Unknown or untrusted programs/codes are uploaded to the Defend Center and executed within an isolated virtual machine (VM) to monitor and analyze the zero-day malware and advanced persistent threats (APTs) that may evade the Nebula Device's detection, such as anti-malware. Results of cloud sandboxing are sent from the server to the Nebula Device.
Enabled	Select this option to turn on sandboxing on the Nebula Device
Log	Enable this option to allow the Security Firewall to create a log when a suspicious file is detected.
Policy	Specify whether the Nebula Device deletes (Destroy) or forwards (Allow) malicious files. Malicious files are files given a high score for malware characteristics by the Defend Center.
Inspect selected downloaded files	<p>Select this option to have the Nebula Device hold the downloaded file for up to 2 seconds if the downloaded file has never been inspected before. The Nebula Device will wait for the Defend Center's result and forward the file in 2 seconds. Sandbox detection may take longer than 2 seconds, so infected files could still possibly be forwarded to the user.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device only checks the file types you selected for sandbox inspection. The scan result will be removed from the Nebula Device cache after the Nebula Device restarts.</p>
File submission options	Specify the type of files to be sent for sandbox inspection.
Intrusion Detection/Prevention	
Signature information	This shows the Current Version of the signature set the Nebula Device is using and the Released Date .
Detection	Select On to enable Detection.
Prevention	Select On to enable Prevention.

9.3.8.1 Create a Content Filtering Profile

Click the **Add** button in the **Content Filtering** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Security service** screen to access this screen.

Figure 139 Firewall > Configure > Security service > Content Filtering: Add/Edit

Create content filtering profile

Add profile

Name

Description (Optional)

Log

DNS content filtering

Enabled

Block Web Pages

Action for Unrated Web Pages Warn

Action When Service is Unavailable Warn

Block Category

Templates Parental control

Test URL Test

• Enter a url to know website category

^ Category list

<input type="checkbox"/> Adult Topics <input type="checkbox"/> Art/Culture/Heritage <input type="checkbox"/> Business <input type="checkbox"/> Consumer Protection <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cult/Occult <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Postcards <input type="checkbox"/> Education/Reference <input type="checkbox"/> Fashion/Beauty <input type="checkbox"/> Forum/Bulletin Boards <input type="checkbox"/> Game/Cartoon Violence <input type="checkbox"/> Government/Military <input type="checkbox"/> Historical Revisionism <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Illegal UK <input type="checkbox"/> Information Security New <input type="checkbox"/> Internet Radio/TV <input type="checkbox"/> Major Global Religions <input type="checkbox"/> Media Sharing <input type="checkbox"/> Moderated <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Nudity <input type="checkbox"/> Parked Domain <input type="checkbox"/> Pharmacy <input type="checkbox"/> Portal Sites <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Potential Illegal Software <input type="checkbox"/> Professional Networking <input type="checkbox"/> PUPs <input type="checkbox"/> Religion/Ideology <input type="checkbox"/> Resource Sharing <input type="checkbox"/> Search Engines <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Social Networking <input type="checkbox"/> Stock Trading <input type="checkbox"/> Technical/Business Forums <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tobacco <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Violence <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Web Ads <input type="checkbox"/> Web Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Malicious Downloads <input type="checkbox"/> Spam URLs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Alcohol <input type="checkbox"/> Auctions/Classifieds <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Chat <input type="checkbox"/> Content Server <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Dating/Personals <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Discrimination <input type="checkbox"/> Entertainment <input type="checkbox"/> Finance/Banking <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gambling <input type="checkbox"/> Games <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Gruesome Content <input type="checkbox"/> History <input type="checkbox"/> Incidental Nudity <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Instant Messaging <input type="checkbox"/> Internet Services <input type="checkbox"/> Marketing/Merchandising <input type="checkbox"/> Messaging <input type="checkbox"/> Motor Vehicles <input type="checkbox"/> Online Shopping <input type="checkbox"/> Personal Network Storage <input type="checkbox"/> Politics/Opinion <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Potential Criminal Activities <input type="checkbox"/> Private IP Address <input type="checkbox"/> Provocative Attire <input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate <input type="checkbox"/> Remote Access <input type="checkbox"/> Restaurants <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sexual Materials <input type="checkbox"/> Software/Hardware <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Streaming Media <input type="checkbox"/> Text Translators <input type="checkbox"/> Travel <input type="checkbox"/> Visual Search Engine <input type="checkbox"/> Web Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Anonymizers <input type="checkbox"/> Malicious Sites <input type="checkbox"/> Spyware/Adware/Keyloggers	<input type="checkbox"/> Anonymizing Utilities <input type="checkbox"/> Blogs/Wiki <input type="checkbox"/> Computing/Internet <input type="checkbox"/> Controversial Opinions <input type="checkbox"/> Dating/Social Networking <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drugs <input type="checkbox"/> Extreme <input type="checkbox"/> For Kids <input type="checkbox"/> Gambling Related <input type="checkbox"/> General News <input type="checkbox"/> Health <input type="checkbox"/> Humor/Comics <input type="checkbox"/> Information Security <input type="checkbox"/> Interactive Web Applications <input type="checkbox"/> Job Search <input type="checkbox"/> Media Downloads <input type="checkbox"/> Mobile Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Non-Profit/Advocacy/NGO <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> P2P/File Sharing <input type="checkbox"/> Personal Pages <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pornography <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Potential Hacking/Computer Crime <input type="checkbox"/> Profanity <input type="checkbox"/> Public Information <input type="checkbox"/> Recreation/Hobbies <input type="checkbox"/> Residential IP Addresses <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> School Cheating Information <input type="checkbox"/> Shareware/Freeware <input type="checkbox"/> Sports <input type="checkbox"/> Technical Information <input type="checkbox"/> Text/Spoken Only <input type="checkbox"/> Usenet News <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Weapons <input type="checkbox"/> Web Meetings <input type="checkbox"/> Browser Exploits <input type="checkbox"/> Phishing
--	---	---

Search category

Block web site

Web Site	
1	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>
✖	
+ Add	

Allow web site

Web Site	
1	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text"/>
✖	
+ Add	


Cancel Creates

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 115 Firewall > Configure > Security service > Content Filtering: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add profile	
Name	This column lists the names of the content filter profile rule.
Description (Optional)	This column lists the description of the content filter profile rule.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log when the policy is matched to the criteria listed above.
DNS content filtering	<p>Select this option to turn on DNS filtering on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>DNS filtering inspects DNS queries made by clients on your network and compares the queries against a database of blocked or allowed Fully Qualified Domain Names (FQDNs). The Nebula Device DNS content filtering will either drop the DNS query or reply to the user with a fake DNS response.</p>
Block Web Pages	
Action for Unrated Web Pages	<p>Select Pass to allow users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p> <p>Select Block to prevent users from accessing web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized. When the external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Content Filter General screen along with the category of the blocked web page.</p> <p>Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access web pages that the external web filtering service has not categorized.</p>
Action when service is Unavailable	<p>Select Pass to allow users to access any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>Select Block to block access to any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>Select Warn to display a warning message before allowing users to access any requested web page if the external content filtering database is unavailable.</p> <p>The following are possible causes for the external content filtering server not being available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is no response from the external content filtering server within the time period specified in the Content Filter Server Unavailable Timeout field. • The Nebula Device is not able to resolve the domain name of the external content filtering database. • There is an error response from the external content filtering database. This can be caused by an expired content filtering registration (External content filtering's license key is invalid").
Block Category	
<p>The Nebula Device prevents users from accessing web pages that match the categories that you select below. When external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Denied access message field along with the category of the blocked web page.</p>	
Templates	<p>Web pages are classified into a category based on their content. You can choose a pre-defined template that has already selected certain categories. Alternatively, choose Custom and manually select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.</p>

Table 115 Firewall > Configure > Security service > Content Filtering: Add/Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Test URL	<p>You can check which category a web page belongs to. Enter a web site URL in the text box.</p> <p>When the content filter is active, you should see the web page's category. The query fails if the content filter is not active.</p> <p>Content Filtering can query a category by full URL string (for example, http://www.google.com/picture/index.htm), but HTTPS Domain Filter can only query a category by domain name ('www.google.com'), so the category may be different in the query result. Test URL displays both results in the test.</p>
Search Category	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of categories.
Category List	<p>Click to display or hide the category list.</p> <p>These are categories of web pages based on their content. Select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.</p>
Block web site	<p>Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.bad-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are also blocked. For example, entering "bad-site.com" also blocks "www.badsite.com", "partner.bad-site.com", "press.bad-site.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to block all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Add	Click this button to add a new entry.
Allow web site	<p>Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list.</p> <p>Enter host names such as www.good-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are allowed. For example, entering "zyxel.com" also allows "www.zyxel.com", "partner.zyxel.com", "press.zyxel.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to allow all .com domains.</p> <p>Use up to 127 characters (0–9 a–z). The casing does not matter.</p>
Add	Click this button to add a new entry.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.8.2 Add Application Patrol Profile

Click the **Add** button in the **Application Patrol** section of the **Firewall > Configure > Security service** screen to access this screen.

Figure 140 Firewall > Configure > Security service > Application Patrol: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 116 Firewall > Configure > Security service > Application Patrol: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add profile	
Name	This column lists the names of the application patrol profile rule.
Description (Optional)	This column lists the description of the application patrol profile rule.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log when the policy is matched to the criteria listed above.
Application Management	
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Category	Select an application category.
Application	Select All or select an application within the category to apply the policy.
Action	Displays the default action for the applications selected in this category. Reject – the Nebula Device drops packets that matches these application signatures and sends notification to clients.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new application category and set actions for specific applications within the category.
Search Application	Enter a name to search for relevant applications and click Add to create an entry.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

9.3.9 Captive Portal

Use this screen to configure captive portal settings for each interface. A captive portal can intercept network traffic until the user authenticates his or her connection, usually through a specifically designated login web page.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Captive portal** to access this screen.

Figure 141 Firewall > Configure > Captive portal

The screenshot shows the configuration page for the Captive Portal. At the top, the breadcrumb navigation is "Firewall > Configure > Captive portal". Below this, the page title is "Captive portal".

The "Interface" section shows a dropdown menu set to "VLAN100". Below it, a note states: "Captive portal on this interface is direct access. You can change this setting [here](#)."

The "Themes" section displays a preview of a captive portal theme with a blue button labeled "BUTTON". Below the preview are two radio buttons: "Default" (selected) and "Modern".

The "Click-to-continue/Voucher/Sign-on page" section contains three input fields: "Logo" (with a "No logo" placeholder and an "Upload a logo" link), "Message", and "Success page" (with a "Success!" placeholder and a close button).

The "External captive portal URL" section has a "Use URL:" toggle switch (turned on) and a "URL:" input field. Below this, a note says: "To use custom captive portal page, please download the zip file and edit them. [Download](#) the customized captive portal page example."

The "Captive portal behavior" section has a heading "After the captive portal page where the user should go?". It features two radio buttons: "Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page" (unselected) and "To promotion URL:" (selected), which is followed by a "URL:" input field.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

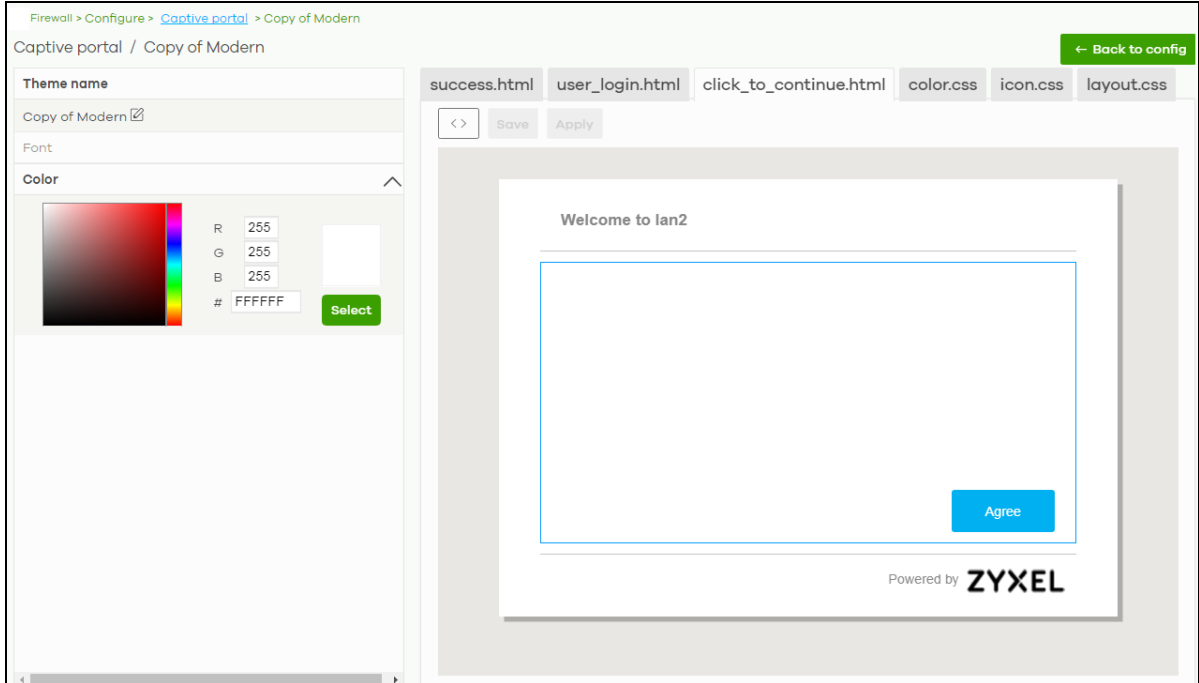
Table 117 Firewall > Configure > Captive portal

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the Nebula Device's interface (network) to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Themes	<p>This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Preview icon at the upper right of a theme image to display the portal page in a new frame. Click the Copy icon to create a new custom theme (portal page). Click the Edit icon of a custom theme to go to a screen, where you can view and configure the details of the custom portal pages. See Section 9.3.9.1 on page 327. Click the Remove icon to delete a custom theme. <p>Select the theme you want to use on the specified interface.</p>
Click-to-continue/Sign-on page	
This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON .	
Logo	<p>This shows the logo image that you uploaded for the customized login page.</p> <p>Click Upload a logo and specify the location and file name of the logo graphic or click Browse to locate it. You can use the following image file formats: GIF, PNG, or JPG.</p>
Message	Enter a note to display below the title. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Success page	
Message	Enter a note to display on the page that displays when a user logs in successfully. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
External captive portal URL	
Use URL	<p>Select On to use a custom login page from an external web portal instead of the one built into the NCC. You can configure the look and feel of the web portal page.</p> <p>Specify the login page's URL; for example, <code>http://IIS server IP Address/login.asp</code>. The Internet Information Server (IIS) is the web server on which the web portal files are installed.</p>
Captive portal behavior	
After the captive portal page where the user should go?	Select To promotion URL and specify the URL of the web site/page to which the user is redirected after a successful login. Otherwise, select Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page .

9.3.9.1 Custom Theme Edit

Use this screen to check what the custom portal pages look like. You can also view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. Click a custom login page's **Edit** button in the **Firewall > Configure > Captive portal** screen to access this screen.

Figure 142 Firewall > Configure > Captive portal: Edit



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 118 Firewall > Configure > Captive portal: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Back to config	Click this button to return to the Captive portal screen.
Theme name	This shows the name of the theme. Click the edit icon to change it.
Font	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. To display this section and customize the font type and/or size, click an item with text in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file).
Color	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. Click an item in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file) to display this section and customize its color, such as the color of the button, text, window's background, links, borders, and so on. Select a color that you want to use and click the Select button.
HTML/CSS	This shows the HTML file name of the portal page created for the selected custom theme. This also shows the name of the CSS files created for the selected custom theme. Click an HTML file to display the portal page. You can also change colors and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file.
<>	Click this button to view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. It is recommended that you do NOT change the script code to ensure proper operation of the portal page.
⦿	Click this button to preview the portal page (the selected HTML file).
Save	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC.
Apply	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC and apply them to the Nebula Device in the site.

9.3.10 Authentication Method

Use this screen to enable or disable web authentication on an interface.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Authentication Method** to access this screen.

Figure 143 Firewall > Configure > Authentication Method

The screenshot shows the 'Authentication Method' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'Firewall > Configure > Authentication Method'. Below this, the page title is 'Authentication Method'. A dropdown menu for 'Interfaces:' is set to 'lan1'. The main configuration area is divided into several sections:

- Network Access:** Contains four radio button options:
 - Disable: Users can access the network directly.
 - Click-to-continue: Users must view and agree the captive portal page then can access the network.
 - Sign-on-with: A dropdown menu is set to 'Nebula Cloud Authentication'.
 - Two-factor authentication: A green toggle switch is turned on.
- Walled garden:** A green toggle switch is turned on. Below it is a text input field for 'Walled garden ranges' which is currently empty. A link below the field says 'What do I enter here?'.
- Captive portal access attribute:** Contains two dropdown menus:
 - 'Self-registration' is set to 'Don't allow users to create accounts'.
 - 'Login on multiple client devices' is set to 'Multiple devices access simultaneously'.
- NCAS disconnection behavior:** Contains two radio button options:
 - Allowed: Client devices can access the network without signing in, except they are explicitly blocked.
 - Limited: Only currently authorized clients and whitelisted client devices will be able to access the network.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 119 Firewall > Configure > Authentication method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interfaces	Select the Nebula Device's interface (network) to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Network Access	<p>Select Disable to turn off web authentication.</p> <p>Select Click-to-continue to block network traffic until a client agrees to the policy of user agreement.</p> <p>Select Sign-on with to block network traffic until a client authenticates with an external RADIUS or AD server through the specifically designated web portal page. Select Nebula Cloud Authentication or an authentication server that you have configured in the Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings screen (see Section 9.3.12 on page 332).</p> <p>Select Two-Factor Authentication to require that the user log in using both their password and a Google Authenticator code. To log in, users must have Two-Factor Authentication enabled on their account and have setup Google Authenticator on their mobile device.</p>
Walled garden	<p>This field is not configurable if you set Network Access to Disable.</p> <p>Select to turn on or off the walled garden feature.</p> <p>With a walled garden, you can define one or more web site addresses that all users can access without logging in. These can be used for advertisements for example.</p>
Walled garden ranges	Specify walled garden web site links, which use a domain name or an IP address for web sites that all users are allowed to access without logging in.
Captive portal access attribute	
Self-registration	<p>This field is available only when you select Sign-on with Nebula Cloud authentication in the Network Access field.</p> <p>Select Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized or Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized to display a link in the captive portal login page. The link directs users to a page where they can create an account before they authenticate with the NCC. For Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized, users cannot log in with the account until the account is authorized and granted access. For Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized, users can just use the registered account to log in without administrator approval.</p> <p>Select Don't allow users to create accounts to not display a link for account creation in the captive portal login page.</p>
Login on multiple client devices	<p>This field is available only when you select Sign-on with in the Network Access field.</p> <p>Select Multiple devices access simultaneously if you allow users to log in as many times as they want as long as they use different IP addresses.</p> <p>Select One device at a time if you do not allow users to have simultaneous logins.</p>
NCAS disconnection behavior	<p>This field is available only when you select Sign-on with Nebula Cloud Authentication in the Network Access field.</p> <p>Select Allowed to allow any users to access the network without authentication when the NCAS (Nebula Cloud Authentication Server) is not reachable.</p> <p>Select Limited to allow only the currently connected users or the users in the white list to access the network.</p>

9.3.11 Wireless

This screen allows you to configure different SSID profiles for your Nebula Device. An SSID, or Service Set Identifier, is the name of the WiFi network to which a WiFi client can connect. The SSID appears as

readable text to any device capable of scanning for WiFi frequencies (such as the WiFi adapter in a laptop), and is displayed as the WiFi network name when a person makes a connection to it.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Wireless** to access this screen.

Figure 144 Firewall > Configure > Wireless

The screenshot shows the 'Wireless' configuration page. It is divided into two main sections: 'SSID Settings' and 'Radio Settings'.

SSID Settings: A table with 4 columns representing different SSIDs. The first two are 'Private Network (Zycamp)' and 'Guest Network (Zycamp)', both enabled and using WPA2-PSK authentication. The last two are 'SSID3' and 'SSID4', which are disabled and use 'Open' authentication.

Radio Settings: Includes options for maximum output power (30 dBm for both 2.4GHz and 5GHz), channel width (20 MHz for 2.4GHz, 80 MHz for 5GHz), and channel deployment (Three-Channel Deployment for 2.4GHz, Auto for 5GHz).

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 120 Firewall > Configure > Wireless

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID Settings	
No.	This shows the SSID number.
Name	This shows the SSID name as it appears to WiFi clients.
Enabled	Click this to enable the SSID to be discoverable by WiFi clients.
Authentication	
WLAN Security	Select Open to allow any WiFi client to associate with this network without any data encryption nor authentication. Select WPA2-PSK to enable WPA2-PSK data encryption.
Associate Key	Enter a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters to enable WPA2-PSK data encryption.
Band	Select to have the SSID use either 2.4 GHz band only or the 5 GHz band only . If you select Concurrent operation (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz) , the SSID uses both frequency bands.

Table 120 Firewall > Configure > Wireless (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Outgoing Interface	Select the interface for outgoing traffic from the Nebula Device to the Internet.
Radio Settings	
Maximum output power	Enter the maximum output power of the radio (in dBm).
Channel width	<p>Select the WiFi channel bandwidth you want the Nebula Device to use.</p> <p>A standard 20 MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 144 Mbps (2.4 GHz) or 217 Mbps (5 GHz) whereas a 40 MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 300 Mbps (2.4 GHz) or 450 Mbps (5 GHz). An IEEE 802.11ac-specific 80 MHz channel offers speeds of up to 1.3 Gbps.</p> <p>40 MHz (channel bonding or dual channel) bonds two adjacent radio channels to increase throughput. An 80 MHz channel consists of two adjacent 40 MHz channels. The WiFi clients must also support 40 MHz or 80 MHz. It is often better to use the 20 MHz setting in a location where the environment hinders the WiFi signal.</p> <p>Note: It is suggested that you select 20 MHz when there is more than one 2.4 GHz Nebula Device in the network.</p>
2.4 GHz channel deployment	<p>Select Three-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to channels 1, 6, and 11, the three channels that are sufficiently attenuated to have almost no impact on one another. In other words, this allows you to minimize channel interference by limiting channel-hopping to these three "safe" channels.</p> <p>Select Four-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to four channels. Depending on the country domain, if the only allowable channels are 1 – 11 then the Nebula Device uses channels 1, 4, 7, 11 in this configuration; otherwise, the Nebula Device uses channels 1, 5, 9, 13 in this configuration. Four-Channel Deployment expands your pool of possible channels while keeping the channel interference to a minimum.</p> <p>Select Manual to choose the allowable channels 1 – 11.</p>
5 GHz channel deployment	<p>Select how you want to specify the channels the Nebula Device switches between for 5 GHz operation.</p> <p>Select Auto to have the Nebula Device automatically select the best channel.</p> <p>Select Manual to choose from the allowable channels.</p>

9.3.12 Firewall Settings

Use this screen to configure DNS settings and external AD (Active Directory), RADIUS, or LDAP server that the Nebula Device can use for authenticating users.

AD (Active Directory) is a directory service that is both a directory and a protocol for controlling access to a network. The directory consists of a database specialized for fast information retrieval and filtering activities. You create and store user profile and login information on the external server.

This screen also lets you configure the addresses of walled garden web sites that users can access without logging into the Nebula Device. The settings in this screen apply to all networks (interfaces) on the Nebula Device. If you want to configure walled garden web site links for a specific interface, use the **Authentication method** screen.

Click **Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings** to access this screen.

Figure 145 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings

Firewall > Configure > [Firewall settings](#)

Firewall settings

DNS

Address Record

FQDN	IP Address
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[+ Add](#)

Domain Zone Forwarder

Domain Zone	IP Address	Interface
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	auto

[+ Add](#)

Dynamic DNS

Automatic registration

Dynamic DNS updates a DNS record each time the public IP address of the security appliance changes.

Authentication Server

My AD Server

Name	Server address	Backup server address	Port	AD domain	Dom
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	389	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[+ Add](#)

My LDAP Server

Name	Server address	Backup server address	Port	Base DN	Bind
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	389	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[+ Add](#)

My RADIUS Server

Name	Server address	Backup server address	Port	Secret	Adv
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	1812	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[+ Add](#)

External User Group

[+ Add](#) Please create authentication server before add external user group

Walled garden

Global walled garden

This is global walled garden configuration. All web authentication interface will match this policy first and the second priority is the interface walled garden policy. If needed only allow specify interface, please go to Network access method configure

[What do I enter here?](#)

SIP ALG

SIP ALG

SIP Signaling Port

[ADVANCED OPTIONS](#)

Advanced Options

Isolate unwanted traffic between tunnel mode APs

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 121 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings






LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DNS	
Address Record	This record specifies the mapping of a Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) to an IP address. An FQDN consists of a host and domain name. For example, www.zyxel.com.tw is a fully qualified domain name, where "www" is the host, "zyxel" is the third-level domain, "com" is the second-level domain, and "tw" is the top level domain.
FQDN	Enter a host's fully qualified domain name. Use "*" as a prefix in the FQDN for a wildcard domain name (for example, *.example.com).
IP Address	Enter the host's IP address.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
Domain Zone Forwarder	This specifies a DNS server's IP address. The Nebula Device can query the DNS server to resolve domain zones for features like VPN, DDNS and the time server. When the Nebula Device needs to resolve a domain zone, it checks it against the domain zone forwarder entries in the order that they appear in this list.
Domain Zone	A domain zone is a fully qualified domain name without the host. For example, zyxel.com.tw is the domain zone for the www.zyxel.com.tw fully qualified domain name. Whenever the Nebula Device receives needs to resolve a zyxel.com.tw domain name, it can send a query to the recorded name server IP address.
IP Address	Enter the DNS server's IP address.
Interface	Select the interface through which the Nebula Device sends DNS queries to the specified DNS server.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
Authentication Server	
My AD Server	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the server.
Server address	Enter the address of the AD server.
Backup server address	If the AD server has a backup server, enter its address here.
Port	Specify the port number on the AD server to which the Nebula Device sends authentication requests. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.
AD domain	Specify the Active Directory forest root domain name.
Domain admin	Enter the name of the user that is located in the container for Active Directory Users, who is a member of the Domain Admin group.
Password	Enter the password of the Domain Admin user account.
Advanced	Click to open a screen where you can select to use Default or Custom advanced settings. See Section 9.3.12.3 on page 339 .
	Click this icon to remove the server.
Add	Click this button to create a new server.
My LDAP Server	
Name	Enter the description of each server, if any. You can use up to 60 printable ASCII characters.
Server address	Enter the address of the LDAP server.
Backup server address	If the LDAP server has a backup server, enter its address here.

Table 121 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Specify the port number on the LDAP server to which the Nebula Device sends authentication requests. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.
Base DN	Specify the directory (up to 127 alphanumeric characters). For example, o=Zyxel, c=US.
Bind DN	Specify the bind DN for logging into the AD or LDAP server. Enter up to 127 alphanumeric characters. For example, cn=zywallAdmin specifies zywallAdmin as the user name.
Password	If required, enter the password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) required to bind or log in to the LDAP server.
Advanced	Click to open a screen where you can select to use Default or Custom advanced settings. See Section 9.3.12.3 on page 339 .
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new server.
My RADIUS Server	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the server.
Server address	Enter the address of the RADIUS server.
Backup server address	If the RADIUS server has a backup server, enter its address here.
Port	Specify the port number on the RADIUS server to which the Nebula Device sends authentication requests. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.
Secret	Enter a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the Nebula Device. The key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external authentication server and the Security Firewall.
Advanced	Click to open a screen where you can select to use Default or Custom advanced settings. See Section 9.3.12.3 on page 339 .
	Click this icon to remove the server.
Add	Click this button to create a new server.
External User Group	
Group Name	Enter a descriptive name for the group, up to 31 characters [0-9][a-z][A-Z][@-._] but the first character must be an alphabet.
Authentication Server	Select the Name of the Authentication Server you added in My AD Server , My LDAP Server , or My RADIUS Server .
Group ID	Enter the name of the attribute that the Nebula Device checks to determine to which group an external user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group an external user belongs.
Add	Click this button to create a new group. The maximum number of external user groups is 20.
Walled garden	
Global Walled garden	With a walled garden, you can define one or more web site addresses that all users can access without logging in. These can be used for advertisements for example. Specify walled garden web site links, which use a domain name or an IP address for web sites that all users are allowed to access without logging in.
Advanced Options	
Isolate unwanted traffic between tunnel mode APs	Select On to block broadcast and multicast traffic coming from Remote APs (RAPs).

9.3.12.1 Dynamic DNS

Enable **Dynamic DNS** to open the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Dynamic DNS** screen.

Figure 146 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Dynamic DNS

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 122 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Dynamic DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS	
Automatic registration	Click On to use dynamic DNS. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.
General Settings	
DDNS provider	Select your Dynamic DNS service provider from the drop-down list box. If you select User customize , create your own DDNS service.
DDNS type	Select the type of DDNS service you are using. Select DynDNS custom to create your own DDNS service and configure the DynDNS and DDNS static fields below. If the DDNS provider is Dynu , you can select the account type of DynuBasic or DynuPremium .

Table 122 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Dynamic DNS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DDNS account	
Username	Enter the user name used when you registered your domain name.
Password	Enter the password provided by the DDNS provider.
Confirm password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
DDNS settings	
Domain name	Enter the domain name you registered.
Primary binding address	Use these fields to set how the Nebula Device determines the IP address that is mapped to your domain name in the DDNS server. The Nebula Device uses the Backup binding address if the interface specified by these settings is not available.
Interface	Select the interface to use for updating the IP address mapped to the domain name.
IP address	<p>Select Auto if the interface has a dynamic IP address. The DDNS server checks the source IP address of the packets from the Nebula Device for the IP address to use for the domain name. You may want to use this if there are one or more NAT routers between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device may not determine the proper IP address if there is an HTTP proxy server between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Select Custom if you have a static IP address. Enter the IP address to use it for the domain name.</p> <p>Select Interface to have the Nebula Device use the IP address of the specified interface.</p>
Backup binding address	Use these fields to set an alternate interface to map the domain name to when the interface specified by the Primary binding address settings is not available.
Interface	Select the interface to use for updating the IP address mapped to the domain name.
IP address	<p>Select Auto if the interface has a dynamic IP address. The DDNS server checks the source IP address of the packets from the Nebula Device for the IP address to use for the domain name. You may want to use this if there are one or more NAT routers between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Note: Note: The Nebula Device may not determine the proper IP address if there is an HTTP proxy server between the gateway and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Select Custom if you have a static IP address. Enter the IP address to use it for the domain name.</p> <p>Select Interface to have the Security Firewall use the IP address of the specified interface.</p>
Enable wildcard	<p>This option is only available with a DynDNS account.</p> <p>Enable the wildcard feature to alias sub-domains to be aliased to the same IP address as your (dynamic) domain name. This feature is useful if you want to be able to use, for example, www.yourhost.dyndns.org and still reach your hostname.</p>
Mail exchanger	<p>This option is only available with a DynDNS account.</p> <p>DynDNS can route email for your domain name to a mail server (called a mail exchanger). For example, DynDNS routes email for john-doe@yourhost.dyndns.org to the host record specified as the mail exchanger.</p> <p>If you are using this service, type the host record of your mail server here. Otherwise, leave the field blank.</p>

Table 122 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Dynamic DNS (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup mail exchanger	This option is only available with a DynDNS account. Select this check box if you are using DynDNS's backup service for email. With this service, DynDNS holds onto your email if your mail server is not available. Once your mail server is available again, the DynDNS server delivers the mail to you. See www.dyndns.org for more information about this service.
DYNDNS Server	This field displays when you select User customize from the DDNS provider field above. Enter the IP address of the server that will host the DDNS service.
URL	This field displays when you select User customize from the DDNS provider field above. Enter the URL that can be used to access the server that will host the DDNS service.
Additional DDNS Options	This field displays when you select User customize from the DDNS provider field above. These are the options supported at the time of writing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>dyndns_system</code> to specify the DYNDNS Server type – for example, <code>dyndns@dyndns.org</code> • <code>ip_server_name</code> which should be the URL to get the server's public IP address – for example, <code>http://myip.easylife.tw/</code>

9.3.12.2 SIP ALG

Application Layer Gateway (ALG) allows the following applications to operate properly through the NCC's NAT.

SIP (Session Initiation Protocol) is an application-layer protocol that can be used to create voice and multimedia sessions over Internet.

Go to **SIP ALG** in the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings** screen to access this screen. Use this screen to turn the ALG off or on, configure the port numbers to which they apply, and configure SIP ALG time outs.

Note: If the NCC provides an ALG for a service, you must enable the ALG in order to use the application patrol on that service's traffic.

Figure 147 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: SIP ALG

SIP ALG

SIP ALG

SIP Signaling Port

ADVANCED OPTIONS

SIP Inactivity Timeout

SIP Media Inactivity Timeout seconds

SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout seconds

Restrict Peer to Peer Signaling Connection

Restrict Peer to Peer Media Connection

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 123 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: SIP ALG

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP ALG	Turn on SIP ALG to detect SIP traffic and help build SIP sessions through the Nebula Device's NAT. Enabling the SIP ALG also allows you to use the application patrol to detect SIP traffic and manage SIP traffic bandwidth.
SIP Signaling Port	If you are using a custom UDP port number (not 5060) for SIP traffic, enter it here. Use the Add icon to add fields if you are also using SIP on additional UDP port numbers.
ADVANCED OPTIONS	Click the arrow to show the fields for setting the SIP inactivity timeout and restrict peer-to-peer connection.
SIP Inactivity Timeout	Select this to have the Nebula Device apply SIP media and signaling inactivity time out limits. These timeouts will take priority over the SIP session time out "Expires" value in a SIP registration response packet.
SIP Media Inactivity Timeout	Use this field to set how many seconds (1 – 86400) the Nebula Device will allow a SIP session to remain idle (without voice traffic) before dropping it. If no voice packets go through SIP ALG before the timeout period expires, the Nebula Device deletes the audio session. You cannot hear anything and you will need to make a new call to continue your conversation.
SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout	Most SIP clients have an "expire" mechanism indicating the lifetime of signaling sessions. The SIP user agent sends registration packets to the SIP server periodically and keeps the session alive in the Nebula Device. If the SIP client does not have this mechanism and makes no calls during the Nebula Device SIP timeout, the Nebula Device deletes the signaling session after the timeout period. Enter the SIP signaling session timeout value (1 – 86400).
Restrict Peer to Peer Signaling Connection	A signaling connection is used to set up the SIP connection. Enable this if you want signaling connections to only arrive from the IP addresses you have already registered with. Signaling connections from other IP addresses will be dropped.
Restrict Peer to Peer Media Connection	A media connection is the audio transfer in a SIP connection. Enable this if you want media connections to only arrive from the IP addresses you registered with. Media connections from other IP addresses will be dropped.

9.3.12.3 Advanced Settings

Click the **Advanced** column in the **Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings** screen to access this screen.

Figure 148 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Advanced

Advanced
✕

Preset:

Timeout: ✕ (1-300 seconds)

Case-Sensitive User Name: off

NAS IP Address: ✕

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 124 Firewall > Configure > Firewall settings: Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Preset	Select Default to use the pre-defined settings, or select Custom to configure your own settings.
Timeout	Specify the timeout period (between 1 and 300 seconds) before the Nebula Device disconnects from the server. In this case, user authentication fails. Search timeout occurs when either the user information is not in the servers or the AD or server is down.
Case-Sensitive User Name	Click ON if the server checks the case of the user name. Otherwise, click OFF to not configure your user name as case-sensitive.
Group Membership Attribute	Enter the name of the attribute that the gateway checks to determine to which group a user belongs. The value for this attribute is called a group identifier; it determines to which group a user belongs. You can add ext-group-user user objects to identify groups based on these group identifier values. For example you could have an attribute named "memberOf" with values like "sales", "RD", and "management". Then you could also create a ext-group-user user object for each group. One with "sales" as the group identifier, another for "RD" and a third for "management".
LDAP-only Fields	
Login Name Attribute	Enter the type of identifier the users are to use to log in. For example "name" or "email address".
RADIUS-only Fields	
NAS IP Address	Enter the IP address of the NAS (Network Access Server).
NAS Identifier	If the RADIUS server requires the Nebula Device to provide the Network Access Server identifier attribute with a specific value, enter it here.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

CHAPTER 10

Security Gateway

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor the Nebula managed Security Gateways in your network and configure settings even before a gateway is deployed and added to the site.

Nebula Device refers to Nebula NSG devices in this chapter. The **Security gateway** menus are shown for Nebula NSG devices only.

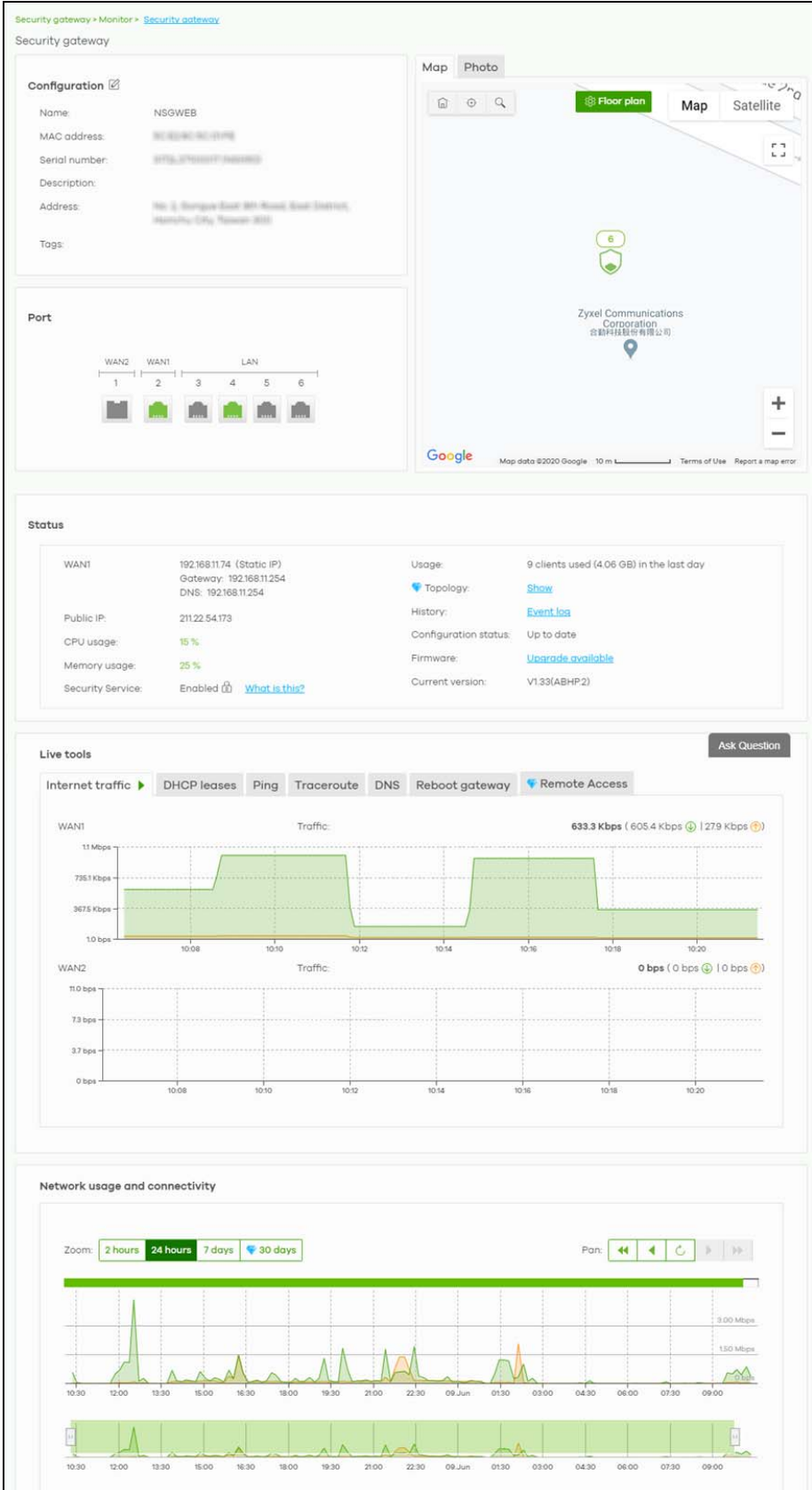
10.2 Monitor

Use the **Monitor** menus to check the Nebula Device information, client information, event log messages and summary report for the Nebula Device in the selected site.

10.2.1 Security Appliance

This screen allows you to view the detailed information about a Nebula Device in the selected site. Click **Security gateway > Monitor > Security gateway** to access this screen.

Figure 149 Security gateway > Monitor > Security gateway



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 125 Security gateway > Monitor > Security gateway

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	
Click the edit icon to change the Nebula Device name, description, tags and address. You can also move the Nebula Device to another site.	
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Address	This shows the user-specified address for the Nebula Device.
Tags	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
Port	This shows the ports on the Nebula Device. The port is highlighted in green color when it is connected and the link is up. Move the pointer over a port to see additional port information, such as its name, MAC address, type, and connection speed.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the port.
Status	This shows the connection status of the port.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the port.
Speed	This shows the current connection speed of the port. If the speed is unavailable, this displays "Ethernet".
LLDP	This shows the LLDP information received on the port.
Map	This shows the location of the Nebula Device on the Google map.
Photo	This shows the photo of the Nebula Device. Click Add to upload one or more photos. Click x to remove a photo.
Status	
WAN1/WAN2	This shows the IP address, gateway, DNS, and VLAN ID information for the active WAN connection.
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
CPU usage	This shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's processing capability is currently being used.
Memory usage	This shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's RAM is currently being used.
Security Service	This shows whether Nebula Security Services (NSS) are enabled on the Nebula Device. Click What is this? to view the type of enabled security services. When the gateway's NSS license expires, NSS is automatically disabled. This field displays an edit button which you can use to re-enable the services after renewing the NSS license.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted or received by the Nebula Device's clients.
Topology	Click Show to go to the Site-Wide > Monitor > Topology screen. See Section 7.1.6 on page 215 .
History	Click Event log to go to the Security gateway > Monitor > Event log screen.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Firmware	This shows whether the firmware installed on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Live tools	

Table 125 Security gateway > Monitor > Security gateway (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internet traffic	This shows the WAN port statistics. The y-axis represents the transmission rate in Kbps (kilobits per second). The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
DHCP leases	This shows the IP addresses currently assigned to DHCP clients.
Ping	Enter the host name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping in order to test a connection and click Ping . You can select the interface through which the Nebula Device sends queries for ping.
Traceroute	Enter the host name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform the traceroute function. This determines the path a packet takes to the specified computer.
DNS	Enter a host name and click Run to resolve the IP address for the specified domain name.
Reboot gateway	Click the Reboot button to restart the Nebula Device.
Remote Access	This option is available only for the Nebula Device owner. Establish a remote connection by specifying the Port number and clicking Establish .
Network usage and connectivity	
Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.	
Zoom	Select to view the statistics in the past 2 hours, day, week, or month.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by one day or week.

10.2.2 Clients

This menu item redirects to **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients**, with type set to **Security gateway clients**. For details, see [Section 7.1.2 on page 205](#).

10.2.3 Event Log

Use this screen to view Nebula Device log messages. You can enter a key word, select one or multiple event types, or specify a date/time or a time range to display only the log messages that match these criteria.

Select **Range** to set a time range or select **Before** to choose a specific date/time and the number of hours/minutes to display only the log messages generated within a certain period of time (before the specified date/time). Then click **Search** to update the list of logs based on the search criteria. The maximum allowable time range is 30 days.

Click **Security gateway > Monitor > Event Log** to access this screen.

Figure 150 Security gateway > Monitor > Event log

Security gateway > Monitor > [Event log](#)

Event log

Keyword: Category:

Before 2019-10-29 10:56 1h UTC+8

338 Event log

Time	Category	Source	Destination	Detail
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	ISAKMP SA [S201711070315] is disconnected
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	The cookie pair is : 0xa8c4726c50064617 / 0x6f8f4...
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	61.216.142.42	192.168.11.74	Recv:[NOTIFY:NO_PROPOSAL_CHOSEN]
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	61.216.142.42	192.168.11.74	The cookie pair is : 0x6f8f47eb7aac5173 / 0xa8c472...
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	Send:[SA][VID][VID][VID][VID][VID][VID][VID][...
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	Send Main Mode request to [61.216.142.42]
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	Tunnel [S201711070315] Sending IKE request
2019-10-29 09:56:53	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	The cookie pair is : 0xa8c4726c50064617 / 0x0000...
2019-10-29 09:58:18	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	ISAKMP SA [S201711070315] is disconnected
2019-10-29 09:58:18	VPN	192.168.11.74	61.216.142.42	The cookie pair is : 0x2d752e6167623ee9 / 0x5370b...

Page 1 of 34 Results per page: 10

10.2.4 VPN Connections

Use this screen to view the status of site-to-site IPsec VPN connections and L2TP VPN connections.

Note: If the peer gateway is not a Nebula Device, go to the **Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** screen to view and configure a VPN rule. See [Section 10.3.6 on page 379](#) for more information.

Click **Security gateway > Monitor > VPN Connections** to access this screen.

Figure 151 Security gateway > Monitor > VPN Connections

Security gateway > Monitor > [VPN connections](#)

VPN connections

Connection status

Configuration: This security gateway is exporting 1 subnet over the VPN: 100.251.0/24

NAT type: Manual. This security gateway has a publicly accessible IP address and is using 211.22.54.173 as a contact point.

Site connectivity

Location	Subnet(s)	Status	Inbound(Bytes)	Outbound(Bytes)	Tunnel up time	Last heartbeat
Hub	10.0.1.0/24 172.16.0.0/12 10.251.0.0/16 10.253.0.0/16	disconnected	0 bytes	0 bytes	-	-
Site25_NCC_AE_B...	-	-	0 bytes	0 bytes	-	-

Client to site VPN login account

User Name	Hostname	Assigned IP	Public IP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 126 Security gateway > Monitor > VPN Connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Connection Status	
Configuration	This shows the number and address of the local networks behind the Nebula Device, on which the computers are allowed to use the VPN tunnel.
NAT Type	This shows the public IP address or the domain name that is configured and mapped to the Nebula Device on the NAT router.
Site Connectivity	
Location	This shows the name of the site to which the peer gateway is assigned. Click the name to go to the Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN screen, where you can modify the VPN settings.
Subnet(s)	This shows the address of the local networks behind the Nebula Device.
Status	This shows whether the VPN tunnel is connected or disconnected.
Inbound (Bytes)	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the remote IPSec router to the Nebula Device since the VPN tunnel was established.
Outbound (Bytes)	This shows the amount of traffic that has gone through the VPN tunnel from the Nebula Device to the remote IPSec router since the VPN tunnel was established.
Tunnel up time	This shows how many seconds the VPN tunnel has been active.
Last heartbeat	This shows the last date and time a heartbeat packet is sent to determine if the VPN tunnel is up or down.
Client to site VPN login account	
User Name	This shows the remote user's login account name.
Hostname	This shows the name of the computer that has this L2TP VPN connection with the Nebula Device.

Table 126 Security gateway > Monitor > VPN Connections (continued)

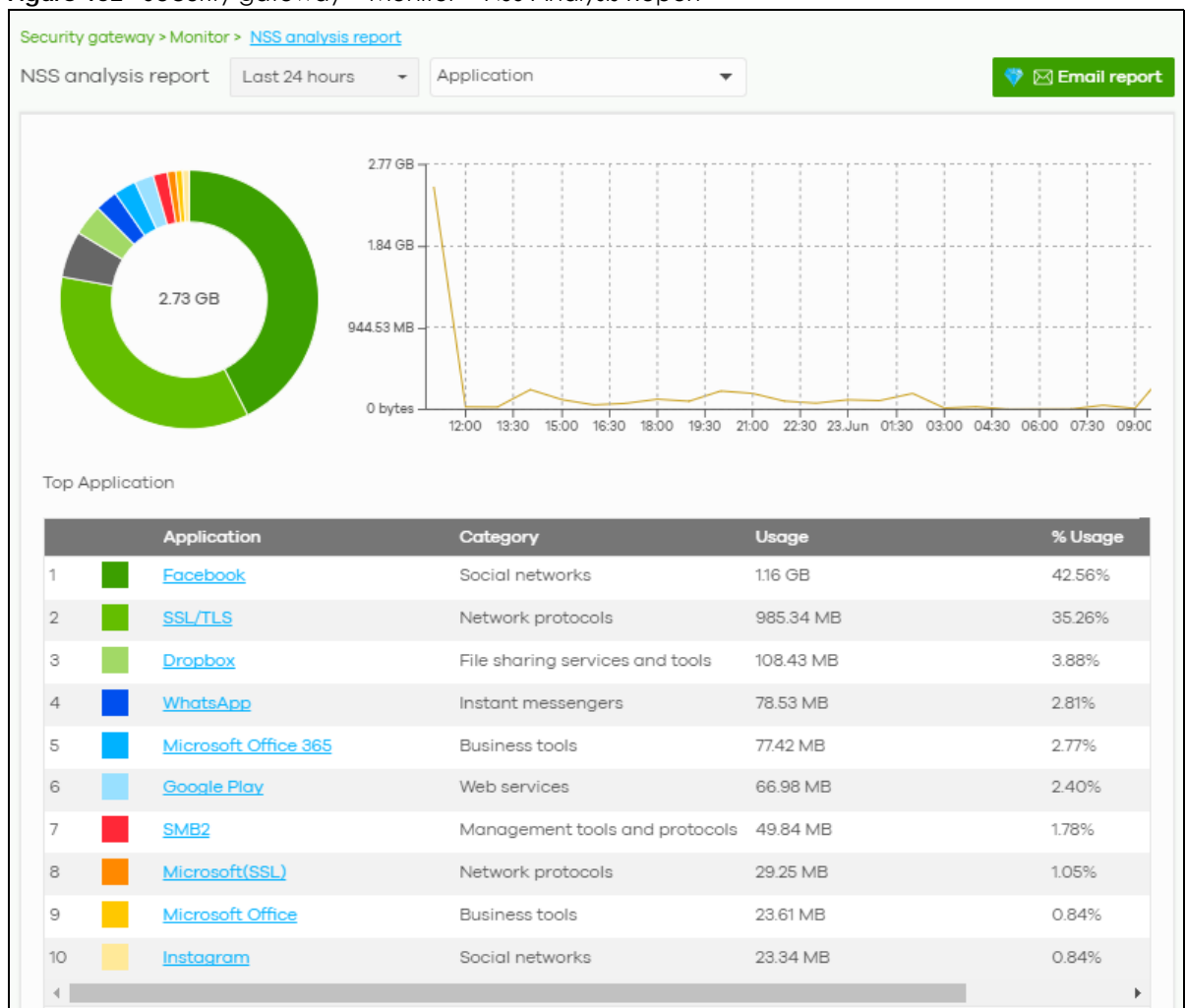
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Assigned IP	This shows the IP address that the Nebula Device assigned for the remote user's computer to use within the L2TP VPN tunnel.
Public IP	This shows the public IP address that the remote user is using to connect to the Internet.

10.2.5 NSS Analysis Report

Use this screen to view the statistics report for NSS (Nebula Security Service), such as content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), application patrol, and anti-virus. The screen varies depending on the service type (**Application**, **Content Filtering**, or **Anti-Virus**) you select.

Click **Security gateway > Monitor > NSS Analysis Report** to access this screen.

Figure 152 Security gateway > Monitor > NSS Analysis Report



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 127 Security gateway > Monitor > NSS Analysis Report

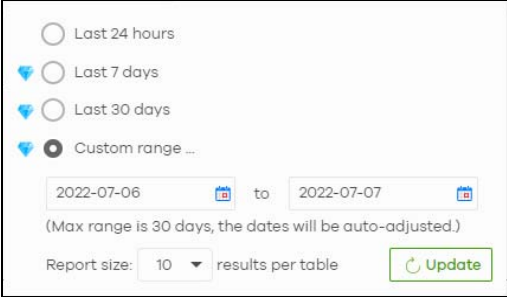
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Appliance – NSS Analysis	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
	Select the type of service for which you want to view the statistics report.
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the logo and set email schedules.
Application	<p>The following fields displays when you select to view the application statistics. Click an application name to view information about the clients who use that application. Click Top Application under the chart to switch back to the previous screen.</p>
y-axis	The y-axis shows the amount of the application's traffic which has been transmitted or received.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Application	This shows the name of the application. Click an application name to view the IPv4 addresses of the clients who used the application.
Description	<p>This shows the name of the client who used the application.</p> <p>This field is available when you click the application name. Click the name to display the individual client statistics. See Section 10.2.3 on page 344.</p>
IPv4 Address	<p>This shows the IPv4 address of the client who used the application.</p> <p>This field is available when you click the application name.</p>
MAC Address	<p>This shows the MAC address of the client who used the application.</p> <p>This field is available when you click the application name.</p>
Category	This shows the name of the category to which the application belongs.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data consumed by the application used by all or a specific IPv4 address.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the application used by all or a specific IPv4 address.
Content Filtering	<p>The following fields display when you select to view the content filtering statistics. Click a website URL to view information about the clients who tried to access that web page. Click Content Filtering under the chart to switch back to the previous screen.</p>
y-axis	The y-axis shows the number of hits on web pages that the Nebula Device's content filter service has blocked.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the web page is checked.
Website	This shows the URL of the web page to which the Nebula Device blocked access. Click a website URL to view the IPv4 addresses of the clients who tried to access the web page.

Table 127 Security gateway > Monitor > NSS Analysis Report (continued)

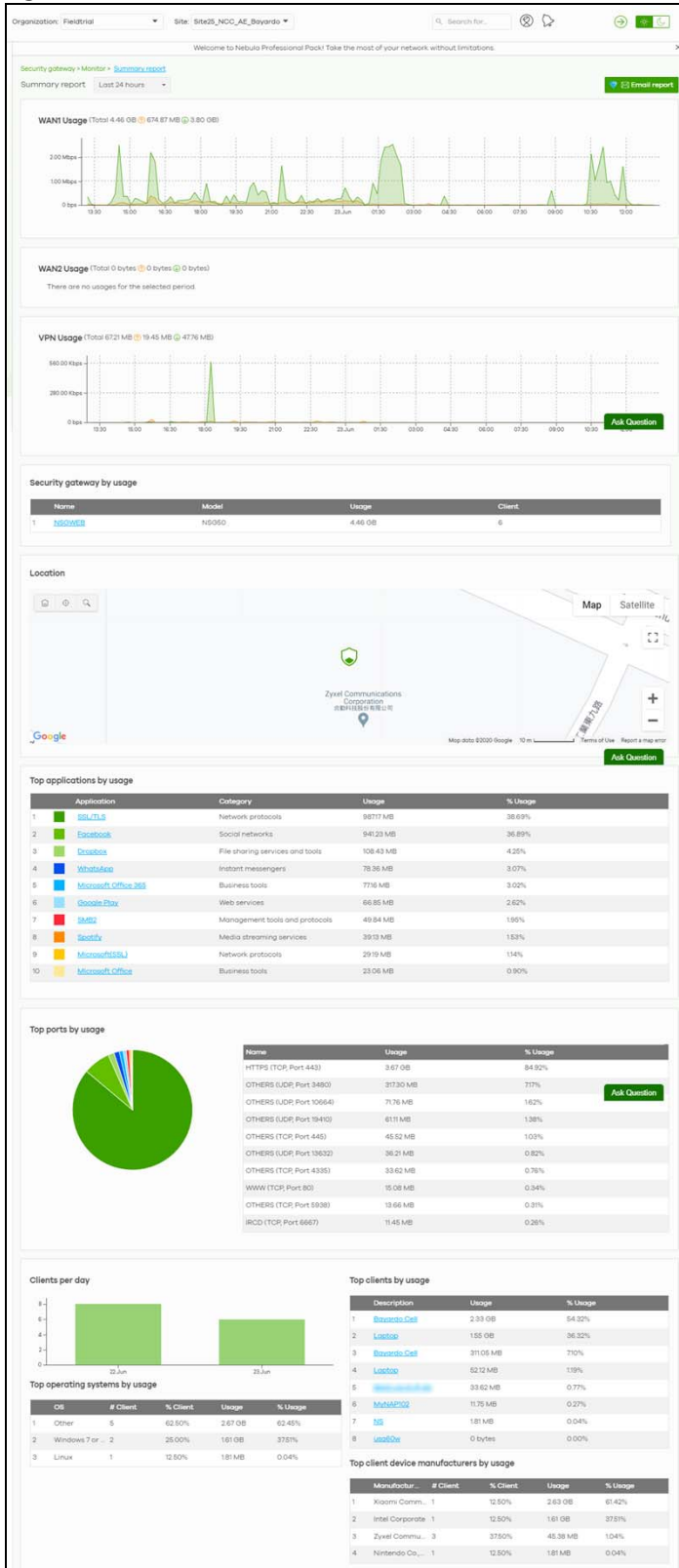
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Description	This shows the name of the client who tried to access the web page. This field is available when you click the website URL. Click the name to display the individual client statistics. See Section 10.2.3 on page 344 .
IPv4 Address	This shows the IPv4 address of the client who tried to access the web page. This field is available when you click the website URL.
MAC Address	This shows the MAC address of the client who tried to access the web page. This field is available when you click the website URL.
Category	This shows the name of the category to which the web page belongs.
Hits	This shows the number of hits on the web page visited by all or a specific IPv4 address.
% Hits	This shows the percentage of the hit counts for the web page visited by all or a specific IPv4 address.
Anti-Virus The following fields are displayed when you select Anti-Virus . Click a virus name to view information about the clients who sent the virus. Click the number in the center of the donut chart or Anti-Virus under the chart to switch back to the previous screen.	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the total number of viruses that the gateway has detected.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the virus is detected.
Virus Name	This shows the name of the virus that the Nebula Device has detected and blocked. Click a virus name to view the IPv4 addresses of the clients who sent the virus.
Description	This shows the name of the client who sent the virus. This field is available when you click the virus name. Click the name to display the individual client statistics. See Section 10.2.3 on page 344 .
IPv4 Address	This shows the IPv4 address of the virus sender. This field is available when you click the virus name.
MAC Address	This shows the MAC address of the virus sender. This field is available when you click the virus name.
Hits	This shows how many times the gateway has detected the virus sent by all or a specific IPv4 address.
% Hits	This shows the percentage of the hit counts for the virus sent by all or a specific IPv4 address.
Intrusion Detection / Prevention The following fields are displayed when you select Intrusion Detection / Prevention . The donut chart shows the number of potential network attacks detected by the Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) service, if any. The number in the center of the donut chart indicates the number of network attacks blocked by the IDP service.	
Signature Name	The name of the IDP signature that triggered the hit. The signature name identifies the type of intrusion pattern.
Hits	This shows the total number of network attacks blocked by the IDP service.
% Hits	This shows the number of network attacks blocked as a percentage of the total number of network requests scanned by the IDP service.

10.2.6 Summary Report

This screen displays network statistics for the Nebula Device of the selected site, such as WAN usage, top applications and/or top clients.

Click **Security gateway > Monitor > Summary Report** to access this screen.

Figure 153 Security gateway > Monitor > Summary Report



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 128 Security gateway > Monitor > Summary Report

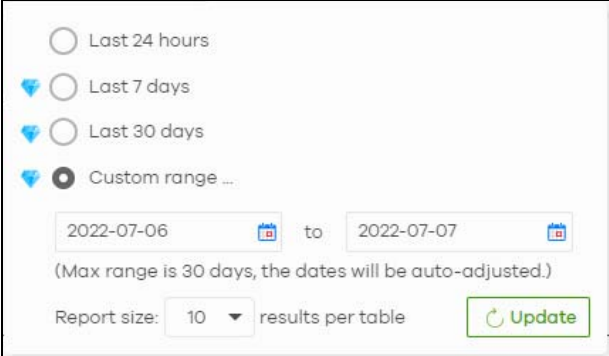
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security gateway – Summary report	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the logo and set email schedules.
WAN1/WAN2 usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the WAN connection in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
VPN usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received through the VPN tunnel in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Security gateway by usage	
	This shows the index number of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted through the Nebula Device's WAN port.
Client	This shows the number of clients currently connected to the Nebula Device.
Location	
This shows the location of the Nebula Devices on the map.	
Top applications by usage	
	This shows the index number of the application.
Application	This shows the application name.
Category	This shows the name of the category to which the application belongs.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the application.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the application.
Top ports by usage	
This shows the top ten applications/services and the ports that identify a service.	
Name	This shows the service name and the associated port numbers.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the service.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the service.

Table 128 Security gateway > Monitor > Summary Report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clients per day	
y-axis	The y-axis represents the number of clients.
x-axis	The x-axis represents the date.
Top operating systems by usage	
	This shows the index number of the operating system.
OS	This shows the operating system of the client device.
# Client	This shows how many client devices use this operating system.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which use this operating system.
# Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the client device on which this operating system is running.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for top client devices which use this operating system.
Top clients by usage	
	This shows the index number of the client.
Description	This shows the descriptive name or MAC address of the client.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted and received by the client.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client.
Top client device manufacturers by usage	
	This shows the index number of the client device.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer name of the client device.
Client	This shows how many client devices are made by the manufacturer.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which are made by the manufacturer.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted and received by the client device.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client device.

10.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to configure interface addressing, firewall, site-to-site VPN, captive portal, traffic shaping, authentication server and other Nebula Device settings for the Nebula Device of the selected site.

10.3.1 Interface Addressing

Use this screen to configure network mode, port grouping, interface address, static route and DDNS settings on the Nebula Device. To access this screen, click **Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing**.

Note: If the gateway device of the site supports link aggregation, for example model NSG300, then the **Interface Addressing** screen changes to allow you to configure link aggregation groups. For details, see [Section 10.3.5 on page 376](#).

Figure 154 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing

Welcome to Nebula Professional Pack! Take the most of your network without limitations.

Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing

Interface addressing

Network wide

Mode:

- Network address translation (NAT)
Client traffic to the internet is modified so that it appears to have the security gateway as its source.
- Route
Client traffic to the internet is by routing result, which means, the gateway will not automatically use SNAT for traffic it routes from internal interfaces to external interfaces.

Port Group Setting

	P3	P4	P5	P6
Port Group 1:	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Port Group 2:	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

Interface

Name	IP address	Subnet mask	VLAN ID	Port Group	Guest
LAN1	100.25.11	255.255.255.0		Port Group 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN2	173.16.25.1	255.255.255.0		Port Group 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN100	192.168.100.1	255.255.255.0	100	Port Group 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN10	192.168.10.1	255.255.255.0	10	Port Group 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN250	192.168.250.1	255.255.255.0	250	Port Group 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

[Add](#)

Static Route

Name	Destination	Subnet mask	Next hop IP
s5	192.168.10.0	255.255.255.0	192.168.10.1

[Add](#)

Dynamic DNS

Automatic registration:

Dynamic DNS updates a DNS record each time the public IP address of the security appliance changes.

General settings

DDNS provider: DynDNS

DDNS type: DynDNS

DDNS account

Username:

Password:

Confirm password:

DDNS settings

Domain name:

Primary binding address

Interface: WAN1

IP address: Custom

Backup binding address

Interface: WAN1

IP address: Custom

Enable wildcard:

Mail exchanger: (Optional)

Backup mail exchanger:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 129 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Network wide					
Mode	<p>Select Network address translation (NAT) to have the Nebula Device automatically use SNAT for traffic it routes from internal interfaces to external interfaces.</p> <p>Select Router to have the Nebula Device forward packets according to the routing policies. The Nebula Device does not automatically convert a packet's source IP address.</p>				
Port Group Setting	<p>Port groups create a hardware connection between physical ports at the layer-2 (data link, MAC address) level.</p> <p>The physical LAN Ethernet ports are shown at the top (P3, P4, and so on) and the port groups are shown at the left of the screen. Use the radio buttons to select which ports are in each port group.</p> <p>For example, select a port's Port Group 1 radio button to use the port as part of the first port group. The port will use the first group's IP address.</p> <p>Note: You cannot select ports 1 and 2, as these ports are reserved for WAN usage.</p>				
Interface					
By default, LAN1 is created on top of port group 1 and LAN2 is on top of port group 2.					
Name	This shows the name of the interface (network) on the Nebula Device.				
IP address	This shows the IP address of the interface (network).				
Subnet mask	This shows the subnet mask of the interface (network).				
VLAN ID	<p>This shows the ID number of the VLAN with which the interface (network) is associated.</p> <p>If you have associated an SSID with the VLAN ID, the Smart VLAN screen displays after you change or delete the VLAN ID and click Save. You can exit the screen without saving, or apply your changes directly. If the Smart guest/VLAN network feature is enabled in the Site-Wide > Configure > General settings screen, you can select to apply the changes and update the SSID's VLAN setting as well.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Smart VLAN ✕</p> <p>The VLAN interfaces: 220, 4095, 4096 are being used in the SSIDs settings detailed below. By modifying these interfaces, the SSIDs might not work properly.</p> <p>Smart VLAN allows to automatically update SSID settings with the new VLAN ID.</p> <p>Do you wish to continue with the changes?</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">SSIDs</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Facebook wifi</td> <td>VLAN220</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;"> Close Update SSID & continue Continue </p> </div>	SSIDs	Interface	Facebook wifi	VLAN220
SSIDs	Interface				
Facebook wifi	VLAN220				
Port group	This shows the name of the port group to which the interface (network) belongs.				

Table 129 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (continued)





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Guest	<p>Select On to configure the interface as a Guest interface. Devices connected to a Guest interface will have Internet access but cannot communicate with each other directly or access network sources behind the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Otherwise, select Off to not use the interface as a Guest interface.</p> <p>Note: If the Smart guest/VLAN network feature is enabled in the Site-Wide > Configure > General settings screen, the guest settings you configure for an interface also apply to the WiFi networks (SSIDs) associated with the same VLAN ID. For example, if you set an interface in VLAN 100 as a guest interface, the SSID that belongs to VLAN 100 will also act as a guest network.</p>
	Click this button to modify the network settings. See Section 10.3.1.1 on page 357 for detailed information.
	Click this icon to remove a VLAN entry.
Add	Click this button to create a VLAN, which is then associated with one Ethernet interface (network). See Section 10.3.1.1 on page 357 for detailed information.
Static Route	
Name	This shows the name of the static route.
Destination	This shows the destination IP address.
Subnet mask	This shows the IP subnet mask.
Next hop IP	This shows the IP address of the next-hop gateway or the interface through which the traffic is routed. The gateway is a router or switch on the same segment as your Nebula Device's interfaces. It helps forward packets to their destinations.
	Click this button to modify the static route settings. See Section 10.3.2.4 on page 367 for detailed information.
	Click this icon to remove a static route.
Add	Click this button to create a new static route. See Section 10.3.2.4 on page 367 for detailed information.
Dynamic DNS	
Automatic registration	Click On to use dynamic DNS. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.
General Settings	
DDNS provider	<p>Select your Dynamic DNS service provider from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>If you select User custom, create your own DDNS service.</p>
DDNS type	<p>Select the type of DDNS service you are using.</p> <p>Select User custom to create your own DDNS service and configure the DYNDNS Server, URL, and Additional DDNS Options fields below.</p>
DDNS account	
Username	Enter the user name used when you registered your domain name.
Password	Enter the password provided by the DDNS provider.
Confirm password	Enter the password again to confirm it.
DDNS settings	
Domain name	Enter the domain name you registered.
Primary binding address	Use these fields to set how the Nebula Device determines the IP address that is mapped to your domain name in the DDNS server. The Nebula Device uses the Backup binding address if the interface specified by these settings is not available.

Table 129 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the interface to use for updating the IP address mapped to the domain name.
IP address	<p>Select Auto if the interface has a dynamic IP address. The DDNS server checks the source IP address of the packets from the Nebula Device for the IP address to use for the domain name. You may want to use this if there are one or more NAT routers between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device may not determine the proper IP address if there is an HTTP proxy server between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Select Custom if you have a static IP address. Enter the IP address to use it for the domain name.</p> <p>Select Interface to have the Nebula Device use the IP address of the specified interface.</p>
Backup binding address	Use these fields to set an alternate interface to map the domain name to when the interface specified by the Primary binding address settings is not available.
Interface	Select the interface to use for updating the IP address mapped to the domain name.
IP address	<p>Select Auto if the interface has a dynamic IP address. The DDNS server checks the source IP address of the packets from the Nebula Device for the IP address to use for the domain name. You may want to use this if there are one or more NAT routers between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Note: The Nebula Device may not determine the proper IP address if there is an HTTP proxy server between the Nebula Device and the DDNS server.</p> <p>Select Custom if you have a static IP address. Enter the IP address to use it for the domain name.</p> <p>Select Interface to have the Nebula Device use the IP address of the specified interface.</p>
Enable wildcard	<p>This option is only available with a DynDNS account.</p> <p>Enable the wildcard feature to alias sub-domains to be aliased to the same IP address as your (dynamic) domain name. This feature is useful if you want to be able to use, for example, <code>www.yourhost.dyndns.org</code> and still reach your hostname.</p>
Mail exchanger	<p>This option is only available with a DynDNS account.</p> <p>DynDNS can route email for your domain name to a mail server (called a mail exchanger). For example, DynDNS routes email for <code>john-doe@yourhost.dyndns.org</code> to the host record specified as the mail exchanger.</p> <p>If you are using this service, type the host record of your mail server here. Otherwise, leave the field blank.</p>
Backup mail exchanger	<p>This option is only available with a DynDNS account.</p> <p>Select this check box if you are using DynDNS's backup service for email. With this service, DynDNS holds onto your email if your mail server is not available. Once your mail server is available again, the DynDNS server delivers the mail to you. See www.dyndns.org for more information about this service.</p>
DYNDNS Server	<p>This field displays when you select User custom from the DDNS provider field above.</p> <p>Enter the IP address of the server that will host the DDNS service.</p>

Table 129 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
URL	This field displays when you select User custom from the DDNS provider field above. Enter the URL that can be used to access the server that will host the DDNS service.
Additional DDNS Options	This field displays when you select User custom from the DDNS provider field above. These are the options supported at the time of writing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dyndns_system to specify the DYNDNS Server type – for example, dyndns@dyndns.org • ip_server_name which should be the URL to get the server's public IP address – for example, http://myip.easylife.tw/

10.3.1.1 Local LAN (Add VLAN)

Click the **Add** button or click the **Edit** button in the **Interface** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing** screen.

Figure 155 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (VLAN)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 130 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (VLAN)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface properties	
Interface type	Select VLAN to add a virtual interface. Note: This field only appears if the Nebula Device supports Link Aggregation Groups (LAGs). If the Nebula Device does not support LAGs, then VLAN is the default interface type.

Table 130 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (VLAN) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface name	This field is read-only if you are editing an existing interface. Specify a name for the interface. The format of interface names is strict. Each name consists of 2 – 4 letters (interface type), followed by a number (x). For most interfaces, x is limited by the maximum number of the type of interface. For VLAN interfaces, x is defined by the number you enter in the VLAN name field. For example, VLAN interfaces are vlan0, vlan1, vlan2, and so on.
IP address assignment	
IP address	Enter the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.) Note: NCC will show an error message when the VLAN ID in the NSG interface is configured to be the same as the WAN port's VLAN ID.
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
DHCP setting	
DHCP	Select what type of DHCP service the Nebula Device provides to the network. Choices are: None – the Nebula Device does not provide any DHCP service. There is already a DHCP server on the network. DHCP Relay – the Nebula Device routes DHCP requests to one or more DHCP servers you specify. The DHCP servers may be on another network. DHCP Server – the Nebula Device assigns IP addresses and provides subnet mask, gateway, and DNS server information to the network. The Nebula Device is the DHCP server for the network.
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Relay .	
Relay server 1	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server for the network.
Relay server 2	This field is optional. Enter the IP address of another DHCP server for the network.
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Server .	
IP pool start address	Enter the IP address from which the Nebula Device begins allocating IP addresses. If you want to assign a static IP address to a specific computer, click Add new under Static DHCP Table .
Pool size	Enter the number of IP addresses to allocate. This number must be at least one and is limited by the interface's Subnet mask . For example, if the Subnet mask is 255.255.255.0 and IP pool start address is 10.10.10.10, the Nebula Device can allocate 10.10.10.10 to 10.10.10.254, or 245 IP addresses.
First DNS server Second DNS server Third DNS server	Specify the IP addresses up to three DNS servers for the DHCP clients to use. Use one of the following ways to specify these IP addresses. Custom Defined – enter a static IP address. From ISP – select the DNS server that another interface received from its DHCP server. NSG – the DHCP clients use the IP address of this interface and the Nebula Device works as a DNS relay.
First WINS server Second WINS server	Type the IP address of the WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server that you want to send to the DHCP clients. The WINS server keeps a mapping table of the computer names on your network and the IP addresses that they are currently using.

Table 130 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (VLAN) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Lease time	Specify how long each computer can use the information (especially the IP address) before it has to request the information again. Choices are: infinite – select this if IP addresses never expire. days, hours, minutes – select this to enter how long IP addresses are valid.
Extended options	This table is available if you selected DHCP server . Configure this table if you want to send more information to DHCP clients through DHCP packets. Click Add new to create an entry in this table. See Section 10.3.2.3 on page 365 for detailed information.
Name	This is the option's name.
Code	This is the option's code number.
Type	This is the option's type.
Value	This is the option's value.
	Click the edit icon to modify it. Click the remove icon to delete it.
Static DHCP Table	Configure a list of static IP addresses the Nebula Device assigns to computers connected to the interface. Otherwise, the Nebula Device assigns an IP address dynamically using the interface's IP pool start address and Pool size . Click Add new to create an entry in this table.
IP address	Enter the IP address to assign to a device with this entry's MAC address.
MAC	Enter the MAC address to which to assign this entry's IP address.
Description	Enter a description to help identify this static DHCP entry.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

10.3.2 Link Aggregation Groups

A Link Aggregation Group (LAG) combines multiple Ethernet ports into a single logical interface, in order to increase network bandwidth and/or availability.

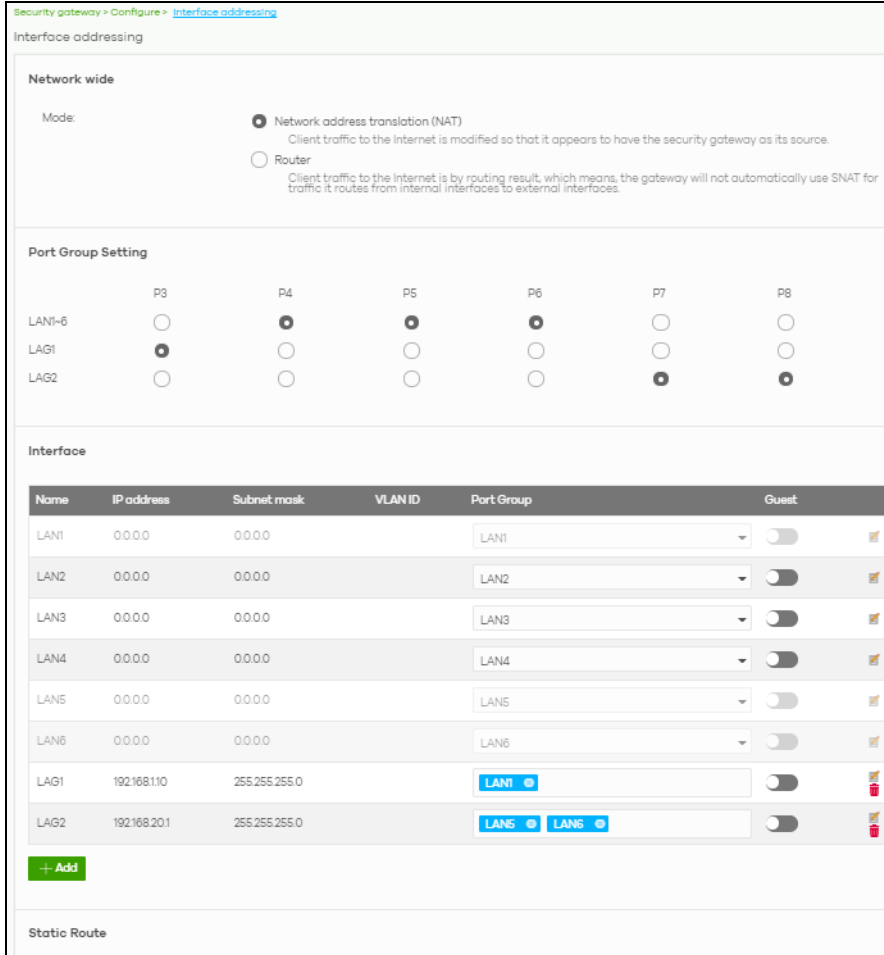
Ports in the group can all connect to a target simultaneously, combining their bandwidth. A LAG can also offer higher network availability; if any port in the group becomes disconnected, the LAG can continue sending data using another port.

10.3.2.1 Interface Addressing with Link Aggregation Groups

If the Nebula Device of the selected site supports Link Aggregation Groups (LAGs), for example NSG300, you can create a LAG by clicking **Add**.

After you create a LAG, the **Port Group Settings** and **Interface** sections of the **Interface Addressing screen** change. The new screen layout allows you to view and configure which ports are in a LAG.

Figure 156 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (LAG Interface Type)

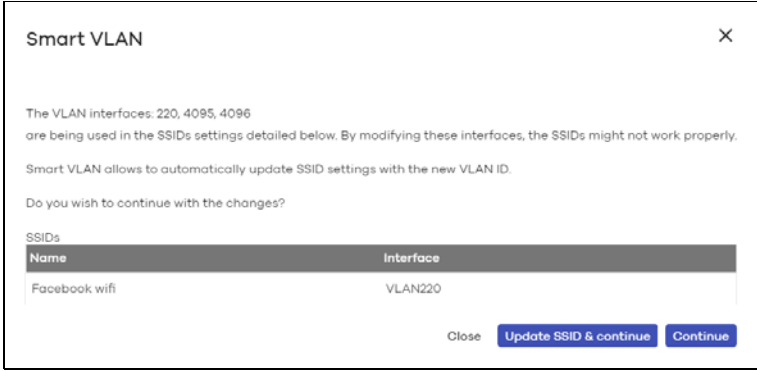




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 131 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (LAG Interface Type)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Group Setting	Select which port group or Link Aggregation Group (LAG) an Ethernet port belongs to. When LAGs are enabled, NCC adds each available LAN Ethernet port (port 3 and higher) to a separate port group, named LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, and so on. These default port groups cannot be modified or renamed.
Interface	
Name	This shows the name of the interface (network) on the Nebula Device.
IP address	This shows the IP address of the interface (network).
Subnet mask	This shows the subnet mask of the interface (network).

Table 131 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing (LAG Interface Type) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN ID	<p>This shows the ID number of the VLAN with which the interface (network) is associated.</p> <p>Note: If you have associated an SSID with the VLAN ID, the Smart VLAN screen displays after you change or delete the VLAN ID and click Save. You can exit the screen without saving, or apply your changes directly. If the Smart guest/VLAN network feature is enabled in the Site-Wide > Configure > General settings screen, you can select to apply the changes and update the SSID's VLAN setting as well.</p>  <p>The dialog box titled "Smart VLAN" contains the following text: "The VLAN interfaces: 220, 4095, 4096 are being used in the SSIDs settings detailed below. By modifying these interfaces, the SSIDs might not work properly. Smart VLAN allows to automatically update SSID settings with the new VLAN ID. Do you wish to continue with the changes?" Below this is a table with columns "Name" and "Interface". The table has one row: "Facebook wifi" under "Name" and "VLAN220" under "Interface". At the bottom right of the dialog are three buttons: "Close", "Update SSID & continue", and "Continue".</p>
Port group	<p>For an Ethernet port, this shows the name of the port group to which the port belongs.</p> <p>For a link aggregation group, this shows its member port groups.</p>
Guest	<p>Select On to configure the interface as a Guest interface. Devices connected to a Guest interface will have Internet access but cannot communicate with each other directly or access network sources behind the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Otherwise, select Off to not use the interface as a Guest interface.</p> <p>Note: If the Smart guest/VLAN network feature is enabled in the Site-Wide > Configure > General settings screen, the guest settings you configure for an interface also apply to the WiFi networks (SSIDs) associated with the same VLAN ID. For example, if you set an interface in VLAN 100 as a guest interface, the SSID that belongs to VLAN 100 will also act as a guest network.</p>
	<p>Click this button to modify the network settings. See Section 10.3.1.1 on page 357 for detailed information.</p> <p>If the interface is a member of a link aggregation group, you cannot edit the interface's network settings.</p>
	<p>Click this icon to delete a VLAN entry or link aggregation group.</p>
Add	<p>Click this button to create a VLAN or link aggregation group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For details on creating a VLAN, see Section 10.3.1.1 on page 357. For details on creating a link aggregation group, see Section 10.3.2.2 on page 362.

10.3.2.2 Local LAN (LAG Interface Type)

Click the **Add** button or click the **Edit** button in the **Interface** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing** screen.

Figure 157 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (LAG Interface Type)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 132 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (LAG Interface Type)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface properties	
Interface type	Select LAG to add a link aggregation group. Note: This field only appears if the Nebula Device supports Link Aggregation Groups (LAGs). If the Nebula Device does not support LAGs, a VLAN is created by default.
Interface name	Specify a name for the interface. This must be "LAG" plus a number, for example "LAG1".
LAG Configuration	

Table 132 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (LAG Interface Type)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select a mode for this Link Aggregation Group (LAG) interface. Choices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • active-backup: Only one port in the LAG interface is active and another port becomes active only if the active port fails. • 802.3ad (IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation): Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) negotiates automatic combining of ports and balances the traffic load across the LAG link by sending LACP packets to the directly connected device that also implements LACP. The ports must have the same speed and duplex settings. • balance-alb (adaptive load balancing): Traffic is distributed according to the current load on each port by ARP negotiation. Incoming traffic is received by the current port. If the receiving port fails, another port takes over the MAC address of the failed receiving port.
Link Monitoring	Select how each link is monitored. <p>mii (Media Independent Interface) – The Nebula Device monitors the state of the local interface only. The Nebula Device cannot tell if the link can transmit or receive packets.</p> <p>arp – The Nebula Device monitors the link by sending ARP queries. The Nebula Device then uses the reply to know if the link is up and that traffic is flowing through the link.</p>
Miimom	This field displays for mii Link Monitoring. Set the interval in milliseconds that the system polls the Media Independent Interface (MII) to get the link's status.
Updelay	This field displays for mii Link Monitoring. Set the waiting time in milliseconds to confirm that a member interface link is up.
Downdelay	This field displays for mii Link Monitoring. Set the waiting time in milliseconds to confirm that a member interface link is down.
IP address assignment	
IP address	Enter the IP address for this interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.) <p>Note: NCC will show an error message when the VLAN ID in the NSG interface is configured to be the same as the WAN port's VLAN ID.</p>
Port group	Select the name of the port group to which you want the interface to (network) belong.
DHCP setting	
DHCP	Select what type of DHCP service the Nebula Device provides to the network. Choices are: <p>None – the Nebula Device does not provide any DHCP services. There is already a DHCP server on the network.</p> <p>DHCP Relay – the Nebula Device routes DHCP requests to one or more DHCP servers you specify. The DHCP servers may be on another network.</p> <p>DHCP Server – the Nebula Device assigns IP addresses and provides subnet mask, gateway, and DNS server information to the network. The Nebula Device is the DHCP server for the network.</p>
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Relay .	
Relay server 1	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server for the network.
Relay server 2	This field is optional. Enter the IP address of another DHCP server for the network.
These fields appear if the Nebula Device is a DHCP Server .	
IP pool start address	Enter the IP address from which the Nebula Device begins allocating IP addresses. If you want to assign a static IP address to a specific computer, click Add new under Static DHCP Table .

Table 132 Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing: Local LAN (LAG Interface Type)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Pool size	Enter the number of IP addresses to allocate. This number must be at least one and is limited by the interface's Subnet mask . For example, if the Subnet mask is 255.255.255.0 and IP pool start address is 10.10.10.10, the Nebula Device can allocate 10.10.10.10 to 10.10.10.254, or 245 IP addresses.
First DNS server Second DNS server Third DNS server	Specify the IP addresses of up to three DNS servers for the DHCP clients to use. Use one of the following ways to specify these IP addresses. Custom Defined – enter a static IP address. From ISP – select the DNS server that another interface received from its DHCP server. NSG – the DHCP clients use the IP address of this interface and the Nebula Device works as a DNS relay.
First WINS server Second WINS server	Enter the IP address of the WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server that you want to send to the DHCP clients. The WINS server keeps a mapping table of the computer names on your network and the IP addresses that they are currently using.
Lease time	Specify how long each computer can use the information (especially the IP address) before it has to request the information again. Choices are: infinite – select this if IP addresses never expire days, hours, minutes – select this to enter how long IP addresses are valid.
Extended options	This table is available if you selected DHCP server . Configure this table if you want to send more information to DHCP clients through DHCP packets. Click Add new to create an entry in this table. See Section 10.3.2.3 on page 365 for detailed information.
Name	This is the option's name.
Code	This is the option's code number.
Type	This is the option's type.
Value	This is the option's value.
	Click the edit icon to modify it. Click the remove icon to delete it.
Static DHCP Table	Configure a list of static IP addresses the Nebula Device assigns to computers connected to the interface. Otherwise, the Nebula Device assigns an IP address dynamically using the interface's IP pool start address and Pool size . Click Add new to create an entry in this table.
IP address	Enter the IP address to assign to a device with this entry's MAC address.
MAC	Enter the MAC address to which to assign this entry's IP address.
Description	Enter a description to help identify this static DHCP entry.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

10.3.2.3 DHCP Option

Click the **Add new** button under **Extended options** in the **Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Local LAN** screen.

Figure 158 Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Local LAN: DHCP Option

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 133 Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Local LAN: DHCP Option

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Option	Select which DHCP option that you want to add in the DHCP packets sent through the interface.
Name	This field displays the name of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User_Defined in the Option field, enter a descriptive name to identify the DHCP option.
Code	This field displays the code number of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User_Defined in the Option field, enter a number for the option. This field is mandatory.
Type	This is the type of the selected DHCP option. If you selected User_Defined in the Option field, select an appropriate type for the value that you will enter in the next field. Misconfiguration could result in interface lockout.
Value	Enter the value for the selected DHCP option. For example, if you selected TFTP Server Name (66) and the type is TEXT , enter the DNS domain name of a TFTP server here. This field is mandatory.
First IP address Second IP address Third IP address	If you selected Time Server (4) , NTP Server (41) , SIP Server (120) , CAPWAP AC (138) , or TFTP Server (150) , you have to enter at least one IP address of the corresponding servers in these fields. The servers should be listed in order of your preference.
First enterprise ID Second enterprise ID	If you selected VIVC (124) or VIVS (125) , you have to enter at least one vendor's 32-bit enterprise number in these fields. An enterprise number is a unique number that identifies a company.

Table 133 Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Local LAN: DHCP Option (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First class Second class	If you selected VIVC (124) , enter the details of the hardware configuration of the host on which the client is running, or of industry consortium compliance.
First information Second information	If you selected VIVS (125) , enter additional information for the corresponding enterprise number in these fields.
First FQDN Second FQDN Third FQDN	If the Type is FQDN , you have to enter at least one domain name of the corresponding servers in these fields. The servers should be listed in order of your preference.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

10.3.2.4 Static Route

Click the **Add** button in the **Static Route** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing** screen.

Figure 159 Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Static Route

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 134 Security gateway > Configure > Interfaces addressing: Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this route.
Destination	Specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number.
Subnet mask	Enter the IP subnet mask.
Next hop IP address	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click OK to save your changes.

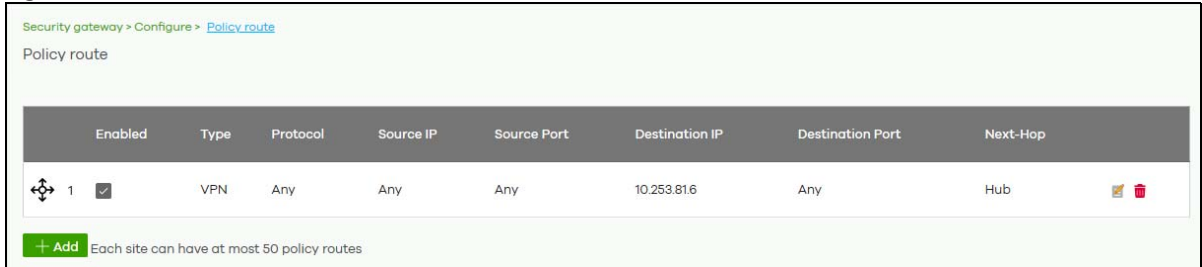
10.3.3 Policy Route

Use policy routes and static routes to override the Nebula Device's default routing behavior in order to send packets through the appropriate next-hop gateway, interface or VPN tunnel.

A policy route defines the matching criteria and the action to take when a packet meets the criteria. The action is taken only when all the criteria are met. Use this screen to configure policy routes.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route** to access this screen.

Figure 160 Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 135 Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Type	This shows whether the packets will be routed to a different gateway (INTRANET), VPN tunnel (VPN) or outgoing interface (INTERNET).
Protocol	This displays the IP protocol that defines the service used by the packets. Any means all services.
Source IP	This is the source IP addresses from which the packets are sent.
Source Port	This displays the port that the source IP addresses are using in this policy route rule. The gateway applies the policy route to the packets sent from the corresponding service port. Any means all service ports.
Destination IP	This is the destination IP addresses to which the packets are transmitted.
Destination Port	This displays the port that the destination IP addresses are using in this policy route rule. Any means all service ports.
Next-Hop	This is the next hop to which packets are directed. It helps forward packets to their destinations and can be a router, VPN tunnel or outgoing interface.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new policy route. See Section 10.3.4.1 on page 374 for more information.

10.3.3.1 Add/Edit policy route

Click the **Add** button or an edit icon in the **Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route** screen to access this screen.

Figure 161 Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route: Add/Edit

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 136 Security gateway > Configure > Policy Route: Add/Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	Select Internet Traffic to route the matched packets through the specified outgoing interface to a gateway (which is connected to the interface). Select Intranet Traffic to route the matched packets to the next-hop router or switch you specified in the Next-Hop field. Select VPN Traffic to route the matched packets through the VPN tunnel you specified in the Next-Hop field.
Protocol	Select TCP or UDP if you want to specify a protocol for the policy route. Otherwise, select Any .
Source IP	Enter a source IP address from which the packets are sent.
Source Port	Enter the port number (1 – 65535) from which the packets are sent. The Nebula Device applies the policy route to the packets sent from the corresponding service port. Any means all service ports.
Destination IP	Enter a destination IP address to which the packets go.
Destination Port	Enter the port number (1 – 65535) to which the packets go. The Nebula Device applies the policy route to the packets that go to the corresponding service port. Any means all service ports.
Next-Hop	If you select Internet Traffic in the Type field, select the WAN interface to route the matched packets through the specified outgoing interface to a Nebula Device connected to the interface. If you select Intranet Traffic in the Type field, enter the IP address of the next-hop router or switch. If you select VPN Traffic in the Type field, select the remote VPN gateway's site name.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

10.3.4 Firewall

By default, a LAN user can initiate a session from within the LAN and the Nebula Device allows the

response. However, the Nebula Device blocks incoming traffic initiated from the WAN and destined for the LAN. Use this screen to configure firewall rules for outbound traffic, application patrol, schedule profiles and port forwarding rules for inbound traffic.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Firewall** to access this screen.

Note: The Nebula Device has the following hidden default firewall rules: LAN to WAN is allowed, WAN to LAN is blocked.

Figure 162 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall

Security gateway > Configure > Firewall

Firewall

Security policy

Policy rules

Destination	Dest port	Schedule	Description
10.253.615	Any	Always	REDMINE ACCESS
Any	Any	Always	Default rule

+ Add

Security gateway services

Service	Allowed remote IPs
Ping	any
Web (local status & configuration)	none

Application Patrol

Application monitor

Enable this option to allow traffic analysis with application patrol.

Application profiles

There are no profiles defined for this site.

+ Add

Schedule profiles

NewSchedule-1 used by 0 outbound rules

+ Add

SIP ALG

SIP ALG

SIP Signaling Port 5060

ADVANCED OPTIONS

SIP Inactivity Timeout

SIP Media Inactivity Timeout 120 seconds

SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout 1800 seconds

NAT

1:1 NAT

Enabled	Uplink	Public IP	LAN IP	Allowed Remote IP	Desc
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WAN1			any	

+ Add

Virtual Server

Enabled	Uplink	Protocol	Public IP	Public port	LAN IP
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WAN1	Any	any		

+ Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 137 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Policy	
Policy rules	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Policy	Select what the Nebula Device is to do with packets that match this rule. Select Deny to silently discard the packets without sending a TCP reset packet or an ICMP destination-unreachable message to the sender. Select Allow to permit the passage of the packets. Select a pre-defined application patrol profile to have the Nebula Device take the action set in the profile when traffic matches the application patrol signatures. See Section 10.3.4.1 on page 374 for how to create an application patrol profile.
Protocol	Select the IP protocol to which this rule applies. Choices are: TCP , UDP , and Any .
Source	Specify the source IP addresses to which this rule applies. You can specify multiple IP addresses or subnets in the field separated by a comma (","),. Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses.
Destination	Specify the destination IP addresses or subnet to which this rule applies. You can specify multiple IP addresses or subnets in the field separated by a comma (","),. Enter any to apply the rule to all IP addresses.
Dst Port	Specify the destination ports to which this rule applies. You can specify multiple ports separated by a comma (","),. Enter any to apply the rule to all ports.
Schedule	Select the name of the schedule profile that the rule uses. Always means the rule is active at all times if enabled.
Description	Enter a descriptive name of up to 60 printable ASCII characters for the rule.
	Click this icon to remove the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.
Security gateway services	
Service	This shows the name of the service.
Allowed remote IPs	Specify the IP address with which the computer is allowed to access the Nebula Device using the service. You can specify a range of IP addresses. any allows all IP addresses.
Application Patrol	
Application monitor	Click On to enable traffic analysis for all applications and display information about the top 10 applications in the Site-wide > Monitor > Dashboard: Traffic Summary screen. Otherwise, select Off to disable traffic analysis for applications.
Application profiles	
Name	This shows the name of the application patrol profile.
Description	This shows the description of the application patrol profile.
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new application patrol profile. See Section 10.3.4.1 on page 374 for more information.
Schedule profiles	
	This shows the name of the schedule profile and the number of the outbound rules that are using this schedule profile.

Table 137 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall (continued)







LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this icon to change the profile settings.
	Click this icon to remove the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new schedule profile. See Section 10.3.4.2 on page 375 for more information.
SIP ALG	
SIP ALG	<p>Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an application-layer protocol that can be used to create voice and multimedia sessions over the Internet.</p> <p>Application Layer Gateway (ALG) allows the following applications to operate properly through the Nebula Device's NAT.</p> <p>Turn on the SIP ALG to detect SIP traffic and help build SIP sessions through the Nebula Device's NAT. Enabling the SIP ALG also allows you to use the application patrol to detect SIP traffic and manage the SIP traffic's bandwidth.</p>
SIP Signaling Port	If you are using a custom UDP port number (not 5060) for SIP traffic, enter it here.
ADVANCED OPTIONS	
SIP Inactivity Timeout	Select this option to have the Nebula Device apply SIP media and signaling inactivity time out limits.
SIP Media Inactivity Timeout	<p>Use this field to set how many seconds (1 – 86400) the Nebula Device will allow a SIP session to remain idle (without voice traffic) before dropping it.</p> <p>If no voice packets go through the SIP ALG before the timeout period expires, the Nebula Device deletes the audio session. You cannot hear anything and you will need to make a new call to continue your conversation.</p>
SIP Signaling Inactivity Timeout	<p>Most SIP clients have an "expire" mechanism indicating the lifetime of signaling sessions. The SIP user agent sends registration packets to the SIP server periodically and keeps the session alive in the Nebula Device.</p> <p>If the SIP client does not have this mechanism and makes no calls during the Nebula Device SIP timeout, the Nebula Device deletes the signaling session after the timeout period. Enter the SIP signaling session timeout value (1 – 86400).</p>
NAT	
<p>1:1 NAT</p> <p>A 1:1 NAT rule maps a public IP address to the private IP address of a LAN server to give WAN users access.</p> <p>If a private network server will initiate sessions to the outside clients, 1:1 NAT lets the Nebula Device translate the source IP address of the server's outgoing traffic to the same public IP address that the outside clients use to access the server.</p>	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Uplink	Select the interface of the Nebula Device on which packets for the NAT rule must be received.
Public IP	<p>Enter the destination IP address of the packets received by the interface specified in this NAT rule.</p> <p>Note: To enable NAT loop-back, enter a specific IP address instead of any in this field. NAT loop-back allows communications between two hosts on the LAN behind the Nebula Device through an external IP address.</p>
LAN IP	Specify to which translated destination IP address this NAT rule forwards packets.
Allowed Remote IP	<p>Specify the remote IP address with which the computer is allowed to use the public IP address to access the private network server. You can specify a range of IP addresses.</p> <p>any allows all IP addresses.</p>

Table 137 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Description	Enter a description for the rule.
	Click this icon to remove the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new 1:1 NAT mapping rule.
Virtual server	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Uplink	Select the interface of the Nebula Device on which packets for the NAT rule must be received.
Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP , UDP , or Any) used by the service requesting the connection.
Public IP	Enter the destination IP address of the packets received by the interface specified in this NAT rule. Note: To enable NAT loop-back, enter a specific IP address instead of any in this field. NAT loop-back allows communications between two hosts on the LAN behind the Nebula Device through an external IP address.
Public port	Enter the translated destination port or range of translated destination ports if this NAT rule forwards the packet.
LAN IP	Specify to which translated destination IP address this NAT rule forwards packets.
Local port	Enter the original destination port or range of destination ports this NAT rule supports.
Allowed Remote IP	Specify the remote IP address with which the computer is allowed to use the public IP address to access the private network server. You can specify a range of IP addresses. any allows all IP addresses.
Description	Enter a description for the rule.
	Click this icon to remove the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new virtual server mapping rule.

10.3.4.1 Add application patrol profile

Application patrol provides a convenient way to manage the use of various applications on the network. It manages general protocols (for example, HTTP and FTP) and instant messenger (IM), peer-to-peer (P2P), Voice over IP (VoIP), and streaming (RSTP) applications. You can even control the use of a particular application's individual features (like text messaging, voice, video conferencing, and file transfers).

An application patrol profile is a group of categories of application patrol signatures. For each profile, you can specify the default action the Nebula Device takes once a packet matches a signature (forward, drop, or reject a service's connections and/or create a log alert).

Click the **Add** button in the **Application Patrol** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Firewall** screen to access this screen. Use the application patrol profile screens to customize action and log settings for a group of application patrol signatures.

Figure 163 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall: Add an application profile

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 138 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall: Add an application profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name for this profile for identification purposes.
Description	Enter a description for this profile.
Log	Select whether to have the Nebula Device generate a log (ON) or not (OFF) by default when traffic matches an application signature in this category.
Application management	
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Category	Select an application category.
Application	Select All or select an application within the category to apply the policy.
Policy	Select the default action for the applications selected in this category. Forward – the Nebula Device routes packets that matches these application signatures. Drop – the Nebula Device silently drops packets that matches these application signatures without notification. Reject – the Nebula Device drops packets that matches these application signatures and sends notification to clients.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new application category and set actions for specific applications within the category.
	Enter a name to search for relevant applications and click Add to create an entry.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

10.3.4.2 Create new schedule

Click the **Add** button in the **Schedule Profiles** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Firewall** screen to access this screen.

Figure 164 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall: Add a schedule profile

Create new schedule ✕

Local time zone: (You can set this on [General setting](#))

Name: ✕ Template: Always on ▼

Day	Availability
Sunday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Monday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Tuesday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Wednesday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Thursday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Friday	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

Close Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 139 Security gateway > Configure > Firewall: Add a schedule profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this schedule for identification purposes.
Templates	Select a pre-defined schedule template or select Custom schedule and manually configure the day and time at which the associated firewall outbound rule is enabled.
Day	This shows the day of the week.
Availability	Click On to enable the associated rule at the specified time on this day. Otherwise, select Off to turn the associated rule off at the specified time on this day. Specify the hour and minute when the schedule begins and ends each day.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Add	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

10.3.5 Security Service

Use this screen to enable or disable the features available in the security pack for your Nebula Device, such as content filtering, Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) and/or anti-virus. As to application patrol, go to the **Firewall** screen to configure it since you need to have a firewall rule for outbound traffic.

Content filtering allows you to block access to specific web sites. It can also block access to specific categories of web site content. IDP can detect malicious or suspicious packets used in network-based intrusions and respond instantaneously. Anti-virus helps protect your connected network from virus/spyware infection.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Security service** to access this screen.

Note: Packet inspection signatures examine packet content for malicious data. Packet inspection applies to OSI (Open System Interconnection) layer-4 to layer-7 contents. You need to subscribe for IDP service in order to be able to download new signatures.

Figure 165 Security gateway > Configure > Security service

The screenshot displays the configuration page for the Security service, organized into several sections:

- Content filtering:**
 - Enabled:
 - Interface table:

Interface	Enabled
LAN1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN100	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
VLAN250	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
 - Denied access message:
 - Redirect URL:
 - Block list:
 - White list:
- Block Category:**
 - Templates: Security
 - Test URL:
 - Search category:
 - Category list:
- Anti-virus:**
 - Signature Information:

Current Version:	1.0.0.20200106.0
Signature Number:	632627
Released Date:	2020-01-06 08:33 (UTC+08:00)
 - Enabled:
 - Block list:
 - White list:
- Intrusion Detection / Prevention:**
 - Signature Information:

Current Version:	3.1.4.391
Signature Number:	2143
Released Date:	2020-01-06 08:33 (UTC+08:00)
 - Detection:
 - Prevention:

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 140 Security gateway > Configure > Security service

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Content Filtering	
Enabled	Click ON to enable the content filtering feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, click OFF to disable it.
Interface	This shows the name of the interfaces created on the Nebula Device. Click ON to enable content filtering on the interfaces.
Denied access message	Enter a message to be displayed when content filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0–9a–zA–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator". It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect URL field. In this case if the content filter blocks access to a web page, the Nebula Device just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.
Redirect URL	Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by content filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message. Use "http://" or "https://" followed by up to 262 characters (0–9a–zA–Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.
Black list	Sites that you want to block access to, regardless of their content rating, can be blocked by adding them to this list. Enter host names such as www.bad-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are also blocked. For example, entering "bad-site.com" also blocks "www.badsite.com", "partner.bad-site.com", "press.bad-site.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to block all .com domains. Use up to 127 characters (0–9a–z–). The casing does not matter.
White list	Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list. Enter host names such as www.good-site.com into this text field. Do not enter the complete URL of the site – that is, do not include "http://". All sub-domains are allowed. For example, entering "zyxel.com" also allows "www.zyxel.com", "partner.zyxel.com", "press.zyxel.com", and so on. You can also enter just a top level domain. For example, enter .com to allow all .com domains. Use up to 127 characters (0–9a–z–). The casing does not matter.
Block Category	
The Nebula Device prevents users from accessing web pages that match the categories that you select below. When external database content filtering blocks access to a web page, it displays the denied access message that you configured in the Denied access message field along with the category of the blocked web page.	
Templates	Web pages are classified into a category based on their content. You can choose a pre-defined template that has already selected certain categories. Alternatively, choose Custom and manually select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.
Test URL	You can check which category a web page belongs to. Enter a web site URL in the text box. When the content filter is active, you should see the web page's category. The query fails if the content filter is not active. Content Filtering can query a category by full URL string (for example, http://www.google.com/picture/index.htm), but HTTPS Domain Filter can only query a category by domain name ('www.google.com'), so the category may be different in the query result. Test URL displays both results in the test.

Table 140 Security gateway > Configure > Security service (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search Category	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of categories.
Category List	Click to display or hide the category list. These are categories of web pages based on their content. Select categories in this section to control access to specific types of Internet content.
Anti-Virus	
Signature Information	This shows the Current Version of the anti-virus definition, its Signature Number and the Released Date .
Enabled	Click On to enable anti-virus on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.
Black/White List	Use this to set up anti-virus black (blocked) and white (allowed) lists of virus file patterns.
File Pattern	For a black list entry, specify a pattern to identify the names of files that the Nebula Device should log and delete. For a white list entry, specify a pattern to identify the names of files that the Nebula Device should not scan for viruses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use up to 80 characters. Alphanumeric characters, underscores (_), dashes (-), question marks (?) and asterisks (*) are allowed. A question mark (?) lets a single character in the file name vary. For example, use "a?.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify aa.zip, ab.zip and so on. Wildcards (*) let multiple files match the pattern. For example, use "*a.zip" (without the quotation marks) to specify any file that ends with "a.zip". A file named "testa.zip" would match. There could be any number (of any type) of characters in front of the "a.zip" at the end and the file name would still match. A file named "test.zipa" for example would not match. An * in the middle of a pattern has the Nebula Device check the beginning and end of the file name and ignore the middle. For example, with "abc*.zip", any file starting with "abc" and ending in ".zip" matches, no matter how many characters are in between. The whole file name has to match if you do not use a question mark or asterisk. If you do not use a wildcard, the Nebula Device checks up to the first 80 characters of a file name.
Intrusion Detection / Prevention System	
Signature Information	This shows the Current Version of the anti-intrusion definition, its Signature Number and the Released Date .
Detection	Click On to detect malicious or suspicious packets. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.
Prevention	Click On to identify and respond to intrusions. Otherwise, select Off to disable it.

10.3.6 Site-to-Site VPN

A virtual private network (VPN) provides secure communications between sites without the expense of leased site-to-site lines. Use this screen to configure a VPN rule.

Note: Site-to-site VPN do not support both sites behind NAT scenario.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** to access this screen.

Figure 166 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN

Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN

Site-to-Site VPN

Configuring VPN with multiple sites is cumbersome. Use [VPN Orchestrator](#) to save your time.

Outgoing interface: WANI

Local networks

Name	Subnet	Use VPN
LAN1	192.168.1.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
LAN2	192.168.2.0/24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

VPN Area: Default

Nebula VPN enable:

Nebula VPN topology: Split tunnel (send only site-to-site traffic over the VPN)
Hub-and-Spoke

Branch to branch VPN:

Hubs (peers connect to):

Area communication:

NAT traversal: IP or FQDN

Remote VPN participants

Network	Subnet(s)

Site-wide settings

Options in this section apply to this Nebula gateway only.

Non-Nebula VPN peers

Enabled	Name	Public IP	Private subnet	IPsec policy	Preshared secret	Availability
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>				Default		This site

+ Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 141 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Outgoing Interface	Select the WAN interface to which the VPN connection is going. Select AUTO to send VPN traffic through a different WAN interface when the primary WAN interface is down or disabled.
Preferred uplink	Specify the primary WAN interface through which the Nebula Device forwards VPN traffic when you set Outgoing Interface to AUTO .
Local networks	This shows the local networks behind the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the network name.
Subnet	This shows the IP address and subnet mask of the computer on the network.
Use VPN	Click this to allow or disallow the computer connected to the LAN port to use VPN.
VPN Area	Select the VPN area of the site. For details, see Section 6.3.9.2 on page 196 .

Table 141 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Nebula VPN enable	Click this to enable or disable site-to-site VPN on the site's Nebula Device. If you disable this setting, the site will leave the VPN area.
Nebula VPN Topology	This shows the VPN mode supported by the Nebula Device. Select a VPN topology. Select Disable to not set a VPN connection. In the Site-to-Site VPN topology, the remote IPSec device has a static IP address or a domain name. This Nebula Device can initiate the VPN tunnel. In the Hub-and-Spoke VPN topology, there is a VPN connection between each spoke router and the hub router, which uses the VPN concentrator. The VPN concentrator routes VPN traffic between the spoke routers and itself. In the Server-and-Client VPN topology, incoming connections from IPSec VPN clients are allowed. The clients have dynamic IP addresses and are also known as dial-in users. Only the clients can initiate the VPN tunnel.
Branch to branch VPN	Enable this to allow spoke sites to communicate with each other in the VPN area. When disabled, spoke sites can only communicate with hub sites.
Hubs (peers to connect to)	This field is available when you set Topology to Hub-and-Spoke . The field is configurable only when the Nebula Device of the selected site is the hub router. You can select another site's name to have the Nebula Device of that site act as the hub router in the Hub-and-Spoke VPN topology.
Area communication	Enable this to allow the site to communicate with sites in different VPN areas within the organization.
NAT traversal	If the Nebula Device is behind a NAT router, enter the public IP address or the domain name that is configured and mapped to the Nebula Device on the NAT router.
Server (client connect to)	This field is available when you set Topology to Server-and-Client . The field is configurable only when the Nebula Device of the selected site is the VPN server. You can select another site's name to have the Nebula Device of that site act as the VPN server.
Client-to-Client communication	Select On to allow VPN traffic to transmit between VPN clients by going through the server. The field is configurable only when the Nebula Device of the selected site is the VPN server.
Remote VPN participants	This shows the remote (peer) Nebula Device's network name and address.
Non-Nebula VPN peers	If the remote VPN gateway is not a Nebula Device, use this section to set up a VPN connection between it and the Nebula Device.
+ Add	Click this button to add a non-Nebula gateway to the VPN area.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Name	Enter the name of the peer gateway.
Public IP	Enter the public IP address of the peer gateway.
Private subnet	Enter the local network address or subnet behind the peer gateway.
IPSec policy	Click to select a pre-defined policy or have a custom one. See Section 10.3.6.1 on page 382 for detailed information.
Preshared secret	Enter a pre-shared key (password). The Nebula Device and peer gateway use the key to identify each other when they negotiate the IKE SA.

Table 141 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Availability	<p>Select All sites to allow the peer gateway to connect to any Nebula Device in the organization through a VPN tunnel.</p> <p>Select This site and the peer gateway can only connect to the Nebula Device in this site through a VPN tunnel.</p> <p>You can also configure any specific sites in the organization,</p>
Address	Enter the address (physical location) of the device.
Remove	Click the remove icon to delete the entry.
Add	Click this button to add a peer VPN gateway to the list.

10.3.6.1 Custom IPSec Policy

Click an existing **IPSec Policy** button in the **Non-Nebula VPN peers** section of the **Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN** screen to access this screen.

Figure 167 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: Custom IPsec Policy

Custom X

Preset

Phase 1

IKE version

Encryption

Authentication

Diffie-Hellman group

Lifetime (seconds)

Advanced

Phase 2

Set	Encryption	Authentication
Set 1	<input type="text" value="3DES"/>	<input type="text" value="SHA128"/>
Set 2	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>
Set 3	<input type="text" value="None"/>	<input type="text" value="None"/>

PFS group

Lifetime (seconds)

Close

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 142 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: Custom IPsec Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Preset	Select a pre-defined IPsec policy, or select Custom to configure the policy settings yourself.
Phase 1	IPsec VPN consists of two phases: Phase 1 (Authentication) and Phase 2 (Key Exchange). A phase 1 exchange establishes an IKE SA (Security Association).

Table 142 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: Custom IPSec Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IKE version	<p>Select IKEv1 or IKEv2.</p> <p>IKEv1 applies to IPv4 traffic only. IKEv2 applies to both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. IKE (Internet Key Exchange) is a protocol used in setting up security associations that allows two parties to send data securely.</p>
Encryption	<p>Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IKE SA. Choices are:</p> <p>DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPSec router must use the same key size and encryption algorithm. Longer keys require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IKE SA.</p> <p>Choices are SHA128, SHA256, SHA512 and MD5. SHA is generally considered stronger than MD5, but it is also slower.</p> <p>The remote IPSec router must use the same authentication algorithm.</p>
Diffie-Hellman group	<p>Select which Diffie-Hellman key group (DHx) you want to use for encryption keys. Choices are:</p> <p>DH1 – use a 768-bit random number</p> <p>DH2 – use a 1024-bit random number</p> <p>DH5 – use a 1536-bit random number</p> <p>DH14 – use a 2048-bit random number</p> <p>The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.</p>
Lifetime (seconds)	<p>Type the maximum number of seconds the IKE SA can last. When this time has passed, the Nebula Device and remote IPSec router have to update the encryption and authentication keys and re-negotiate the IKE SA. This does not affect any existing IPSec SAs, however.</p>
Advanced	<p>Click this to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.</p>
Mode	<p>Select the negotiation mode to use to negotiate the IKE SA. Choices are:</p> <p>Main – this encrypts the Nebula Device's and remote IPSec router's identities but takes more time to establish the IKE SA</p> <p>Aggressive – this is faster but does not encrypt the identities</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPSec router must use the same negotiation mode.</p>
Local ID	<p>Enter the identity of the Nebula Device during authentication. Any indicates that the remote IPSec router does not check the identity of the Nebula Device.</p>
Peer ID	<p>Enter the identity of the remote IPSec router during authentication. Any indicates that the Nebula Device does not check the identity of the remote IPSec router.</p>
Phase 2	<p>Phase 2 uses the SA that was established in phase 1 to negotiate SAs for IPSec.</p>

Table 142 Security gateway > Configure > Site-to-Site VPN: Custom IPsec Policy (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Encryption	<p>Select which key size and encryption algorithm to use in the IPsec SA. Choices are:</p> <p>(none) – no encryption key or algorithm</p> <p>DES – a 56-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>3DES – a 168-bit key with the DES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES128 – a 128-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES192 – a 192-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>AES256 – a 256-bit key with the AES encryption algorithm</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPsec router must both have at least one proposal that uses use the same encryption and the same key.</p> <p>Longer keys are more secure, but require more processing power, resulting in increased latency and decreased throughput.</p>
Authentication	<p>Select which hash algorithm to use to authenticate packet data in the IPsec SA.</p> <p>Choices are None, MD5, SHA128, SHA256, and SHA512. SHA is generally considered stronger than MD5, but it is also slower.</p> <p>The Nebula Device and the remote IPsec router must both have a proposal that uses the same authentication algorithm.</p>
PFS group	<p>Select whether or not you want to enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) and, if you do, which Diffie-Hellman key group to use for encryption. Choices are:</p> <p>None – disable PFS</p> <p>DH1 – enable PFS and use a 768-bit random number</p> <p>DH2 – enable PFS and use a 1024-bit random number</p> <p>DH5 – enable PFS and use a 1536-bit random number</p> <p>DH14 – enable PFS and use a 2048-bit random number</p> <p>PFS changes the root key that is used to generate encryption keys for each IPsec SA. The longer the key, the more secure the encryption, but also the longer it takes to encrypt and decrypt information. Both routers must use the same DH key group.</p> <p>PFS is ignored in initial IKEv2 authentication but is used when re-authenticating.</p>
Lifetime (seconds)	<p>Enter the maximum number of seconds the IPsec SA can last. Shorter life times provide better security. The Nebula Device automatically negotiates a new IPsec SA before the current one expires, if there are users who are accessing remote resources.</p>
<p>VPN tunnel interface (optional)</p> <p>IPsec VPN Tunnel Interface (VTI) encrypts or decrypts IPv4 traffic from or to the interface according to the IP routing table.</p> <p>VTI allows static routes to send traffic over the VPN. The IPsec tunnel endpoint is associated with an actual (virtual) interface. Therefore many interface capabilities such as Policy Route, Static Route, Trunk, and BWM can be applied to the IPsec tunnel as soon as the tunnel is active. IPsec VTI simplifies network management and load balancing. Create a trunk using VPN tunnel interfaces for load balancing.</p> <p>This section is available when you select IKEv2 in the IKE Version field.</p>	
IP address	Enter the IP address of the VPN tunnel interface.
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of this interface in dot decimal notation. The subnet mask indicates what part of the IP address is the same for all computers in the network
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

10.3.7 Remote Access VPN

Use this screen to configure the VPN client settings.

Internet Protocol Security (IPSec) VPN connects IPSec routers or remote users using IPSec client software. This standards-based VPN offers flexible solutions for secure data communications across a public network. IPSec is built around a number of standardized cryptographic techniques to provide confidentiality, data integrity and authentication at the IP layer.

The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) works at layer 2 (the data link layer) to tunnel network traffic between two peers over another network (like the Internet). In L2TP VPN, an IPSec VPN tunnel is established first and then an L2TP tunnel is built inside it.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Remote access VPN** to access this screen.

Figure 168 Security gateway > Configure > Remote access VPN

The screenshot displays the 'Remote access VPN' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'Security gateway > Configure > Remote access VPN'. The page title is 'Remote access VPN'. Below the title, there are two main sections for configuration.

IPSec VPN server section:

- IPSec VPN server:** A toggle switch is turned on (green).
- Outgoing interface:** A dropdown menu is set to 'WAN1'.
- NAT traversal:** A text input field with a clear 'X' button and the label '(IP or FQDN)'.
- Client VPN subnet:** A text input field with a clear 'X' button and a red asterisk indicating a required field.
- DNS name servers:** A dropdown menu set to 'Use Google Public DNS'.
- WINS:** A dropdown menu set to 'No WINS servers'.
- Secret:** A text input field with a clear 'X' button, an eye icon to toggle visibility, and a red asterisk.
- Authentication:** A dropdown menu set to 'Nebula Cloud Authentication'.

L2TP over IPSec VPN server section:

- L2TP over IPSec VPN server:** A toggle switch is turned on (green).
- Client VPN subnet:** A text input field with a clear 'X' button and a red asterisk.
- DNS name servers:** A dropdown menu set to 'Use Google Public DNS'.
- WINS:** A dropdown menu set to 'No WINS servers'.
- Secret:** A text input field with a clear 'X' button, an eye icon to toggle visibility, and a red asterisk.
- Authentication:** A dropdown menu set to 'Nebula Cloud Authentication'.

VPN provision script:

- VPN provision script:** A text input field with a blue information icon, containing the example 'E.g. nebula@zyxel.com'. To the right of the field is a 'Send Email' button with a blue envelope icon.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 143 Security gateway > Configure > Remote access VPN


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this icon to download VPN client software.
IPSec VPN server	Select to enable the IPSec client feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Disable to turn it off.
Outgoing interface	Select the WAN interface to which the IPSec VPN connection is going.
NAT traversal	Enter the IP address or domain name of the NAT router if the IPSec VPN tunnel must pass through NAT (there is a NAT router between the IPSec devices).
Client VPN subnet	Specify the IP addresses that the Nebula Device uses to assign to the IPSec VPN clients.
DNS name servers	Specify the IP addresses of DNS servers to assign to the remote users. Select Use Google Public DNS to use the DNS service offered by Google. Otherwise, select Specify nameserver to enter a static IP address.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the DNS name servers field, manually enter the DNS server IP addresses.
WINS	The WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server keeps a mapping table of the computer names on your network and the IP addresses that they are currently using. Select No WINS Servers to not send WINS server addresses to the users. Otherwise, select Specify nameserver to enter the IP addresses of WINS servers to assign to the remote users.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the WINS field, manually enter the WINS server IP addresses.
Secret	Enter the pre-shared key (password) which is used to set up the IPSec VPN tunnel.
Authentication	Select how the Nebula Device authenticates a remote user before allowing access to the IPSec VPN tunnel.
L2TP over IPSec VPN server	Select to enable the L2TP over IPSec VPN feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Disable to turn it off.
Client VPN subnet	Specify the IP addresses that the Nebula Device uses to assign to the L2TP over IPSec VPN clients.
DNS name servers	Specify the IP addresses of DNS servers to assign to the remote users. Select Use Google Public DNS to use the DNS service offered by Google. Otherwise, select Specify nameserver to enter a static IP address.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the DNS name servers field, manually enter the DNS server IP addresses.
WINS	The WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server keeps a mapping table of the computer names on your network and the IP addresses that they are currently using. Select No WINS Servers to not send WINS server addresses to the users. Otherwise, select Specify nameserver to enter the IP addresses of WINS servers to assign to the remote users.
Custom nameservers	If you select Specify nameserver in the WINS field, manually enter the WINS server IP addresses.
Secret	Enter the pre-shared key (password) which is used to set up the L2TP over IPSec VPN tunnel.

Table 143 Security gateway > Configure > Remote access VPN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Select how the Nebula Device authenticates a remote user before allowing access to the L2TP over IPSec VPN tunnel.
VPN provision script	<p>Send an email to help automatically configure VPN settings on client devices so that the devices can remotely access this Nebula Device. The email contains two scripts; one for mac OS and iOS devices, and one for Windows 8 and Windows 10 devices.</p> <p>You can send the email to one or more email addresses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If Authentication is set to Nebula Cloud Authentication, the default email address list contains all authorized VPN user email addresses and your email address. • If Authentication is set to AD and RADIUS Authentication, the default email address list contains your user email address.

10.3.8 Captive Portal

Use this screen to configure captive portal settings for each interface. A captive portal can intercept network traffic until the user authenticates his or her connection, usually through a specifically designated login web page.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal** to access this screen.

Figure 169 Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal


Security gateway > Configure > [Captive portal](#)

Captive portal


Interface: ▼

Captive portal on this interface is direct access. You can change this setting [here](#).


Themes



Default Modern



Copy of Modern



Copy of Modern

Click-to-continue/Sign-on page

Logo: [Upload a logo](#)

Message:

Success page

Message:

External captive portal URL

Use URL: off URL:

To use custom captive portal page, please download the zip file and edit them.
[Download](#) the customized captive portal page example.

Captive portal behavior

After the captive portal page where the user should go?

Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page

To promotion URL:

or Cancel

(Please allow 1-2 minutes for changes to take effect.)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

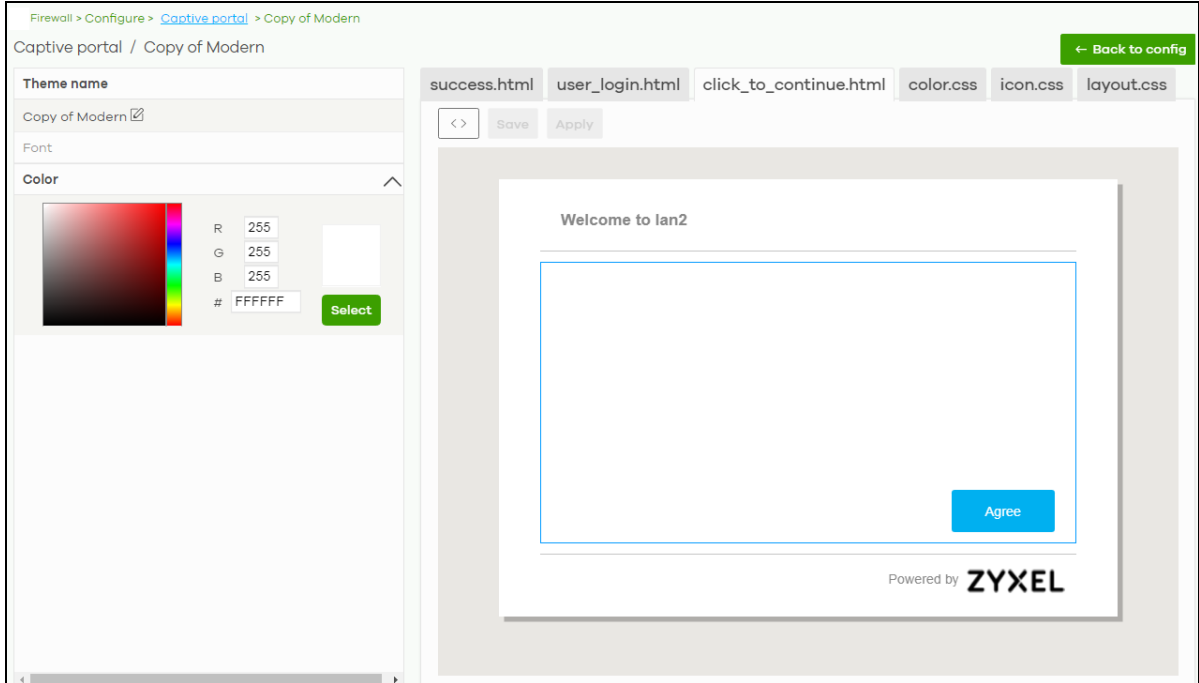
Table 144 Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the Nebula Device's interface (network) to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Themes	<p>This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Preview icon at the upper right of a theme image to display the portal page in a new frame. Click the Copy icon to create a new custom theme (portal page). Click the Edit icon of a custom theme to go to a screen, where you can view and configure the details of the custom portal pages. See Section 10.3.8.1 on page 390. Click the Remove icon to delete a custom theme. <p>Select the theme you want to use on the specified interface.</p>
Click-to-continue/Sign-on page	
This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON .	
Logo	<p>This shows the logo image that you uploaded for the customized login page.</p> <p>Click Upload a logo and specify the location and file name of the logo graphic or click Browse to locate it. You can use the following image file formats: GIF, PNG, or JPG.</p>
Message	Enter a note to display below the title. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Success page	
Message	Enter a note to display on the page that displays when a user logs in successfully. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
External captive portal URL	
Use URL	<p>Select On to use a custom login page from an external web portal instead of the one built into the NCC. You can configure the look and feel of the web portal page.</p> <p>Specify the login page's URL; for example, <code>http://IIS server IP Address/login.asp</code>. The Internet Information Server (IIS) is the web server on which the web portal files are installed.</p>
Captive portal behavior	
After the captive portal page where the user should go?	Select To promotion URL and specify the URL of the web site/page to which the user is redirected after a successful login. Otherwise, select Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page .

10.3.8.1 Custom Theme Edit

Use this screen to check what the custom portal pages look like. You can also view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. Click a custom login page's **Edit** button in the **Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal** screen to access this screen.

Figure 170 Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal: Edit



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 145 Security gateway > Configure > Captive portal: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Back to config	Click this button to return to the Captive portal screen.
Theme name	This shows the name of the theme. Click the edit icon to change it.
Font	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. To display this section and customize the font type and/or size, click an item with text in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file).
Color	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. Click an item in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file) to display this section and customize its color, such as the color of the button, text, window's background, links, borders, and so on. Select a color that you want to use and click the Select button.
HTML/CSS	This shows the HTML file name of the portal page created for the selected custom theme. This also shows the name of the CSS files created for the selected custom theme. Click an HTML file to display the portal page. You can also change colors and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file.
<>	Click this button to view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. It is recommended that you do NOT change the script code to ensure proper operation of the portal page.
⦿	Click this button to preview the portal page (the selected HTML file).
Save	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC.
Apply	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC and apply them to the Nebula Device in the site.

10.3.9 Network Access Method

Use this screen to enable or disable web authentication on an interface.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Network access method** to access this screen.

Figure 171 Security gateway > Configure > Network access method

Security gateway > Configure > Network access method

Network access method

Interfaces: LAN1

Network Access

Disable
Users can access the network directly

Click-to-continue
Users must view and agree the captive portal page then can access the network

Sign-on-with Nebula Cloud Authentication

Walled garden on

Walled garden ranges

[What do I enter here?](#)

One IP address/domain in one line to specify your walled garden.
 Example:
 *.zyxel.com
 www.zyxel.com
 192.168.1.0/24

Captive portal access attribute

Self-registration: Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized

Login on multiple client devices: Multiple devices access simultaneously

NCAS disconnection behavior ⓘ

Allowed:
Client devices can access the network without signing in, except they are explicitly blocked

Limited:
Only currently authorized clients and whitelisted client devices will be able to access the network

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 146 Security gateway > Configure > Network access method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interfaces	Select the Nebula Device's interface (network) to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Network Access	Select Disable to turn off web authentication. Select Click-to-continue to block network traffic until a client agrees to the policy of user agreement. Select Sign-on with to block network traffic until a client authenticates with an external RADIUS or AD server through the specifically designated web portal page. Select Nebula Cloud Authentication or an authentication server that you have configured in the Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings screen (see Section 10.3.11 on page 396). Select Two-Factor Authentication to require that the user log in using both their password and a Google Authenticator code. To log in, users must have Two-Factor Authentication enabled on their account and have setup Google Authenticator on their mobile device.
Walled garden	This field is not configurable if you set Network Access to Disable . Select to turn on or off the walled garden feature. With a walled garden, you can define one or more web site addresses that all users can access without logging in. These can be used for advertisements for example.
Walled garden ranges	Specify walled garden web site links, which use a domain name or an IP address for web sites that all users are allowed to access without logging in.
Captive portal access attribute	
Self-registration	This field is available only when you select Sign-on with Nebula Cloud authentication in the Network Access field. Select Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized or Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized to display a link in the captive portal login page. The link directs users to a page where they can create an account before they authenticate with the NCC. For Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized , users cannot log in with the account until the account is authorized and granted access. For Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized , users can just use the registered account to log in without administrator approval. Select Don't allow users to create accounts to not display a link for account creation in the captive portal login page.
Login on multiple client devices	This field is available only when you select Sign-on with in the Network Access field. Select Multiple devices access simultaneously if you allow users to log in as many times as they want as long as they use different IP addresses. Select One device at a time if you do NOT allow users to have simultaneous logins.
NCAS disconnection behavior	This field is available only when you select Sign-on with Nebula Cloud Authentication in the Network Access field. Select Allowed to allow any users to access the network without authentication when the NCAS (Nebula Cloud Authentication Server) is not reachable. Select Limited to allow only the currently connected users or the users in the white list to access the network.

10.3.10 Traffic Shaping

Use this screen to configure maximum bandwidth and load balancing on the Nebula Device.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Traffic shaping** to access this screen.

Figure 172 Security gateway > Configure > Traffic shaping

Security gateway > Configure > [Traffic shaping](#)

Traffic shaping

Uplink configuration

WAN1

Up(kb/s): 466623

Down(kb/s): 466623

WAN2

Up(kb/s): unlimited

Down(kb/s): unlimited

WAN load balancing algorithm: Failover

Prefer WAN: WAN1

WAN Connectivity check:

Check Default Gateway

Check this address: 8.8.8.8 (IP Address)

Global bandwidth limits

Per-client limit:

Source First IP	Source Last IP	Destination IPs	Port(s)
192.168.100.1	192.168.100.254	any	any

[+ Add](#)

Session Control

UDP Session Time Out: 60 (1-28800 second)


Default Session per Host: 1000 (0-8192, 0 is unlimited)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 147 Security gateway > Configure > Traffic shaping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Uplink configuration	
WAN 1	Set the amount of upstream/downstream bandwidth for the WAN interface.
WAN 2	Click a lock icon to change the lock state. If the lock icon for a WAN interface is locked, the bandwidth limit you set applies to both inbound and outbound traffic. If the lock is unlocked, you can set inbound and outbound traffic to have different transmission speeds.
WAN load balancing algorithm	<p>Select a load balancing method to use from the drop-down list box.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Least Load First to send new session traffic through the least utilized WAN interface. • Select Round Robin to balance the traffic load between interfaces based on their respective weights (bandwidth). An interface with a larger weight gets more chances to transmit traffic than an interface with a smaller weight. For example, if the weight ratio of WAN 1 and WAN 2 interfaces is 2:1, the Nebula Device chooses WAN 1 for two sessions' traffic and WAN 2 for one session's traffic in each round of three new sessions. • Select Failover to send traffic through a second WAN interface when the primary WAN interface is down or disabled.
Prefer WAN	<p>Specify the primary WAN interface through which the Nebula Device forwards traffic.</p> <p>This field is available when you set WAN load balancing algorithm to Failover.</p>
WAN Connectivity check	<p>The interface can regularly check the connection to the gateway you specified to make sure it is still available. The Nebula Device resumes routing to the gateway the first time the gateway passes the connectivity check.</p> <p>If the WAN connection is down (the check fails), the Nebula Device will switch (failover) to use a redundant WAN connection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Check Default Gateway to use the default gateway for the connectivity check. • Select Check this address to specify a domain name or IP address for the connectivity check. <p>Note: If you select Check this address but the IP address you specified cannot be reached through the primary WAN interface, the Nebula Device will switch to the other one even if the primary WAN connection is still up. Make sure your Nebula Device supports multiple WAN interfaces and both WAN connections are configured properly before you select Check this address.</p> <p>This field is available when you set WAN load balancing algorithm to Failover.</p>
Global bandwidth limits	
Per-client limit	You can limit a client's outbound or inbound bandwidth.
Source First IP	Enter the first IP address in a range of source IP addresses for which the Nebula Device applies the rule.
Source Last IP	Enter the last IP address in a range of source IP addresses for which the Nebula Device applies the rule.
Destination IPs	<p>Enter the destination IP addresses for which the Nebula Device applies the rule.</p> <p>Enter any if the rule is effective for every destination.</p>
Port(s)	Enter the port numbers (1 – 65535) to which the packets go. The Nebula Device applies the rule to the packets that go to the corresponding service port. any means all service ports.
Protocol	<p>Select TCP or UDP if you want to specify a protocol for the rule. Otherwise select Any.</p> <p>Any means the rule is applicable to all services.</p>

Table 147 Security gateway > Configure > Traffic shaping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Down/Up	Set the maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth for traffic from an individual source IP address. Click a lock icon to change the lock state. If the lock icon is locked, the bandwidth limit you set applies to both inbound and outbound traffic. If the lock is unlocked, you can set inbound and outbound traffic to have different transmission speeds.
Priority	Enter a number between 1 and 7 to set the priority for traffic that matches this policy. The smaller the number, the higher the priority. Traffic with a higher priority is given bandwidth before traffic with a lower priority.
	Click this icon to remove the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.
Session Control	
UDP Session Time Out	Set how many seconds the Nebula Device will allow a UDP session to remain idle (without UDP traffic) before closing it.
Default Session per Host	Set a common limit to the number of concurrent NAT/Security Policy sessions each client computer can have. If only a few clients use peer to peer applications, you can raise this number to improve their performance. With heavy peer to peer application use, lower this number to ensure no single client uses too many of the available NAT sessions.

10.3.11 Gateway Settings

Use this screen to configure DNS settings and external AD (Active Directory) server or RADIUS server that the Nebula Device can use in authenticating users.

AD (Active Directory) is a directory service that is both a directory and a protocol for controlling access to a network. The directory consists of a database specialized for fast information retrieval and filtering activities. You create and store user profile and login information on the external server.

This screen also lets you configure the addresses of walled garden web sites that users can access without logging into the Nebula Device. The settings in this screen apply to all networks (interfaces) on the Nebula Device. If you want to configure walled garden web site links for a specific interface, use the **Network access method** screen.

Click **Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings** to access this screen.

Figure 173 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings

Security gateway > Configure > [Gateway settings](#)

Gateway settings

DNS

Address Record

FQDN	IP Address
d.nebula.zyxel.com	52.19.85.221
www.nebula.zyxel.com	52.84.248.13
s.nebula.zyxel.com	18.202.42.142

[+ Add](#)

Domain Zone Forwarder

Domain Zone	IP Address	Interface
		LAN1

[+ Add](#)

Authentication Server

My AD Server

Name	Server address	Backup server address	Port	AD domain
ADTest	192.168.8.1		389	zyxel.com

[+ Add](#)

My RADIUS Server

Name	Server address	Backup server address	Port	Secret
			1812	

[+ Add](#)

Walled garden

Global walled garden

This is global walled garden configuration. All web authentication interface will match this policy first and the second priority is the interface walled garden policy. If needed only allow specify interface, please go to Network access method configure

[What do I enter here?](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 148 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DNS	
Address Record	This record specifies the mapping of a Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) to an IP address. An FQDN consists of a host and domain name. For example, www.zyxel.com.tw is a fully qualified domain name, where "www" is the host, "zyxel" is the third-level domain, "com" is the second-level domain, and "tw" is the top level domain.
FQDN	Enter a host's fully qualified domain name. Use "*" as a prefix in the FQDN for a wildcard domain name (for example, *.example.com).
IP Address	Enter the host's IP address.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
Domain Zone Forwarder	This specifies a DNS server's IP address. The Nebula Device can query the DNS server to resolve domain zones for features like VPN, DDNS and the time server. When the Nebula Device needs to resolve a domain zone, it checks it against the domain zone forwarder entries in the order that they appear in this list.
Domain Zone	A domain zone is a fully qualified domain name without the host. For example, zyxel.com.tw is the domain zone for the www.zyxel.com.tw fully qualified domain name. Whenever the Nebula Device needs to resolve a zyxel.com.tw domain name, it can send a query to the recorded name server IP address.
IP Address	Enter the DNS server's IP address.
Interface	Select the interface through which the Nebula Device sends DNS queries to the specified DNS server.
	Click this icon to remove the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new entry.
Authentication Server	
My AD Server	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the server.
Server address	Enter the address of the AD server.
Backup server address	If the AD server has a backup server, enter its address here.
Port	Specify the port number on the AD server to which the Nebula Device sends authentication requests. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.
AD domain	Specify the Active Directory forest root domain name.
Domain admin	Enter the name of the user that is located in the container for Active Directory Users, who is a member of the Domain Admin group.
Password	Enter the password of the Domain Admin user account.
Advanced	Click to open a screen where you can select to use Default or Custom advanced settings. See Section 10.3.11.1 on page 399 .
	Click this icon to remove the server.
Add	Click this button to create a new server.
My RADIUS server	
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the server.
Server address	Enter the address of the RADIUS server.
Backup server address	If the RADIUS server has a backup server, enter its address here.

Table 148 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Specify the port number on the RADIUS server to which the Nebula Device sends authentication requests. Enter a number between 1 and 65535.
Secret	Enter a password (up to 15 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external authentication server and the Nebula Device. The key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external authentication server and the Nebula Device.
Advanced	Click to open a screen where you can select to use Default or Custom advanced settings. See Section 10.3.11.1 on page 399 .
	Click this icon to remove the server.
Add	Click this button to create a new server.
Walled garden	
Global Walled garden	With a walled garden, you can define one or more web site addresses that all users can access without logging in. These can be used for advertisements for example. Specify walled garden web site links, which use a domain name or an IP address for web sites that all users are allowed to access without logging in.

10.3.11.1 Advanced Settings

Click the **Advanced** column in the **Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings** screen to access this screen.

Figure 174 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings: Advanced



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Advanced" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following fields:

- Preset:** A dropdown menu currently set to "Default".
- Timeout:** A text input field containing "5", with a clear button (X) and a range indicator "(1-300 seconds)".
- Case-Sensitive User Name:** A radio button control currently set to "off".
- NAS IP Address:** A text input field containing "1270.0.1", with a clear button (X).

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Close" (highlighted in blue) and "OK".

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 149 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings: Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Preset	Select Default to use the pre-defined settings, or select Custom to configure your own settings.
Timeout	Specify the timeout period (between 1 and 300 seconds) before the Nebula Device disconnects from the server. In this case, user authentication fails. Search timeout occurs when either the user information is not in the servers or the AD or server is down.
Case-Sensitive User Name	Click ON if the server checks the case of the user name. Otherwise, click OFF to not configure your user name as case-sensitive.
NAS IP Address	This field is only for RADIUS. Enter the IP address of the NAS (Network Access Server).

Table 149 Security gateway > Configure > Gateway settings: Advanced (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
OK	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

CHAPTER 11

Switch

11.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor the Nebula managed Switches in your network and configure settings even before a Nebula Device is deployed and added to the site.

Nebula Device refers to Zyxel Hybrid Switches (GS / XGS / XMG / XS Series) in this chapter. To view the list of Nebula Devices that can be managed through NCC, go to **Help > Support tools > Device function table**.

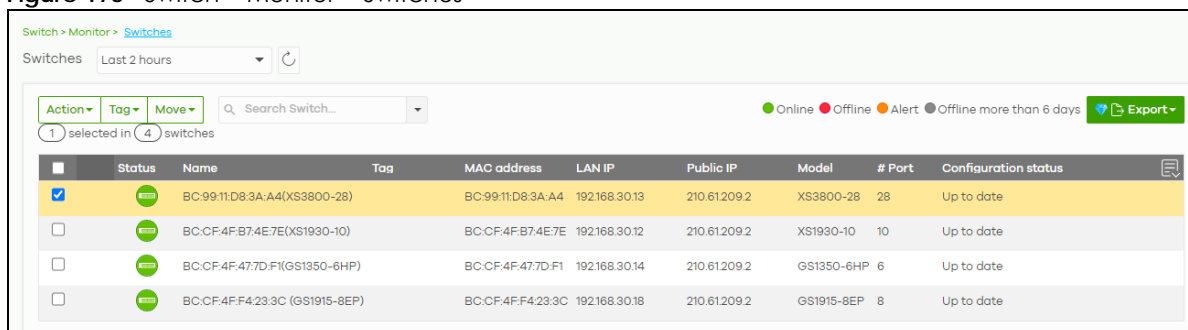
11.2 Monitor

Use the **Monitor** menus to check the Nebula Device information, client information, event log messages and summary report for Nebula Devices in the selected site.

11.2.1 Switches

This screen allows you to view the detailed information about a Nebula Device in the selected site. Click **Switch > Monitor > Switches** to access this screen.

Figure 175 Switch > Monitor > Switches




The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 150 Switch > Monitor > Switches

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch	Select to view the Nebula Device information and connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month.
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Action	Perform an action on the selected Nebula Devices.
Reboot	Restart the Nebula Device.

Table 150 Switch > Monitor > Switches (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upgrade	Upgrade the firmware on the Nebula Device.
Tag	Select one or multiple Nebula Devices and click this button to create a new tag for the Nebula Devices or delete an existing tag.
Move	Select one or multiple Nebula Devices and click this button to move the Nebula Device to another site or remove the Nebula Device from the current site.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Devices.
Switch	This shows the number of Nebula Devices connected to the site network.
Export	Click this button to save the Nebula Device list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Status	<p>This shows the status of the Nebula Device. Hover the mouse over the icon for a brief description.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: The Nebula Device is online and has no alerts. • Amber: The Nebula Device has alerts. • Red: The Nebula Device is offline. • Gray: The Nebula Device has been offline for 7 days or more. • With lock: The Nebula Device is locked by Auto Configuration Recovery. See Table 172 on page 445 for more information. <p>Move the cursor over an amber alert icon to view the alerts the NCC generates when an error or something abnormal is detected on the IPTV network.</p>
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
LAN IP	This shows the local (LAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
# Port	This shows the number of the Nebula Device port which is connected to the NCC.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Bandwidth Utilization (Uplink port)	This shows what percentage of the upstream/downstream bandwidth is currently being used by the Nebula Device's uplink port.
Production information	This shows the Nebula Device's product description to explain what this Nebula Device is and also provides information about its features.
Connectivity	<p>This shows the Nebula Device connection status. Nothing displays if the Nebula Device is offline.</p> <p>The gray time slot indicates the connection to the NCC is down, and the green time slot indicates the connection is up. Move the cursor over a time slot to see the actual date and time when a Nebula Device is connected or disconnected.</p>
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Firmware status	This shows whether the firmware installed on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted or received by the Nebula Device's clients.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields. For faster loading of data, select only the configuration fields listed that do NOT take a long time to fetch data.

11.2.1.1 Switch Details

Click a Nebula Device entry in the **Switch > Monitor > Switches** screen to display individual Nebula Device statistics.

Figure 176 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details

This switch is currently protected by Auto Configuration Recovery
You have 25 day(s) left of your Nebula Professional Pack trial. ([More information](#))

Switch > Monitor > Switch > XS3800-1
Switch / XS3800-1

Configuration

The Switch is being protected by "Auto Configuration Recovery". NCC will pause operation to apply further Switch setting until the issues are resolved.
You can reference [change Log](#) to polish the configuration.

Unlock

Name: XS3800-1
MAC address: BC-99:11:D8:3A-A4
Serial number: S182L52080126 (XS3800-28)
Description:
Address:
Tag:

Status

LAN IP: 10.214.48.34 (via DHCP)
Gateway: 10.214.48.254
DNS: 10.214.48.254
VLAN: 1
DHCP server: 192.168.249.158
Public IP: 61.222.75.14
Topology: [Show](#)
RSTP status: root is [XS3800-1](#) / root bridge priority: 32768
IGMP status: Disabled
PoE status: N/A
History: [Event log](#)
Configuration status: Not up to date
Firmware: [Custom](#)
Current version: V4.80(ABML0)b10 | 07/01/2022

Map Photo

Map Satellite

Health Pharmacy
Zhongyong Rd
Wenhua St
Hsinchu Moat Park
Hsinchu Moat Park
park strip center
Art Gallery
ation Hall
美術館
Fuhua St
Fuhua St
大和園燒肉屋
Yakiniku

Ask Question

Ports [Configure ports](#)

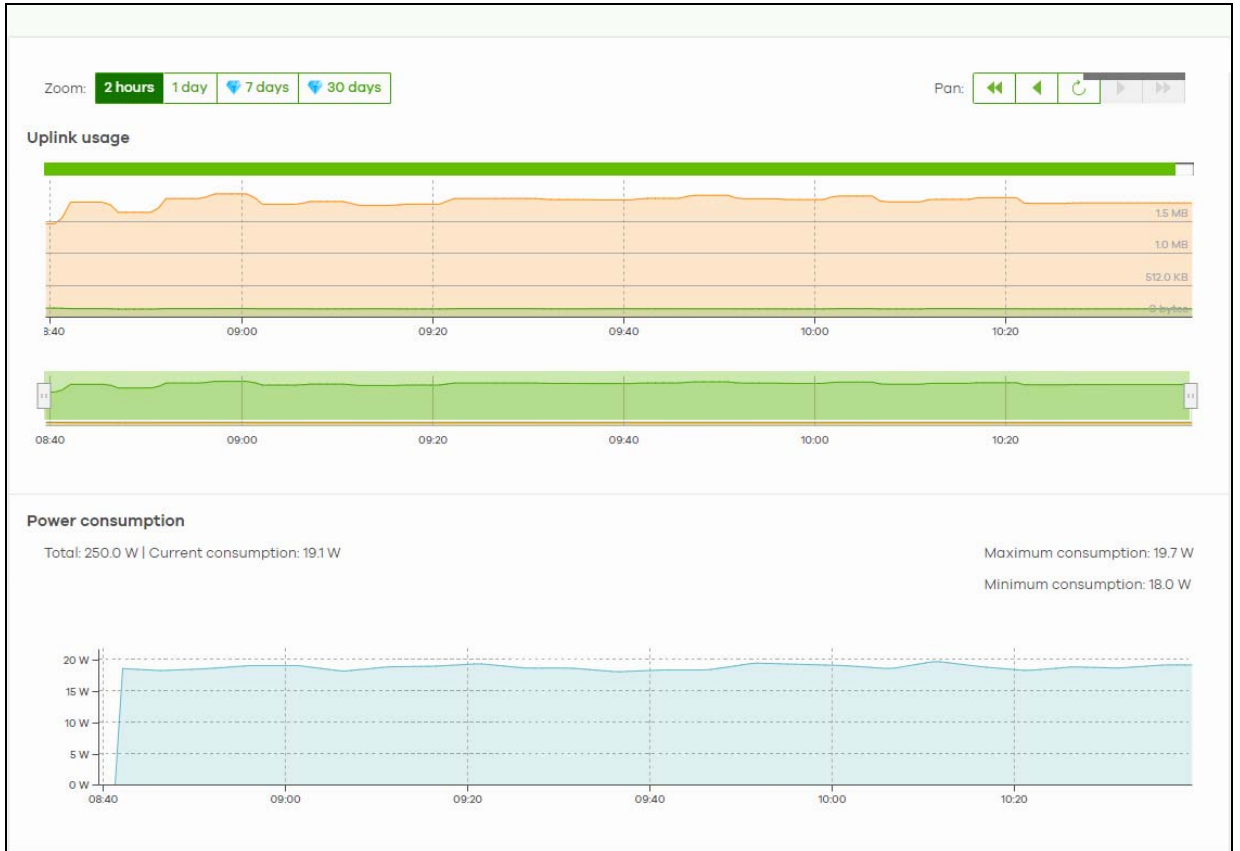
2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 22 24 24 26 26 28 28
1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19 21 21 23 23 25 25 27 27

10/100Mbps
1Gbps
2.5Gbps
5Gbps
10Gbps
STP blocking
Uplink
PoE

Live tools [Ask Question](#)

Ping [Switch tables](#) [Reboot switch](#) [Locator LED](#) [Remote Access](#)

Enter a hostname or IP address.
google.com



Note: The banner **This switch is currently protected by Auto Configuration Recovery** will display when this Nebula Device is locked by NCC. Click the **Unlock** button to continue using the Nebula Device.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 151 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Unlock	This button only appears when the Nebula Device is locked by NCC. Click this button to continue using the Nebula Device.
Configuration	
Click the edit icon to change the Nebula Device name, description, tags and address. You can also move the Nebula Device to another site. After modifying a Nebula Device name, the new name will be synchronized to the Nebula Device and can be seen by protocols such as SNMP and LLDP.	
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Address	This shows the user-specified address for the Nebula Device.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
Status	

Table 151 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details (continued)

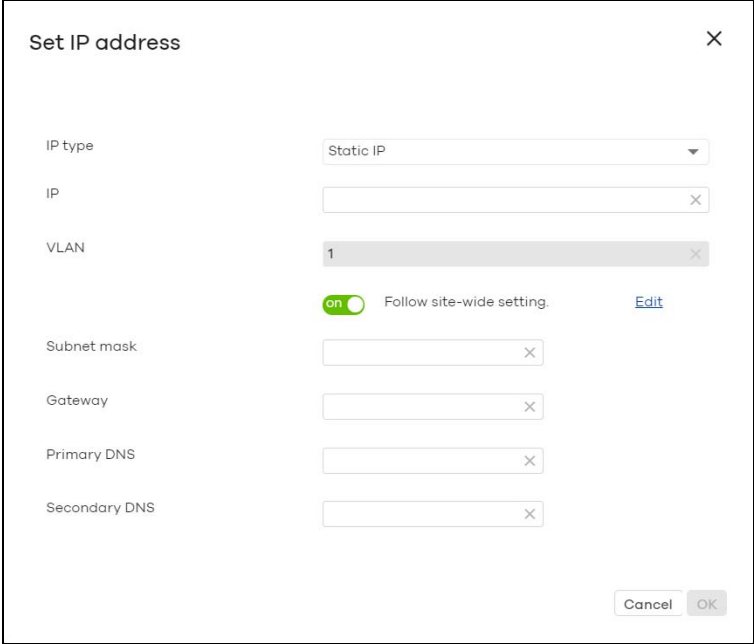
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN IP	<p>This shows the local (LAN) IP address of the Nebula Device. It also shows the IP addresses of the gateway and DNS servers.</p> <p>Click the edit icon to open a screen where you can change the IP address, VLAN ID number and DNS server settings.</p> 
DHCP Server	This shows the IP address of the DHCP server.
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
Topology	Click Show to go to the Site-wide > Monitor > Topology screen. See Section 7.1.6 on page 215 .
RSTP Status	This shows Disabled when RSTP is disabled on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, it shows the name or MAC address of the Nebula Device that is the root bridge of the spanning tree, and the bridge priority.
IGMP Status	This shows whether IGMP is enabled on the Nebula Device. If IGMP is enabled, it also shows the ID number of the VLAN on which the Nebula Device learns the multicast group membership and the IP address of the Nebula Device interface in IGMP querier mode.
PoE Status	<p>This shows the power management mode, the amount of power the Nebula Device is currently supplying to the connected PoE-enabled devices and the total power the Nebula Device can provide to the connected PoE-enabled devices on the PoE ports. N/A displays if the Nebula Device does not support PoE.</p> <p>Click the edit icon to open the PoE Configuration screen. See Section 11.2.1.2 on page 407.</p>
History	Click Event log to go to the Switch > Monitor > Event log screen.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Firmware	This shows whether the firmware on the Nebula Device is up-to-date or there is firmware update available for the Nebula Device.
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Map	This shows the location of the Nebula Device on the Google map.
Photo	This shows the photo of the Nebula Device. Click Add to upload one or more photos. Click x to remove a photo.

Table 151 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Ports	<p>This shows the ports on the Nebula Device. You can click a port to see the individual port statistics. See Section 11.2.1.3 on page 408. Move the pointer over a port to see additional port information. The port color indicates the connection status of the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gray (#888888): The port is disconnected. • Orange (#FF8900): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10 or 100 Mbps. • Green (#64BE00): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps). • Azure (#0079FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 2.5 Gbps. • Violet (#8800FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 5 Gbps. • Blue (#004FEE): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10000 Mbps (10 Gbps). <p>When the port is in the STP blocking state, a blocked icon displays on top of the port ( for example) in the diagram.</p>
Name	This shows the Nebula Device name configured in NCC.
Status	This shows the connection status of the port.
Type	This shows the port type (Trunk or Access), PVID, and allowed VLANs.
Speed	This shows the current connection speed of the port. If the speed is unavailable, this displays "Ethernet".
LLDP	This shows the LLDP information received on the port.
Reset	<p>This button only appears when the PoE port is connected to a PD (powered device). Follow the prompt and click Confirm to reboot the PD connected to this port.</p> <p>Note: This button is not available for an uplink port.</p>
Configure ports	Click this button to go to the Switch > Configure > Switch ports screen, where you can view port summary. See Section 11.3.1 on page 424 .
Live tools	
Ping	Enter the host name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping in order to test a connection and click Ping .
Port Power Cycle	Enter the number of the ports and click the Reset button to disable and enable the ports again.
MAC table	<p>This shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which ports.</p> <p>You can define how it displays and arrange the data in the summary table below.</p> <p>Note: This tab will appear for NSW100 and NSW200 Series only.</p>
Switch tables	<p>Import the following data into NCC:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MAC table. Click Run to show what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which ports. You can define how it displays and arrange the data in the summary table. • Routing table. Click Run to show the routing destination, gateway, interface IP addresses, hop count, and routing methods. The routing table is only displayed for L3 Nebula Devices. • ARP table. Click Run to show the IP-to-MAC address mappings. The ARP table is only displayed for L3 Nebula Devices. • IP source guard. Click Run to show the static, DHCP snooping, blocked client entries, and expiration time of DHCP snooping and blocked entries on the Nebula Device. <p>After clicking Run in IP source guard, the IPSG (IP source guard) table could be empty if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It takes about 5 minutes to refresh the address table after you apply the Nebula Device settings • Protected port is not specified • NCC may not get completed data from Nebula Device due to unstable network. Please retry.

Table 151 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details (continued)

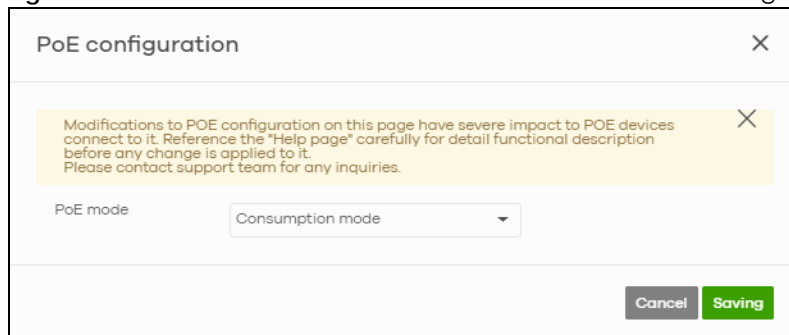
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reboot switch	Click the Reboot button to restart the Nebula Device.
Locator LED	Enter a time interval between 1 and 60 minutes to stop the locator LED from blinking. The locator LED will start to blink for the number of minutes set here. Click the  button to turn on the locator feature, which shows the actual location of the Nebula Device between several Nebula Devices in the network.
Remote Access	Select to use TCP (Transmission Control Protocol) Port 22 or 443 to establish a remote connection to this Nebula Device. The Nebula Device will create a reverse SSH (Secure SHell) connection. Then click Establish . After clicking Ok , NCC will provide a remote connection IPv4 address and service port number. For example, Remote connection: 34.247.173.104:27086. Use this IPv4 address and port to connect to the Nebula Device using an SSH terminal emulator (for example, Putty). The remote session will be available for 30 minutes. In case the connection cannot be established, confirm that the network allows Port 22 or 443 . Note: Use Remote Access for troubleshooting only.
Uplink usage	
Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.	
Zoom	Select to view the statistics in the past 12 hours, day, week, month, 3 months or 6 months.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by one day or week.
Power Consumption	
	Select to view the Nebula Device power consumption in the past two hours, day, week or month.
	This shows the current, total, maximum and minimum power consumption of the Nebula Device.
y-axis	The y-axis shows how much power is used in Watts.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the power consumption is recorded.

11.2.1.2 PoE Configuration

Use this screen to set the PoE settings for the Nebula Device. To access this screen, click the edit icon next to **PoE Status** in the **Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details** screen.

Note: To set PoE settings for an individual port, such as schedule, priority, and power mode, edit the Nebula Device's port settings. For details, see [Section 11.3.1 on page 424](#).

Figure 177 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: PoE Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 152 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: PoE Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PoE Mode	<p>Select the power management mode you want the Nebula Device to use.</p> <p>Classification mode – Select this if you want the Nebula Device to reserve the Max Power (mW) to each powered device (PD) according to the priority level. If the total power supply runs out, PDs with lower priority do not get power to function.</p> <p>Consumption mode – Select this if you want the Nebula Device to manage the total power supply so that each connected PD gets a resource. However, the power allocated by the Nebula Device may be less than the Max Power (mW) of the PD. PDs with higher priority also get more power than those with lower priority levels.</p>
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Saving	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

11.2.1.3 Switch Port Details

Use this to view individual Nebula Device port statistics. To access this screen, click a port in the **Ports** section of the **Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details** screen or click the **details** link next to a port in the **Switch > Configure > Switch ports** screen.

Figure 178 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: Port Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 153 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: Port Details



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Switch / Port	Select to view the port information and connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month.
Port	<p>This figure shows the ports on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Click a port to go to the corresponding port details screen. The selected port is highlighted. Move the pointer over a port to see additional port information, such as its name, MAC address, type, and connection speed.</p> <p>The port color indicates the connection status of the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gray (#888888): The port is disconnected. Orange (#FF8900): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10 or 100 Mbps. Green (#64BE00): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps). Azure (#0079FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 2.5 Gbps. Violet (#8800FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 5 Gbps. Blue (#004FEE): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10000 Mbps (10 Gbps). <p>When the port is in the STP blocking state, a blocked icon displays on top of the port ( for example) in the diagram.</p>
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the port.
Status	This shows the connection status of the port.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the port.
Type	This shows the port type (Trunk or Access), PVID, and allowed VLANs.
Speed	This shows the current connection speed of the port. If the speed is unavailable, this displays "Ethernet".
LLDP	This shows the LLDP information received on the port.
Configuration	
Click the edit icon to open the Switch ports screen and show the ports that match the filter criteria (the selected port number). See Section 11.3.1 on page 424 .	
Summary	This shows the port's VLAN settings.
RSTP	This shows whether RSTP is disabled or enabled on the port.
Port mirroring	This shows whether traffic is mirrored on the port.
Status	
Name	This shows the name of the port.
Status	This shows the status of the port.
LLDP	This shows the LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) information received on the port.
History	Click Event log to go to the Switch > Monitor > Event log screen.
Bandwidth Utilization	
Current Utilization	This shows what percentage of the upstream/downstream bandwidth is currently being used by the port.
Maximum Utilization	This shows the maximum upstream/downstream bandwidth utilization (in percentage).
Minimum Utilization	This shows the minimum upstream/downstream bandwidth utilization (in percentage).
y-axis	The y-axis represents the transmission rate in Kbps (kilobits per second).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Power Consumption	
Total	This shows the total power consumption of the port.

Table 153 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Consumption	This shows the current power consumption of the port.
Maximum Consumption	This shows the maximum power consumption of the port.
Minimum Consumption	This shows the minimum power consumption of the port.
y-axis	The y-axis shows how much power is used in Watts.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the power consumption is recorded.
Packets Counters	
TX/RX Unicast	This shows the number of good unicast packets transmitted/received on the port.
TX/RX Multicast	This shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted/received on the port.
TX/RX Broadcast	This shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted/received on the port.
TX/RX Pause	This shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted/received on the port.
IGMP V2/V3	
Query Rx	This shows the number of IGMP query packets received on the port.
Report Rx	This shows the number of IGMP report packets received on the port.
Report Tx	This shows the number of IGMP report packets transmitted on the port.
Report Drops	This shows the number of IGMP report packets dropped on the port.
Leave Rx	This shows the number of IGMP leave packets received on the port.
Leave Tx	This shows the number of IGMP leave packets transmitted on the port.
Leave Drops	This shows the number of IGMP leave packets dropped on the port.
Error Packets	
RX CRC	This shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) errors. CRC errors indicate packet errors in the network, potentially caused by mismatching Ethernet speed/duplex, bad cables or transceivers, or malfunctioning client devices.
Length	This shows the number of packets received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
IPv4 Address	This shows the IP address of the incoming frame which is forwarded on the port. Note: The IP address is obtained using one of the following three methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LLDP remote information • Information collected by the Nebula Security Gateway (NSG) in this site • Information collected by NCC when the client connected to Nebula
MAC Address	This shows the MAC address of the incoming frame which is forwarded on the port.
VLAN	This shows the VLAN group to which the incoming frame belongs.
Cable Diagnostics	
Diagnose	Click Diagnose to perform a physical wire-pair test of the Ethernet connections on the port. The following fields display when you diagnose a port.
Channel	An Ethernet cable usually has four pairs of wires. A 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX port only use and test two pairs, while a 1000BASE-T port requires all four pairs. This displays the descriptive name of the wire-pair in the cable.

Table 153 Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Pair Status	<p>OK: The physical connection between the wire-pair is okay.</p> <p>Open: There is no physical connection (an open circuit detected) between the wire-pair.</p> <p>Short: There is a short circuit detected between the wire-pair.</p> <p>Unknown: The Nebula Device failed to run cable diagnostics on the cable connected to this port.</p> <p>Unsupported: The port is a fiber port or it is not active.</p>
Cable Length	<p>This displays the total length of the Ethernet cable that is connected to the port when the Pair Status is OK and the Nebula Device chipset supports this feature.</p> <p>This shows N/A if the Pair Status is Open or Short. Check the Distance to fault.</p> <p>This shows Unsupported if the Nebula Device chipset does not support to show the cable length.</p>
Distance to fault (m)	<p>This displays the distance between the port and the location where the cable is open or shorted.</p> <p>This shows N/A if the Pair Status is OK.</p> <p>This shows Unsupported if the Nebula Device chipset does not support to show the distance.</p>
DDMI	This section is available only on an SFP (Small Form Factor Pluggable) port.
DDMI	Click DDMI (Digital Diagnostics Monitoring Interface) to display real-time SFP transceiver information and operating parameters on the port. You can also see the alarm and warning thresholds for temperature, voltage, transmission bias, transmission and receiving power.
Port	This shows the number of the port on the Nebula Device.
Vendor	This shows the vendor name of the transceiver installed in the port.
PN	This shows the part number of the transceiver installed in the port.
SN	This shows the serial number of the transceiver installed in the port.
Revision	This shows the firmware version of the transceiver installed in the port.
Date-code	This shows the date the installed transceiver's firmware was created.
Transceiver	This shows the type and the Gigabit Ethernet standard supported by the transceiver installed in the port.
Calibration	This shows whether the diagnostic information is internally calibrated or externally calibrated.
Current	This shows the current operating parameters on the port, such as transceiver temperature, laser bias current, transmitted optical power, received optical power and transceiver supply voltage.
High Alarm Threshold	This shows the high alarm threshold for temperature, voltage, transmission bias, transmission and receiving power. A trap is sent when the operating parameter is above the threshold.
High Warn Threshold	This shows the high warning threshold for temperature, voltage, transmission bias, transmission and receiving power.
Low Warn Threshold	This shows the low alarm threshold for temperature, voltage, transmission bias, transmission and receiving power. A trap is sent when the operating parameter is below the threshold.
Low Alarm Threshold	This shows the low warning threshold for temperature, voltage, transmission bias, transmission and receiving power.

11.2.2 Clients

This menu item redirects to **Site-Wide > Monitor > Clients**, with type set to **Switches clients**. For details, see [Section 7.1.2 on page 205](#).

11.2.3 Event Log

Use this screen to view Nebula Device log messages. You can enter the Nebula Device name or a key word, select one or multiple event types, or specify a date/time or even a time range to display only the log messages related to it.

Click **Switch > Monitor > Event Log** to access this screen.

Figure 179 Switch > Monitor > Event log

The screenshot displays the 'Event log' interface. At the top, there are search filters for Switch, Keyword, Priority, Category, and Tag, all set to 'Any'. Below these are date and time filters: 'From: 2022-07-07 10:05' and 'To: 2022-07-07 11:05' in UTC+8. A 'Search' button is on the right. Below the filters, there are navigation buttons for 'Newer', 'Older', and 'Export'. The main area is a table with columns: Time, Priority, Switch, Tag, Category, and Detail. The table contains 10 entries, all from the switch 'XS3800-1-1'. The entries include system messages like 'Auto restore back up configuration', 'Save system configuration', and 'Gets the time and date from a time server successfully', as well as network-related messages like 'Cloud: Device is online, VLAN 1, DHCP IP 10.214.48.34' and 'Cloud Netconf connection has been terminated'. At the bottom right, there is a pagination control showing 'Page 1 of 56' and 'Results per page: 10'.

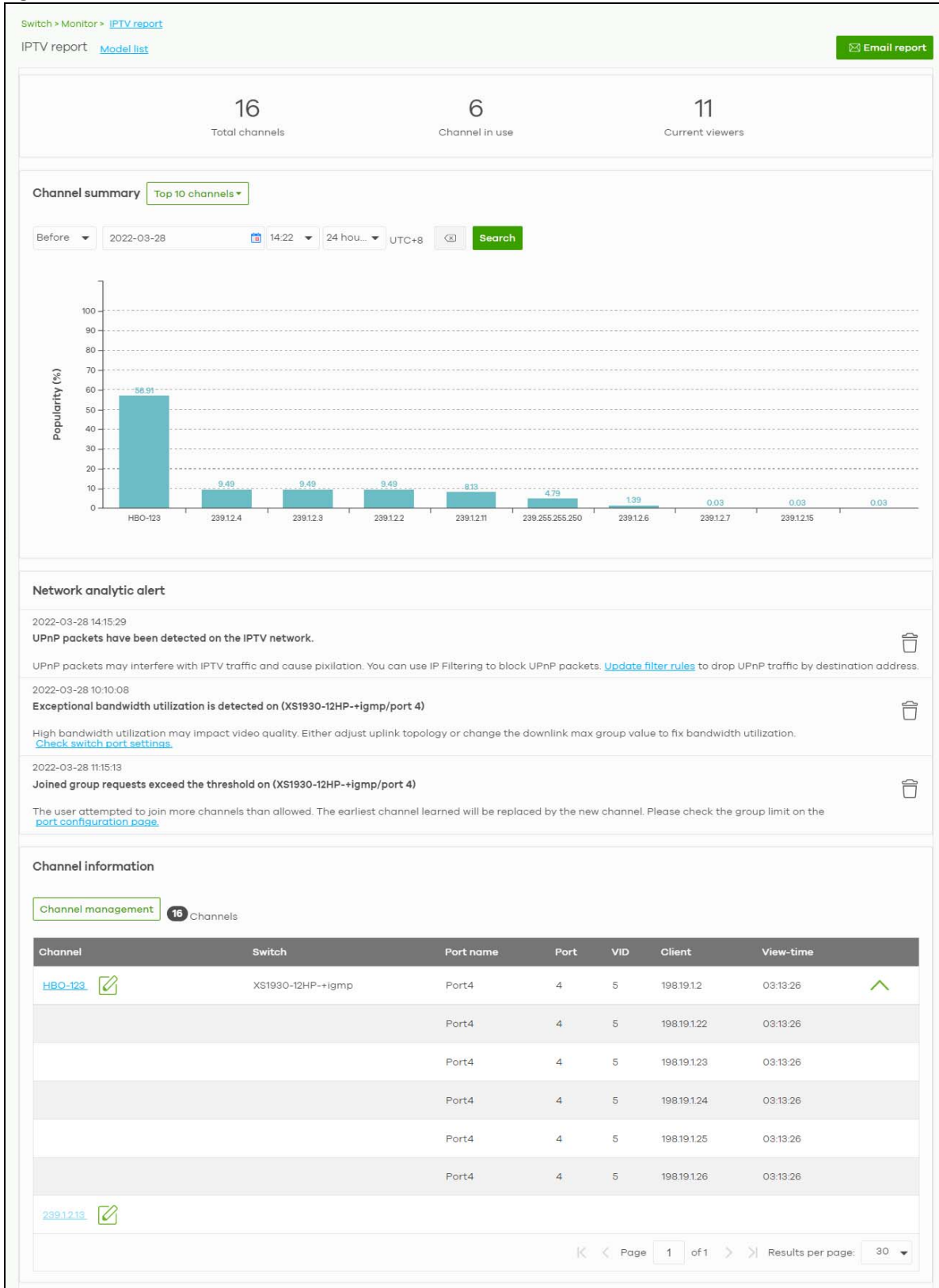
Time	Priority	Switch	Tag	Category	Detail
2022-07-07 11:03:01	Information	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Auto restore back up configuration
2022-07-07 11:02:56	Information	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Save system configuration
2022-07-07 10:57:39	Information	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Save system configuration
2022-07-07 10:57:01	Notice	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Gets the time and date from a time server successfully
2022-07-07 10:56:54	Information	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Save system configuration
2022-07-07 10:56:46	Information	XS3800-1-1	switch	System	Cloud: Device is online, VLAN 1, DHCP IP 10.214.48.34
2022-07-07 10:56:45	Information	XS3800-1-1	switch	System	Cloud: Set IP 10.214.48.34 on VLAN 1 by Local
2022-07-07 10:56:25	Information	XS3800-1-1	switch	Switch	Cloud Netconf connection has been terminated
2022-07-07 10:53:43	Information	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Save system configuration
2022-07-07 10:52:08	Notice	XS3800-1-1	system	System	Gets the time and date from a time server successfully

11.2.4 IPTV Report

Use this screen to view available IPTV channels and client information.

Click **Switch > Monitor > IPTV report** to access this screen.

Figure 180 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 154 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report

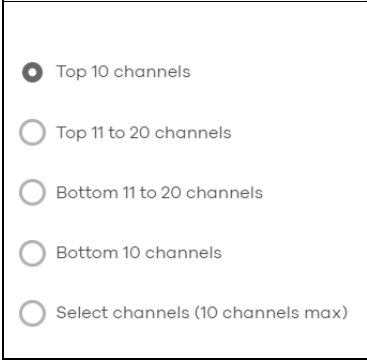
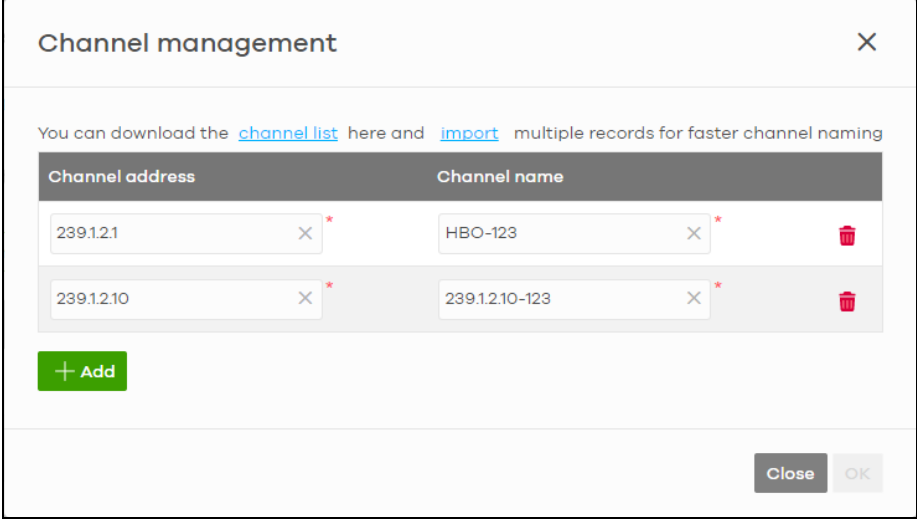
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPTV report	Click Model list to show the Non-supported model list . Click See more to go to the Help > Support tools > Device function table screen.
Email report	Click this button to send channel summary report by email, change the report logo and set email schedules.
Total channels	This shows the total number of IPTV channels that match the search criteria.
Channel in use	This shows the number of channels that are being watched by IPTV clients.
Current viewers	This shows the number of clients who are watching the IPTV channels.
Channel Summary	
	<p>Select to view the channels according to the ranking. Alternatively, select Select channels to choose specific channels and click Apply.</p> 
Search	<p>Specify a date/time and select to view the channels available in the past day, week or month before the specified date/time after you click Search.</p> <p>You can also select Range in the second field, set a time range and click Search to display only the channels available within the specified period of time.</p>
y-axis	The y-axis represents the Popularity (%) of IPTV channels.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the name of the IPTV channel. It shows the channel's multicast group address by default.
Network Analytic Alert	<p>This shows the alerts the NCC generates when an error or something abnormal is detected on the IPTV network.</p> <p>For example, the maximum number of the IGMP multicast groups (TV channels) a Nebula Device port can join is reached and new groups replace the earliest ones, UPnP packets are detected on the IPTV network and may interfere with IPTV traffic to cause TV pixelation, or high bandwidth usage on a certain Nebula Device port results in loss of video quality.</p>
Channel Information	

Table 154 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Channel Management	<p>Download the channel list and import multiple records for faster channel naming. Click Add to add new channels.</p> 
Channel	<p>This shows the name of the channel. Click the edit icon to change the channel name.</p> <p>Click the channel name to display the channel's client statistics. See Section 11.2.4.2 on page 418.</p>
Switch	<p>This shows the name of the Nebula Device to which the client is connected.</p>
Port Name	<p>This shows the name of the Nebula Device port to which the client is connected.</p>
Port	<p>This shows the number of the Nebula Device port to which the client is connected.</p>
VID	<p>This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the Nebula Device port belongs.</p>
Client	<p>This shows the IP address of the client who is watching the TV program on the channel.</p>
View-time	<p>This shows the amount of time the client has spent watching the IPTV channel.</p>

11.2.4.1 Email Report

Use this screen to configure the email recipient's address, change the logo and set email schedules. To access this screen, click the **Email report** button in the **Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report** screen.

Figure 181 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report: Email report

Email report

Email Channel Summary report - 2022-03-31 to 2022-04-01

Address:

Format:

Schedule reports

Current logo Upload new logo: No logo

Email address	Subject	Frequency	Type	Channel summary
<input type="text" value="y@zyxel.com.tw"/>	<input type="text" value="HTML-test"/>	<input type="text" value="Weekly"/>	<input type="text" value="HTML"/>	Selected: Top 10 channels, Top 11 to 20 channels, Bottom 11 to 20 channels, Bottom 10 channels, 224.0.0.252, 224.0.0.251, 239.255.255.250, 239.1.2.1/HBO-123, 239.1.2.3
<input type="text" value="y@zyxel.com.tw"/>	<input type="text" value="plain-test"/>	<input type="text" value="Weekly"/>	<input type="text" value="Plain text"/>	Selected: Top 10 channels, Top 11 to 20 channels, Bottom 11 to 20 channels, Bottom 10 channels, 224.0.0.252, 224.0.0.251, 239.255.255.250, 239.1.2.1/HBO-123, 239.1.2.3

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 155 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report: Email report

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Email Channel Summary report	This shows the range of the date/time you specified in the Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report screen.
Address	Enter the recipient's email address of the IPTV channel summary report.
Format	Select to send the IPTV channel summary report in HTML or Plain text format.
Send now	Click this button to send the IPTV channel summary report now.
Schedule reports	
logo	This shows the logo image that you uploaded for the customized IPTV channel summary report. Select Current logo to continue using the present logo. Select Upload new logo and click Choose File to locate the logo graphic. You can use the following image file formats: GIF, PNG, or JPG. File size must be less than 200 KB, and images larger than 244 x 190 will be resized. Select No logo if you do not want a logo to appear on the IPTV channel summary report.

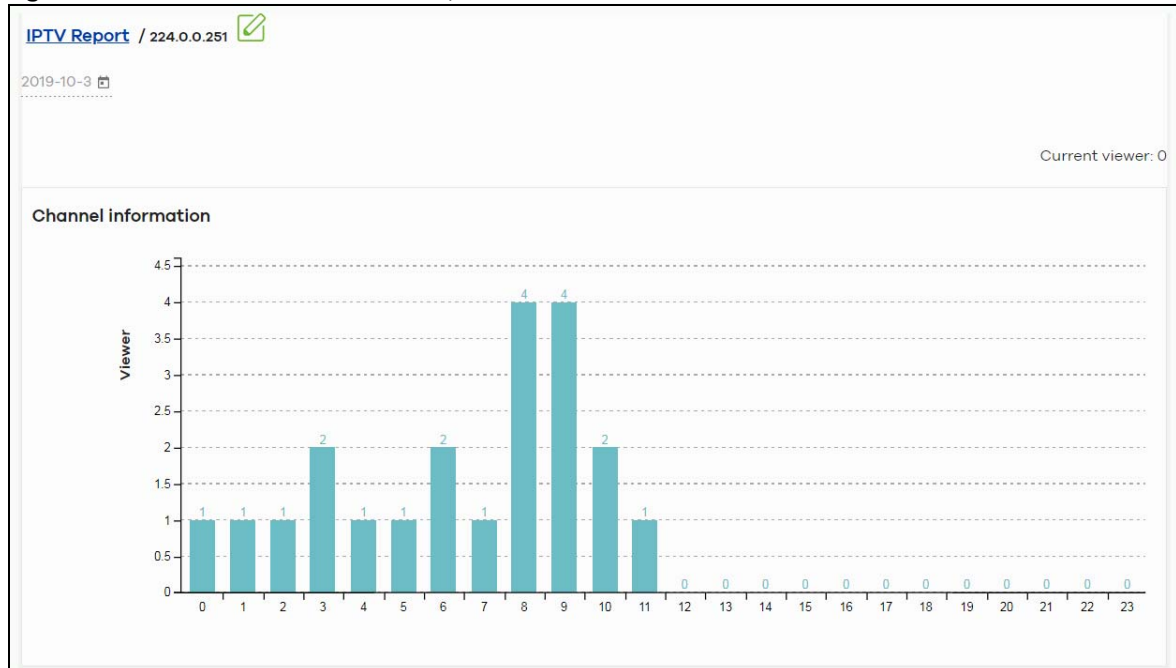
Table 155 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report: Email report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
+ Add	Click this button to add a scheduled IPTV channel summary report profile.
Email address	Enter the recipient's email address of the IPTV channel summary report.
Subject	Enter the subject of the IPTV channel summary report.
Frequency	Select to send the IPTV channel summary report Monthly , Weekly , or Daily .
Type	Select to send the IPTV channel summary report in HTML or Plain text format.
Channel summary	
	<p>Select to view the channels report according to the ranking. Alternatively, select Select channels to choose specific channels and click Update.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;"> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Top 10 channels</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Top 11 to 20 channels</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Bottom 11 to 20 channels</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Bottom 10 channels</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Select channels (10 channels max) i</p> <p style="text-align: center; background-color: #4CAF50; color: white; padding: 2px 10px; border-radius: 3px;">Update</p> </div>
Remove	Click this to delete a scheduled profile.
Save	Click Save to save the new scheduled profile.

11.2.4.2 Channel Information

Use this screen to view the IPTV channel's client information and statistics. To access this screen, click a channel name from the **Channel Information** list in the **Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report** screen.

Figure 182 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report: Channel Information



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 156 Switch > Monitor > IPTV Report: Channel Information

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Select a specific date to display only the clients who watch the IPTV channel on that day.
Current Viewer	This shows the number of clients who are currently watching the IPTV channel.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the number of clients watching the IPTV channel.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the hour of the day in 24-hour format.
Switch	This shows the name of the Nebula Device to which the client is connected.
Port Name	This shows the name of the Nebula Device port to which the client is connected.
Port	This shows the number of the Nebula Device port to which the client is connected.
VID	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the Nebula Device port belongs.
Client	This shows the IP address of the client who is watching the TV program on the channel.
View-time	This shows the amount of time the client has spent watching the IPTV channel.

11.2.5 Surveillance

Use this screen to view information about Powered Devices (PDs) connected to ports on the Nebula Device.

Click **Switch > Monitor > Surveillance** to access this screen.

Figure 183 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance

Switch/Port	Port name	PD health	Link speed	PoE draw(W)	Bandwidth (Kbps)	CRC	Extended range	Device type	System name
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port1	Online	Auto-1000M	0.0W	Tx: 10.68 Rx: 2.23	0	Disable		
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port2	Offline	Offline	0.0W	Tx: 0.00 Rx: 0.00	0	Disable		
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port3	Online	Auto-1000M	0.0W	Tx: 2.60 Rx: 9.06	0	Disable	Others	XGS4600
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port4	Offline	Offline	0.0W	Tx: 0.00 Rx: 0.00	0	Disable		
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port5	Offline	Offline	0.0W	Tx: 0.00 Rx: 0.00	0	Disable		
BC:CF-4F-47:7D:F1(...)	Port6	Offline	Offline	0.0W	Tx: 0.00 Rx: 0.00	0	Disable		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 157 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance





LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Search ports	Enter a keyword to filter the list of ports or devices.
N switch ports	This shows the number of Nebula Device ports (N) in the list.
	This shows the number of connected PDs that did not respond to an automatic PD alive check.
	This shows the number of ONVIF-compatible IP camera devices connected to Nebula Devices in the site.

Table 157 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	This shows the number of ONVIF-compatible NVR devices connected to Nebula Devices in the site.
	This shows the number of connected devices that did not respond to an ONVIF discovery query, or are of an unknown type.
Switch/Port	This shows the port number of the Nebula Device.
Port name	This shows the port description on the Nebula Device.
PD health	<p>This shows the status of auto PD recovery on this port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Red: The Nebula Device failed to get information from the PD connected to the port using LLDP, or the connected PD did not respond to the Nebula Device's ping requests. Yellow: The Nebula Device is restarting the connected PD by turning the power off and turning it on again. Green: The Nebula Device successfully discovered the connected PD using LLDP or ping. --: Auto PD Recovery is not enabled on the Nebula Device and/or the port, or the switch is not supplying power to the connected PD. <p>Note: For details on configuring auto PD recovery on a port, see Section 11.3.1 on page 424.</p>
Link speed	This shows the speed (either 10M for 10 Mbps, 100M for 100 Mbps, or 1G for 1 Gbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half). This field displays Down if the port is not connected to any device.
PoE draw(W)	This shows the total power that the connected PD draws from the port, in watts. This allows you to plan and use within the power budget of the Nebula Device.
Bandwidth (Kbps)	Tx shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port. Rx shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
CRC	This shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) errors.
Extended range	This shows whether extended range is enabled on the port.
Device type	This shows the device type of the PD, as reported by ONVIF discovery.
System name	This shows the name of the connected PD, as reported by ONVIF or LLDP.
IP	This shows the IP address of the connected PD, as reported by ONVIF or LLDP.
Discovered devices	<p>This shows how many devices are connected to the port.</p> <p>Click the number to go to the Surveillance Port Details screen.</p>

11.2.6 Surveillance Port Details

Use this screen to view detailed information about a port on the **Surveillance** screen.

Go to **Switch > Monitor > Surveillance** and click on a value in the **Discovered Devices** column to access this screen.

Figure 184 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance > Port Details

Switch > Monitor > Surveillance > BC:CF:4F:47:7D:F1(GS1350-6HP) > Port 3
 Surveillance / BC:CF:4F:47:7D:F1(GS1350-6HP) / Port 3 Last 2 hours

Status

Link speed:	Auto-1000M	Bandwidth Tx/Rx(Kbps):	2.46/8.97
PoE draw:	0.0 W	CRC:	0
PD health:		Power cycle:	<input type="button" value="Reset"/>
Extended range:	Disable		

Neighbor detail

Search clients 1 clients

Status	System name	Device type	Port	IP	Firmware	Description
	XGS4600	Others	2	192.168.30.15	V4.70(ABBH.3) 04/27/2022	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 158 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance > Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	
Link speed	This shows the speed (either 10M for 10 Mbps, 100M for 100 Mbps, or 1G for 1 Gbps) and the duplex (F for full duplex or H for half). This field displays Down if the port is not connected to any device.
PoE draw	This shows the total power that the connected PD draws from the port, in watts. This allows you to plan and use within the power budget of the Nebula Device.
PD health	This shows the status of auto PD recovery on this port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Red: The Nebula Device failed to get information from the PD connected to the port using LLDP, or the connected PD did not respond to the Nebula Device's ping requests. Yellow: The Nebula Device is restarting the connected PD by turning the power off and turning it on again. Green: The Nebula Device successfully discovered the connected PD using LLDP or ping. --: Auto PD Recovery is not enabled on the Nebula Device and/or the port, or the Nebula Device is not supplying power to the connected PD. For details on configuring auto PD recovery on a port, see Section 11.3.1 on page 424 .
Extended range	This shows whether extended range is enabled on the port.
Bandwidth Tx/Rx (%)	Tx shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port. Rx shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
CRC	This shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) errors.
Power cycle	Click Reset to power off the PD connected to the port, by temporarily disabling then re-enabling PoE.
Neighbor detail	This section shows all clients connected to the port.
Search clients	Search for one or more clients in the list by keyword, status, system name, port, IP address, or firmware version.
clients	This shows the number of clients connected to this port.
Flush	Click this to remove all offline clients from the list.
Status	This shows whether the client is online (green) or offline (red), and whether the client is wired or wireless.
System name	This displays the system name of the Nebula Device.

Table 158 Switch > Monitor > Surveillance > Port Details (continued)

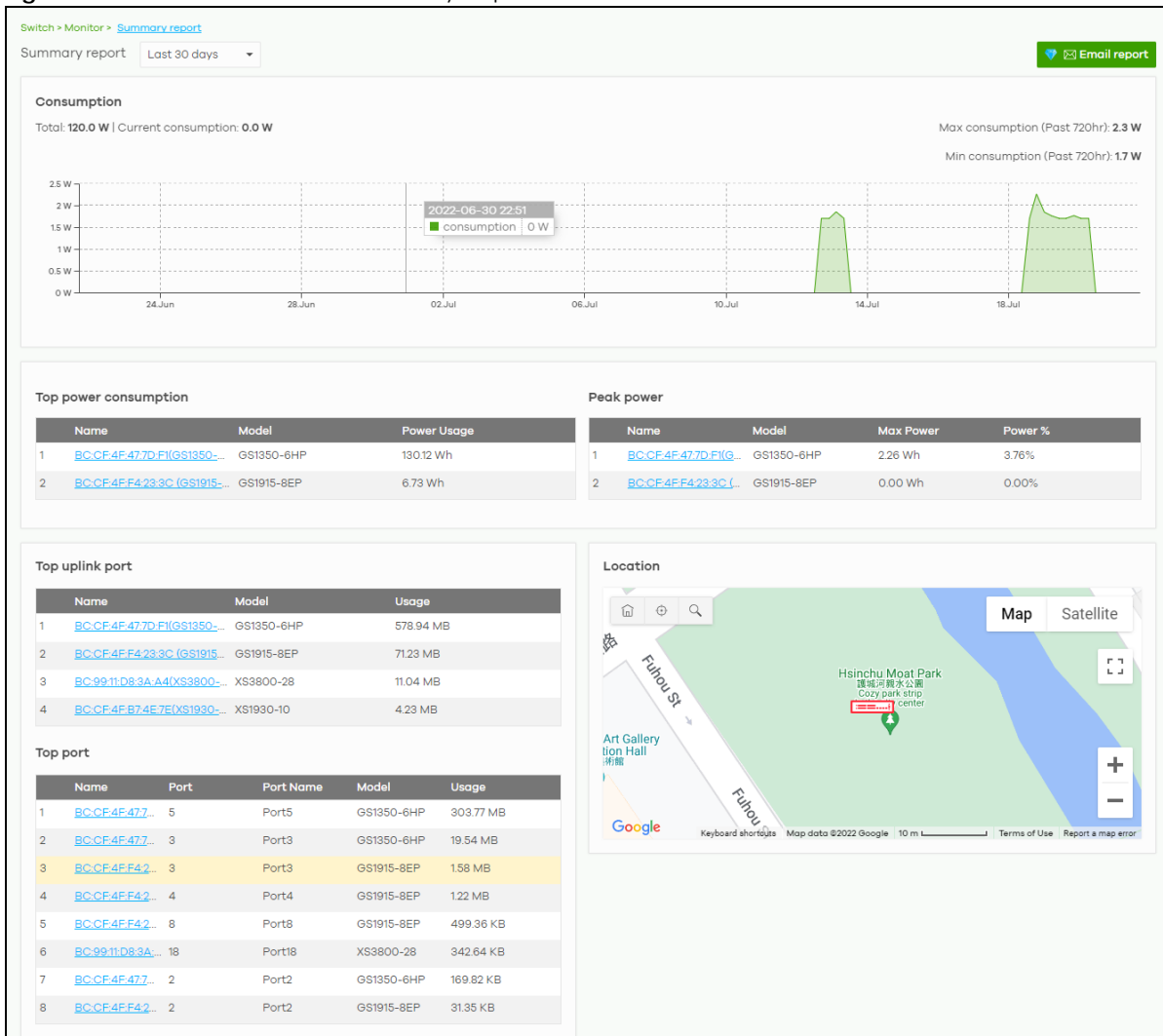
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This displays the number of the Nebula Device port that is connected to the Nebula Device.
IP	This shows the IP address of the Nebula Device.
Firmware	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.

11.2.7 Summary Report

This screen displays network statistics for Nebula Devices of the selected site, such as bandwidth usage, top ports and/or top Nebula Devices.

Click **Switch > Monitor > Summary Report** to access this screen.

Figure 185 Switch > Monitor > Summary Report



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 159 Switch > Monitor > Summary Report

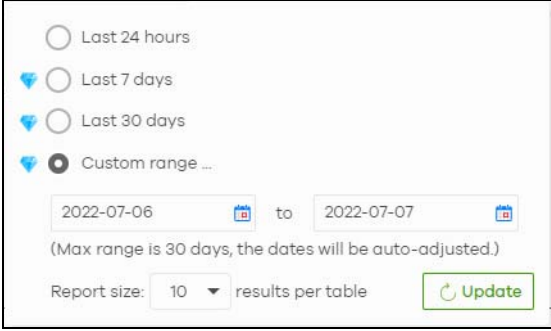
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch – Summary report	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> 
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the logo and set email schedules.
Consumption	
Total	This shows the total power consumption of the Nebula Device ports.
Current Consumption	This shows the current power consumption of the Nebula Device ports.
Max Consumption	This shows the maximum power consumption of the Nebula Device ports.
Min Consumption	This shows the minimum power consumption of the Nebula Device ports.
y-axis	The y-axis shows how much power is used in Watts.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the power consumption is recorded.
Top power consumption	
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Power Usage	This shows the total amount of power consumed by the Nebula Device's connected PoE devices during the specified period of time.
Peak Power	
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Max Power	This shows the maximum power consumption for the Nebula Device's connected PoE devices during the specified period of time.
Power %	This shows what percentage of the Nebula Device's total power budget has been consumed by connected PoE powered devices.
Top uplink port	
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted through the Nebula Device's uplink port.
Top port	

Table 159 Switch > Monitor > Summary Report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Device port.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Port	This shows the port number on the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data that has been transmitted through the Nebula Device's port.
Location	This shows the location of the Nebula Devices on the map.

11.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to configure port setting, IP filtering, RADIUS policies, PoE schedules, and other Nebula Device settings for Nebula Devices of the selected site.

11.3.1 Switch Ports

Use this screen to view port summary and configure Nebula Device settings for the ports. To access this screen, click **Switch > Configure > Switch ports** or click the **Configure ports** button in the **Switch > Monitor > Switch: Switch Details** screen.

Figure 186 Switch > Configure > Switch ports

Switch / Port	Port name	# Port	LLDP	Received bytes	Sent bytes	Enabled	Connection	PoE	Status	Type	Tag	Number of iGMP Group
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/1 details	Port1	1	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/2 details	Port2	2	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/3 details	Port3	3	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/4 details	Port4	4	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/5 details	Port5	5	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/6 details	Port6	6	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/7 details	Port7	7	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/8 details	Port8	8	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/9 details	Port9	9	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0
<input type="checkbox"/> XS3800-1-1/10 details	Port10	10	Enabled	0 bytes	0 bytes	Enabled		N/A	Disabled	Trunk		0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.


Table 160 Switch > Configure > Switch ports

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch ports	Select to view the detailed information and connection status of the Nebula Device port in the past two hours, day, week or month.
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Edit	Select the ports you want to configure and click this button to configure Nebula Device settings on the ports, such as link aggregation, PoE schedule, LLDP and STP.

Table 160 Switch > Configure > Switch ports (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Aggregate	Select more than one port and click this button to group the physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link.
Split	Select a trunk group and click this button to delete the trunk group. The ports in this group then are not aggregated. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.
Tag	Click this button to create a new tag or delete an existing tag.
Reset	Click this button to reboot the PD (powered device) connected to the PoE port. Follow the prompt and click Confirm to reboot the PD connected to this port. Note: This button is not available for an uplink port.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Device ports. You can filter the search by selecting one or more Nebula Devices. Under Ports, you can search for multiple ports separated by a comma, or a range separated by a hyphen. For example: 1,2,4-6.
Switch ports	This shows the number of ports on the Nebula Device.
Export	Click this button to save the Nebula Device port list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
CRC alert icon	This prompt appears if CRC errors are detected in the port(s). Go to Switch > Monitor > Switches: Switch Details: Port Details for the details. See Section 11.2.1.3 on page 408 for more information.
Switch / Port	This shows the Nebula Device name and port number. If the port is added to a trunk group, this also shows whether it is configured as a static member of the trunk group (Static) or configured to join the trunk group through LACP (LACP). If the port is connected to an uplink gateway, it shows Uplink . Click details to display the port details screen. See Section 11.2.1.3 on page 408 .
Port name	This shows the descriptive name of the port.
#Port	This shows the port number.
LLDP	This shows whether Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is supported on the port.
Received broadcast packets	This shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Received bytes	This shows the number of bytes received on this port.
Received packets	This shows the number of received frames on this port.
Sent broadcast packets	This shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Sent bytes	This shows the number of bytes transmitted on this port.
Sent multicast packets	This shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Received multicast packets	This shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Sent packets	This shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
Total bytes	This shows the total number of bytes transmitted or received on this port.
Enabled	This shows whether the port is enabled or disabled.
Link	This shows the speed of the Ethernet connection on this port. Auto (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support.

Table 160 Switch > Configure > Switch ports (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Connection	<p>This shows the connection status of the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gray (#888888): The port is disconnected. Orange (#FF8900): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10 or 100 Mbps. Green (#64BE00): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 1000 Mbps (1 Gbps). Azure (#0079FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 2.5 Gbps. Violet (#8800FF): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 5 Gbps. Blue (#004FEE): The port is connected and is transmitting data at 10000 Mbps (10 Gbps). <p>When the port is in the STP blocking state, a blocked icon displays.</p> <p>Move the cursor over a time slot to see the actual date and time when a port is connected or disconnected.</p>
RADIUS policy	This shows the name of RADIUS authentication policy applied to the port.
Allowed VLAN	This shows the VLANs from which the traffic comes is allowed to be transmitted or received on the port.
PoE	This shows whether PoE is enabled on the port.
RSTP	This shows whether RSTP is enabled on the port.
Status	<p>If STP/RSTP is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port.</p> <p>If STP/RSTP is disabled, this field displays FORWARDING if the link is up, otherwise, it displays Disabled.</p>
Schedule	This shows the name of the PoE schedule applied to the port.
Type	This shows the port type (Trunk or Access).
PVID	This shows the port VLAN ID. It is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on the port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag that the Nebula Device adds to the outbound traffic on this port.
Storm Control	This shows whether traffic storm control is enabled or disabled on the port.
Broadcast Limit (pps)	This shows the maximum number of broadcast packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on this port.
Multicast Limit (pps)	This shows the maximum number of multicast packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on this port.
DLF Limit (pps)	This shows the maximum number of Destination Lookup Failure (DLF) packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on this port.
Loop Guard	This shows whether loop guard is enabled or disabled on the port.
Network Analytic Alert	An amber alert icon displays if the NCC generates alerts when an error or something abnormal is detected on the port for the IPTV network. Move the cursor over the alert icon to view the alert details.
IPSG protected	This shows whether IP source guard protection is enabled on this port.
Received CRC packets	This shows the number of CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) errors received on the port.
Number of IGMP Group	This shows the number of IGMP groups the port has joined.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

11.3.1.1 Update ports

Click to select the port you want to configure in the **Switch > Configure > Switch ports** screen.

Figure 187 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit

Update 1 port
✕

General settings ▼

Switch ports: XS3800-1-1/1

Name: Port1 ✕

Tags: None

Port enabled: Enabled ▼

RSTP: Enabled ▼

STP guard: Root guard ▼

LLDP: Enabled ▼

Link: Auto ▼

Media type: SFP+ ▼

Port isolation: Enabled ▼

IPSIG protected: Enabled ▼

Radius policy: Open ▼

Bandwidth control: Enabled ▼

Ingress: 1000000 Kbps ✕

Egress: 1000000 Kbps ✕

Loop guard: Enabled ▼

Storm control: Enabled ▼

Broadcast Limit (pps): 100 ✕

Multicast Limit (pps): 100 ✕

DLF Limit (pps): 100 ✕

Type: Access ▼

VLAN type: Vendor ID based VLAN ▼

PVID: 1 ✕

PoE settings ▼

IPV setting Override advanced IGMP setting

Leave mode: Normal leave ▼ 4000 ms ✕

Maximum Group: Enabled ▼ 1 ✕

IGMP filtering profile: No Select ▼

Fixed router port: Auto ▼

Close Update

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 161 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch ports	This shows the Nebula Device name and port number for the ports you are configuring in this screen.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the ports.
Tags	Select or create a new tag for outgoing traffic on the ports.
Port enabled	Select to enable or disable the ports. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
RSTP	Select to enable or disable RSTP on the ports.

Table 161 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
STP guard	<p>This field is available only when RSTP is enabled on the ports.</p> <p>Select Root guard to prevent the Nebula Devices attached to the ports from becoming the root bridge.</p> <p>Select BPDU guard to have the Nebula Device shut down the ports if there is any BPDU received on the ports.</p> <p>Otherwise, select Disable.</p>
LLDP	Select to enable or disable LLDP on the ports.
Link	Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on the ports. Choices are Auto-1000M , 10M/Half Duplex , 10M/Full Duplex , 100M/Half Duplex , 100M/Full Duplex and 1000M/Full Duplex (Gigabit connections only).
Extended range	<p>Select to enable or disable extended range.</p> <p>Extended range allows the port to transmit power and data at a distance of 250 meters.</p> <p>Note: When enabled, the port's PoE Power up mode is locked to 802.3at, and the port's link speed is limited to 10M/Full Duplex.</p>
Media type	<p>You can insert either an SFP+ transceiver or an SFP+ Direct Attach Copper (DAC) cable into the 10 Gigabit interface of the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Select the media type (sfp+ or DAC 10G) of the SFP+ module that is attached to the 10 Gigabit interface.</p>
Port Isolation	<p>Select to enable or disable port isolation on the ports.</p> <p>The ports with port isolation enabled cannot communicate with each other. They can communicate only with the CPU management port of the same Nebula Device and the Nebula Device's other ports on which the isolation feature is not enabled.</p>
IPSG protected	Select to enable or disable IP source guard protection on the port.
RADIUS policy	<p>This field is available only when you select Access in the Type field.</p> <p>Select the name of the pre-configured RADIUS policy that you want to apply to the ports. Select Open if you do NOT want to enable port authentication on the ports.</p>
Bandwidth Control	Select to enable or disable bandwidth control on the port.
Ingress	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on the ports.
Egress	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on the ports.
Loop guard	<p>Select to enable or disable loop guard on the ports.</p> <p>Note: The loop guard feature cannot be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) enabled.</p>
Storm Control	Select to enable or disable broadcast storm control on the ports.
Broadcast (pps)	Specifies the maximum number of broadcast packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on the ports.
Multicast (pps)	Specifies the maximum number of multicast packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on the ports.
DLF (pps)	Specifies the maximum number of DLF packets the Nebula Device accepts per second on the ports.

Table 161 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	<p>Set the type of the port.</p> <p>Select Access to configure the port as an access port which can carry traffic for just one VLAN. Frames received on the port are tagged with the port VLAN ID.</p> <p>Select Trunk to configure the port as a trunk port which can carry traffic for multiple VLANs over a link. A trunk port is always connected to a Nebula Device or router.</p>
VLAN type	<p>This field is available only when you select Access in the Type field.</p> <p>None: This port is a regular access port and follows the device's access port rules.</p> <p>Vendor ID based VLAN: Apply the Vendor ID based VLAN settings from Switch > Configure > Switch settings to this port.</p> <p>Voice VLAN: Apply the Voice VLAN settings from Switch > Configure > Switch settings to this port.</p> <p>Note: For details on configuring Vendor ID based VLAN and Voice VLAN settings, see Section 11.3.8 on page 443.</p>
PVID	<p>A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.</p> <p>Enter a number between 1 and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.</p>
Allowed VLANs	<p>This field is available only when you select Trunk in the Type field.</p> <p>Specify the VLANs from which the traffic comes is allowed to be transmitted or received on the ports.</p>
PoE Settings	
PoE	<p>Select Enable to provide power to a PD connected to the ports.</p>
PoE schedule	<p>This field is available only when you enable PoE.</p> <p>Select a pre-defined schedule (created using the Switch > Configure > PoE schedule screen) to control when the Nebula Device enables PoE to provide power on the ports.</p> <p>Note: You must select Unschedule in the PoE schedule field before you can disable PoE on the ports.</p> <p>If you enable PoE and select Unschedule, PoE is always enabled on the ports.</p>
PoE priority	<p>When the total power requested by the PDs exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Nebula Device, you can set the PD priority to allow the Nebula Device to provide power to ports with higher priority.</p> <p>Select Low to set the Nebula Device to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical and medium priority ports are served.</p> <p>Select Medium to set the Nebula Device to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical priority ports are served.</p> <p>Select Critical to give the highest PD priority on the port.</p>

Table 161 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Power up mode	<p>Set how the Nebula Device provides power to a connected PD at power-up.</p> <p>802.3at – the Nebula Device supports the IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet standard and can supply power of up to 30W per Ethernet port. IEEE 802.3at is also known as PoE+ or PoE Plus. An IEEE 802.3at compatible device is referred to as Type 2. Power Class 4 (High Power) can only be used by Type 2 devices. If the connected PD requires a Class 4 current when it is turned on, it will be powered up in this mode.</p> <p>802.3af – the Nebula Device follows the IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet standard to supply power to the connected PDs during power-up.</p> <p>Legacy – the Nebula Device can provide power to the connected PDs that require high inrush currents at power-up. Inrush current is the maximum, instantaneous input current drawn by the PD when first turned on.</p> <p>Pre-802.3at – the Nebula Device initially offers power on the port according to the IEEE 802.3af standard, and then switches to support the IEEE 802.3at standard within 75 milliseconds after a PD is connected to the port. Select this option if the Nebula Device is performing 2-event Layer-1 classification (PoE+ hardware classification) or the connected PD is NOT performing Layer 2 power classification using Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP).</p>
Auto PD recovery	<p>Select to enable or disable automatic PD recovery on the port.</p> <p>Automatic PD recovery allows the Nebula Device to restart a Powered Device (PD) connected to the port by turning the device on and off again.</p>
Detecting mode	<p>Select LLDP to have the Nebula Device passively monitor current status of the connected Powered Device (PD) by reading LLDP packets from the PD on the port.</p> <p>Select Ping to have the Nebula Device ping the IP address of the connected Powered Device (PD) through the designated port to test whether the PD is reachable or not.</p>
Action	<p>Set the action to take when the connected Powered Device (PD) has stopped responding.</p> <p>Select Reboot-Alarm to have the Nebula Device send an SNMP trap and generate a log message, and then turn off the power of the connected PD and turn it back on again to restart the PD.</p> <p>Select Alarm to have the Nebula Device send an SNMP trap and generate a log message.</p>
Neighbor IP	<p>Set the IPv4 address of the Powered Device (PD) connected to this port.</p> <p>Note: If Detecting Mode is set to Ping and the PD supports LLDP, the connected PD's IPv4 address to which the Nebula Device sends ping requests is displayed automatically.</p>
Polling Interval	<p>Specify the number of seconds the Nebula Device waits for a response before sending another ping request.</p> <p>For example, the Nebula Device will try to detect the PD status by performing ping requests every 20 seconds.</p>
Polling Count	<p>Specify how many times the Nebula Device resends a ping request before considering the PD unreachable.</p>
Resume Polling interval (sec)	<p>Specify the number of seconds the Nebula Device waits before monitoring the PD status again after it restarts the PD on the port.</p>
PD Reboot Count	<p>Specify how many times the Nebula Device attempts to restart the PD on the port.</p> <p>The PD Reboot Count resets if any of the following conditions are true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Nebula Device successfully pings the PD. • You modify any Auto PD Recovery settings and apply them. • The Nebula Device restarts.
Resume Power Interval (sec)	<p>Specify the number of seconds the Nebula Device waits before supplying power to the connected PD again after it restarts the PD on the port.</p>

Table 161 Switch > Configure > Switch ports: Edit (continued)

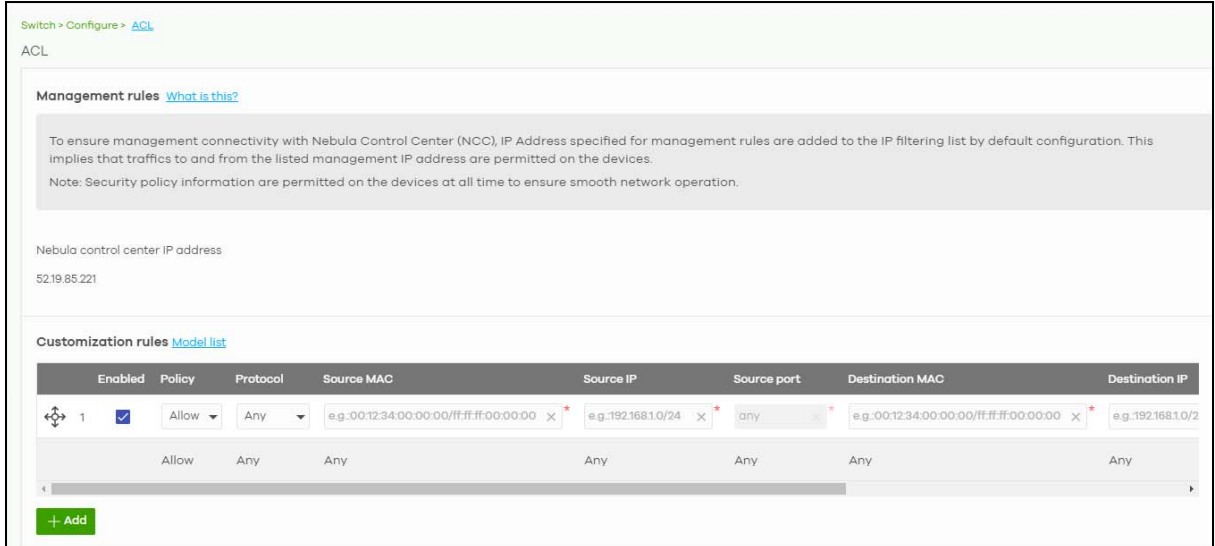
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IPTV Setting	
Overwrite advanced IGMP setting	Select ON to overwrite the port's advanced IGMP settings (configured in the Configure > Advanced IGMP screen) with the settings you configure in the fields below. Otherwise, select OFF .
Leave Mode	<p>Select Immediate Leave to remove this port from the multicast tree immediately when an IGMP leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.</p> <p>Select Normal Leave or Fast Leave and enter an IGMP normal/fast leave timeout value to have the Nebula Device wait for an IGMP report before the leave timeout when an IGMP leave message is received on this port. You need to specify how many milliseconds the Nebula Device waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p> <p>In Normal Leave mode, when the Nebula Device receives an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, it forwards the message to the multicast router. The multicast router then sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. The Nebula Device forwards the query message to all hosts connected to the port and waits for IGMP reports from hosts to update the forwarding table.</p> <p>In Fast Leave mode, right after receiving an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Nebula Device itself sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. This helps speed up the leave process.</p>
Maximum Group	<p>Select Enable and enter the maximum number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report received on this port will replace the earliest group entry in the multicast forwarding table.</p> <p>Otherwise, select Disable to turn off multicast group limits.</p>
IGMP filtering profile	<p>An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Nebula Device are able to join.</p> <p>Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select No Select to remove restrictions and allow the port to join any multicast group.</p>
Fixed router port	<p>Select Auto to have the Nebula Device use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets. The Nebula Device forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port.</p> <p>Select Fixed to have the Nebula Device always use the port as an IGMP query port. This helps prevent IGMP network topology changes when query packet losses occur in the network.</p>

11.3.2 ACL

ACL lets you allow or block traffic going through the Nebula Devices according to the rule settings. Use this screen to configure ACL rules on the Nebula Devices.

Click **Switch > Configure > ACL** to access this screen.

Figure 188 Switch > Configure > ACL



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 162 Switch > Configure > ACL

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Management rules	The NCC automatically creates rules to allow traffic from/to the Nebula Control Center IP addresses in the list.
Customization rules	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Enabled	Select the check box to turn on the rule. Otherwise, clear the check box to turn off the rule.
Policy	Select to allow or deny traffic that matches the filtering criteria in the rule.
Protocol	Select the type of IP protocol used to transport the traffic to which the rule is applied.
Source MAC	Enter the source MAC address of the packets that you want to filter.
Source IP	Enter the source IP address of the packets that you want to filter.
Source port	Enter the source port numbers that defines the traffic type.
Destination MAC	Enter the destination MAC address of the packets that you want to filter.
Destination IP	Enter the destination IP address of the packets that you want to filter.
Destination port	Enter the destination port numbers that defines the traffic type.
VLAN	Enter the ID number of the VLAN group to which the matched traffic belongs.
Description	Enter a descriptive name for the rule.
Delete	Click the delete icon to remove the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.

11.3.3 IP & Routing

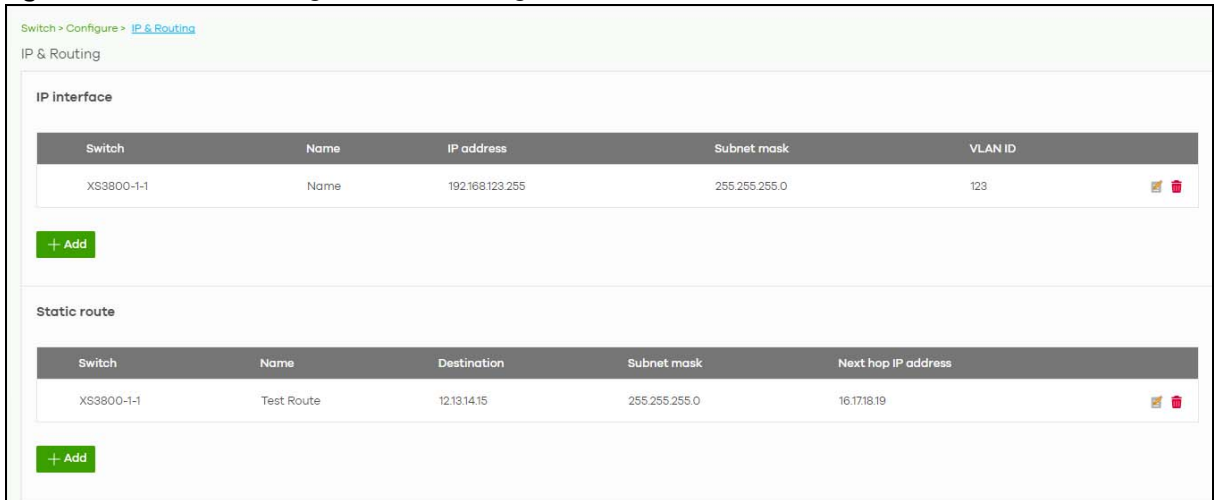
This screen enables you to create IP interfaces and static routes on Nebula Devices in the site. This allows you to do the following:

- Create IP interfaces on a L2 Nebula Device for management or monitoring services, such as IGMP querier, auto PD recovery, ping, and ONVIF discovery.
- Create multiple IP interface on a L3 Nebula Device to route across VLANs.

- Create an IP interface and static route to specify the next hop to a specific destination subnet.





Click **Switch > Configure > IP & Routing** to access this screen.

Figure 189 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 163 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP interface	
Switch	This shows the name of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the name of the interface (network) on the Nebula Device.
IP address	This shows the IP address of the interface (network).
Subnet mask	This shows the subnet mask of the interface (network).
	Click this icon to modify the interface.
	Click this icon to delete the interface.
VLAN ID	This shows the ID number of the VLAN with which the interface (network) is associated.
+ Add	Click this button to create a new interface on a Nebula Device in the site.
Static route	
Switch	This shows the name of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the name of the static route.
Destination	This shows the destination IP address.
Subnet mask	This shows the IP subnet mask.
Next hop IP	This shows the IP address of the next-hop gateway or the interface through which the traffic is routed. The gateway is a router or Nebula Device on the same segment as your Security Appliance's interfaces. It helps forward packets to their destinations.
	Click this icon to modify the static route.
	Click this icon to delete the static route.
+ Add	Click this button to create a new static route on a Nebula Device in the site.

11.3.3.1 Add IP Interface

Click the **+ Add** button on the **Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > IP Interface** screen to access this screen.

Figure 190 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > IP Interface > Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 164 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > IP Interface > Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch	Select a Nebula Device in the site on which to create the interface.
Name	Enter a name of the interface (network) on the Nebula Device.
IP address	Enter the IP address of the interface (network).
Subnet mask	Enter the subnet mask of the interface (network).
VLAN	Enter the ID number of the VLAN with which the interface (network) is associated.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click Create to save your changes and create the interface.

11.3.3.2 Add Static Route

Click the + **Add** button on the **Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > Static Route** screen to access this screen.

Figure 191 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > Static Route > Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 165 Switch > Configure > IP & Routing > Static Route > Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch	Select a Nebula Device in the site on which to create the interface.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this route.
Destination	Specifies the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet mask	Enter the IP subnet mask.
Next hop IP address	Enter the IP address of the next-hop gateway.
Close	Click Close to exit this screen without saving.
Create	Click Create to save your changes and create the static route.

11.3.4 ONVIF Discovery

IP-based security products use a specific protocol for communication. One of the most common protocols is ONVIF (Open Network Video Interface Forum). ONVIF is a standard interface for interoperability of IP-based security products. When ONVIF is enabled and configured on a Nebula Device, the Nebula Device can obtain information from connected ONVIF-compatible devices, such as a device's system name and IP address.

In NCC, you can configure ONVIF-compatible Nebula Devices (for example, GS1350) in a site to discover ONVIF-compatible devices in one designated VLAN.

Note: ONVIF and UPnP are similar protocols and may conflict with each other. If NCC detects UPnP packets on the same network as ONVIF, then it will prompt you to automatically create an ACL rule that blocks UPnP traffic (UDP, port 1900).

UPnP packets have been detected on the IPTV network.

UPnP packets may interfere with IPTV traffic and cause pixilation. You can use IP Filtering to block UPnP packets. [Update filter rules](#) to drop UPnP traffic by destination address.

11.3.4.1 Configuring ONVIF Discovery

Follow these steps to configure ONVIF discovery within a site.

- 1 Decide on the VLAN ID you want to use for ONVIF discovery within the site. This VLAN is the ONVIF discovery VLAN.
- 2 Go to **Switch > Configure > IP & Routing**. For each Nebula Device that you want to enable ONVIF discovery on, add an IP interface for the Nebula Device on the ONVIF discovery VLAN.
- 3 Go to **Switch > Configure > ONVIF discovery**. Enable **ONVIF discovery**, and then set **ONVIF VLAN ID** to the ID of your ONVIF discovery VLAN.
- 4 For each Nebula Device that you want to enable ONVIF discovery on, click **+ Add**. Select the Nebula Device, and then enter the ports that you want to listen for ONVIF devices.

11.3.4.2 ONVIF Discovery Screen

Click **Switch > Configure > ONVIF discovery** to access this screen.

Figure 192 Switch > Configure > ONVIF discovery

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 166 Switch > Configure > ONVIF discovery

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model list	Click this to view a list of Zyxel Nebula Device models that support ONVIF discovery.
ONVIF discovery	Enable this to allow ONVIF-compatible Nebula Devices in the site to send ONVIF packets to discover or scan for ONVIF-compatible IP-based security devices.
ONVIF VLAN ID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to run ONVIF. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs separated by a comma (.). For example, enter "1,2" for VLAN IDs 1 and 2.
Switch name	Select the Nebula Device that you want to enable ONVIF discovery on.
Port list	Enter the port numbers to allow discovery of ONVIF-compatible devices. You can enter multiple ports separated by comma (,) or hyphen (-) without spaces. For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Description	Enter a descriptive name for this Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the Nebula Device model.
	Click this icon to delete the ONVIF configuration for the Nebula Device.
+ Add	Click this to configure ONVIF discovery on another Nebula Device in the site.

11.3.5 Advanced IGMP

A Nebula Device can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/Nebula Devices and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multi-casting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Nebula Device to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Nebula Device forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Nebula Device.

Use this screen to enable IGMP snooping on the Nebula Devices in the site, create IGMP filtering profiles and configure advanced IGMP snooping settings that apply to all ports on the Nebula Device for your IPTV network. Click **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** to access this screen. You can make adjustments on a per-port basis using the **Switch > Configure > Switch ports** screen.

Figure 193 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP

Switch > Configure > [Advanced IGMP](#)

Advanced IGMP

IGMP snooping

IGMP-snooping VLAN [Model list](#)

Auto-detect

x

User Assign VLANs.

Unknown multicast drop [Model list](#)

Drop on VLAN x

IGMP filtering profiles [?](#) 1 IGMP filtering profiles

Test used by 0 ports

[+ Add](#)

IPTV topology setup

[IGMP snooping](#) [Role](#) [Port settings](#) [IGMP topology tips](#)

Switch name	IGMP snooping	Role	Port settings
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B8:EC:A3:AE:EA:14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="-Select role-"/>	Advanced setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 167 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP snooping	Select ON to enable and configure IGMP snooping settings on all Nebula Devices in the site. Select OFF to disable it.
IGMP-snooping VLAN	Select Auto-detect to have the Nebula Device learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically. Select User Assigned VLANs and enter the VLAN IDs to have the Nebula Device only learn multicast group membership information of the VLANs that you specify. Click Model List to view a list of Zyxel Nebula Device models that do not support this feature. Note: The Nebula Device can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs.
Unknown multicast drop	Specify the action to perform when the Nebula Device receives an unknown multicast frame. Select ON to discard the frames. Select OFF to send the frames to all ports. Click Model List to view a list of Zyxel Nebula Device models that support this feature.
Drop on VLAN	This allows you to define the VLANs in which unknown multicast packets can be dropped. Note: The Nebula Device can drop unknown multicast packets on up to 8 VLANs.
IGMP filtering profiles	An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Nebula Device are able to join. You can set the Nebula Device to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating a port to the profile.
	Click the edit icon to change the profile settings. See Section 11.3.5.1 on page 439 .
	Click the remove icon to delete the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new profile. See Section 11.3.5.1 on page 439 .
IPTV Topology Setup	
The following three buttons are available only when there are multiple Nebula Devices in the site and your administrator account has full access to this screen.	
IGMP Snooping	Select the Nebula Devices you want to configure and click this button to turn on or off IGMP snooping on the selected Nebula Devices.
Role	Select the Nebula Devices you want to configure and click this button to change the IGMP role of the selected Nebula Devices.
Port Setting	Select the Nebula Devices you want to configure and click this button to open the Port Settings screen, where you can change IGMP leave mode and IGMP filtering profile for the ports on the selected Nebula Devices. See Section 11.3.5.2 on page 440 .
IGMP topology tips	Click this to view information about configuring your network and device roles to optimize IPTV performance.
The following list shows you the IGMP settings for each Nebula Device in the site.	
Switch Name	This shows the name of the Nebula Device in the site.
IGMP Snooping	This shows whether IGMP snooping is enabled or not on the Nebula Device.
Role	This shows whether the Nebula Device is acting as an IGMP snooping querier, aggregation Nebula Device or access Nebula Device in the IPTV network. Click the question mark to view more information about IGMP roles.
Port Settings	Click Advanced Setup to open the Port Settings screen, where you can change IGMP leave mode and IGMP filtering profile for the ports on the Nebula Device. See Section 11.3.5.2 on page 440 .
The following fields display when the IGMP role of a Nebula Device is set to Querier .	
VLAN	Enter the ID number of the VLAN on which the Nebula Device learns the multicast group membership.

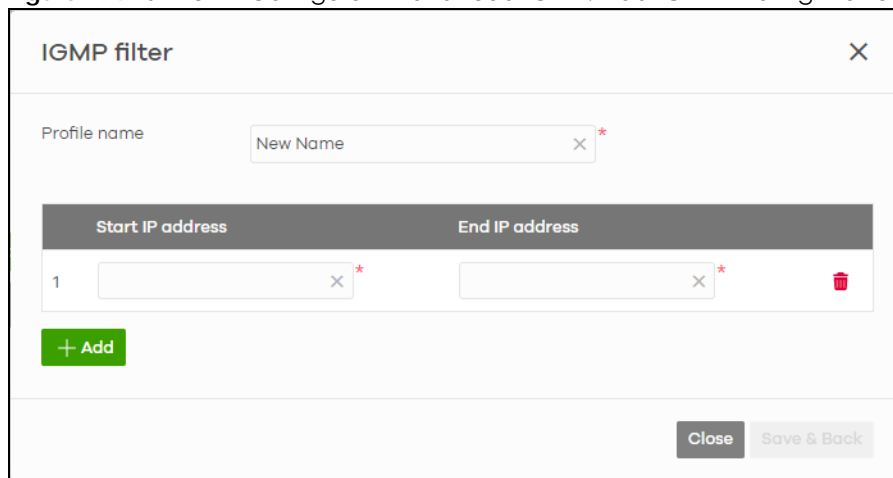
Table 167 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Querier IP Interface	Enter the IP address of the Nebula Device interface in IGMP querier mode. The Nebula Device acts as an IGMP querier in that network/VLAN to periodically send out IGMP query packets with the interface IP address and update its multicast forwarding table.
Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the Nebula Device interface in IGMP querier mode.
	Click the remove icon to delete the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.

11.3.5.1 Add/Edit IGMP Filtering Profiles


Use this screen to create a new IGMP filtering profile or edit an existing profile. To access this screen, click the **Add** button or a profile's **Edit** button in the **IGMP filtering profiles** section of the **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** screen.

Figure 194 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP: Add IGMP Filtering Profile



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 168 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP: Add/Edit IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for this profile for identification purposes.
Rule	This shows the index number of the rule.
Start IP Address	Enter the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End IP Address	Enter the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the Start IP Address and End IP Address fields.
	Click the remove icon to delete the rule.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule in this profile.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Save & Back	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

11.3.5.2 IGMP Port Settings

Use this screen to modify the IGMP snooping settings, such as IGMP leave mode and filtering profile for all ports on the Nebula Device. To access this screen, select one or more Nebula Devices and click the **Port Setting** button or click a Nebula Device's **Advanced Setup** button in the **IPTV Topology Setup** section of the **Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP** screen.

Figure 195 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP: Port Settings

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 169 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP: Port Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Switch name	This shows the name of the Nebula Devices that you select to configure.
Role	This shows whether the Nebula Devices you selected is an IGMP snooping querier, aggregation Nebula Device or access Nebula Device in the IPTV network.
Leave Mode	<p>Select Immediate Leave to set the Nebula Device to remove this port from the multicast tree immediately when an IGMP leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.</p> <p>Select Normal Leave or Fast Leave and enter an IGMP normal/fast leave timeout value to have the Nebula Device wait for an IGMP report before the leave timeout when an IGMP leave message is received on this port. You need to specify how many milliseconds the Nebula Device waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p> <p>In Normal Leave mode, when the Nebula Device receives an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, it forwards the message to the multicast router. The multicast router then sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. The Nebula Device forwards the query message to all hosts connected to the port and waits for IGMP reports from hosts to update the forwarding table.</p> <p>In Fast Leave mode, right after receiving an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Nebula Device itself sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. This helps speed up the leave process.</p>

Table 169 Switch > Configure > Advanced IGMP: Port Settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Maximum Group	Select Enable and enter the maximum number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report received on this port will replace the earliest group entry in the multicast forwarding table. Otherwise, select Disable to turn off multicast group limits.
IGMP Filtering Profile	An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Nebula Device are able to join. Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select No Select to remove restrictions and allow the port to join any multicast group.
Reset	Click this button to return the screen to its last-saved settings.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Save	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

11.3.6 RADIUS Policies

Use this screen to configure authentication servers and policies to validate access to ports on the Nebula Device using an external RADIUS server.

Click **Switch > Configure > RADIUS policies** to access this screen.

Figure 196 Switch > Configure > RADIUS policies

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 170 Switch > Configure > RADIUS policies




LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RADIUS server	
	Click the icon of a rule and drag the rule up or down to change the order.
Host	Enter the IP address of the external RADIUS server.
Port	Enter the port of the RADIUS server for authentication (default 1812).
Secret	Enter a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Nebula Device.

Table 170 Switch > Configure > RADIUS policies (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click the remove icon to delete the entry.
Add	Click this button to create a new RADIUS server entry.
RADIUS policy	
Password for MAC-Base Auth	Enter the password the Nebula Device sends along with the MAC address of a client for authentication with the RADIUS server. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the policy.
RADIUS policy type	Select MAC-Base if you want to validate access to the ports based on the MAC address and password of the client. Select 802.1x if you want to validate access to the ports based on the user name and password provided by the client.
Guest VLAN	A guest VLAN is a pre-configured VLAN on the Nebula Device that allows non-authenticated users to access limited network resources through the Nebula Device. Enter the number that identifies the guest VLAN.
Port security	Click On to enable port security on the ports. Otherwise, select Off to disable port security on the ports.
Limited numbers of MAC address	This field is configurable only when you enable port security. Specify the maximum number of MAC addresses that may be learned on a port.
Switch ports	This shows the number of the Nebula Device ports to which this policy is applied.
	Click the remove icon to delete the profile.
Add	Click this button to create a new policy.

11.3.7 PoE Schedules

Use this screen to view and configure Power over Ethernet (PoE) schedules which can be applied to the ports. PoE is enabled at the specified time/date. Click **Switch > Configure > PoE schedules** to access this screen.

Note: The NCC will not generate an alert when PoE is disabled and the connected APs go offline because of the pre-defined PoE schedules.

The table shows the name of the existing schedules and the number of ports to which a schedule is applied. Click a schedule's edit icon to modify the schedule settings or click the **Add** button to create a new schedule. See [Section 11.3.7.1 on page 443](#).

Figure 197 Switch > Configure > PoE schedules



11.3.7.1 Create new schedule

Click the **Add** button in the **Switch > Configure > PoE schedule** screen to access this screen.

Figure 198 Switch > Configure > PoE schedule: Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 171 Switch > Configure > PoE schedule: Add

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this schedule for identification purposes.
Schedule templates	Select a pre-defined schedule template or select Custom schedule and manually configure the day and time at which PoE is enabled.
Day	This shows the day of the week.
Availability	Click On to enable PoE at the specified time on this day. Otherwise, select Off to turn PoE off on the day and at the specified time. Specify the hour and minute when the schedule begins and ends each day.
Close	Click this button to exit this screen without saving.
Add	Click this button to save your changes and close the screen.

11.3.8 Switch Settings

Use this screen to configure global Nebula Device settings, such as (R)STP, QoS, port mirroring, voice VLAN and DHCP server guard.

Click **Switch > Configure > Switch settings** to access this screen.

Figure 199 Switch > Configure > Switch settings

Switch > Configure > [Switch settings](#) Override switch configuration

Switch settings

Auto configuration recovery [Model list](#) Beta

Auto configuration recovery ?

VLAN configuration

Management VLAN x *

STP configuration

Rapid spanning tree protocol (RSTP):

STP bridge priority: ?

Switches	Bridge priority
Default	32768

+ Set the bridge priority for another switch

Quality of service

Quality of service:

VLAN	Priority	Description
<input type="text" value="1"/> x *	1	<input type="text" value=""/> x * 🗑️

+ Add

[What is this?](#)

Port mirroring

Port mirroring:

Switch	Destination Port	Source Port
1	<input type="text" value=""/> x *	<input type="text" value=""/> x * 🗑️

+ Add

Voice VLAN

Voice VLAN ?

Voice VLAN ID: x

Priority:

Assign VLAN by:

OUI:

OUI	Description
1 <input type="text" value=""/> x *	<input type="text" value=""/> x * 🗑️

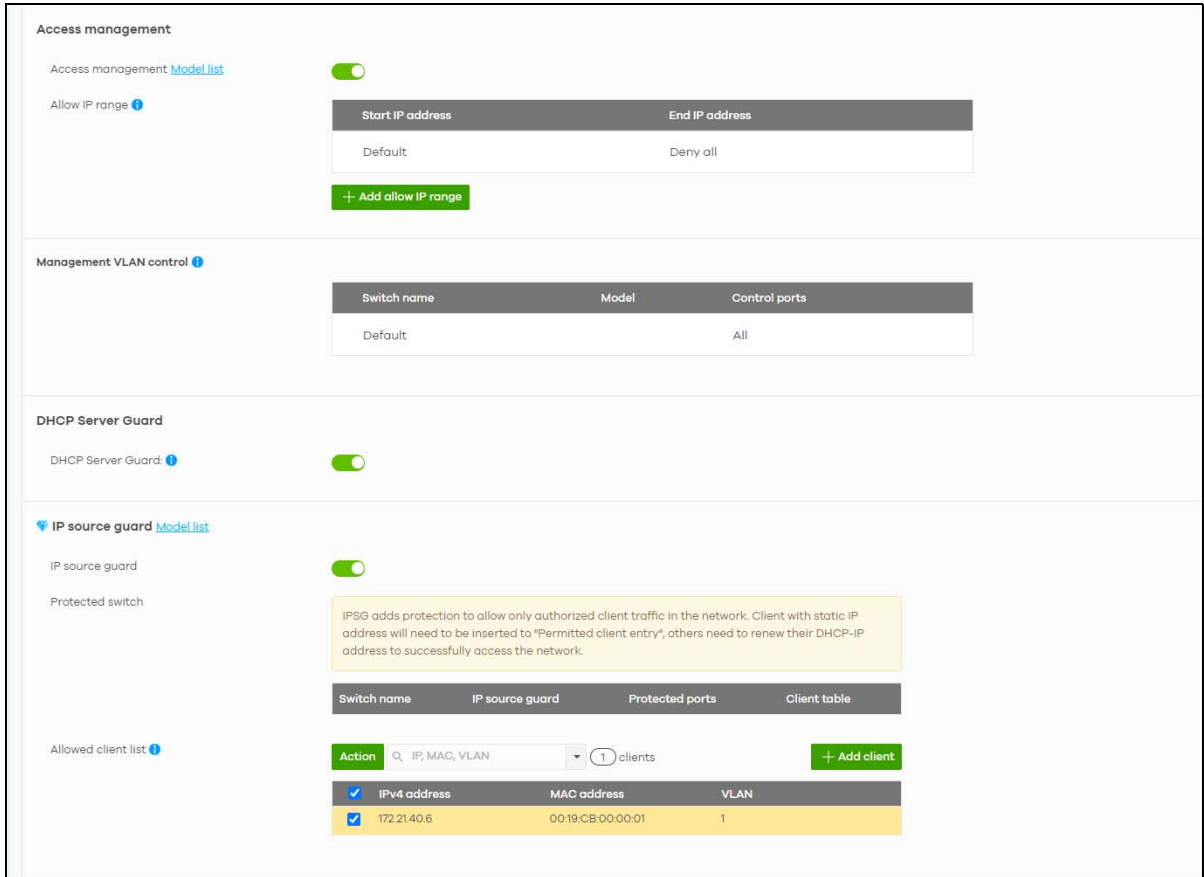
+ Add OUI on this network

Vendor ID based VLAN

Vendor ID based VLAN [Model list](#)

Vendor OUI	VLAN	Priority
🔗 1 <input type="text" value=""/> x *	<input type="text" value=""/> x *	<input type="text" value=""/> x *

+ Add Vendor-ID on this network



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 172 Switch > Configure > Switch settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Auto configuration recovery	
Auto configuration recovery	<p>When On, connectivity check to NCC is done 5 minutes after any configuration change. If an NCC connection problem is detected, the Nebula Device will return to its last saved custom default configuration. The Nebula Device will be locked by NCC and the banner N Switches are currently protected by Auto Configuration Recovery will be displayed.</p> <p>Otherwise, the latest configuration will be saved as the new custom default configuration.</p> <p>Note: If the NCC connectivity error occur 5 minutes after a configuration change, the Nebula Device will not return to its last saved configuration.</p> <p>Note: When Auto configuration recovery is turned Off, a pop-up message appears informing you that the locked Nebula Device(s) will be unlocked. Click Confirm if you wish to continue.</p>
VLAN configuration	
Management VLAN	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the Nebula Device IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the Nebula Device make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
STP configuration	

Table 172 Switch > Configure > Switch settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rapid spanning tree protocol (RSTP)	Select On to enable RSTP on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Off .
STP bridge priority	<p>Bridge priority is used in determining the root Nebula Device, root port and designated port. The Nebula Device with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root Nebula Device. If all Nebula Devices have the same priority, the Nebula Device with the lowest MAC address will then become the root Nebula Device.</p> <p>The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge.</p> <p>Click the button to create a new entry. Select the Nebula Devices for which you want to configure the bridge priority, and select a value from the drop-down list box.</p>
Quality of service	
Quality of service	<p>Enter a VLAN ID and select the priority level that the Nebula Device assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN. Enter a descriptive name for the QoS (Quality of Service).</p> <p>Click Add to create a new entry.</p>
Port mirroring	
Port mirroring	<p>Click Add to create a new entry.</p> <p>Select the Nebula Device for which you want to configure port mirroring, specify the destination port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original ports, and also enter the source port on which you mirror the traffic.</p>
Voice VLAN	
Voice VLAN	<p>Select On to enable the Voice VLAN feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Off.</p> <p>It groups the voice traffic with defined priority into an assigned VLAN which enables the separation of voice and data traffic coming into the Nebula Device port.</p>
Voice VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID number.
Priority	Select the priority level of the Voice VLAN from 1 to 6.
Assign VLAN by	<p>Select how the Nebula Device assigns ports connected to VoIP devices to the Voice VLAN.</p> <p>OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier): The Nebula Device assigns a port connected to a VoIP device to the Voice VLAN if the connected device's OUI matches any OUI in the list.</p> <p>LLDP-MED: The Nebula Device assigns a port connected to a VoIP device to the voice VLAN if the connected device is identified as a VoIP device using the LLDP-MED protocol.</p> <p>Note: The connected device must support LLDP-MED and have LLDP-MED enabled.</p>
OUI	<p>Click Add OUI on this network to add an OUI and a description for the OUI.</p> <p>An Organizationally Unique Identifier identifies a manufacturer. Typically, a device's OUI is the first three octets of the device's MAC address.</p> <p>For example, if you have an IP phone from Company A with MAC address 00:0a:95:9d:68:16, you can enter OUI <i>00:0a:95</i> to match all devices from Company A.</p>
DSCP	Enter the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value for traffic on the voice VLAN. The value is defined from 0 through 63, and 0 is the default.
Vendor ID based VLAN	
Vendor ID based VLAN	<p>Select On to enable the Vendor ID based VLAN feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Off.</p> <p>Click the Add Vendor-ID on this network button to define the vendor MAC address OUI, assign to which VLAN, and set the priority. Enter a descriptive name for the Vendor ID based VLAN. Enter up to 64 characters for this field including special characters inside the square quotes [~!@#\$\$%^&*()_+{} :"<>-=[]\;',./].</p>

Table 172 Switch > Configure > Switch settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Access management	
Access management	Select On to enable the access management feature on the Nebula Device. Otherwise, select Off .
Allow IP range	Click the Add allow IP range button to set the connected devices' starting and ending IP addresses that will be allowed to access the Nebula Devices through telnet, SSH, HTTP, HTTPS, and FTP.
Management VLAN control	<p>This allows the administrator to set the Nebula Device ports through which the device management VLAN traffic is allowed. For example, 1, 10–15, or ALL.</p> <p>By default, NCC allows the device management VLAN traffic through all ports (even if Allowed VLAN in the Switch > Configure > Switch port settings is restricted). This avoids the device disconnecting from NCC during configuration.</p>
DHCP Server Guard	
DHCP Server Guard	<p>Select On to enable the DHCP server guard feature on the Nebula Device in order to prevent illegal DHCP servers. Only the first DHCP server that assigned the Nebula Device IP address is allowed to assign IP addresses to devices in this management VLAN.</p> <p>Otherwise, select Off to disable it.</p>
IP source guard	
IP source guard	<p>Select On to enable IP source guard protection. IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. When the client does not exist in the binding table, the client is unauthorized and traffic will be blocked.</p> <p>To successfully access the network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Client with static IP address will need to be added to the Allowed client list • Client with dynamic IP address will need to get their IP address from an authorized DHCP server.
Protected switch	<p>This shows the Nebula Device(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select On to enable IP source guard protection on the Nebula Device. Then click Save. • Click the edit icon to go to Switch > Configure > Switch ports to configure Protected ports (see Section 11.3.1 on page 424 for more information). • Click Run to display a pop-up window showing the current client table. • Select the DHCP-snooping or Block entries and click Transfer to add these to the allowed client list. Then click Save.
Allowed client list	<p>This allows the administrator to define a set of clients. Click Add client to define the IPv4 address, MAC address, and VLAN of the static client. A previous entry will be overwritten when you enter a duplicate MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p>Click Actions > Edit to modify the static client entry. Then click Update. The MAC address and VLAN ID will appear in red when you enter a duplicate entry.</p> <p>Click Actions > Delete to remove the static client entry.</p> <p>Click Save to activate the settings.</p> <p>Note: Maximum of 128 static entries is allowed per site.</p>

CHAPTER 12

Access Point

12.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the menus that you can use to monitor the Nebula-managed APs (Access Points) in your network and configure settings even before an AP is deployed and added to the site.

Nebula Device refers to Zyxel Hybrid APs (NAP / NWA / WAC / WAX Series) in this chapter. To view the list of Nebula Devices that can be managed through NCC, go to **Help > Support tools > Device function table**.

The following features in the **Access Point** menus apply to specific models only.

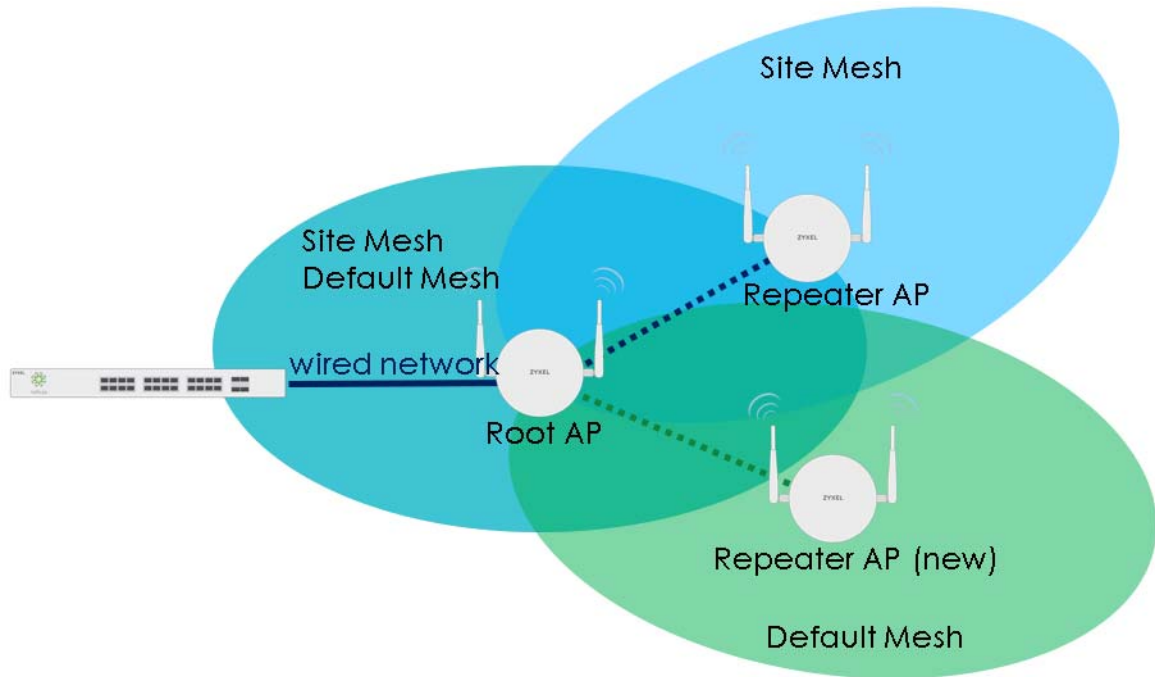
Table 173 Features/Fields Supported on Specific Nebula Devices Only

FEATURES/FIELDS	INCLUDED NEBULA DEVICES	LOCATION
Ethernet Secure Tunnel Setting in Remote AP Setting	WAC500H	Click a Nebula Device entry in the Access Point > Monitor > Access Points screen to display individual Nebula Device statistics. See Section 12.2.1 on page 450 for more information.
Wired stations		
WPA3 in Security options	NWA110AX, WAX510D, WAX650S	Click Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings . See Section 12.3.2 on page 476 for more information.
Ethernet Traffic options Forwarding Mode	WAC500H	Click an entry in the Port setting table of the Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings screen to access the Edit – AP & port settings screen. See Section 12.3.8.1 on page 502 for more information.

12.1.1 Nebula Smart Mesh

Nebula Smart Mesh, also called Smart Mesh or AP Smart Mesh, is a WiFi mesh solution for Nebula Devices. With Smart Mesh, you can have two or more Nebula Devices automatically create a mesh network within your home or office, ensuring there are no areas with a weak WiFi signal.

Figure 200 Nebula Smart Mesh



Smart Mesh assigns a role to each Nebula Device depending on its connection method.

- **Root AP:** A Nebula Device that is connected to the network by Ethernet and can reach the gateway device.
- **Repeater AP:** A Nebula Device that is connected to the network wirelessly, or that is connected to the network by Ethernet but cannot reach the gateway device.

The Repeater Nebula Devices rebroadcast the root Nebula Device's SSID, and then relay WiFi traffic back to the gateway.

To create a Smart Mesh network, add two or more Nebula Devices to the same Nebula-managed site and ensure that each Nebula Device has Smart Mesh enabled. Then connect one or more Nebula Devices to your network's gateway using an Ethernet cable, so that you have at least one root Nebula Device. Finally, place one or more non-wired Nebula Devices in areas where you want to extend WiFi coverage.

12.1.2 Smart Mesh Network Topology

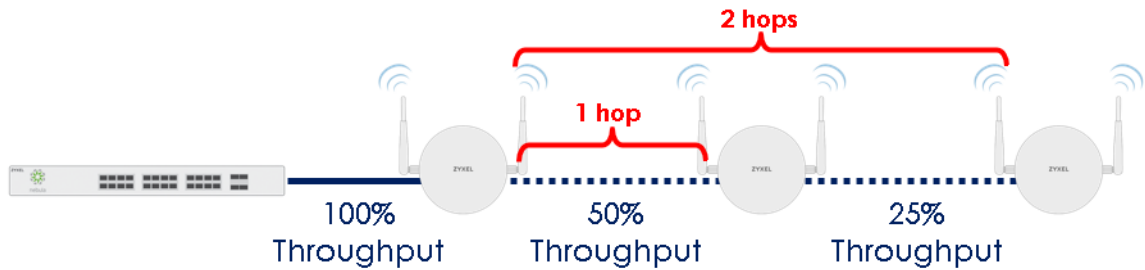
After you add a Nebula Device to an NCC site and then turn it on, the new Nebula Device automatically connects to a mesh network called the **default mesh**. The Nebula Device then tries to connect to a root Nebula Device and contact NCC. After the Nebula Device successfully contacts NCC and joins the site, the Nebula Device stops using the default mesh and instead connects to other Nebula Devices in the site using a dedicated network called the **site mesh**.

12.1.2.1 Smart Mesh Wireless Hops

Each repeater Nebula Device tries to connect to the site gateway through a root Nebula Device. If a repeater Nebula Device cannot connect directly to a root Nebula Device, then the repeater Nebula Device relays its WiFi traffic through another repeater Nebula Device. Each time traffic passes through a WiFi connection in the mesh network, it counts as one **hop**.

Nebula Smart Mesh supports an unlimited number of hops. However, each hop in a mesh network reduces network throughput by up to half. Therefore, we recommend only allowing a maximum of two hops within your Smart Mesh network.

Figure 201 Nebula Smart Mesh Wireless Hops

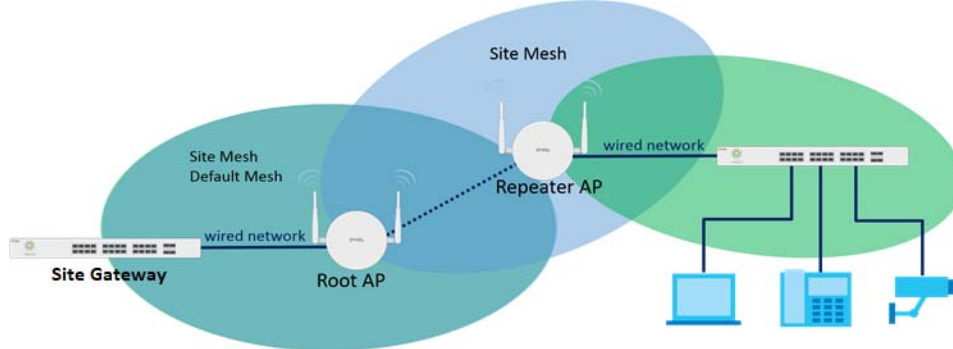


12.1.2.2 Wireless Bridge

Wireless bridge is a Smart Mesh feature that allows two Nebula Devices to automatically connect two network segments together over a WiFi connection. This is useful when you want to extend your wired network to a new area, but it is difficult to run cables to that area.

To use wireless bridge, enable **Wireless Bridge** on two Nebula Devices in NCC. Then connect wired clients to one of the Nebula Device's LAN port. These wired clients form a new network segment and are able to reach the site gateway through the Nebula Device's WiFi connection.

Figure 202 Nebula Smart Mesh Wireless Bridge



12.2 Monitor

Use the **Monitor** menus to check Nebula Device information, client information, event log messages and summary report for Nebula Devices in the selected site.

12.2.1 Access Points

This screen allows you to view the detailed information about an Nebula Device in the selected site. Click **Access Point > Monitor > Access points** to access this screen.

Figure 203 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 174 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Access point	Select to view device information and connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month.
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
Action	Perform an action on the selected Nebula Devices.
Reboot	Select this to restart the Nebula Device.
Upgrade	Select this to upgrade the firmware on the Nebula Device.
Change PSK	Select this to generate random Pre-Shared Key that allows a user to access the WiFi network through the Nebula Device. Note: Programmable SSID must be enabled in Access Point > Configure > SSID settings .
Tag	Select one or multiple Nebula Devices and click this button to create a new tag for the Nebula Devices or delete an existing tag. At the time of writing, there are two pre-defined tags. The LED tags have priority over the LED setting in the Site-Wide > General Setting screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LED_Off: this tag allows you to turn off the LEDs (except the locator LED) on the selected Nebula Devices. LED_On: this tag allows you to have the LEDs stay lit after the selected Nebula Devices are ready.
Move	Select one or multiple Nebula Devices and click this button to move the Nebula Devices to another site or remove the Nebula Devices from the current site.
AP Role	Select one or multiple Nebula Devices and click this button to enable or disable the Remote AP feature. Remote Nebula Device enables the site's Security Appliance to connect to the Nebula Device through a secure VPN tunnel. This allows you to set up VPN-enabled WiFi Nebula Devices in remote locations, such as in a branch office or at home. Clients connected to these Nebula Devices can securely access your network through the VPN tunnel. Note: Enabling Remote Nebula Device automatically enables Ethernet and wireless storm control on the Nebula Device.
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of Nebula Devices.
access points	This shows the number of Nebula Devices connected to the site network.
Export	Click this button to save the access point list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
*	Click this to select all the rows in this table.

Table 174 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points (continued)



LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	<p>This shows the status of the Nebula Device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green: The Nebula Device is online and has no alerts. • Amber: The Nebula Device has alerts. • Red: The Nebula Device is offline. • Gray: The Nebula Device has been offline for 7 days or more. • : The Nebula Device is acting as a repeater. <p>For example, an alert is created and the status color is amber when the Nebula Device is transmitting data at 100 Mbps in full duplex mode or when the Nebula Device is in a Limited Power mode.</p>
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
LAN IP	This shows the local (LAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
Remote AP	This shows whether the Remote Nebula Device function is Enabled or Disabled .
2.4GHz	This shows the number of WiFi clients in the 2.4 GHz band.
5GHz	This shows the number of WiFi clients in the 5 GHz band.
6GHz	This shows the number of WiFi clients in the 6 GHz band.
AP Role Capability	This displays whether the Nebula Device can act as a remote Nebula Device (Remote AP) or not (Standard AP).
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Client	This shows how many clients are connected to the Nebula Device within the specified time period.
Current client	This shows how many clients are currently connecting to the Nebula Device.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.
Channel	This shows the channel ID the Nebula Device is using.
Channel Utilization 2.4GHz	This shows the percentage of the 2.4 GHz channel ID usage.
Channel Utilization 5GHz	This shows the percentage of the 5 GHz channel ID usage.
Channel Utilization 6GHz	This shows the percentage of the 6 GHz channel ID usage.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the Nebula Device's clients.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of the Nebula Device's data usage.
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Connectivity	<p>This shows the access point connection status.</p> <p>The red time slot indicates the connection to the NCC is down, and the green time slot indicates the connection is up. Move the cursor over a time slot to see the actual date and time when an Nebula Device is connected or disconnected.</p>
Ethernet 1	This shows the speed and duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on the Nebula Device's up-link port. It shows Down if the Nebula Device is connected to a root Nebula Device wirelessly.
Neighbor Info	This shows the LLDP information received on the up-link port.
Production information	This shows the production information of the Nebula Device.

Table 174 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Hop	This shows the hop count of the Nebula Device. For example, "1" means the Nebula Device is connected to a root Nebula Device directly. "2" means there is another repeater Nebula Device between this Nebula Device and the root Nebula Device.
Uplink AP	<p>This shows the role and descriptive name of the Nebula Device to which this Nebula Device is connected wirelessly.</p> <p>When Smart Mesh is enabled and the repeater Nebula Device losses connection to the root Nebula Device, click Reconnect to re-establish connection.</p> <p>Note: Make sure to enable Manual uplink in Access point > Monitor > Access point: Details > Status > Smart mesh > Edit. You also need to specify the root Nebula Device in select an AP. See Table 175 on page 455 for more information.</p>
Uplink signal	Before the slash, this shows the signal strength the uplink Nebula Device (a root Nebula Device or a repeater) receives from this Nebula Device (in repeater mode). After the slash, this shows the signal strength this Nebula Device (in repeater mode) receives from the uplink access point.
Uplink Tx/Rx rate	This is the maximum transmission/reception rate of the root Nebula Device or repeater to which the Nebula Device is connected.
Wireless bridge	<p>This shows whether wireless bridge is enabled on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>For more information about wireless bridge, see Section 12.1.2.2 on page 450.</p>
Uplink	This shows whether the Nebula Device is connected to the gateway through a wired Ethernet connection or WiFi connection.
Power mode	<p>This shows the Nebula Device's power status.</p> <p>Full – the Nebula Device receives power using a power adapter and/or through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus. The PoE device that supports IEEE 802.3at PoE Plus can supply power of up to 30W per Ethernet port.</p> <p>Limited – the Nebula Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3af PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adapter. The PoE device that supports IEEE 802.3af PoE can supply power of up to 15.4W per Ethernet port.</p> <p>When the Nebula Device's power mode is Limited, the Nebula Device throughput decreases and has just one transmitting radio chain.</p> <p>It always shows Full if the Nebula Device does not support power detection.</p>
Firmware status	This shows whether the firmware installed on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Remote AP VPN	<p>This shows which VPN the Remote Nebula Device tunnel is configured to use.</p> <p>If Remote Nebula Device is disabled, this field shows Disconnected.</p>
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields. For faster loading of data, select only the configuration fields listed that do NOT take a long time to fetch data.

12.2.1.1 Access Point Details

Click a Nebula Device entry in the **Access Point > Monitor > Access Points** screen to display individual Nebula Device statistics.

Figure 204 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details Part 1

Access point > Monitor > [Access point](#) > WAX630S-FT

Access point / WAX630S-FT ↻

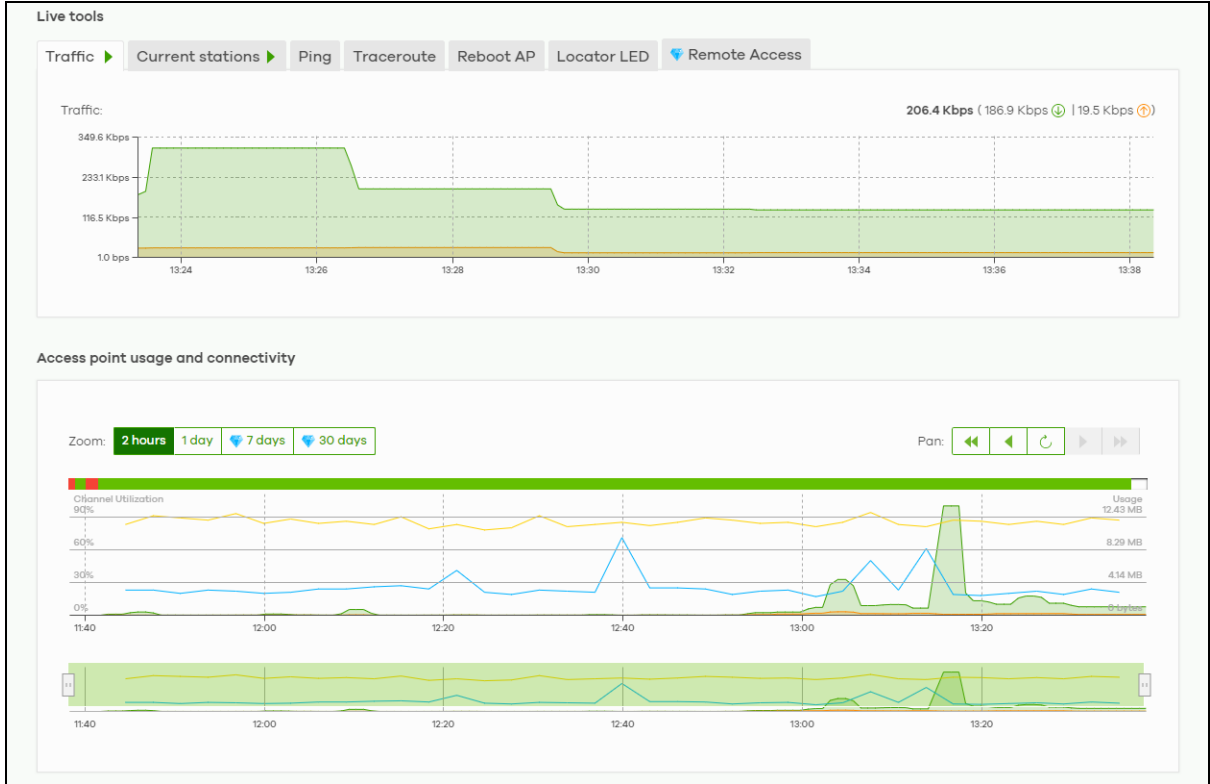
Configuration 🔗

- Remote AP: Beta Disabled
- Name: WAX630S-FT
- MAC address: D8:EC:D8:6A:E7:D8
- Serial number: S212L3729630S(WAX630S)
- Description:
- Address:
- Tag:
- Load balancing:

Status

- LAN IP: 192.168.11.48
- Gateway: 192.168.11.1 | DNS: 8.8.8.8
- Public IP: 210.61.209.1
- Usage: 133.80 MB used in the last 24 hours.
- Current clients: [5 client\(s\)](#)
- Topology: [Show](#)
- Neighbor info: [Shawn_NSW100-10P\(NSW100-10P\)/4/Uplink](#)
- Link: Uplink: 1000M/Full
LAN 1: Down
- Ports: LAN 1
PVID: 1
Allowed VLANs: 1, 10, 20
- Storm control: Disabled
- Channel (Band): 6 (DCS) [2.4GHz] 44*/48/36/40 (DCS) [5GHz]
- Channel utilization: 85% [2.4GHz] 18% [5GHz]
- Power mode: Full (Power by PoE)
- Smart mesh: Disabled
- Wireless bridge: Disabled
- History: [Event Log](#)
- Configuration status: Up to date
- Firmware status: Up to date
- Current version: V6.30(ABZD.0)

Figure 205 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details Part 2



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
<p>Configuration</p> <p>Click the edit configuration icon to change the device name, description, tags, load balancing, and address. You can also move the device to another site.</p>	

Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION																			
Remote AP	<p>Click this to enable or disable the Remote AP feature.</p> <p>Remote AP enables the site's Security Appliance to connect to the Nebula Device through a secure VPN tunnel. This allows you to set up VPN-enabled WiFi Nebula Devices in remote locations, such as in a branch office or at home. Clients connected to these Nebula Devices can securely access your network through the VPN tunnel.</p> <p>With the Remote AP feature (in the Secure WiFi license) the connection is from the Nebula Device to a managed access point using NVGRE (Network Virtualization using Generic Routing Encapsulation) over IPsec tunnel. This encapsulates and encrypts traffic from the remote access point to the Nebula Device. The clients connected to the remote access point do not need IPsec client software installed.</p> <p>Note: Enabling Remote AP automatically enables Ethernet and wireless storm control on the Nebula Device. At the time of writing, Ethernet Secure Tunnel Setting for Remote AP Setting is available for WAC500H only.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Remote AP Setting X</p> <p>Local SSID Setting</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Enabled</th> <th>SSID</th> <th>Security Mode</th> <th>Key</th> <th>Band</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">X * WPA2-Perso...</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">Concurrent ...</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">X * WPA2-Perso...</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">Concurrent ...</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ethernet Secure Tunnel Setting Beta</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Enabled</th> <th>Tunnel to gateway interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">VLAN520</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;">Cancel Save</p> </div> <p>Configure and enable up to two SSID(s) in Local SSID Setting. WiFi clients connected to these SSIDs are forwarded to the local network of the remote site. The Local SSID Setting are different from the SSIDs you configured in Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings. See Section 12.3.2 on page 476 for the description of the fields.</p> <p>Select from the available LAN or VLAN interface in Tunnel to gateway interface to enable it, and click Save.</p>	Enabled	SSID	Security Mode	Key	Band	<input type="checkbox"/>		X * WPA2-Perso...		Concurrent ...	<input type="checkbox"/>		X * WPA2-Perso...		Concurrent ...	Enabled	Tunnel to gateway interface	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VLAN520
Enabled	SSID	Security Mode	Key	Band																
<input type="checkbox"/>		X * WPA2-Perso...		Concurrent ...																
<input type="checkbox"/>		X * WPA2-Perso...		Concurrent ...																
Enabled	Tunnel to gateway interface																			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	VLAN520																			
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.																			
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the Nebula Device.																			
Serial number	This shows the serial number of the Nebula Device.																			
Description	This shows the user-specified description for the Nebula Device.																			
Address	This shows the user-specified address for the Nebula Device.																			
Tag	This shows the user-specified tag for the Nebula Device.																			
Load balancing	This shows the load balancing group name that the Nebula Device belongs (up to two groups per access point). Nebula Devices in the same group should be within the proximity. This allows them to share the load.																			
Status																				

Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details (continued)

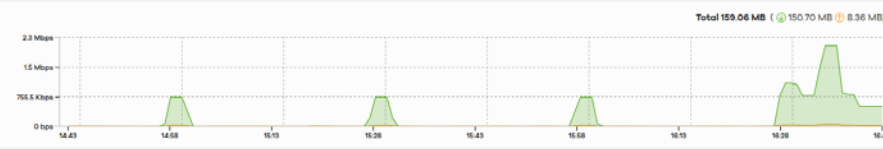
LABEL	DESCRIPTION																														
LAN IP	<p>This shows the local (LAN) IP address of the Nebula Device. It also shows the IP addresses of the gateway and DNS server.</p> <p>Click the edit icon to open a screen where you can change the IP addresses, VLAN ID number and tagging setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: right;">Set IP Address ✕</p> <p>IP type Static IP ▾</p> <p>IP ✕</p> <p>Management VLAN ID 1 ✕ (1-4094)</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Untagged <input type="radio"/> Tagged</p> <p>Subnet mask ✕</p> <p>Gateway ✕</p> <p>Primary DNS ✕</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Close OK</p> </div>																														
Public IP	This shows the global (WAN) IP address of the Nebula Device.																														
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the clients.																														
Current clients	<p>This shows the number of clients which are currently connecting to the Nebula Device and its details.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p style="font-size: small;">Access point > Monitor > Clients</p> <p style="font-size: x-small;">Clients Last 2 hours 🔄</p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: x-small;">Total 159.06 MB (📶 150.70 MB 📶 8.36 MB)</p>  <p style="font-size: x-small;">Policy (status=online) AND (conn... 1 selected, 4 matches in 5 clients + Add client Export</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; font-size: x-small;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Status</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Connected to</th> <th>SSID name</th> <th>Security</th> <th>MAC address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>📶</td> <td>T-Loeobg</td> <td>HomeNAP102</td> <td>Youwontbeabiet...</td> <td>WPA2-Personal</td> <td>08:00:27:00:00:00</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Vacuum</td> <td>HomeNAP102</td> <td>Youwontbeabiet...</td> <td>WPA2-Personal</td> <td>88:63:01:00:00:00</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>Xiaomi Lami</td> <td>HomeNAP102</td> <td>Youwontbeabiet...</td> <td>WPA2-Personal</td> <td>78:4D:03:00:00:00</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>NS</td> <td>HomeNAP102</td> <td>Youwontbeabiet...</td> <td>WPA2-Personal</td> <td>00:00:00:00:00:00</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div>	Status	Description	Connected to	SSID name	Security	MAC address	📶	T-Loeobg	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	08:00:27:00:00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	Vacuum	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	88:63:01:00:00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	Xiaomi Lami	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	78:4D:03:00:00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	NS	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	00:00:00:00:00:00
Status	Description	Connected to	SSID name	Security	MAC address																										
📶	T-Loeobg	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	08:00:27:00:00:00																										
<input type="checkbox"/>	Vacuum	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	88:63:01:00:00:00																										
<input type="checkbox"/>	Xiaomi Lami	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	78:4D:03:00:00:00																										
<input type="checkbox"/>	NS	HomeNAP102	Youwontbeabiet...	WPA2-Personal	00:00:00:00:00:00																										
Topology	Click Show to go to the Site-Wide > Monitor > Topology screen. See Section 7.1.6 on page 215 .																														
Neighbor info	This shows the LLDP information received on the up-link port.																														
Link	<p>This shows the speed and duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on the Nebula Device's ports.</p> <p>It shows Uplink: Wireless if the access point is a repeater and connected to a root Nebula Device wirelessly.</p> <p>A warning icon displays when the Nebula Device is running at 100 Mbps or a lower speed.</p>																														

Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Ports	<p>This is available only for the Nebula Device that has one or more than one Ethernet LAN port (except the uplink port).</p> <p>This shows the PVID of the LAN port and the ID number of VLANs to which the LAN port belongs. See Section 12.3.8 on page 499 for how to change the port's VLAN settings.</p>
Storm control	<p>Storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets received per second on the Nebula Device's Ethernet ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enabling this feature reduces broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network.</p>
Channel (Band)	<p>This shows the channel ID and WiFi frequency band currently being used by the Nebula Device.</p>
Channel utilization	<p>This shows the percentage of the channel ID usage.</p>
Power mode	<p>This shows Full when the Nebula Device receives power directly through a power outlet.</p> <p>This shows Full (Power by DC) when the Nebula Device receives power using a power adapter.</p> <p>This shows Full (Power by PoE) when the Nebula Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3at PoE plus. The PoE device that supports IEEE 802.3at PoE Plus can supply power of up to 30W per Ethernet port.</p> <p>This shows Limited (Require 802.3bt power) when the Nebula Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3bt PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adapter. The PoE device that supports IEEE 802.3bt PoE can supply power of up to 71.3W per Ethernet port.</p> <p>This shows Limited (Require 802.3at power) when the Nebula Device receives power through a PoE switch/injector using IEEE 802.3at PoE even when it is also connected to a power source using a power adapter. The PoE device that supports IEEE 802.3at PoE can supply power of up to 15.4W per Ethernet port.</p> <p>This field is blank when the access point's firmware is older than version 5.50 or (WAX650S / WAX510D firmware is older than version 6.00P4C0). Or when the access point is offline.</p> <p>Click the edit icon to open a screen where you can enable full power mode.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Power Setting ✕</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Force override the power mode to full power</p> <p>Note: Please make sure the power source can provide full power to avoid the system interrupt issue.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Close Update</p> </div> <p>Note: As of this writing, the following is a list of models that will show the edit icon for enabling full power mode: NAP303, NAP353, NWA1302-AC, NWA1123-AC HD, NWA5123-AC HD, WAC6303D-S, WAC6502D-E, WAC6502D-S, WAC6503D-S, WAC6552D-S, WAC6553D-S, WAX650S, NWA110AX, WAX510D.</p>
Antenna	<p>This displays the antenna orientation settings for the Nebula Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch.</p>

Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details (continued)

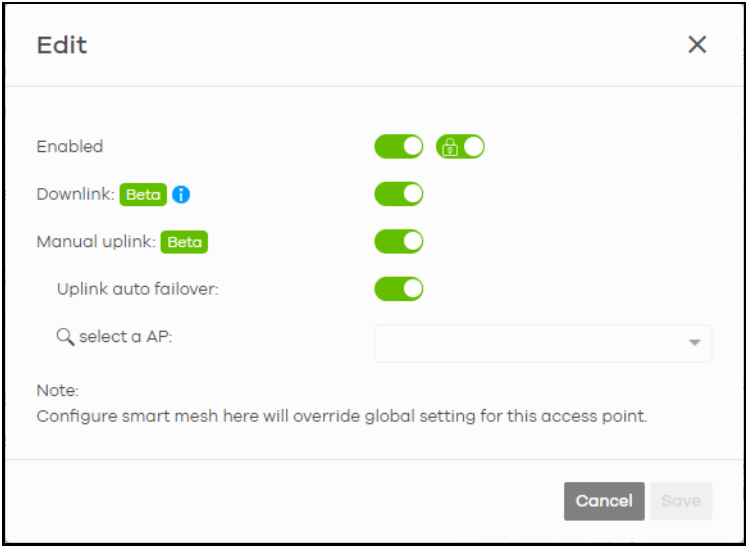

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Smart mesh	<p>This shows whether Nebula Smart Mesh is enabled on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>For more information about Smart Mesh, see Section 12.1.1 on page 448.</p> <p>To view the list of Nebula Devices that support smart mesh, go to Help > Device function table.</p>
Edit	<p>Edit the Nebula Device's Smart Mesh settings.</p> 
Enabled	<p>Enable or disable Smart Mesh on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>This setting overrides the Smart Mesh settings configured for the Nebula Device's site in NCC.</p>
Lock	<p>When enabled, the Nebula Device's local Smart Mesh settings overrides the Smart Mesh settings configured for the Nebula Device's site in NCC.</p> <p>Example 1: If Smart Mesh is enabled for the site in NCC, you can disable Smart Mesh on the Nebula Device by setting Lock to on and Enabled to off.</p> <p>Example 2: If Smart Mesh is disabled for the site in NCC, you can enable Smart Mesh on the Nebula Device by setting Lock to on and Enabled to on.</p>
Downlink	<p>When enabled, the repeater Nebula Device can provide uplink capability to another repeater Nebula Device.</p>
Manual uplink	<p>When enabled, this allows you to select a root or repeater Nebula Device.</p>
Uplink auto failover	<p>When enabled, a repeater Nebula Device that cannot connect to the selected root Nebula Device after 5 tries, will automatically connect to another root or repeater Nebula Device.</p>
select a AP	<p>Select a root or repeater Nebula Device.</p>
Wireless bridge	<p>This shows whether wireless bridge is enabled on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>For more information about wireless bridge, see Section 12.1.2.2 on page 450.</p> <p>Note: Wireless bridge can only work when smart mesh is enabled in this screen.</p>
Edit	<p>Edit the Nebula Device's wireless bridge settings.</p>
Enabled	<p>Enable or disable wireless bridge on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>Note: If Smart Mesh is disabled for the site in NCC, then enabling wireless bridge automatically enables Smart Mesh on the Nebula Device.</p>

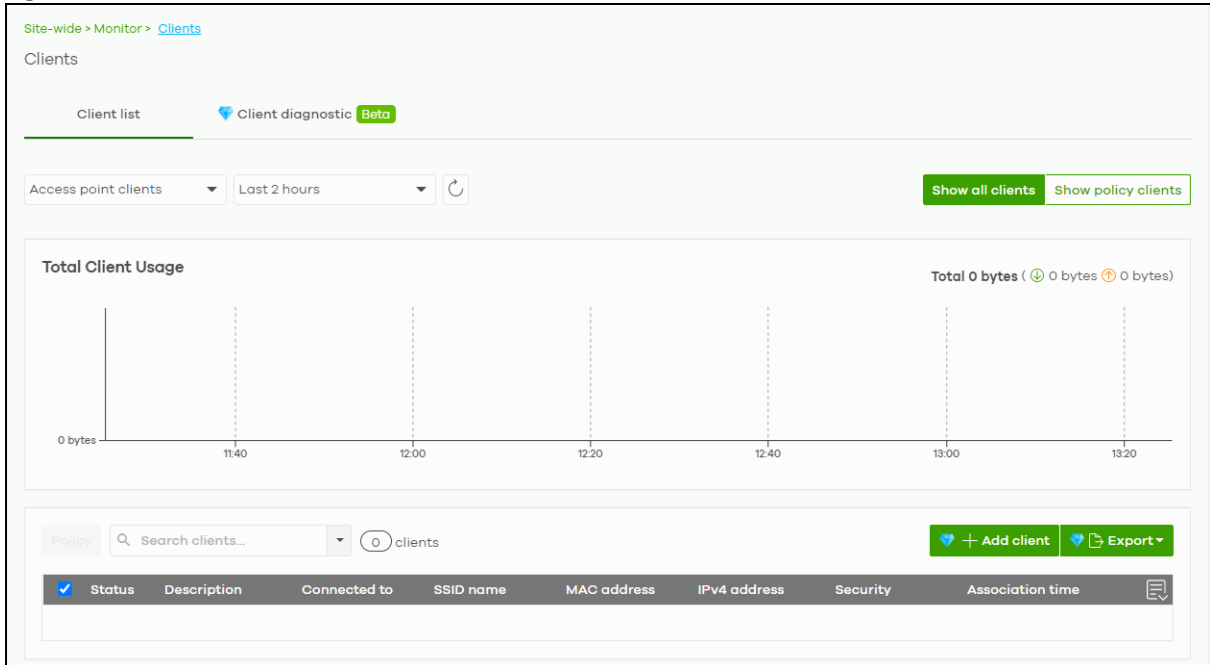
Table 175 Access Point > Monitor > Access Points: Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Allowed VLANs	Enter the IDs of the VLANs that the Nebula Device will forward over the wireless bridge. By default, this field uses the VLANs allowed for LAN1 at Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings . For details, see Section 12.3.8 on page 499 .
History	Click Event log to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Event log screen.
Configuration status	This shows whether the configuration on the Nebula Device is up-to-date.
Firmware status	This shows whether the firmware on the Nebula Device is up-to-date or there is firmware update available for the Nebula Device.
Current version	This shows the firmware version currently installed on the Nebula Device.
Map	This shows the location of the Nebula Device on Google map.
Photo	This shows the photo of the Nebula Device. Click Add to upload one or more photos. Click x to remove a photo.
Live tools	
Traffic	This shows the Nebula Device traffic statistics.
Current stations	This shows the Nebula Device's connected WiFi clients' MAC address, SSID name, IPv4 Address, Signal strength, Security, Channel, Tx rate, Rx rate, Association time, and Capability .
Ping	Enter the domain name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform ping from the Nebula Device in order to test a connection and click Ping . This can be used to determine if the Nebula Device and the computer are able to communicate with each other.
Traceroute	Enter the domain name or IP address of a computer that you want to perform traceroute from the Nebula Device and click Run . This determines the path a packet takes to the specified computer.
Reboot AP	Click the Reboot button to restart the Nebula Device.
Locator LED	Enter a time interval between 1 and 60 minutes. The locator LED will blink for the number of minutes set here once you turn on the locator LED. Click the  button to turn on the locator feature, which shows the actual location of the Nebula Device between several devices in the network.
Remote Access	This allows you to establish a remote connection to this Nebula Device by specifying the port number. Then click Establish . This feature is available to the organization owner, organization administrators with full privileges, and site administrators with full privileges.
Wired stations	This shows the Nebula Device's connected wired clients' MAC address, IPv4 Address, Port number, and the VLAN ID assigned to the wired station. Note: At the time of writing Wired stations is available for WAC500H only.
Access point usage and connectivity	
Move the cursor over the chart to see the transmission rate at a specific time.	
Zoom	Select to view the statistics in the past 2 hours, day, week, or month.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by one day or week.

12.2.2 Clients

This screen allows you to view the connection status and detailed information about clients connected to an Nebula Device in the selected site. Click **Access Point > Monitor > Clients** to access this screen.

Figure 206 Access Point > Monitor > Clients



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 176 Access Point > Monitor > Clients

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clients	Select to view the connected device information and connection status in the past two hours, day, week or month. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Show all clients to show clients that have been online during the selected time period. Select Show policy clients to show clients that have a white-listed or blocked policy applied to them, regardless of when they were last online. The client's usage data is calculated according to the selected time period.
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames on this page.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received by the client in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.

Table 176 Access Point > Monitor > Clients (continued)

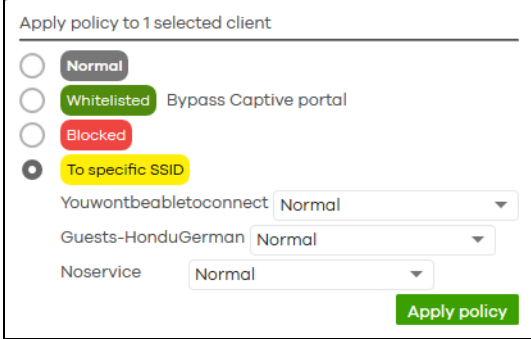

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Policy	<p>Select the clients from the table below, and then choose the security policy that you want to apply to the selected clients. Choose Normal to apply the captive portal authentication to the selected clients. To allow the selected clients to bypass captive portal authentication, choose Whitelisted. Choose Blocked when the selected clients fails the captive portal authentication. Choose To specific SSID to selectively apply captive portal authentication to specific_SSID. Then, click Apply policy.</p> 
Search	Specify your desired filter criteria to filter the list of clients.
Clients	This shows the number of clients connected to an Nebula Device in the site network.
Add client	Click this button to open a window where you can specify a client's name and MAC address to apply a policy before it is connected to the Nebula Device's network.
Export	Click this button to save the client list as a CSV or XML file to your computer.
Status	This shows whether the client is online (green) or offline (red), and whether the client is wired or WiFi.
Description	<p>This shows the descriptive name of the client.</p> <p>Click the name to display the individual client statistics. See Section 12.2.2.1 on page 463.</p>
Connected to	<p>This shows the name of the Nebula Device to which the client is connected.</p> <p>Click the name to display the individual Nebula Device statistics. See Section 12.2.1.1 on page 453.</p>
SSID name	This shows the name of the Nebula Device's WiFi network to which the client is connected.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the client.
IPv4 address	This shows the IP address of the client.
Channel	This shows the channel ID the client is using.
Band	This shows the WiFi frequency band currently being used by the client.
Signal strength	<p>This shows the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the client's WiFi connection, and an icon showing the signal strength.</p> <p>Icon default thresholds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Green/5 blocks: signal is greater than -67 dBm, strong signal • Amber/4 blocks: signal -67 to -73 dBm, average signal • Amber/3 blocks: signal -74 to -80 dBm, below average signal • Red/2 blocks: signal is less than -80 dBm, weak signal
Security	This shows which secure encryption method is being used by the client to connect to the Nebula Device.
Tx Rate	This shows maximum transmission rate of the client.
Rx Rate	This shows maximum reception rate of the client.
Download	This shows the amount of data received by the client since it last connected.

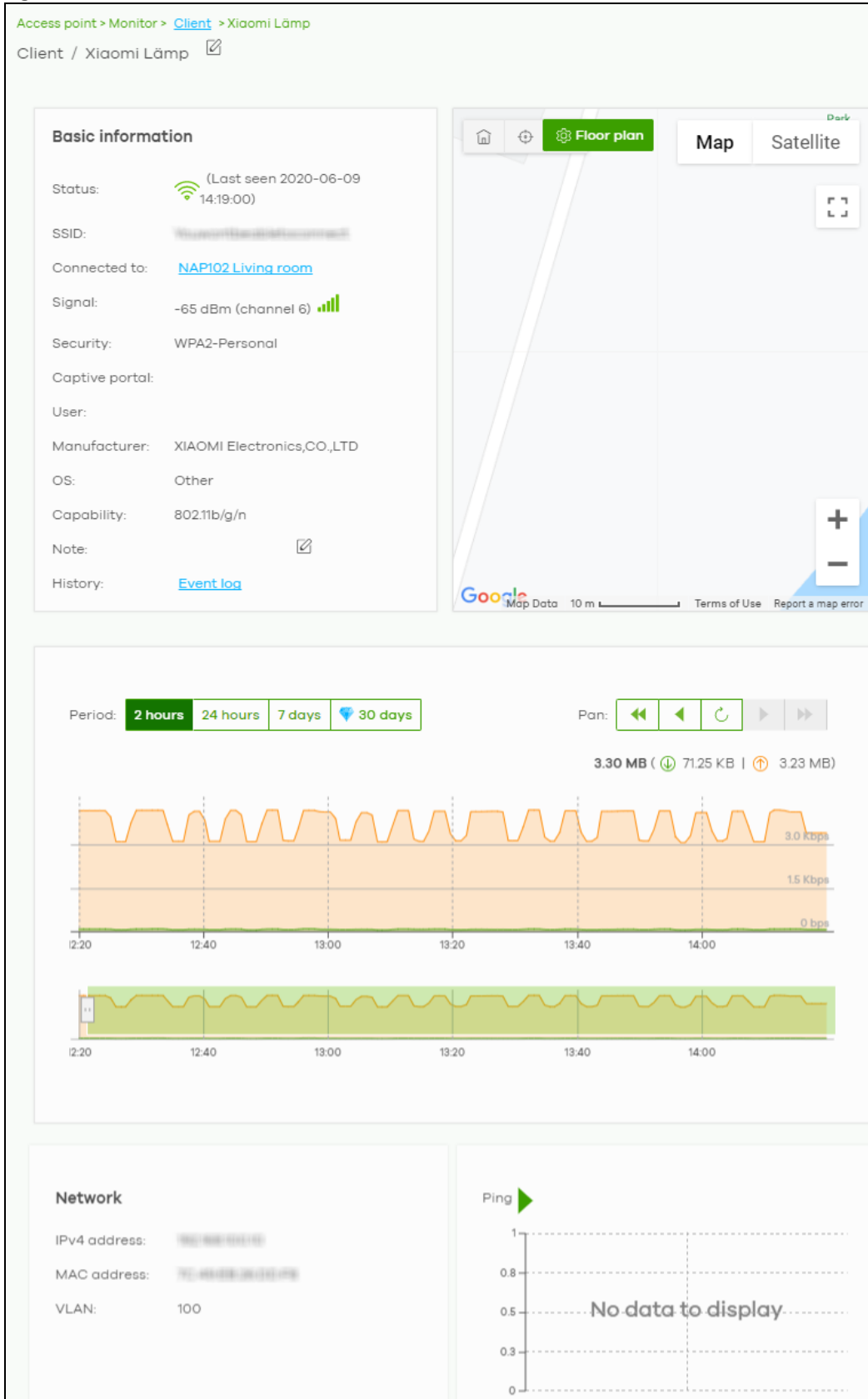
Table 176 Access Point > Monitor > Clients (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upload	This shows the amount of data transmitted from the client since it last connected.
Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the access point (upload + download) since it last connected.
Association time	This shows the date and time the client associated with the Nebula Device.
First seen	This shows the first date and time the client was discovered.
Last seen	This shows the last date and time the client was discovered.
Capability	This shows the WiFi standards supported by the client or the supported standards currently being used by the client.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer of the client device.
Authentication	This shows the authentication method used by the client to access the network. This shows Unauthorized if the captive portal page displays but the client has not proceeded with the authentication process. The field is blank if web authentication is disabled.
User	This shows the user account information used to log into the NCC through captive portal, using Facebook login or 802.1x with Nebula cloud authentication or a RADIUS server. This field is blank if the user logs in through Facebook WiFi or web authentication is disabled.
OS	This shows the operating system running on the client device.
Policy	This shows the security policy applied to the client.
VLAN	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the client belongs.
Note	This shows additional information for the client.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.

12.2.2.1 Client Details

Click a client entry in the **Access Point > Monitor > Clients** screen to display individual client statistics.

Figure 207 Access Point > Monitor > Clients: Client Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 177 Access Point > Monitor > Clients: Client Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This shows whether the client is online (green), or goes offline (red). It also shows the last date and time the client was discovered.
SSID	This shows the name of the Nebula Device's WiFi network to which the client is connected.
Connected to	This shows the name of the Nebula Device to which the client is connected. Click the name to display the individual Nebula Device statistics. See Section 12.2.1.1 on page 453 .
Signal	This shows the RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) of the client's WiFi connection, and an icon showing the signal strength. Icon default thresholds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Green/5 blocks: signal is greater than -67 dBm, strong signal Amber/4 blocks: signal -67 to -73 dBm, average signal Amber/3 blocks: signal -74 to -80 dBm, below average signal Red/2 blocks: signal is less than -80 dBm, weak signal
Security	This shows the encryption method used to connect to the Nebula Device.
Captive portal	This shows the web authentication method used by the client to access the network.
User	This shows the number of users currently connected to the network through the client device.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer of the client device connected to the Nebula Device.
OS	This shows the operating system running on the client device, if known.
Capability	This shows the WiFi standards supported by the client or the supported standards currently being used by the client.
Note	This shows additional information for the client. Click the edit icon to change it.
History	Click Event log to go to the Access Point > Monitor > Event log screen.
Map	This shows the location of the client on the Google map.
Period	Select to view the statistics in the past two hours, day, week or month.
Pan	Click to move backward or forward by two hours or one day.
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent or received by the client in kilobits per second (Kbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Network	
IPv4 address	This shows the IP address of the client.
MAC address	This shows the MAC address of the client. If you applied a security policy to a client using the Add client button in the Access Point > Monitor > Clients screen, and the client has never been connected to the Nebula Device's network, an edit icon appears allowing you to modify the client's MAC address,
VLAN	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the client belongs.
Ping	Click the button to ping the client's IP address from the Nebula Device to test connectivity.
Loss rate	This shows the rate of packet loss when you perform ping.
Average latency	This shows the average latency in ms when you perform ping.

12.2.3 Event Log

Use this screen to view WiFi Nebula Device log messages. You can enter the Nebula Device name or a key word, select one or multiple event types, or specify a date/time or even a time range to display only the log messages related to it.

Click **Access Point > Monitor > Event Log** to access this screen.

Figure 208 Access Point > Monitor > Event log

The screenshot shows the 'Event log' interface. At the top, there are search filters for 'Access Point', 'Keyword', and 'Category', all set to 'Any'. Below these are date and time filters: 'Before' 2019-10-30 at 17:12, with a '1h' range and 'UTC+8' time zone. A 'Search' button is present. Below the filters, there are navigation buttons for 'Newer' and 'Older', a count of '135' events, and an 'Export' button. The main part of the screen is a table with the following data:

Time	Access point	Category	Detail
2019-10-30 16:14:23	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has associated on Channel: 6, SS...
2019-10-30 16:14:27	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has blocked by Hostapd3 on Ch...
2019-10-30 16:14:27	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has blocked by prev-Auth Failed ...
2019-10-30 16:14:27	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	WPA authenticator requests disconnect: reason 1. Interf...
2019-10-30 16:14:27	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	WPA authenticator requests disconnect: reason 2. Interf...
2019-10-30 16:19:26	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has associated on Channel: 6, SS...
2019-10-30 16:19:30	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has blocked by Hostapd3 on Ch...
2019-10-30 16:19:30	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	Station: 9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1 has blocked by prev-Auth Failed ...
2019-10-30 16:19:30	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	WPA authenticator requests disconnect: reason 1. Interf...
2019-10-30 16:19:30	9c:5c:f9:61:f6:c1	Wireless LAN	WPA authenticator requests disconnect: reason 2. Interf...

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination control showing 'Page 1 of 14' and 'Results per page: 10'.

12.2.4 Wireless Health

This screen lets you monitor the health of WiFi networks for your Nebula Devices and connected WiFi clients.

You can improve WiFi network performance by doing the following:

- Enable DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection) to select a radio channel with least interference
- Enable client steering to use a stronger WiFi signal
- Change channel bandwidth to reduce radio interference from other WiFi devices

Click **Access Point > Monitor > Wireless Health** to access this screen.

Figure 209 Access Point > Monitor > Wireless Health

Access point > Monitor > [Wireless health](#)

Wireless health

Auto optimization action: [Model list](#)

6G radio: Beta ⓘ Adaptive Channel width
 DCS

5G radio: ⓘ Adaptive Channel width
 DCS

2.4G radio: ⓘ DCS


Client: ⓘ


Optimization aggressiveness: Beta High
 Standard
 Low


AP wireless health overview

6 GHz 5 GHz 2.4 GHz

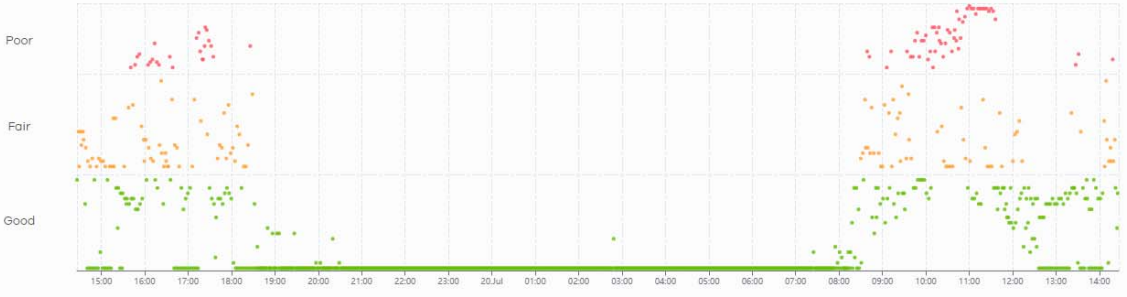
Current status

 2
Good

 0
Fair

 0
Poor

Last 24 hours Last 7 days Last 30 days ▾

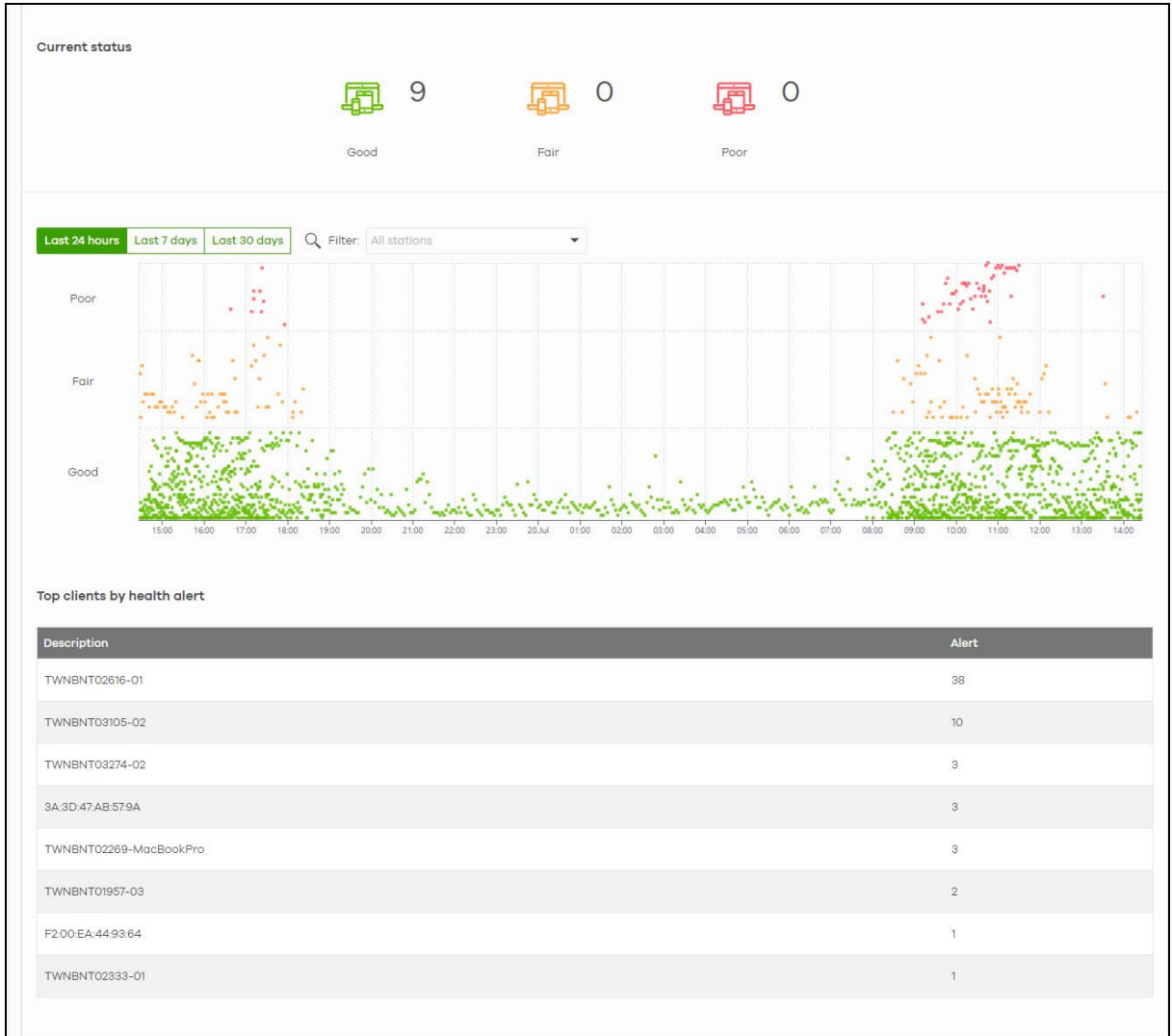


Top APs by health alert

Name	Model	Alert
marketing	WAX510D	65
Shawn seat	WAX510D	13

Clients wireless health overview

6 GHz 5 GHz 2.4 GHz All



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 178 Access Point > Monitor > Wireless Health

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Auto optimization action	
6G radio	<p>Select ON to enable and specify how the Nebula Device improves the WiFi network performance. Otherwise, select OFF to disable it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adaptive channel width – select this option to have the Nebula Device change the channel bandwidth from 160 MHz to 80 MHz to reduce the radio interference with other WiFi devices. If adaptive channel width does not improve WiFi performance then the Nebula Device also performs Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS). • DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection) – select this option to have the Nebula Device scan and choose a radio channel that has least interference.

Table 178 Access Point > Monitor > Wireless Health (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
5G radio	<p>Select ON to enable and specify how the Nebula Device improves the WiFi network performance. Otherwise, select OFF to disable it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adaptive channel width – select this option to have the Nebula Device change the channel bandwidth from 80 MHz to 20 MHz to reduce the radio interference with other WiFi devices. If adaptive channel width does not improve WiFi performance then the Nebula Device also performs Dynamic Channel Selection (DCS). • DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection) – select this option to have the Nebula Device scan and choose a radio channel that has least interference.
2.4G radio	<p>Select ON to enable and specify how the Nebula Device improves the WiFi network performance. Otherwise, select OFF to disable it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection) – select this option to have the Nebula Device scan and choose a radio channel that has least interference.
Client	<p>Select ON to have the Nebula Device try to steer the WiFi clients in poor health to a Nebula Device or SSID with a strong signal. Client steering to improve the signal strength is done every 30 minutes. Otherwise, select OFF to disable steering.</p>
Optimization aggressiveness	<p>High, Standard and Low stand for different traffic rate threshold levels. The level you select here decides when the Nebula Device takes action to improve the access point's WiFi network performance. The Nebula Device will postpone the actions implemented on access points until your network is less busy if the threshold is exceeded.</p> <p>Select a suitable traffic rate threshold level for your network.</p> <p>High: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is heavy.</p> <p>Standard: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is medium.</p> <p>Low: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is low.</p>
AP wireless health overview	
Move the cursor over the information icon to view the supported Nebula Device model list.	
Current status	This shows the number of supported Nebula Devices that are currently online, using the specified frequency band that are in Good, Fair or Poor wireless health threshold as detected by Nebula.
y-axis	The y-axis represents the state of wireless health.
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the Nebula Device health state is recorded.
Top APs by health alert	
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Alert	<p>This shows how many times the Nebula Device is in a poor state of wireless health.</p> <p>The NCC generates a log when the Nebula Device is in poor wireless health. You can view the log messages in the Access Point > Monitor > Event Log screen.</p>
Clients wireless health overview	
Current status	This shows the number of connected WiFi clients that are currently online, using the specified frequency band and in Good, Fair or Poor wireless health threshold as detected by Nebula.
Client health	<p>Select to view the health of all WiFi clients which are connected to the supported Nebula Devices using the 6 GHz, 5 GHz or 2.4 GHz band.</p> <p>You can select to view the health report for the past day, week or month, as well as filter the WiFi station to view.</p>
y-axis	The y-axis represents the state of wireless health.

Table 178 Access Point > Monitor > Wireless Health (continued)

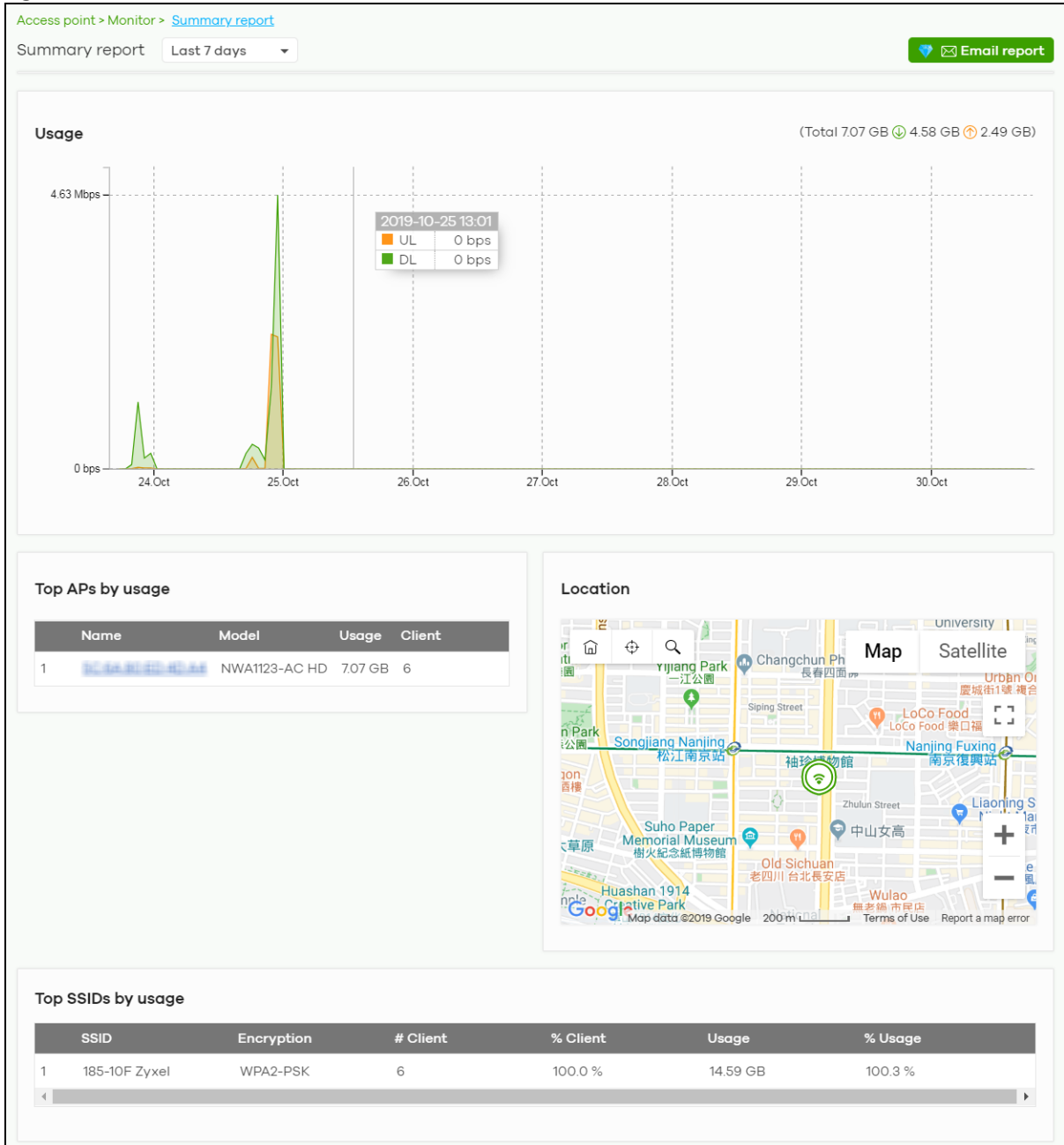
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the client health state is recorded.
Top clients by health alert	
Description	This shows the descriptive name of the client.
Alert	This shows how many times the client is in a poor state of wireless health. The NCC generates a log when the client is in poor wireless health. You can view the log messages in the Access Point > Monitor > Event Log screen.

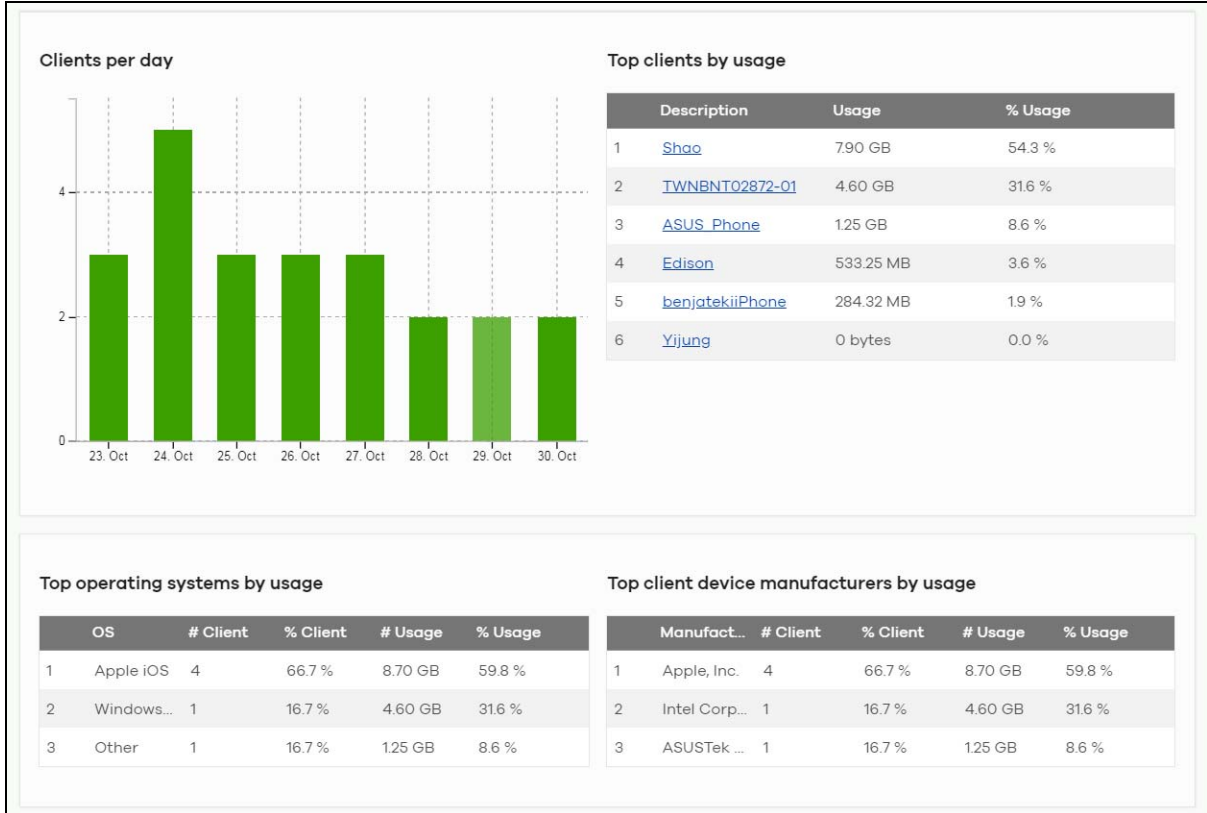
12.2.5 Summary Report

This screen displays network statistics for Nebula Devices of the selected site, such as bandwidth usage, top clients and/or top SSIDs.

Click **Access Point > Monitor > Summary Report** to access this screen.

Figure 210 Access Point > Monitor > Summary Report





The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 179 Access Point > Monitor > Summary Report

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Summary report	<p>Select to view the report for the past day, week or month. Alternatively, select Custom range... to specify a time period the report will span. You can also select the number of results you want to view in a table.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Last 24 hours <input type="radio"/> Last 7 days <input type="radio"/> Last 30 days <input type="radio"/> Custom range ... </p> <p>Report size: <input type="text" value="10"/> results per table <input type="button" value="Update"/></p> </div>
Email report	Click this button to send summary reports by email, change the report logo and set email schedules.
Usage	
y-axis	The y-axis shows the transmission speed of data sent on this port in megabits per second (Mbps).
x-axis	The x-axis shows the time period over which the traffic flow occurred.
Top APs by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the Nebula Device.
Name	This shows the descriptive name of the Nebula Device.

Table 179 Access Point > Monitor > Summary Report (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Model	This shows the model number of the Nebula Device.
Usage	This shows the amount of data transmitted or received by the Nebula Device.
Client	This shows how many clients are currently connecting to the Nebula Device.
Location	
This shows the location of the Nebula access points on the map.	
Top SSIDs by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the SSID.
SSID	This shows the SSID network name.
Encryption	This shows the encryption method used by the SSID network.
# Client	This shows how many WiFi clients are connecting to this SSID.
% Client	This shows what percentage of associated WiFi clients are connecting to this SSID.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted or received by clients connecting to this SSID.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the clients connecting to this SSID.
Clients per day	
y-axis	The y-axis represents the number of clients.
x-axis	The x-axis represents the date.
Top clients by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the client.
Description	This shows the descriptive name or MAC address of the client.
Usage	This shows the total amount of data transmitted and received by the client.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client.
Top operating systems by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the operating system.
OS	This shows the operating system of the client device.
# Client	This shows how many client devices use this operating system.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which use this operating system.
# Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the client device on which this operating system is running.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for top client devices which use this operating system.
Top client device manufacturers by usage	
#	This shows the ranking of the manufacturer.
Manufacturer	This shows the manufacturer name of the client device.
# Client	This shows how many client devices are made by the manufacturer.
% Client	This shows the percentage of top client devices which are made by the manufacturer.
# Usage	This shows the amount of data consumed by the client device.
% Usage	This shows the percentage of usage for the client device.

12.3 Configure

Use the **Configure** menus to set the WiFi security settings for Nebula Devices of the selected site.

12.3.1 SSID Settings

This screen allows you to configure up to eight different SSID profiles for your Nebula Devices. An SSID, or Service Set IDentifier, is basically the name of the WiFi network to which a WiFi client can connect. The SSID appears as readable text to any device capable of scanning for WiFi frequencies (such as the WiFi adapter in a laptop), and is displayed as the WiFi network name when a person makes a connection to it.

Click **Access Point > Configure > SSID settings** to access this screen.

Figure 211 Access Point > Configure > SSID settings

The screenshot displays the 'SSID settings' configuration page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail 'Access point > Configure > SSID settings' and a checked checkbox for 'Override access point configuration'. Below this, there is a 'Simple mode' toggle set to 'Beta' and a 'What is this?' link. A green '+ Add SSID network' button is visible. The main content area is a table with three columns representing SSID profiles (1, 2, 3). Each column has a 'Name' field (SSID1, SSID2, SSID3), an 'Enabled' toggle, a 'Programmable SSID' toggle (set to 'Beta'), 'Name' and 'PSK' input fields, a 'Tagging' section with a 'Tag' input and a description, a 'Guest Network' section with a toggle and a link, and an 'SSID advanced settings' section with 'WLAN security' (Open), 'Sign-in method' (Disable), 'Band mode' (2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, 6 GHz), 'VLAN ID' (1), and 'Rate limiting' (Unlimited Kb/s). Each row also has an 'Edit' link. At the bottom, there is a 'Captive portal customization' section with a 'Theme' dropdown set to 'Modern'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 180 Access Point > Configure > SSID settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Override access point configuration	Click this (with check mark) to enable the local override configuration of all configuration pages of the Nebula Device in the selected site.
Simple Mode	Select On to enable Simple Mode . Simple Mode allows you to create SSID profiles by only specifying an SSID name and optional password. NCC sets all other WiFi settings to default.
+ Add SSID network	Click this button to configure up to eight different SSID profiles for your Nebula Devices
No.	This shows the index number of this profile.
delete	Click this icon to remove the SSID profile.

Table 180 Access Point > Configure > SSID settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	This shows the SSID name for this profile. Click the text box and enter a new SSID if you want to change it.
Enabled	Click to turn on or off this profile.
Programmable SSID	<p>Select On to have each Nebula Device that uses this SSID generate a unique SSID name and pre-shared key (PSK) based on the Nebula Device's model name, serial number, or MAC address.</p> <p>For example, a hotel can install an Nebula Device in each room and then have each Nebula Device broadcast a unique SSID based on the room number: FreeWiFi_Room1, FreeWiFi_Room2, FreeWiFi_Room3, and so on.</p>
Name	<p>Name: Enter a programmable SSID name in the format PREFIX+VALUE(X). This name overrides the original SSID name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PREFIX: Optional prefix to add to the SSID, for example "FreeWiFi_". To use "\$" in the SSID name, enter "\$\$" • VALUE: Specify a Nebula Device value to use to generate the SSID name. Use one of the following: \$AP = Nebula Device device name. \$MAC = Nebula Device MAC address. \$SN = Nebula Device serial number. • X: Specify how many characters of the Nebula Device value to use in the SSID. A positive number means the first X characters, and a negative number means the last X characters. <p>Example: <i>FreeWiFi_Room\$AP(-3)</i> generates an SSID called "FreeWiFi_Room" + the last three characters of the access point device name.</p>
PSK	<p>PSK: Enter an optional programmable PSK in the format GENTYPE(Y).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GENTYPE: Specify how the Nebula Device will generate a random PSK. \$GENMIX = The Nebula Device generates a mix of random letters and numbers. \$GENNUM = The Nebula Device generates a mix of random numbers only. Y = Specify the length of the PSD. The minimum length is 8. <p>Example: <i>\$GENNUM(10)</i> generates a unique 10-character PSK for this SSID, consisting only of numbers.</p> <p>Note: You can specify a fixed PSK for this SSID at Access point > Configure > SSID advanced settings.</p>
Tagging	<p>Enter or select the tags you created for Nebula Devices in the Access Point > Monitor > Access Points screen. The SSID profile will only be applied to Nebula Devices with the specified tag.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, this SSID profile will be applied to all Nebula Devices in the site.</p>

Table 180 Access Point > Configure > SSID settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Guest Network	<p>Select On to set this WiFi network as a guest network. Layer 2 isolation and intra-BSS blocking are automatically enabled on the SSID. WiFi clients connecting to this SSID can access the Internet through the Nebula Device but cannot directly connect to the LAN or the WiFi clients in the same SSID or any other SSIDs.</p> <p>Note: In your VLAN-enabled network, if the SSID's gateway MAC address and the Nebula Device's gateway MAC address are different and belong to different VLANs, you need to manually add the SSID's gateway MAC address to the layer 2 isolation list. See Section 12.3.2 on page 476.</p> <p>Note: If you have a Nebula Security Appliance installed in the site but the gateway interface with the same VLAN ID is not configured as a guest interface, Smart Guest/VLAN network tip, click here, displays after you select On. Click here to open a screen where you can directly select to use the interface as a Guest interface.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Smart VLAN ✕</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">This SSID has Guest network turned ON. To limit the access to internet only, Guest function can also be enabled on the gateway VLAN interface.</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: x-small;">Note: This setting is not recommended if wired connections or SSIDs using the same VLAN need access to other interfaces.</p> <p>VLAN ID <input type="text" value="1"/> (2-4094)</p> <p>Guest <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Enable internet access only)</p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: x-small;">Close Continue</p> </div>
SSID advanced settings	
Edit	Click this button to go to the Authentication screen and configure the advanced settings, such as SSID availability, WiFi security, L2 isolation, intra-BSS traffic blocking and walled garden settings. See Section 12.3.2 on page 476 .
WLAN security	This shows the encryption method used in this profile.
Sign-in method	This shows the authentication method used in this profile.
Band mode	This shows whether the SSID use either 2.4 GHz band, 5 GHz band, or the 6 GHz band.
VLAN ID	This shows the ID number of the VLAN to which the SSID belongs.
Rate limiting	This shows the maximum incoming/outgoing transmission data rate (in Kbps) on a per-station basis.
Captive portal customization	
Edit	Click this button to go to the Captive Portal screen and configure the captive portal settings. See Section 12.3.3 on page 485 .
Theme	If captive portal is enabled, this shows the name of the captive portal page used in this profile.

12.3.2 SSID Advanced Settings

Use this screen to configure the WiFi security, L2 isolation, intra-BSS traffic blocking and walled garden settings for the SSID profiles.

Click **Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings** to access this screen.

Figure 212 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings Part 1

Access point > Configure > [SSID advanced settings](#) Override access point configuration

SSID advanced settings

SSID:

Network access

Security options ⓘ

Open
Users can connect without entering a password

Enhanced-open ⓘ
User can connect without password. Enhanced open provides improved data encryption in open Wi-Fi networks.

WPA Personal With
Users must enter this key to associate:

Dynamic personal psk ⓘ [Model list](#)

MAC-based Authentication with
Use MAC address as a username and password

WPA Enterprise with
Use 802.1X authentication that requires a unique username and password

WPA Enterprise with

Sign-in method

Disabled
Users can access the network without any web authentication

Click-to-continue
Users must view and agree the captive portal page in order to access the network

Voucher
Users must enter a voucher code in order to access the network
Create and manage voucher passcode on the [Vouchers](#) page.

Sign-on with
Users must enter a username and password in order to access the network

Captive portal advance setting

Walled garden

Walled garden ranges:

[What do I enter here?](#)

Self-registration:

Simultaneous login limit: [Model list](#)

Strict Policy:

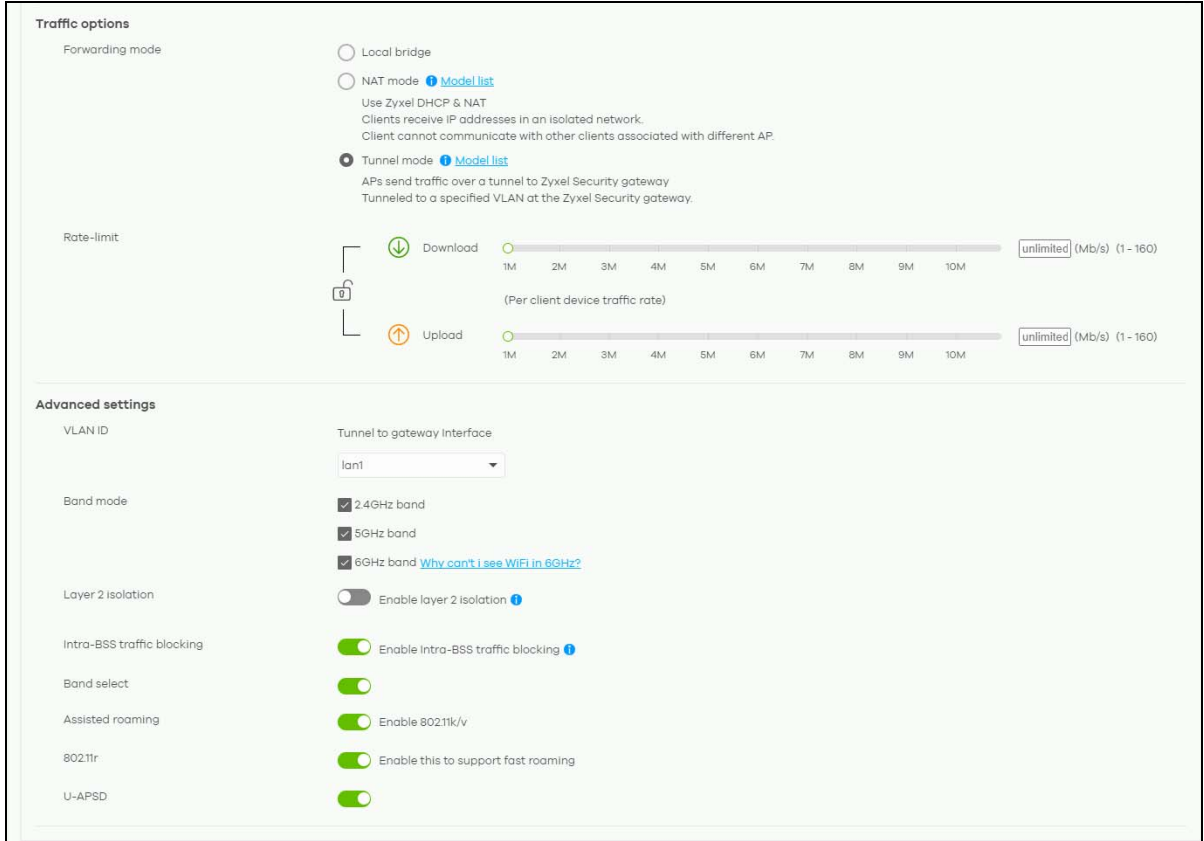
Reauth time:

NCAS disconnect behavior ⓘ

Allowed
Client devices can access the network without signing in, except they are explicitly blocked.

Limited
Only currently authorized clients and whitelisted client device will be able to access the network.

Figure 213 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings Part 2



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID advanced settings	Select the SSID profile to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Network access	<p>Note: You cannot enable MAC authentication, 802.1X authentication and web authentication at the same time.</p> <p>Note: User accounts can be created and authenticated using the NCC user database. See Section 6.3.5 on page 174.</p>

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security options	<p>Select Open to allow any client to associate this network without any data encryption or authentication.</p> <p>Select Enhanced-open to allow any client to associate this network without any password but with improved data encryption.</p> <p>Upon selecting Enhanced-open or WPA Personal With WPA3, transition mode generates two VAP so devices that do not support Enhanced-Open/WPA Personal With WPA3 can connect using Open/WPA Personal With WPA2 network. This is always on at the time of writing.</p> <p>Select WPA Personal With (WPA1/WPA2/WPA3) and enter a pre-shared key from 8 to 64 case-sensitive keyboard characters to enable WPA1/2/3-PSK data encryption. Upon selecting WPA Personal With WPA3, Nebula Devices that do not support it will revert to WPA2.</p> <p>Note: At the time of writing only the NWA110AX, WAX510D, WAX650S supports WPA3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn on 802.11r to enable IEEE 802.11r fast roaming on the access point. 802.11r fast roaming reduces the delay when the clients switch from one Nebula Device to another by allowing security keys to be stored on all Nebula Devices in a network. Information from the original association is passed to the new Nebula Device when the client roams. The client does not need to perform the whole 802.1x authentication process. <p>Select Dynamic personal psk to have every user connect to the SSID using a unique pre-shared key (PSK) that is linked to their user account. This allows you to revoke a user's WiFi network access by disabling their account.</p> <p>After enabling this option, you must create one or more DPPSK users in the site or organization at Configure > Cloud authentication > Account Type > DPPSK.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For details on creating a site DPPSK user, see Section 6.3.5.3 on page 176. • For details on creating organization DPPSK users, see Section 7.2.7 on page 240. <p>Turn on MAC-based Authentication with to authenticate WiFi clients by their MAC addresses. You can select My RADIUS server to use an external RADIUS server or select Nebula cloud authentication to use the NCC for MAC authentication.</p> <p>Select WPA-Enterprise with to enable 802.1X secure authentication. You can select My RADIUS server to use an external RADIUS server or select Nebula cloud authentication to use the NCC for 802.1X authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn on 802.11r to enable IEEE 802.11r fast roaming on the Nebula Device. 802.11r fast roaming reduces the delay when the clients switch from one Nebula Device to another by allowing security keys to be stored on all Nebula Devices in a network. Information from the original association is passed to the new Nebula Device when the client roams. The client does not need to perform the whole 802.1x authentication process. • Select Two-Factor Authentication to require that the user log in using both their password and a Google Authenticator code. To log in, users must have Two-Factor Authentication enabled on their account and have setup Google Authenticator on their mobile device. Select Enable on RAP only to only require Two-Factor Authentication when accessing the network through a remote access point (RAP).

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sign-in method	<p>Select Disabled to turn off web authentication.</p> <p>Select Click-to-continue to block network traffic until a client agrees to the policy of user agreement.</p> <p>Note: After enabling Click-to-continue, the Nebula Device creates a user account with user name "clicktocontinue_X_Y", where X is the radio type (1 = 2.4 GHz, 2 = 5 GHz) and Y is the SSID number (1–8) of the SSID profile. The Nebula Device uses this account to authenticate clients who agree to the terms of the click-to-continue page.</p> <p>Select Voucher to require that a user logs in with a voucher code. For details on vouchers, see Section 7.1.7 on page 216.</p> <p>Note: Vouchers cannot be enabled if Dynamic Personal Pre-Shared Key (DPPSK) or WPA Enterprise are enabled. You can only enable voucher authentication for one SSID per site.</p> <p>Select Sign-on with and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> select Nebula cloud authentication to block network traffic until a client authenticates with the NCC through the specifically designated web portal page. select My RADIUS server to block network traffic until a client authenticates with an external RADIUS server through the specifically designated web portal page. Enable MAC authentication fallback when both RADIUS-based MAC authentication and web authentication are implemented. <p>Scenario 1: When MAC authentication fails. A WiFi client tries to connect to the WiFi network using MAC authentication (RADIUS server). If MAC authentication fails, he will fall back to web authentication. The WiFi client needs to provide a user name and password for web authentication.</p> <p>Scenario 2: When MAC authentication is successful. A WiFi client tries to connect to the WiFi network and passes MAC authentication. Web authentication is then skipped.</p> <p>Note: When MAC authentication fallback is enabled, the WiFi client can avoid network disassociations due to MAC authentication failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> select Facebook to block network traffic until a client authenticates with the NCC using Facebook Login. Facebook Login is a secure and quick way for users to log into your app or website using their existing Facebook accounts. If you get the App ID for your app at the Facebook developers site, you can enter your Facebook app ID to obtain more information about your users using Facebook Analytics, such as user activity, age, gender, and so on. select Facebook Wi-Fi to let users check in to a business on Facebook for free Internet access after connecting to the Nebula Device's WiFi network. Users then have the option to like the Facebook fan page. You should already have set up a Facebook fan page associated with the business location. Click here to open the Facebook WiFi configuration screen in a new window, where you can select the Facebook Page associated with your location and configure bypass mode and session length.

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

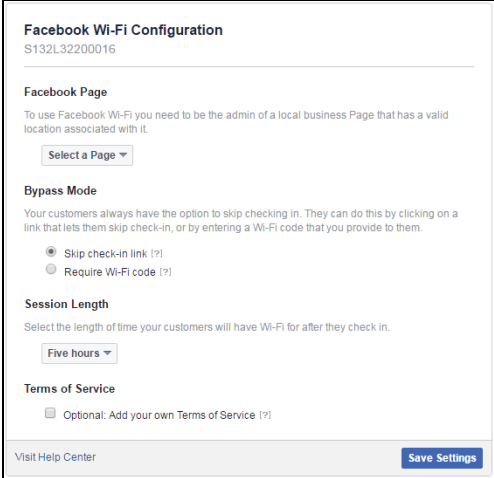
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sign-in method (continued)	 <p>Note: When the NCC license of the organization expires, the SSID configured with Facebook WiFi will be disabled automatically. To enable the SSID again, change its authentication method or register with a new license key.</p>
RADIUS server	<p>This field is available only when you select to use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MAC-based Authentication with My RADIUS server or WPA2-Enterprise with My RADIUS server in the WLAN security field, or • when you select Sign-on with My RADIUS server in the Sign-in method field. <p>Click Add to specify the IP address/domain name, port number, and shared secret password of the RADIUS server to be used for authentication.</p> <p>Note: User must enter the Account Format and Calling Station ID when MAC authentication fallback field is enabled.</p> <p>Note: Nebula Devices with firmware version 5.50 or older will turn OFF this SSID when the Host field is configured with a domain name.</p>
NAS Identifier	<p>If the RADIUS server requires the Nebula Device to provide the Network Access Server identifier attribute with a specific value, enter it here.</p>
RADIUS accounting	<p>This field is available only when you select to use WPA2-Enterprise with My RADIUS server in the WLAN security field, or when you select Sign-on with My RADIUS server in the Sign-in method field.</p> <p>Select RADIUS accounting enabled to enable user accounting through an external RADIUS server.</p> <p>Select RADIUS accounting disabled to disable user accounting through an external RADIUS server.</p>
RADIUS accounting servers	<p>If you select RADIUS accounting enabled, click Add to specify the IP address, port number and shared secret password of the RADIUS server to be used for accounting.</p>
Captive portal advance setting	
Walled garden	<p>Select On to enable Walled garden.</p>

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Walled garden ranges	<p>This field is not configurable if you set Sign-in method to Disable. With a walled garden, you can define one or more web site addresses that all users can access without logging in. These can be used for advertisements for example.</p> <p>Select to turn on or off the walled garden feature.</p> <p>Specify walled garden web site links, which use a (wildcard) domain name or an IP address for web sites that all users are allowed to access without logging in.</p>
Self-registration	<p>This field is available only when you set Sign-in method to Sign-on with Nebula Cloud authentication.</p> <p>Select Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized or Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized to display a link in the captive portal login page. The link directs users to a page where they can create an account before they authenticate with the NCC. For Allow users to create accounts with manual authorized, users cannot log in with the account until the account is authorized and granted access. For Allow users to create accounts with auto authorized, users can just use the registered account to log in without administrator approval.</p> <p>Select Don't allow users to create accounts to not display a link for account creation in the captive portal login page.</p>
Simultaneous login limit	<p>This field is available only when you set Sign-in method to Sign-on with My RADIUS server or Sign-on with Nebula Cloud authentication.</p> <p>Select Unlimited if you allow users to log in as many times as they want as long as they use different IP addresses.</p> <p>Select 1 to 10 if you do NOT allow users to have simultaneous logins.</p>
Strict Policy	<p>Select Allow HTTPS traffic without sign-on to let users use HTTPS to access a web site without authentication.</p> <p>Select Block all access until sign-on to block both HTTP and HTTPS traffic until users authenticate their connections. The portal page will not display automatically if users try to access a web site using HTTPS. They will see an error message in the web screen.</p>
Reauth time	<p>Select Follow site-wide setting or select a specific time the user can be logged in through the captive portal in one session before having to log in again.</p>
NCAS disconnect behavior	<p>This field is available only when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • you set Sign-in method to Sign-on with Nebula Cloud authentication • you enable MAC-based Authentication with and you select Nebula cloud authentication <p>Select Allowed to allow any users to access the network without authentication when the NCAS (Nebula Cloud Authentication Server) is not reachable.</p> <p>Select Limited to allow only the currently connected users or the users in the white list to access the network.</p>
Traffic options	

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Forwarding mode	<p>Select Local bridge if you only want to access the Internet. Network traffic from clients connected to the Nebula Device is sent directly to the network through the access point's local gateway.</p> <p>Select NAT mode to have the Nebula Device create a DHCP subnet with its own NAT for the SSID. This simplifies WiFi network management, as you do not need to configure a separate DHCP server.</p> <p>The following Nebula Device features do not work when NAT mode is enabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 802.11r • Layer2 isolation • Dynamic VLAN (cloud authentication, RADIUS server) <p>Note: In NAT mode, clients cannot communicate with clients connected to a different Nebula Device.</p> <p>Select Tunnel mode to forward broadcast and multicast traffic using an existing VLAN interface in the Nebula Device (Security Firewall device). This is the interface you configured in Security gateway > Configure > Interface addressing.</p> <p>Note: Tunnel mode is available for Nebula Device (Security Firewall device) only. In Tunnel mode, make sure the ICMP protocol is enabled. See Firewall > Configure > Routing: Policy Routes/Traffic Shaping and Firewall > Configure > Security Policy: Action for information.</p> <p>Select Tunnel mode for clients that want to access the network behind the Nebula Device. Select Local bridge for clients that want to access the Internet, but you do not want them to access the network behind the Nebula Device.</p>
Rate-limit	<p>Set the maximum data download and upload rates in Kbps, on a per-station basis.</p> <p>Click a lock icon to change the lock state. If the lock icon is locked, the limit you set applies to both download and upload traffic. If the lock is unlocked, you can set download and upload traffic to have different transmission speeds.</p>
Advanced settings	

Table 181 Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN ID	<p>Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which the SSID belongs.</p> <p>Note: If you have a Nebula Security Appliance installed in the site but did not configure an identical VLAN interface on the gateway, Smart Guest/VLAN network tip, click here. displays. Click here to open a screen where you can create a gateway interface with the specified VLAN ID.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Smart VLAN ✕</p> <p>Nebula detected that VLAN1000 has not been created as gateway interface. Fill-up the VLAN settings and click Continue to proceed with the interface creation, or click Close to skip.</p> <p>VLAN ID: <input type="text" value="1000"/> (1-4094)</p> <p>IP address: <input type="text" value=""/> ✕</p> <p>Subnet mask: <input type="text" value=""/> ✕</p> <p>Port group: <input type="text" value="Port Group 1"/> ▼</p> <p>DHCP: <input type="text" value="None"/> ▼</p> <p>Guest: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Enable internet access only)</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Close <input type="button" value="Continue"/></p> </div> <p>Note: If you select Tunnel mode in Forwarding mode, the Tunnel to gateway interface field appears. Select LAN1 as the default.</p>
Band mode	Select to have the SSID use either 2.4GHz band , 5GHz band , or 6GHz band only.
Layer 2 isolation	<p>Select to turn on or off layer-2 isolation. If a device's MAC addresses is NOT listed, it is blocked from communicating with other devices in an SSID on which layer-2 isolation is enabled.</p> <p>Click Add to enter the MAC address of each device that you want to allow to be accessed by other devices in the SSID on which layer-2 isolation is enabled.</p>
Intra-BSS traffic blocking	<p>This field is not configurable if you enable Layer 2 isolation.</p> <p>Select on to prevent crossover traffic from within the same SSID. Select off to allow intra-BSS traffic.</p>
Band select	<p>Select to enable band steering. When enabled, the Nebula Device steers WiFi clients to the 5 GHz band.</p> <p>Note: Band mode must be set to Concurrent operation (2.4 GHz and 5 GHz).</p>
Assisted roaming	<p>Select to turn on or off IEEE 802.11k/v assisted roaming on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>When the connected clients request 802.11k neighbor lists, the Nebula Device will response with a list of neighbor Nebula Devices that can be candidates for roaming. When the 802.11v capable clients are using the 2.4 GHz band, the Nebula Device can send 802.11v messages to steer clients to the 5 GHz band.</p>
802.11r	<p>Select to turn on or off IEEE 802.11r fast roaming on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>802.11r fast roaming reduces the delay when the clients switch from one Nebula Device to another, by allowing security keys to be stored on all Nebula Devices in a network. Information from the original association is passed to the new Nebula Device when the client roams. The client does not need to perform the whole 802.1x authentication process.</p>
U-APSD	Select to turn on or off Automatic Power Save Delivery. This helps increase battery life for battery-powered WiFi clients connected to the Nebula Device.

12.3.3 Captive Portal Customization

Use this screen to configure captive portal settings for SSID profiles. A captive portal intercepts network traffic until the user authenticates his or her connection, usually through a specifically designated login web page.

Click **Access Point > Configure > Captive portal customization** to access this screen.


Figure 214 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal customization

Access point > Configure > [Captive portal customization](#)

Captive portal customization

SSID:
 Captive portal on this SSID is disabled. You can change this setting [here](#).

Themes


 Default Modern

Click-to-continue/Voucher/Sign-on page

Logo: [Upload a logo](#)

Message: [X](#)

Success page

Message: [X](#)

External captive portal URL

Use URL: URL: [X](#)

To use custom captive portal page, please download the zip file and edit them.
[Download](#) the customized captive portal page example.

Captive portal behavior

After the captive portal page where the user should go?
 Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page
 To promotion URL: [X](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 182 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal customization

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	Select the SSID profile to which the settings you configure here is applied.
Themes	<p>This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Preview icon at the upper right of a theme image to display the portal page in a new frame. • Click the Copy icon to create a new custom theme (login page). • Click the Edit icon of a custom theme to go to a screen where you can view and configure the details of the custom theme pages. See Section 12.3.3.1 on page 487. • Click the Remove icon to delete a custom theme page. <p>Select the theme you want to use on the specified SSID.</p>
<p>Click-to-continue/Voucher/Sign-on page</p> <p>This section is not configurable when External captive portal URL is set to ON.</p>	
Logo	<p>This shows the logo image that you uploaded for the customized login page.</p> <p>Click Upload a logo and specify the location and file name of the logo graphic or click Browse to locate it. You can use the following image file formats: GIF, PNG, or JPG.</p>
Message	Enter a note to display below the title. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
Success page	
Message	Enter a note to display on the page that displays when a user logs in successfully. Use up to 1024 printable ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
External captive portal URL	

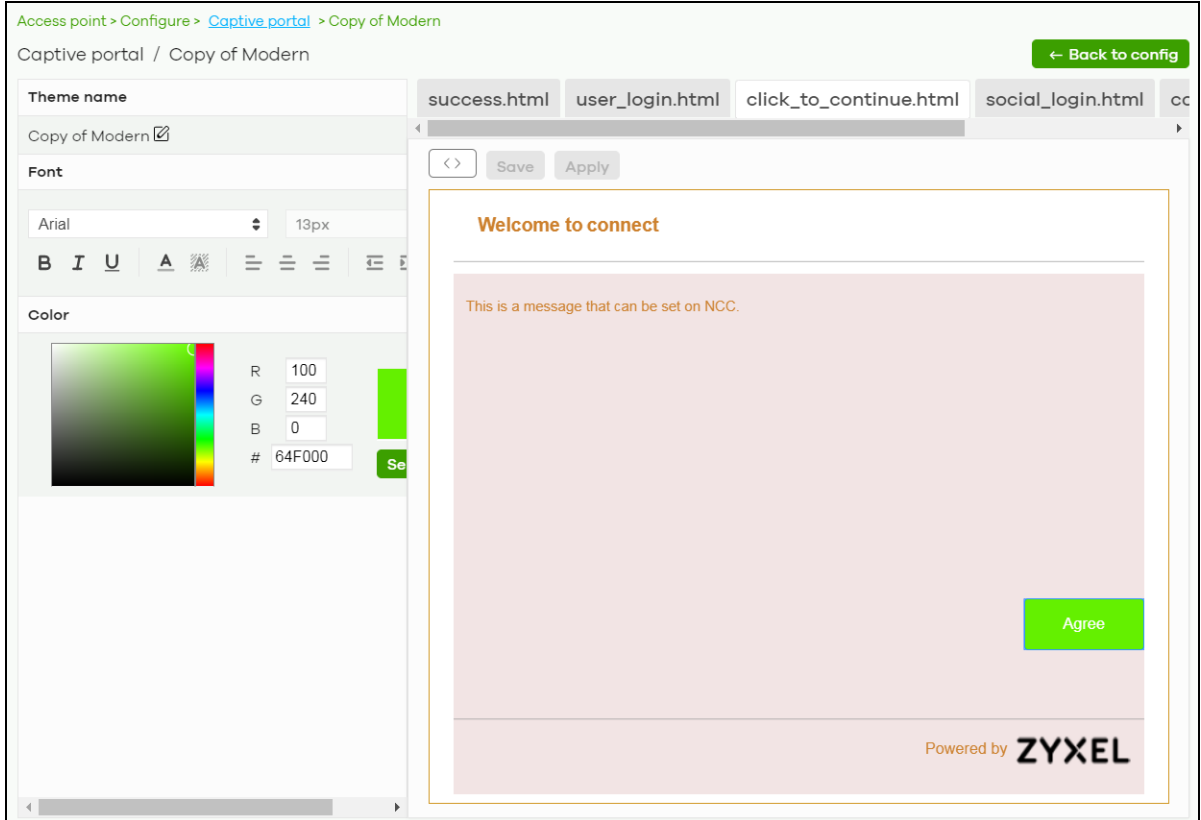
Table 182 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal customization (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION														
Use URL	<p>Select On to use a custom login page from an external web portal instead of the one built into the NCC. You can configure the look and feel of the web portal page.</p> <p>Specify the login page's URL; for example, <code>http://IIS server IP Address/login.asp</code>. The Internet Information Server (IIS) is the web server on which the web portal files are installed.</p> <p>Click Download to download a ZIP file containing example captive port files. Edit these files then upload them to a webserver which is accessible from NCC.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Edit ✕</p> <p>URL format: <code>http(s)://external_html?gw_addr=http(s)://192.168.1.35&apmac=aa:bb:cc:ee:ff:gg&usermac=aa:11:bb:22:cc:33&apip=192.168.1.35&userip=192.168.1.37&ssid_name=MySSID&auth_path=/login.cgi&apurl=http(s)://192.168.1.35</code></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Attribute Name</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Customized Name</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>gw_addr</td> <td><input type="text" value="gw_addr"/> ✕*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>apmac</td> <td><input type="text" value="apmac"/> ✕*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>usermac</td> <td><input type="text" value="usermac"/> ✕*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>apip</td> <td><input type="text" value="apip"/> ✕*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>userip</td> <td><input type="text" value="userip"/> ✕*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ssid_name</td> <td><input type="text" value="ssid_name"/> ✕*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;">Close OK</p> </div>	Attribute Name	Customized Name	gw_addr	<input type="text" value="gw_addr"/> ✕*	apmac	<input type="text" value="apmac"/> ✕*	usermac	<input type="text" value="usermac"/> ✕*	apip	<input type="text" value="apip"/> ✕*	userip	<input type="text" value="userip"/> ✕*	ssid_name	<input type="text" value="ssid_name"/> ✕*
Attribute Name	Customized Name														
gw_addr	<input type="text" value="gw_addr"/> ✕*														
apmac	<input type="text" value="apmac"/> ✕*														
usermac	<input type="text" value="usermac"/> ✕*														
apip	<input type="text" value="apip"/> ✕*														
userip	<input type="text" value="userip"/> ✕*														
ssid_name	<input type="text" value="ssid_name"/> ✕*														
Captive portal behavior															
After the captive portal page where the user should go?	Select To promotion URL and specify the URL of the web site or page to which the user is redirected after a successful login. Otherwise, select Stay on Captive portal authenticated successfully page .														

12.3.3.1 Custom Theme Edit

Use this screen to check what the custom portal pages look like. You can also view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. Click a custom login page's **Edit** button in the **Access Point > Configure > Captive portal** screen to access this screen.

Figure 215 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal: Edit



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 183 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal: Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Back to config	Click this button to return to the Captive portal screen.
Theme name	This shows the name of the theme. Click the edit icon to change it.
Font	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. To display this section and customize the font type and/or size, click on an item with text in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file).
Color	Click the arrow to hide or display the configuration fields. Click an item in the preview of the selected custom portal page (HTML file) to customize its color, such as the color of the button, text, window's background, links, borders, and so on. Select a color that you want to use and click the Select button.
HTML/CSS	This shows the HTML file name of the portal page created for the selected custom theme. This also shows the name of the CSS files created for the selected custom theme. Click a HTML file to display the portal page. You can also change colors and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file.
<>	Click this button to view and modify the CSS values of the selected HTML file. It is recommended that you do NOT change the script code to ensure proper operation of the portal page.
🔍	Click this button to preview the portal page (the selected HTML file).

Table 183 Access Point > Configure > Captive portal: Edit (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Save	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC.
Apply	Click this button to save your settings for the selected HTML file to the NCC and apply them to the access points in the site.

12.3.4 SSID Availability

Use this screen to configure SSID availability and the schedules which can be applied to the SSIDs. The SSID is enabled or disabled at the specified time. Click **Access Point > Configure > SSID availability** to access this screen.

Figure 216 Access Point > Configure > SSID availability

Access point > Configure > [SSID availability](#)

SSID availability

SSID:

SSID availability

Visibility:

Tagging:

Enable SSID on APs with any of the specified tags.

SSID schedule

Enabled:

Schedule:

Schedule template:

Local time zone: Asia - Taipei (You can set this on [General settings](#))

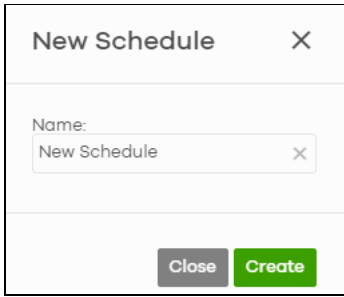
Day	Availability
Sunday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Monday	<input type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Tuesday	<input type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Wednesday	<input type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Thursday	<input type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Friday	<input type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00
Saturday	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 00:00 02:00 04:00 06:00 08:00 10:00 12:00 14:00 16:00 18:00 20:00 22:00 24:00

Each site can have at most 5 SSID schedules.

This schedule also used in SSID(s):
Guests-
HinduGerman

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 184 Access Point > Configure > SSID availability

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SSID	Select the SSID profile to which the settings you configure here is applied.
SSID availability	
Visibility	<p>Select Hide this SSID if you want to hide your SSID from WiFi clients. This tells any WiFi clients in the vicinity of the Nebula Device using this SSID profile not to display its SSID name as a potential connection. Not all WiFi clients respect this flag and display it anyway. Otherwise, select Broadcast this SSID.</p> <p>When an SSID is "hidden" and a WiFi client cannot see it, the only way you can connect to the SSID is by manually entering the SSID name in your WiFi connection setup screens (these vary by client, client connectivity software, and operating system).</p>
Tagging	<p>Enter the tags you created for Nebula Devices in the Access Point > Monitor > Access Points screen. The SSID profile will only be applied to Nebula Devices with the specified tag.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, this SSID profile will be applied to all Nebula Devices in the site.</p>
SSID schedule	
Enabled	Click On to enable and configure a schedule.
Schedule	Select a schedule to control when the SSID is enabled or disabled. You can click the edit icon to change the schedule name.
Schedule templates	Select a pre-defined schedule template or select Custom schedule and manually configure the day and time at which the SSID is enabled or disabled.
Day	This shows the day of the week.
Availability	<p>Click On to enable the SSID at the specified time on this day. Otherwise, select Off to disable the SSID on the day and at the specified time.</p> <p>Specify the hour and minute when the schedule begins and ends each day.</p>
Add	<p>Click this button to create a new schedule. A window pops up asking you to enter a descriptive name for the schedule for identification purposes.</p> 
Delete	Click this button to remove a schedule which is not used in any SSID profile.

12.3.5 Radio Settings

Use this screen to configure global radio settings for all Nebula Devices in the site. Click **Access Point > Configure > Radio settings** to access this screen.

Figure 217 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings

Group: TW Test Organization: Test_July Site: ZyNet TW

This site is bound to template: [SSID_Template2](#)

Access point > Configure > [Radio settings](#) Override access point configuration

Radio settings

Country: Taiwan [The 6GHz supported country list can be found Here](#)

Deployment selection: Custom

Maximum output power:

- 2.4 GHz: 30 dBm
- 5 GHz: 30 dBm
- 6 GHz: 30 dBm [Model list](#)

Channel width:

- 2.4 GHz: 20 MHz
- 5 GHz: 80 MHz [Why you should not use channel width 160MHz in 5GHz?](#)
- 6 GHz: 160 MHz [Model list](#)

DCS setting:

- DCS time interval: 720 (60-1440 minutes)
- DCS schedule
 - Monday Tuesday
 - Wednesday Thursday
 - Friday Saturday
 - Sunday
- 03:00
- DCS client aware
- Avoid 5G DFS channel
- Blacklist DFS channels in the presence of radar
- 2.4 GHz channel deployment: Three-Channel Deployment
- 5 GHz channel deployment: All available channels
- 6 GHz channel deployment: All available channels [Model list](#)

Allow 802.11ax/ac/n stations only:
 If turned ON, legacy clients including 802.11a/b/g will not be allowed to associate.

Smart steering: Enable this function will make AP steer the client to the better signal AP.

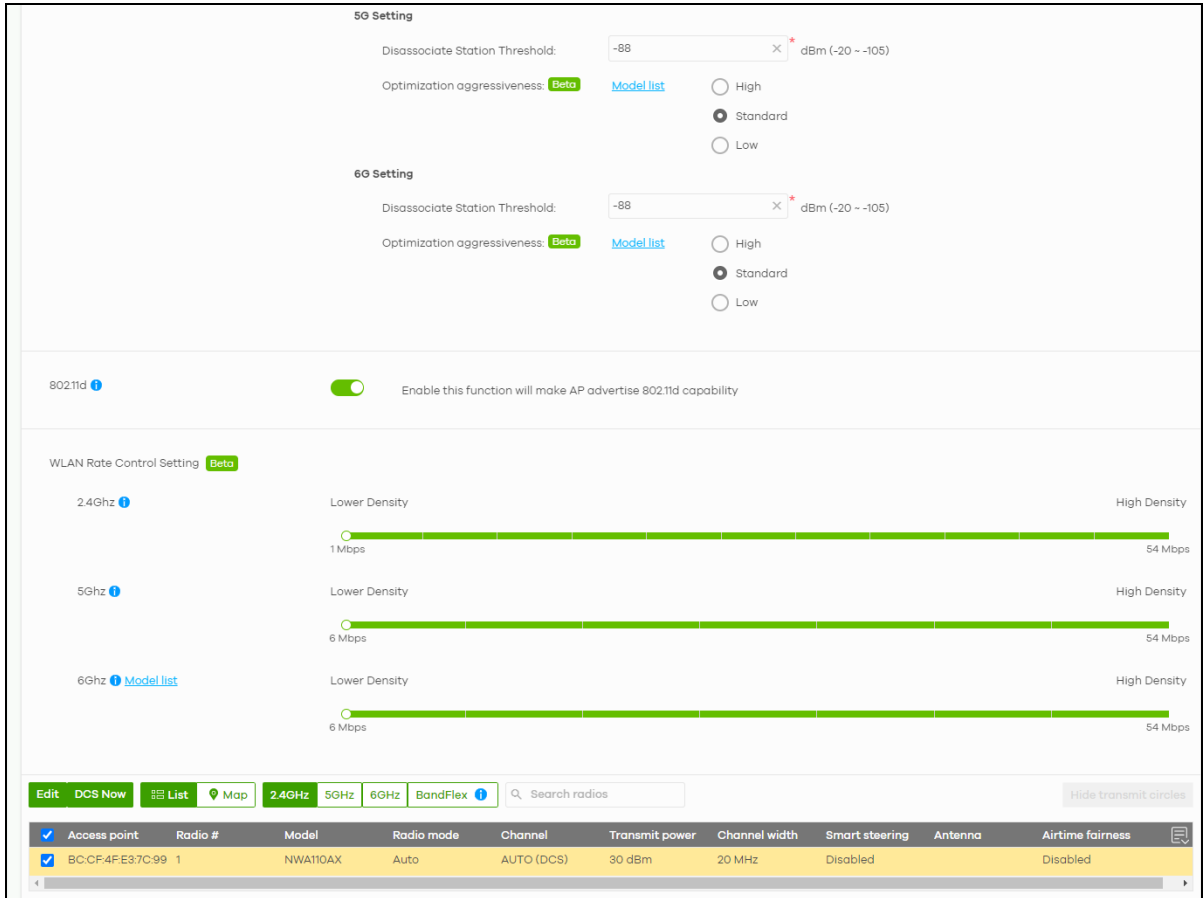
ADVANCED OPTIONS

2.4G Setting

Disassociate Station Threshold: -88 dBm (-20 ~ -105)

Optimization aggressiveness: [Beta](#) [Model list](#)

- High
- Standard
- Low



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 185 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Country	Select the country where the Nebula Device is located or installed. The available channels vary depending on the country you selected. Be sure to select the correct or same country for both radios on a Nebula Device and all connected Nebula Devices in order to prevent roaming failure and interference with other systems.
Deployment selection	Select High-density (More than 10 APs) for the lowest output power for 10 or more Access Points. Select Moderate-density (6-9 APs) for moderate output power for 5 to 9 Access Points. Select Low-density (2-5 APs) for higher concentration of output power for less than 5 Access Points. Select Single AP for highest concentration of output power for a single Access Point.
Maximum output power	Selecting any of the options in the Deployment selection field will automatically set the maximum output power for 2.4 / 5 / 6 GHz. But you can change the setting (1 – 30 dBm).

Table 185 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Channel width	<p>Select the wireless channel bandwidth you want the access point to use.</p> <p>A standard 20 MHz channel offers transfer speeds of up to 144 Mbps (2.4 GHz) or 217 Mbps (5 GHz) whereas a 40 MHz channel uses two standard channels and offers speeds of up to 300 Mbps (2.4 GHz) or 450 Mbps (5 GHz). An IEEE 802.11ac-specific 80 MHz channel offers speeds of up to 1.3 Gbps.</p> <p>40 MHz (channel bonding or dual channel) bonds two adjacent radio channels to increase throughput. An 80 MHz channel consists of two adjacent 40 MHz channels. The WiFi clients must also support 40 MHz or 80 MHz. It is often better to use the 20 MHz setting in a location where the environment hinders the WiFi signal.</p> <p>Note: It is suggested that you select 20 MHz when there is more than one 2.4 GHz Nebula Device in the network.</p> <p>Note: It is not possible to set channel bandwidth to 160 MHz for the whole site. To configure an Nebula Device to use 160 MHz, select a supported Nebula Device in the table at the bottom of the screen, click Edit, and then select 160 MHz under Channel width.</p>
DCS setting	
DCS time interval	<p>Select ON to set the DCS time interval (in minutes) to regulate how often the Nebula Device surveys the other Nebula Devices within its broadcast radius. If the channel on which it is currently broadcasting suddenly comes into use by another Nebula Device, the Nebula Device will then dynamically select the next available clean channel or a channel with lower interference.</p>
DCS schedule	<p>Select ON to have the Nebula Device automatically find a less-used channel within its broadcast radius at a specific time on selected days of the week.</p> <p>You then need to select each day of the week and specify the time of the day (in 24-hour format) to have the Nebula Device use DCS to automatically scan and find a less-used channel.</p>
DCS client aware	<p>Select ON to have the Nebula Device wait until all connected clients have disconnected before switching channels.</p>
Avoid 5G DFS channel	<p>If your Nebula Devices are operating in an area known to have RADAR devices, the Nebula Device will choose non-DFS channels to provide a stable WiFi service.</p>
Blacklist DFS channels in the presence of radar	<p>Select ON to blacklist a channel if RADAR is detected. After being blacklisted, the Nebula Device will not use the channel again until the Nebula Device is rebooted. However, the Nebula Device can still use other DFS channels.</p>
2.4 GHz channel deployment	<p>Select Three-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to channels 1, 6, and 11, the three channels that are sufficiently attenuated to have almost no impact on one another. In other words, this allows you to minimize channel interference by limiting channel-hopping to these three "safe" channels.</p> <p>Select Four-Channel Deployment to limit channel switching to four channels. Depending on the country domain, if the only allowable channels are 1 – 11 then the Nebula Device uses channels 1, 4, 7, 11 in this configuration; otherwise, the Nebula Device uses channels 1, 5, 9, 13 in this configuration. Four channel deployment expands your pool of possible channels while keeping the channel interference to a minimum.</p> <p>Select All available channels to allow channel-hopping to have the Nebula Device automatically select the best channel.</p> <p>Select Manual to select the individual channels the Nebula Device switches between.</p>


Table 185 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
5 GHz channel deployment	<p>Select how you want to specify the channels the Nebula Device switches between for 5 GHz operation.</p> <p>Select All available channels to have the Nebula Device automatically select the best channel.</p> <p>Select Manual to select the individual channels the Nebula Device switches between.</p> <p>Note: The method is automatically set to All available channels when no channel is selected or any one of the previously selected channels is not supported.</p>
6 GHz channel deployment	<p>Select how you want to specify the channels the Nebula Device switches between for 6 GHz operation.</p> <p>Select All available channels to have the Nebula Device automatically select the best channel.</p> <p>Select Manual to select the individual channels the Nebula Device switches between.</p> <p>Note: The method is automatically set to All available channels when no channel is selected or any one of the previously selected channels is not supported.</p>
Allow 802.11ax/ac/n stations only	Select ON to have the Nebula Device allow only IEEE 802.11n/ac/ax clients to connect, and reject IEEE 802.11a/b/g clients.
Smart Steering	<p>Select ON to enable smart client steering on the Nebula Device. Client steering helps monitor WiFi clients and drop their connections to optimize the bandwidth when the clients are idle or have a low signal. When a WiFi client is dropped they have the opportunity to steer to an Nebula Device with a strong signal. Additionally, dual band WiFi clients can also steer from one band to another.</p> <p>Select OFF to disable this feature on the Nebula Device.</p>
ADVANCED OPTIONS	Click this to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields.
2.4G/5G/6G Setting	
Disassociate Station Threshold	<p>Set a minimum kick-off signal strength. When a WiFi client's signal strength is lower than the specified threshold, the Nebula Device disconnects the WiFi client.</p> <p>–20 dBm is the strongest signal you can require and –105 dBm is the weakest.</p>
Optimization aggressiveness	<p>High, Standard and Low stand for different traffic rate threshold levels. The level you select here decides when the Nebula Device takes action to improve the access point's WiFi network performance. The Nebula Device will postpone the actions implemented on access points until your network is less busy if the threshold is exceeded.</p> <p>Select a suitable traffic rate threshold level for your network.</p> <p>High: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is heavy.</p> <p>Standard: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is medium.</p> <p>Low: Select this if you want the Nebula Device to postpone the action set when the access point network traffic is low.</p>
802.11d	<p>Click this to enable 802.11d on the access point.</p> <p>802.11d is a WiFi network specification, for use in countries where 802.11 WiFi is restricted. Enabling 802.11d causes the Nebula Device to broadcast the country where it is located, which is determined by the Country setting.</p>
WLAN Rate Control Setting	

Table 185 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
2.4Ghz/5Ghz/ 6Ghz	<p>Sets the minimum data rate that 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 6 GHz WiFi clients can connect to the Nebula Device, in Mbps.</p> <p>Increasing the minimum data rate can reduce network overhead and improve WiFi network performance in high density environments. However, WiFi clients that do not support the minimum data rate will not be able to connect to the Nebula Device.</p>
Edit	<p>Click this button to modify the channel, output power, channel width, airtime fairness (the same setting will apply to both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz), and smart steering settings for the selected Nebula Devices.</p> <p>On the Nebula Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch, you can adjust coverage depending on the orientation of the antenna for the Nebula Device radios. Select Wall if you mount the Nebula Device to a wall. Select Ceiling if the Nebula Device is mounted on a ceiling. You can switch from Wall to Ceiling if there are still WiFi dead zones, and vice versa. If you select Hardware Switch, you use the physical antenna switch to adjust coverage and apply the same antenna orientation settings to both radios.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>Edit ✕</p> <p>Access Point: BC:CF:4F:E3:7C:99</p> <p>Radio #: 1</p> <p>Model: NWA110AX</p> <p>Band: 2.4 GHz</p> <p>Radio mode: 802.11ax <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Channel: 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Channel width: 40 MHz <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Maximum output power: 29 dBm <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Airtime Fairness: Beta <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Smart steering: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Enable this function will steer the client to the better signal AP.</p> <p>▲ ADVANCED OPTIONS</p> <p>Disassociate Station Threshold: -88 <input type="text"/> dBm (-20 ~ -105)</p> <p>Optimization aggressiveness: Beta</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> High <input type="radio"/> Standard <input type="radio"/> Low</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Close Update</p> </div> <p>Note: On this screen, you can set channel width to 160 MHz for the 5/6 GHz channel, if the Nebula Device supports it.</p>
DCS Now	Click this button to have the selected Nebula Devices immediately scan for and select a channel that has least interference.
List	Click this to display a list of all connected Nebula Devices.
Map	Click this to display the locations of all connected Nebula Devices on the Google map.
2.4GHz	Click this to display the connected Nebula Devices using the 2.4 GHz frequency band.
5GHz	Click this to display the connected Nebula Devices using the 5 GHz frequency band.
6GHz	Click this to display the connected Nebula Devices using the 6 GHz frequency band.
BandFlex	Click this to display the connected Nebula Devices that supports BandFlex (5 GHz or 6 GHz frequency bands).
Hide transmit circles	Click this button to not show the transmission range on the Map.

Table 185 Access Point > Configure > Radio settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Access point	This displays the descriptive name or MAC address of the connected Nebula Device.
Radio #	This displays the number of the connected Nebula Device's radio.
Model	This displays the model name of the connected Nebula Device.
Radio mode	This displays the type of WiFi radio the Nebula Device is currently using, for example 802.11b/g/n.
Channel	This displays the channel ID currently being used by the connected Nebula Device's radio.
Transmit power	This displays the current transmitting power of the connected Nebula Device's radio. If the Nebula Device is offline, this shows the maximum output power you configured for the Nebula Device.
Channel width	This displays the wireless channel bandwidth the connected Nebula Device's radio is set to use.
Smart steering	This displays whether smart client steering is enabled or disabled on the connected Nebula Devices.
Antenna	This displays the antenna orientation settings for the Nebula Device that comes with internal antennas and also has an antenna switch.
Airtime fairness	This displays whether airtime fairness is enabled or disabled on the connected Nebula Device.
	Click this icon to display a greater or lesser number of configuration fields. For faster loading of data, select only the configuration fields listed that do NOT take a long time to fetch data.

The following table describes the pre-defined deployments and the related output power, channel width, DFS (Dynamic Frequency Selection) setting, rate control, and channel deployment.

Table 186 Radio Deployment Selection and Corresponding Parameters

DEPLOYMENT		HIGH DENSITY	MODERATE DENSITY	LOW DENSITY	SINGLE AP
Number of APs		More than 10	6 – 9	2 – 5	1
Power (dBm)	2G	12	15	20	30 20 (EU)
	5G	15	18	30	30
	6G	18	21	30	30
Channel width (MHz)	5G	20	40	80	80
	6G	80	160	160	160
Avoid 5G DFS channel / Blacklist DFS channels in the presence of radar		Disabled / Enabled	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled / Disabled
Rate control (Mbps)	2.4G	11	1	1	1
	5G	12	6	6	6
2.4G channel deployment		All channels	Three-channel	Three-channel	Three-channel

12.3.6 Traffic Shaping

This feature is for dynamic VLAN application. The data limit set here applies to the VLAN on a per WiFi client basis. This has a higher priority than the data limit set in **Access Point > Configure > SSID advanced settings**, which is applied on a per station basis. Use this screen to configure maximum bandwidth on the Nebula Device.

Click **Access point > Configure > Traffic shaping** to access this screen.

Figure 218 Access point > Configure > Traffic shaping

Access point > Configure > Traffic shaping

Traffic shaping

WLAN traffic shaping Beta [Model list](#)

Rule Name *

VLAN id *

Rate-limit

Download unlimited (Mb/s) (1 - 160)

Upload unlimited (Mb/s) (1 - 160)

(Per client device traffic rate)

! Traffic shaping provides bandwidth limit to user/user group on different VLAN(s).

+ Add

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 187 Access point > Configure > Traffic shaping

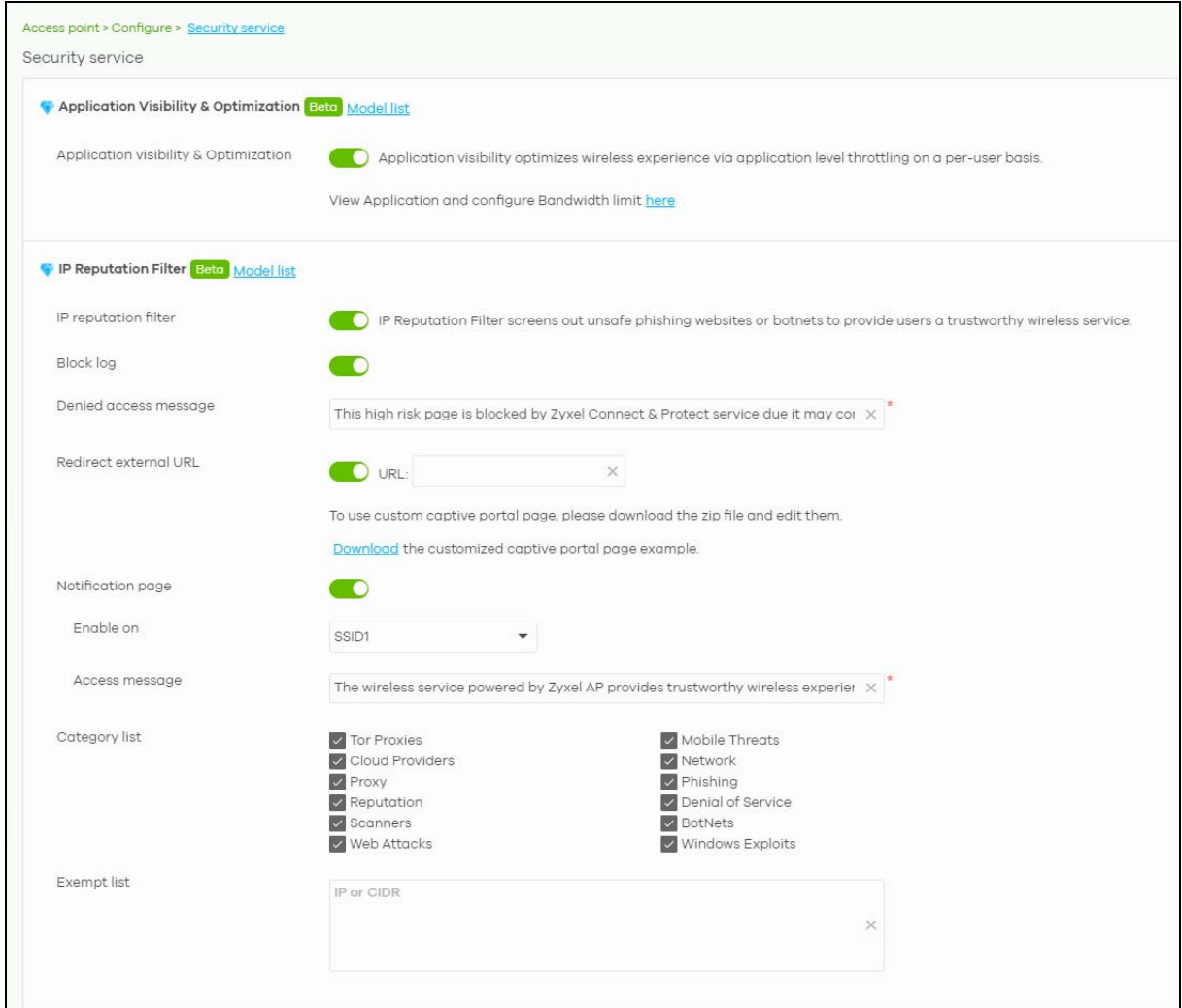
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WLAN traffic shaping	
Rule Name	Enter the name of the traffic shaping rule. The name is used to refer to the traffic shaping rule. You may use 1 – 31 alphanumeric characters, underscores(_), or dashes (-). This value is case-sensitive.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID. This 12-bit number uniquely identifies each VLAN. Allowed values are 1 – 4094. (0 and 4095 are reserved.)
Rate-limit	Set the maximum data download and upload rate in Mb/s, on a per WiFi client basis. Allowed values are 1 – 160. Click the lock icon to change the lock state. If the lock icon is locked, the data limit you set applies to both download and upload traffic. If the lock is unlocked, you can set download and upload traffic to have different data limits.
Add	Click this button to create a new rule.

12.3.7 Security Service

Use this screen to enable or disable the features available in the security pack for your Nebula Device, such as application visibility and optimization and/or IP reputation filter.

Click **Access Point > Configure > Security service** to access this screen.

Figure 219 Access Point > Configure > Security service



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 188 Access Point > Configure > Security service

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Application Visibility & Optimization	
Application visibility & Optimization	<p>Select this option to turn on application visibility and optimization. Application visibility and optimization does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Detects the type of applications used by WiFi clients, • Throttles specific applications to save WiFi bandwidth. <p>Application visibility provides a way for a Nebula Device to manage the use of various applications on its WiFi network. It can detect the type of applications used by WiFi clients and how much bandwidth they use.</p> <p>Application optimization limits the applications bandwidth usage by their categories. You can manage and view the applications and their categories in Site-wide > Monitor > Applications > Application view by Access Point.</p>
IP Reputation Filter	

Table 188 Access Point > Configure > Security service (continued)

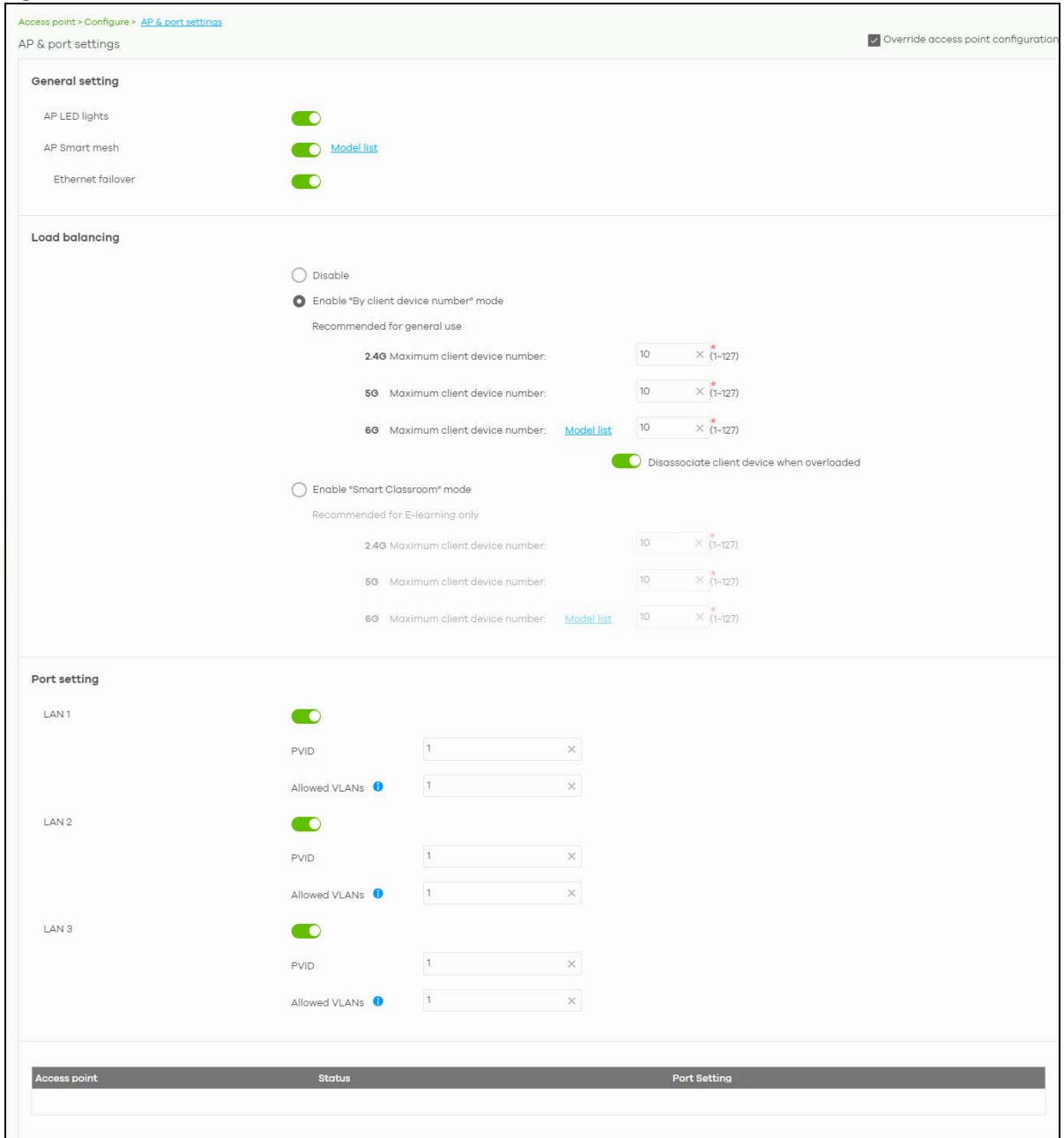
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP reputation filter	Select this option to turn on IP blocking on the Nebula Device. When you enable the IP reputation service, your Nebula Device downloads signature files that identifies reputation of IPv4 addresses. You can have the Nebula Device forward, block, and/or log packets from IPv4 addresses based on these signatures and categories.
Block log	Select this option to create a log on the Nebula Device when the packet comes from an IPv4 address with bad reputation.
Denied access message	Enter a message to be displayed when IP reputation filter blocks access to a web page. Use up to 127 characters (0-9a-zA-Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator". It is also possible to leave this field blank if you have a URL specified in the Redirect external URL field. In this case if the IP reputation filter blocks access to a web page, the Nebula Device just opens the web page you specified without showing a denied access message.
Redirect external URL	Enter the URL of the web page to which you want to send users when their web access is blocked by IP reputation filter. The web page you specify here opens in a new frame below the denied access message. Use "http://" or "https://" followed by up to 262 characters (0-9a-zA-Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, http://192.168.1.17/blocked access.
Notification page	Select this option to display the notification page.
Enable on	Select the SSID 1 – 8 that is allowed access to WiFi clients.
Access message	Enter a message to be displayed when access to a web page is allowed. Use up to 127 characters (0-9a-zA-Z;/?:@&=+\$\._!~*()%,"). For example, "Access to this web page is not allowed. Please contact the network administrator".
Category list	Select the categories of packets that come from the Internet and are known to pose a security threat to users or their computers.
Exempt list	Sites that you want to allow access to, regardless of their content rating, can be allowed by adding them to this list. Add the IPv4 addresses that the Nebula Device will allow the incoming and outgoing packets.

12.3.8 AP & Port Settings

Use this screen to configure general Nebula Device settings and network traffic load balancing between the Nebula Devices in the site. This screen also allows you to enable or disable a port on the managed Nebula Device and configure the port's VLAN settings. The port settings apply to all Nebula Devices that are assigned to the site and have one or more than one Ethernet LAN port (except the uplink port).

Click **Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings** to access this screen.

Figure 220 Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 189 Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General setting	
AP LED lights	Click to turn on or off the LEDs on the Nebula Devices.

Table 189 Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
AP Smart Mesh	<p>Click to enable or disable the Nebula Smart Mesh feature on all Nebula Devices in the site.</p> <p>Click Model list to see whether your Nebula Device supports Nebula Smart Mesh.</p> <p>Note: Nebula Smart Mesh is a WiFi mesh solution for Nebula Devices. For details, see Section 12.1.1 on page 448.</p> <p>Note: You can override NCC settings and enable or disable Smart Mesh on individual Nebula Devices. For details, see Section 12.2.1.1 on page 453.</p> <p>Note: Disabling Nebula Device Smart Mesh automatically disables wireless bridge on all Nebula Devices in the site. For details on wireless bridge, see Section 12.2.1.1 on page 453.</p>
Ethernet failover	<p>When enabled, a wired Nebula Device in the site automatically changes its role from root Nebula Device to repeater Nebula Device if the Nebula Device is unable to reach the site's gateway.</p> <p>When disabled, a wired Nebula Device in the site automatically changes its role from root Nebula Device to repeater Nebula Device only if the Nebula Device's uplink Ethernet cable is unplugged.</p> <p>Note: For details on root and repeater Nebula Devices, see Section 12.1.1 on page 448.</p>
Load balancing	
Disable	Select this option to disable load balancing on the Nebula Device.
Enable "By client device number" mode	Select this option to balance network traffic based on the number of specified client devices connected to the Nebula Device.
Maximum client device number	Enter the threshold number of client devices at which the Nebula Device begins load balancing its connections.
Disassociate client device when overloaded	<p>Select ON to disassociate WiFi clients connected to the Nebula Device when it becomes overloaded.</p> <p>Select OFF to disable this option, then the Nebula Device simply delays the connection until it can afford the bandwidth it requires, or it transfers the connection to another Nebula Device within its broadcast radius.</p> <p>The disassociation priority is determined automatically by the Nebula Device and is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Idle Time – Devices that have been idle the longest will be disassociated first. If none of the connected devices are idle, then the priority shifts to Signal Strength. • Signal Strength – Devices with the weakest signal strength will be disassociated first.
Enable "Smart Classroom" mode	<p>Select this option to balance network traffic based on the number of specified client devices connected to the Nebula Device. The Nebula Device ignores association request and authentication request packets from any new client device when the maximum number of client devices is reached.</p> <p>The Disassociate client device when overloaded function is enabled by default and the disassociation priority is always Signal Strength when you select this option.</p>
Maximum client device number	Enter the threshold number of client devices at which the Nebula Device begins load balancing its connections.
Port setting	
LAN x	<p>This is the name of the physical Ethernet port on the Nebula Device.</p> <p>This section lets you configure global port VLAN settings for all Nebula Devices in the site. To modify port settings for a specific Nebula Device, use its Edit button in the table below.</p>

Table 189 Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ON/OFF	Select ON to turn on the LAN port of the Nebula Device. Select OFF to disable the port.
PVID	Enter the port's PVID. A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
Allowed VLANs	Enter the VLAN ID numbers to which the port belongs. You can enter individual VLAN ID numbers separated by a comma or a range of VLANs by using a dash, such as 1,3,5-8.
Access Point	This displays the descriptive name or MAC address of the connected Nebula Device. Only the Nebula Device that has an extra Ethernet LAN port will be listed, such as NAP203 or NAP303.
Status	This shows whether the Nebula Device's Ethernet LAN port is enabled or disabled.
Port Setting	This displays the port's VLAN settings for the managed Nebula Device.

12.3.8.1 Edit Port Settings

Click an entry in the **Port setting** table of the **Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings** screen to access this screen.

Select **NAT mode** to have the Nebula Device create a DHCP subnet with its own NAT for the SSID. This simplifies WiFi network management, as you do not need to configure a separate DHCP server. Otherwise, select **Local bridge**.

The following Nebula Device features do not work when NAT mode is enabled:

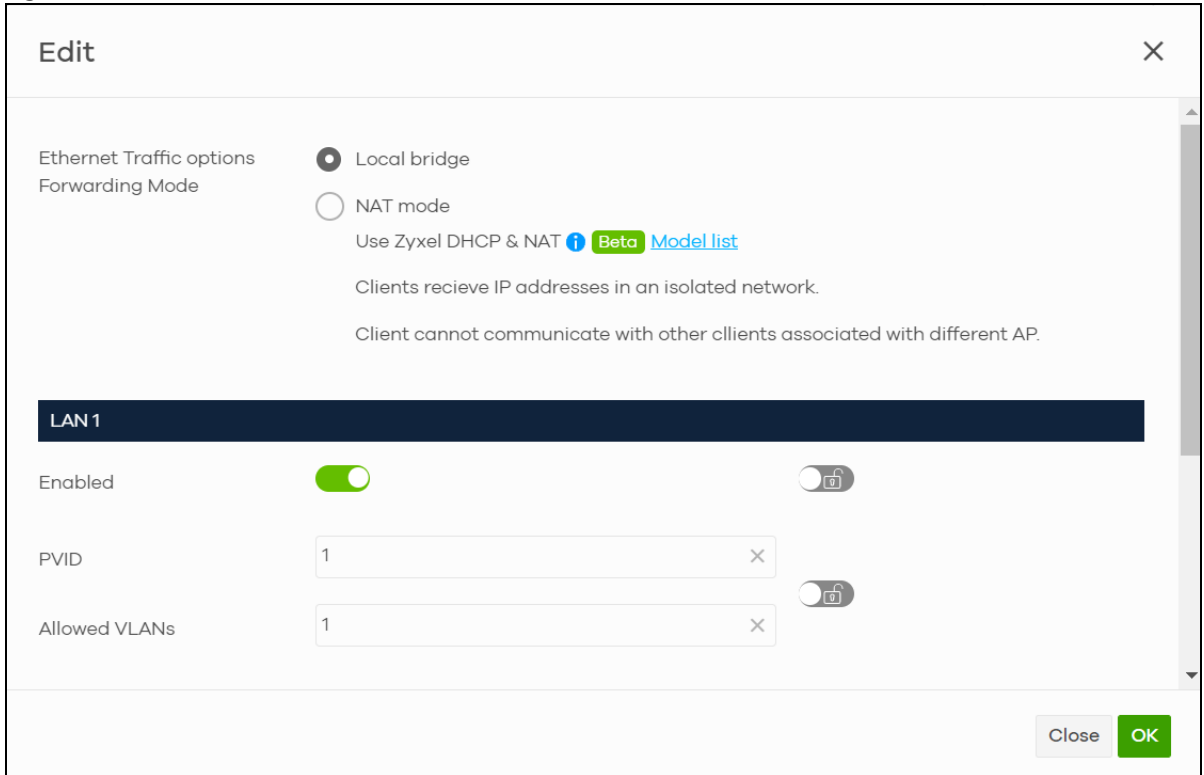
- 802.11r (see [Table 181 on page 478](#) for more information on enabling 802.11r)
- Layer2 isolation
- Dynamic VLAN (cloud authentication, RADIUS server)

Note: In NAT mode, clients cannot communicate with clients connected to a different Nebula Device.

Only WAC500H supports **Ethernet Traffic options Forwarding Mode** at the time of writing.

By default, all Nebula Devices in the site use the global port settings. Use this screen to change the port settings on a per-device basis. You can turn on or off the port, modify its PVID or update the ID number of VLANs to which the port belongs.

Figure 221 Access Point > Configure > AP & port settings: Edit



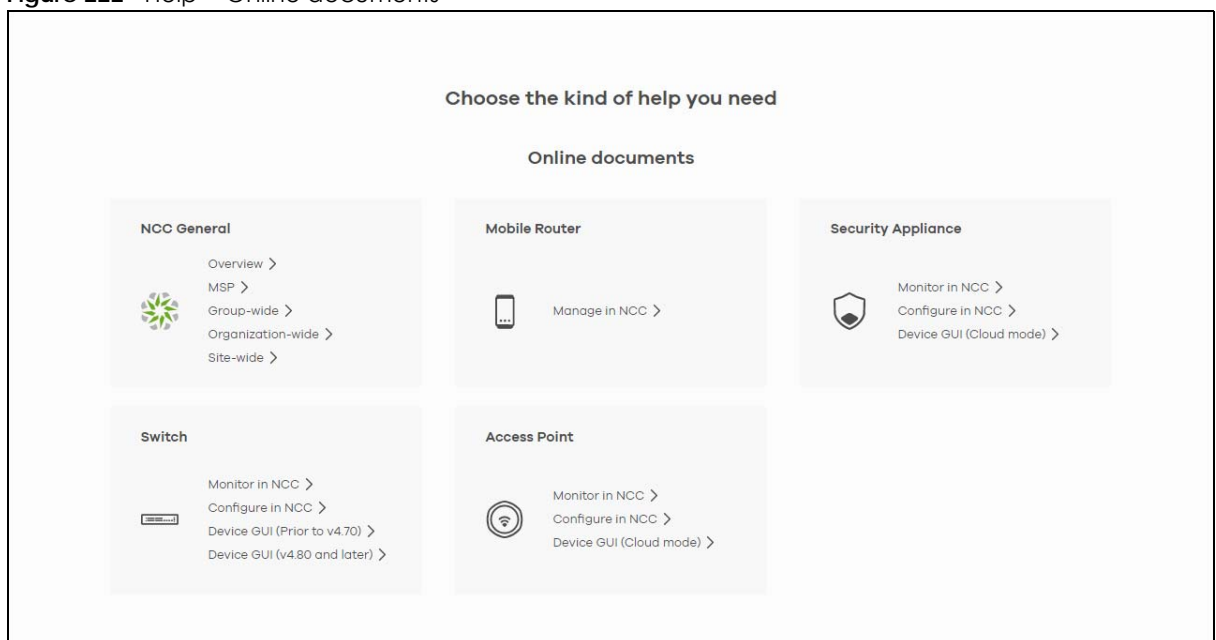
CHAPTER 13

Help

13.1 Online documents

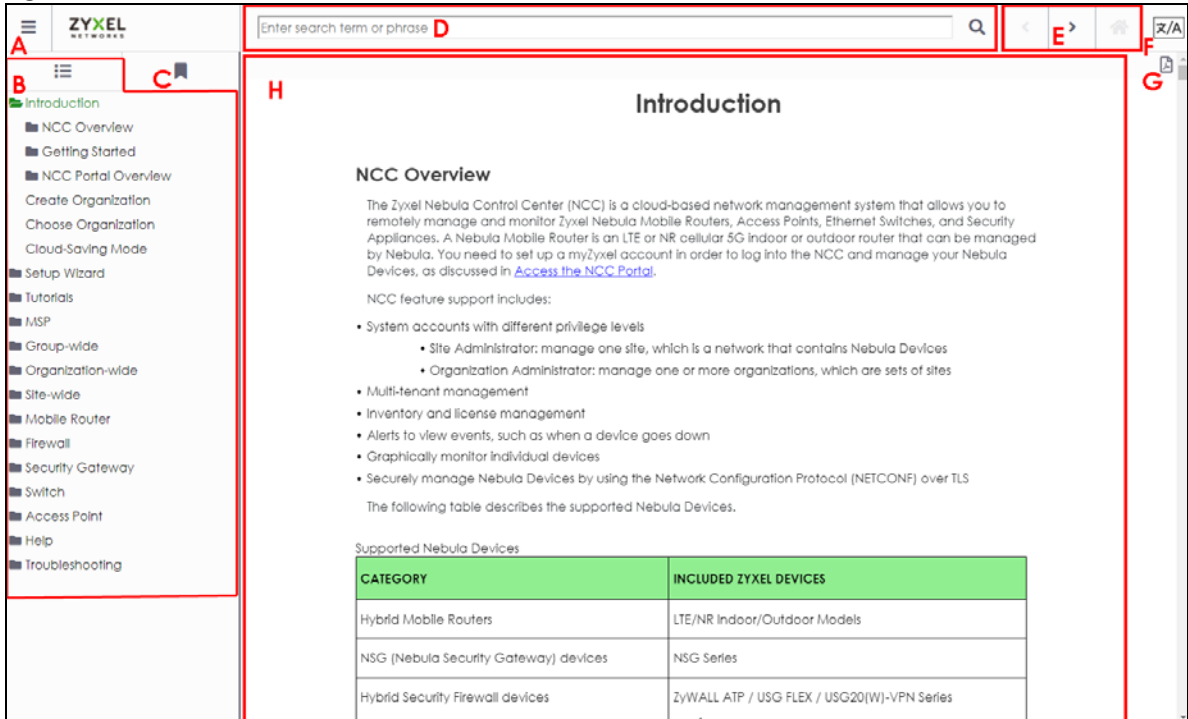
Click **Help > Online documents** to view the documentation for NCC and NCC-compatible devices. For example, to view the Security Firewall Series configuration and hardware information, locate the documents under **Security Appliance**.

Figure 222 Help > Online documents



The following summarizes how to navigate the online document screen. The online document screen is divided into these parts:

Figure 223 Online Document Overview



- A – Hide/Show the Contents Menu/Index
- B – Contents Menu
- C – Index
- D – Search Bar
- E – Navigation Buttons
- F – Google Translate Button
- G – Download Content PDF Button
- H – Content Page

The following table shows the description of the online document parts.

Table 190 Online Document Overview

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
A	Click to hide or show the contents menu and Index.
B	This shows a menu of the content topics. Click a topic heading to display its content in the main screen.
C	Click this to show the Index panel. Click an index entry to view its description.
D	Enter a keyword to search and display the related section(s) in the online document.
E	These are the navigation buttons. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click the Previous button to display the previous chapter in the online document. • Click the Next button to display the next chapter in the online document. • Click the Home button to display the first chapter in the online document.
F	Click this to view the translated content page. You can click Google Translate anywhere in a content page, but you must be at the top of the content page to choose a language. The bottom right of the content page has a 'Back to top' arrow to get there.

Table 190 Online Document Overview (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
G	Click this to download content in a PDF file. You must be at the top of the content page to click the PDF icon.
H	The content of the online document is displayed here.

13.2 Troubleshooting Tips

To find suggestions to solve problems you might encounter with NCC and Nebula Devices, go to [Chapter 14 on page 513](#) for more information.

13.2.1 Firewall Information

Click **Help > Support tools > Firewall information** to view information required for firewall rules to allow management traffic between NCC and Nebula Devices on your sites. Click **Export** to export the information to a CSV or XML file.

Note: The **Firewall Information** page for a Security Gateway will show its FQDN (fully qualified domain name) and service ports. The FQDN is the complete domain name of Nebula Cloud Management on the Internet.

The following table shows the sample information required for firewall rules at the time of writing.

Table 191 Sample Information Required for Firewall Rules

SERVICE	FQDN	IP ADDRESS	PORT	PROTOCOL
Nebula Cloud Management (NETCONF)	d.nebula.zyxel.com	34.247.112.130, 52.210.12.1, 52.48.115.44, 54.73.103.137, 63.32.141.172, 63.35.107.114	4335 / 6667	TCP
Nebula Cloud Management	s.nebula.zyxel.com	Dynamic	443	TCP
Network Time Protocol	*.pool.ntp.org	Dynamic	123	UDP
Nebula Cloud Management (Zero Touch Provisioning)	d-a.nebula.zyxel.com	Dynamic	443	TCP
Nebula Cloud Management (Configure related service for USG FLEX series)	d-cp.nebula.zyxel.com	34.254.181.105, 52.212.114.133	4335	TCP
Nebula Cloud Management (Monitor related service for USG FLEX series)	d-mp.nebula.zyxel.com	52.18.204.70, 54.220.154.85, 63.34.155.16	443	TCP

13.2.2 Data Policy

Click **Help > Support tools > Data Policy** to view and download NCC data policy, privacy policy, and terms of use.

Figure 224 Help > Support tools > Data Policy



13.3 Device Function Table

Click **Help > Support tools > Device function table** to view a list of NCC-compatible Access Points, Switches, Security Gateway, and Security Firewall devices at the time of writing. The table also includes which features each Nebula Device supports.

Figure 225 Help > Support tools > Device function table

Model	Security						160MHz	Storm Control	Smart mesh manual uplink	Wireless bridge	Collaborative Detection & Response (CDR)	Remote AP (RAP) Wireless Secure Tunnel	Remote AP (RAP) Ethernet Secure Tunnel	Wireless Tunnel	Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)	Firewall with NAT mode	Wireless NAT/Traffic log	Ethernet Traffic log
	Open	Enhanced-Open	WPA2	WPA2-MIX	WPA3	Dynamic Personal Pre-Shared Key (DPPSK)												
NWA220AX-6E	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX620D-6E	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX640S-6E	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA110AX	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA210AX	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX510D	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX610D	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX630S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAX650S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA1123ACv3	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC500	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC500H	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NAP203	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NAP303	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NAP353	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA1123-AC PRO	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA1123-AC HD	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA1302-AC	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA5123-AC HD	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC5302D-Sv2	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6303D-S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6103D-I	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6502D-E	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6502D-S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6503D-S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6552D-S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
WAC6553D-E	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NAP102	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
NWA1123-ACv2	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

13.4 Support Forum

Click **Help > Still need help?: Support forum** to go to Zyxel Nebula Forum, where you can get the latest Nebula information and have conversations with other people by posting your messages.

13.5 Support Request

If you need Zyxel customer support to help you find answers and/or solve problems, you can submit a ticket through the NCC.

Note: It is suggested that you check this user's guide first to seek help and then go to the Zyxel Nebula Forum before you use this screen to send a ticket.

Click **Help > Still need help?: Support request** to access this screen. The screen varies depending on whether you select to view the ticket details or create a new ticket.

Note: **Direct Support** for opening a ticket to get direct assistance from the Nebula technical support team is only available for Nebula Pro Pack license.

Figure 226 Help > Still need help?: Support request

Help > [Support request](#)

Support request

Zyxel Support Access **Invite Zyxel support as administrator**

By enabling this, you are granting temporary access (21 days by default) to Zyxel support as administrator of your Organization. So they can help check your configuration & logs. This will automatically be switched off after specified days, or you could turn it off right after your issue is solved. You might also edit the access privileges [here](#).

CSO account will be expired in: 21 days Never

Direct Support: You're able to open a ticket to get direct assistance from the Nebula technical support team. Alternately, you can contact your local/regional Zyxel office for support:

- Europe, the Middle East and Africa (EMEA), click [here](#).
- North and Central America, click [here](#).

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 192 Help > Still need help?: Support Request


LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Zyxel Support Access Invite Zyxel support as administrator	<p>Select ON to allow the Zyxel customer support account to access your organization temporarily, so that they can help check your configurations and log messages. At the time of writing, the support account will be deactivated automatically after 21 days. You can set the number of days, or select Never.</p> <p>If you select ON, you can click here to change the support account's name and access right to the organization and sites.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Update administrator ✕</p> <hr/> <p>Name: <input type="text" value="Zyxel Support"/> ✕ *</p> <p>Email: <input type="text" value="nebula.cso@zyxel.com.tw"/> ✕</p> <p>Organization access: <input type="text" value="Read-only"/> ▼</p> <p>Activated: <input type="text" value="Yes"/> ▼</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Site</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Privilege</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">▼</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="text" value="Monitor-only"/> ✕</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center; margin-top: 5px;">+ Add</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;"> Close Update admin </p> </div>	Site	Privilege	▼	<input type="text" value="Monitor-only"/> ✕
Site	Privilege				
▼	<input type="text" value="Monitor-only"/> ✕				
My Cases					
	Click this button to reload the data-related frames for this section on the page.				
Open/Closed	Select to view the details about the tickets that are still open or closed.				
Case Number	This shows the number of the eITS ticket.				
Created	This shows the first date and time the ticket was created.				
Last Updated	This shows the last date and time the ticket was updated.				
Creator	This shows the account name of the administrator that created this ticket.				
Subject	This shows the subject of the ticket.				
Priority	This shows the severity level of the ticket.				
Status	This shows whether the ticket is open or closed.				
Engineer	This shows the name of the support person who handles the ticket.				
New Case	Click this button if you want to issue a new ticket. The following fields then appear allowing you to provide the necessary information and describe the issue encountered.				
Subject	Enter the subject of the ticket.				
Device	Select the NCC or the name of the Nebula Device that cannot work properly.				
Issue Description	Enter a complete and detailed description of your issue.				

Table 192 Help > Still need help?: Support Request (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Priority	Select the severity level of the ticket. Click the Definition of priority link to see how to correctly identify a ticket's severity level. This can help to get your problem solved quickly.
Add Another File	Click this button to upload another file.
Choose File/ Browse...	Click this button to locate the file you want to upload for reference.
Delete	Click this button to remove the file you just uploaded before submitting the ticket.
Cancel	Click this button to close the New Case section without saving.
Submit	Click this button to send your ticket to the Zyxel customer support.

PART V

Troubleshooting and Appendices

CHAPTER 14

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter with NCC and Nebula Devices.

- To see how to do things in NCC, go to the [Tutorials](#) section.
- To know how to manage Mobile Routers in NCC, go to [Section 8.2 on page 248](#) for more information.
- To know how to monitor Security Appliances in NCC, go to [Section 9.2 on page 266](#) (Security Firewalls) or [Section 10.2 on page 341](#) (Security Gateways) for more information.
- To know how to configure Security Appliances in NCC, go to [Section 9.3 on page 278](#) (Security Firewalls) or [Section 10.3 on page 352](#) (Security Gateways) for more information.
- To know how to monitor Switches in NCC, go to [Section 11.2 on page 401](#) for more information.
- To know how to configure Switches in NCC, go to [Section 11.3 on page 424](#) for more information.
- To know how to monitor Access Points in NCC, go to [Section 12.2 on page 450](#) for more information.
- To know how to configure Access Points in NCC, go to [Section 12.3 on page 474](#) for more information.

I cannot register the Zyxel Device in NCC.

Check if your Zyxel Device supports Nebula by locating the Nebula QR code on the Zyxel Device label or package box.

I cannot access the NCC portal.

- Check that you are using the correct URL:
 - NCC: <https://nebula.zyxel.com/>
- Make sure your computer's Ethernet card is installed and functioning properly.
- Check that you have Internet access. In your computer, click **Start, (All) Programs, Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**. In the **Command Prompt** window, type 'ping' followed by a website such as 'zyxel.com'. If you get a reply, try to ping 'nebula.zyxel.com'.
- Make sure you are using the correct web browser that supports HTML5. View the browser in full screen mode to display the NCC portal properly. Browsers supported are:
 - Google Chrome
 - Microsoft Edge
 - Mozilla Firefox

I cannot log into the NCC portal.

Open your web browser and go to <https://nebula.zyxel.com>. Sign in with the correct email and password. Click **Sign Up** if you do not have a myZyxel account and create an account.

I cannot access a Nebula Device that I have registered in NCC.

- Check if the TCP/UDP port is blocked by your network's firewall rule or ISP. Click **Help > Support tools > Firewall information** to view information required for firewall rules to allow management traffic between NCC and Nebula Devices on your sites.
- Check the Nebula Device's hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide.
- Make sure the Nebula Device is connected to the Internet.
- For Mobile Routers, make sure a valid SIM card is inserted in the SIM card slot.
- Make sure the Mobile Router is located where the cellular signal is strong.
- For ZyWALL USG FLEX / ATP / USG20(W)-VPN Series devices with **Nebula native mode** as the deployment method, make sure you perform the steps for **Nebula native mode** on the Nebula Device; see [Section 2.1.6.1 on page 48](#) for information.
If you select **Zero Touch Provision mode** as the deployment method. Make sure you perform the steps for **Zero Touch Provision mode** on the Nebula Device, see [Section 2.1.6.2 on page 49](#) for information.
- Check if the WAN IP address is configured on the Nebula Device.
- Check if the Nebula Device can access the NCC server's domain through SSH/Console and enter 'nslookup d.nebula.zyxel.com'. If the Nebula Device shows 'unknown host', check your DNS server setting or use '8.8.8.8' as the DNS server on the Nebula Device.
- The Nebula Devices will apply the site-wide password after getting online on NCC. Check the login credential by going to **Site-wide > Configure > General settings: Local credentials**.
- Specify the **Port** number and click **Establish** using **Remote Access** in the following screens to obtain real-time logs and data from the Nebula Device.
 - **Firewall > Monitor > Firewall**
 - **Security gateway > Monitor > Security gateway**
 - **Access Point > Monitor > Access Point**

Note: **Remote Access** to Nebula Access Points is available to the organization owner, organization administrators with full privileges, and site administrators with full privileges in Nebula Pro Pack license only.

Remote Access to Nebula Security Firewalls and Security Gateways is available to the organization owner in Nebula Pro Pack license only.

I cannot see my Nebula Devices in the NCC Dashboard or the corresponding Nebula Device monitor page.

- If your Nebula Device is a Zyxel Hybrid Switch (GS / XGS / XMG / XS Series), make sure that the Nebula Device is working in Nebula cloud management mode with NCC Discovery enabled.
 - For the Web Configurator version 4.70:
Active is enabled in **Basic Setting > Cloud Management > Nebula Control Center Discovery**.
 - For the Web Configurator version 4.80:
Nebula Control Center (NCC) Discovery is enabled in **SYSTEM > Cloud Management**.
- Make sure that your Nebula Device can connect to the NCC by checking your network's firewall/ security settings. The following ports must be allowed:
 - TCP: 22, 443, 4335 and 6667
 - UDP: 123

Note: Go to **Help > Support tools > Firewall information** to find the latest port information.

- Make sure that you have registered your Nebula Devices with the NCC. See [Section 6.3.3 on page 156](#).
- Make sure that you have created an organization and site and add the Nebula Devices to the site. See [Create Organization on page 40](#) and [Section 6.3.2 on page 155](#).

I cannot set up Secure WiFi in NCC.

- Make sure the Nebula Security Firewall and Nebula Access Point are in the same NCC site.
- Make sure a Secure WiFi license is assigned to the Nebula Security Firewall.
- Make sure to configure the **Remote AP Setting** of each Remote Access Point before booting up the Remote Access Point in the remote site. See [Table 175 on page 455](#).
- The maximum number of Remote Access Points depends on the Nebula Security Firewall.

Table 193 Maximum Remote Access Points (at the time of writing)

CAPACITY	USG FLEX 50 / USG20-VPN / USG20W-VPN	USG FLEX 100 / USG FLEX 100W / ATP100 / ATP100W	USG FLEX 200 / ATP200	USG FLEX 500 / ATP500	ATP700	USG FLEX 700 / ATP800
Maximum IPsec Tunnel	10	40	90	250	450	450
Maximum Remote AP	No support	6	10	18	66	130

None of the Nebula Device LEDs turn on.

- Make sure that you have the power cord connected to the Nebula Device and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure you have the Nebula Device turned on.
- Check all cable connections. See the related Quick Start Guide.
- If the LEDs still do not turn on, you may have a hardware problem. In this case, you should contact your local customer support.

The Nebula Device PWR LED is red.

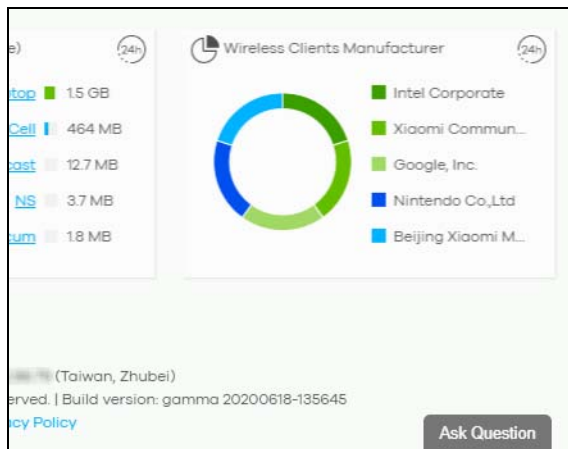
- The Nebula Device has a power-related error. Disconnect and reconnect the power cord. Make sure that you are using the included power cord for the Nebula Device and it is plugged into an appropriate power source. See the related Quick Start Guide.
- If the LED is still red, you may have a hardware problem. In this case, you should contact your local customer support.

14.1 Getting More Troubleshooting Help

Go to support.zyxel.com at the Zyxel website for other technical information on the NCC.

14.2 NCC Live Chat

Clicking the **Ask Question** button at the bottom of NCC window prompts you to search for a solution on the Zyxel forum, and then connects you to a Zyxel technical support agent. If a technical support agent is not available, you can fill in a form to send your question to Zyxel by email.



Note: This is an NCC Pro pack feature.

Live chat might be limited to a certain number of hours per day. The time that live chat is available varies depending on your country.

APPENDIX A

Customer Support

In the event of problems that cannot be solved by using this manual, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a Zyxel office for the region in which you bought the device.

For Zyxel Communication offices, see <https://service-provider.zyxel.com/global/en/contact-us> for the latest information.

For Zyxel Network offices, see <https://www.zyxel.com/index.shtml> for the latest information.

Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

Required Information

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Corporate Headquarters (Worldwide)

Taiwan

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com>

Asia

China

- Zyxel Communications (Shanghai) Corp.
- Zyxel Communications (Beijing) Corp.
- Zyxel Communications (Tianjin) Corp.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/cn/zh/>

India

- Zyxel Technology India Pvt Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/in/en/>

Kazakhstan

- Zyxel Kazakhstan
- <https://www.zyxel.kz>

Korea

- Zyxel Korea Corp.
- <http://www.zyxel.kr>

Malaysia

- Zyxel Malaysia Sdn Bhd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.my>

Pakistan

- Zyxel Pakistan (Pvt.) Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.pk>

Philippines

- Zyxel Philippines
- <http://www.zyxel.com.ph>

Singapore

- Zyxel Singapore Pte Ltd.
- <http://www.zyxel.com.sg>

Taiwan

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/tw/zh/>

Thailand

- Zyxel Thailand Co., Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/th/th/>

Vietnam

- Zyxel Communications Corporation – Vietnam Office
- <https://www.zyxel.com/vn/vi>

Europe

Belarus

- Zyxel BY
- <https://www.zyxel.by>

Bulgaria

- Zyxel България
- <https://www.zyxel.com/bg/bg/>

Czech Republic

- Zyxel Communications Czech s.r.o
- <https://www.zyxel.com/cz/cs/>

Denmark

- Zyxel Communications A/S
- <https://www.zyxel.com/dk/da/>

Finland

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/fi/fi/>

France

- Zyxel France
- <https://www.zyxel.fr>

Germany

- Zyxel Deutschland GmbH
- <https://www.zyxel.com/de/de/>

Hungary

- Zyxel Hungary & SEE
- <https://www.zyxel.com/hu/hu/>

Italy

- Zyxel Communications Itad
- <https://www.zyxel.com/it/it/>

Netherlands

- Zyxel Benelux
- <https://www.zyxel.com/nl/nl/>

Norway

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/no/no/>

Poland

- Zyxel Communications Poland
- <https://www.zyxel.com/pl/pl/>

Romania

- Zyxel Romania

- <https://www.zyxel.com/ro/ro>

Russia

- Zyxel Russia
- <https://www.zyxel.com/ru/ru/>

Slovakia

- Zyxel Communications Czech s.r.o. organizacna zlozka
- <https://www.zyxel.com/sk/sk/>

Spain

- Zyxel Communications ES Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/es/es/>

Sweden

- Zyxel Communications
- <https://www.zyxel.com/se/sv/>

Switzerland

- Studerus AG
- <https://www.zyxel.ch/de>
- <https://www.zyxel.ch/fr>

Turkey

- Zyxel Turkey A.S.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/tr/tr/>

UK

- Zyxel Communications UK Ltd.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/uk/en/>

Ukraine

- Zyxel Ukraine
- <http://www.ua.zyxel.com>

South America

Argentina

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

Brazil

- Zyxel Communications Brasil Ltda.
- <https://www.zyxel.com/br/pt/>

Colombia

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

Ecuador

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

South America

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <https://www.zyxel.com/co/es/>

Middle East

Israel

- Zyxel Communications Corporation
- <http://il.zyxel.com/>

North America

USA

- Zyxel Communications, Inc. – North America Headquarters
- <https://www.zyxel.com/us/en/>

APPENDIX B

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2022 by Zyxel and/or its affiliates.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Zyxel and/or its affiliates.

Published by Zyxel and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

Zyxel does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. Zyxel further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Viewing Certifications

Go to <http://www.zyxel.com> to view this product's documentation and certifications.

Zyxel Limited Warranty

Zyxel warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized Zyxel local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, Zyxel will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of Zyxel. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. Zyxel shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at http://www.zyxel.com/web/support_warranty_info.php.

Registration

Register your product online at www.zyxel.com to receive email notices of firmware upgrades and related information.

Symbols

- +Hub button [143](#)
- +Org-to-Org Service [144](#)

Numbers

- 2FA [24](#)
 - enable [102](#)
 - set up [108](#)
- 3GPP specifications [260](#)
- 802.11k neighbor lists [484](#)
- 802.11r fast roaming [479](#)
- 802.11v capable client [484](#)
- 802.1X (WPA-Enterprise) authentication [176, 242](#)
- 802.1X authentication [479](#)

A

- access point
 - connection status [452](#)
- access point list
 - export [451](#)
- Access points screen [450](#)
- access port [429](#)
- account
 - disable [124, 147](#)
 - expire [180, 182](#)
- account list
 - export [176, 179, 182, 242, 244, 246](#)
- account status [123, 146, 172](#)
- ACL rule
 - configure [431](#)
- ACL screen [431](#)
- Active
 - license state [167](#)
- Active Directory [332, 396](#)
- AD server [332, 396](#)
- add a device
 - tutorial [52](#)
- Add devices screen [159, 236](#)
- Add licenses screen [160](#)
- Add more devices
 - action [157](#)
- Add more licenses
 - action [157](#)
- address
 - gateway [343](#)
- administrator
 - create [123](#)
 - delete [91](#)
 - privilege [121](#)
 - update [123](#)
- administrator accounts [170](#)
- Administrator screen [146, 172](#)
- Administrators screen [170](#)
- Admins & teams [121](#)
- Admins screen [121](#)
- AES encryption algorithm [303](#)
- Alert Settings screen [233](#)
- ALG [338](#)
- allow list [194, 195, 320](#)
- antenna orientation [458](#)
- antenna switch [458](#)
- anti-malware [194](#)
- Anti-Malware signature [229](#)
- AP [496](#)
- AP & Port Settings screen [499](#)
- AP Google Map
 - Dashboard [205](#)
- AP photo [460](#)
- AP Smart Mesh [448](#)
- AP Status
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- AP Traffic
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- AP/switch setting

overwrite [83](#)
 API token
 generate [229](#)
 App ID [480](#)
 Appliance Clients (by Usage)
 Dashboard [204](#)
 Appliance Network Applications
 Dashboard [204](#)
 Appliance Status
 Dashboard [204](#)
 Application Layer Gateway, see ALG
 application patrol [193](#), [306](#)
 application patrol profile [374](#)
 add [307](#)
 Applications screen [223](#)
 APs (by Usage)
 Dashboard [204](#)
 Ask Question
 button [516](#)
 assign administrator
 tutorial [68](#)
 Assign License
 action [164](#), [165](#), [167](#), [168](#)
 assisted roaming [484](#)
 ATP device
 license [15](#)
 Authentication Method screen [329](#)
 Automatic Power Save Delivery [484](#)
 auto-negotiation [425](#)

B

Backup & restore screen [264](#)
 backup code [26](#)
 download [26](#)
 inactive [26](#)
 bandwidth utilization [410](#)
 Base Station Identity Code (BSIC) [261](#)
 Base tier [15](#)
 base transceiver station [259](#)
 Batch Create DPPSK [184](#)
 battery life [484](#)
 block list [194](#), [195](#), [320](#)
 blocked client

 release [212](#)
 Branch to Branch VPN
 enable [141](#)
 bridge priority [446](#)
 browser
 supported [513](#)
 browser support [21](#)
 BSIC [261](#)
 bundled license [21](#)
 bypass mode [480](#)

C

captive portal [326](#), [388](#)
 Captive portal customization screen [485](#)
 Captive portal screen [326](#), [388](#)
 captive portal setting
 SSID profile [485](#)
 carrier aggregation (CA) [259](#), [261](#)
 CDR (Collaborative Detection & Response) [15](#)
 CDR security service [212](#)
 cell ID [259](#)
 Cell Identity [259](#)
 cellular band [259](#)
 Cellular Info screen [257](#)
 cellular IP passthrough
 setting [251](#)
 supported model [252](#)
 certificate
 import [155](#)
 update [155](#)
 certifications
 viewing [522](#)
 Change log screen [117](#), [138](#), [152](#), [168](#)
 Change organization
 action [164](#), [165](#), [167](#), [168](#)
 change owner [171](#)
 Change site assignment
 action [164](#), [165](#)
 channel bandwidth [468](#), [469](#)
 channel ID [269](#)
 channel list [98](#)
 channel profile and naming
 configure [97](#)

- Channel Quality Indicator (CQI) [261](#)
 - channel width [493](#)
 - Classification mode [408](#)
 - Client diagnostic screen [211](#)
 - client list
 - export [462](#)
 - client steering [494](#)
 - clients list [212](#)
 - Clients screen [205, 460](#)
 - Cloud Authentication account
 - privilege [127](#)
 - Cloud Authentication screen [174, 240](#)
 - Cloud authentication screen [100](#)
 - Cloud Intelligence Logs screen [219](#)
 - Cloud-Saving mode [42](#)
 - CNP license
 - status [116](#)
 - CNP security service
 - enable [86](#)
 - Collaborative Detection & Response (CDR) [19, 229](#)
 - configuration backup [185](#)
 - configuration management [185](#)
 - configuration synchronization [185](#)
 - configuration template [187, 227](#)
 - tutorial [70](#)
 - Configuration templates screen [187](#)
 - Configure menu [140, 153, 225, 474](#)
 - Connect & Protect (CNP) [15](#)
 - connected device
 - summary [148](#)
 - connection speed
 - port [343](#)
 - connection status
 - port [343](#)
 - connectivity [152](#)
 - Consumption mode [408](#)
 - contact information [517](#)
 - containment action [231](#)
 - Containment List screen [212](#)
 - Content Filter Pack [15](#)
 - content filtering [192, 306, 312, 376](#)
 - content filtering profile
 - add [308](#)
 - Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) [45](#)
 - copyright [522](#)
 - CPU usage [269, 343](#)
 - CQI [261](#)
 - CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error [420, 421](#)
 - CRC error [411](#)
 - create
 - user account [180, 182](#)
 - Create Group window [135](#)
 - Create organization screen [41, 118](#)
 - Create site [155](#)
 - create user account [176](#)
 - cross-org site clone [127](#)
 - cross-org sync [127](#)
 - Cross-org synchronization screen [128](#)
 - CSS value [327, 390](#)
 - custom portal page [390, 487](#)
 - custom theme [390, 486](#)
 - customer support [510, 517](#)
 - Cyclic Redundant Check [411](#)
- ## D
- dark mode [32](#)
 - Dashboard logo [119](#)
 - specs [120](#)
 - dashboard logo
 - upload/replace/remove [12](#)
 - Dashboard screen [28, 202](#)
 - change default view [56](#)
 - Data Policy screen [506](#)
 - data roaming [258](#)
 - DCS
 - time interval [493](#)
 - DCS (Dynamic Channel Selection) [468, 469](#)
 - DDMI [412](#)
 - Delegate owner's authority
 - privilege [146](#)
 - delete icon [264](#)
 - deployment method [164, 165, 167, 237](#)
 - set up [48](#)
 - DES encryption algorithm [303](#)
 - description
 - gateway [343](#)

- destination lookup failure (DLF) [458](#)
 - device
 - add to site [45](#)
 - view [31](#)
 - Device function table [11](#), [248](#), [401](#), [448](#)
 - Device function table screen [507](#)
 - device list
 - export [138](#), [151](#), [164](#)
 - Device screen [162](#)
 - Devices tab [151](#)
 - DH key [384](#)
 - DHCP relay [359](#), [364](#)
 - DHCP server [359](#), [364](#)
 - DHCP server guard [447](#)
 - DHCP service [359](#), [364](#)
 - Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value [446](#)
 - Diffie-Hellman key group [384](#)
 - Diffie-Hellman key group (DHx) [298](#), [303](#)
 - Digital Diagnostics Monitoring Interface [412](#)
 - disable account [124](#), [147](#), [173](#)
 - disclaimer [522](#)
 - DNS content filtering
 - enable [309](#)
 - DNS lookup [255](#)
 - DNS setting [332](#), [396](#)
 - domain name [255](#)
 - domain zone [334](#), [398](#)
 - download icon [264](#)
 - DPPSK account
 - add/edit [182](#)
 - batch creation [184](#)
 - DPPSK screen [181](#), [244](#)
 - DPPSK third-party integration [229](#)
 - Dynamic Personal Pre-Shared Key (DPPSK) [18](#), [176](#), [177](#), [182](#), [183](#), [184](#), [219](#), [242](#), [246](#), [480](#)
 - print [181](#), [245](#)
 - DynDNS account [356](#)
- ## E
- EARFCN (E-UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) [259](#), [260](#)
 - EcNo [260](#)
 - Edit floor plans tab [214](#)
 - eITS ticket [510](#)
 - email
 - alert notification [235](#)
 - email address
 - user account [244](#), [246](#)
 - email recipient
 - MSP alerts [132](#)
 - email report [276](#), [348](#), [351](#), [415](#), [423](#), [472](#)
 - Email Verification [26](#)
 - encryption algorithm [299](#), [303](#)
 - encryption method
 - SSID network [222](#)
 - eNodeB (Evolved Node-B) [261](#)
 - Ethernet WAN status [256](#)
 - E-UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number [259](#), [260](#)
 - event log [270](#), [344](#), [413](#), [466](#)
 - Event Log screen [270](#), [344](#), [413](#), [466](#)
 - event type
 - client diagnostic [212](#)
 - Expired
 - license state [167](#)
 - expired license
 - renew [58](#)
- ## F
- Facebook app ID [480](#)
 - Facebook fan page [480](#)
 - Facebook login [206](#), [463](#), [480](#)
 - Facebook WiFi [206](#), [463](#), [480](#)
 - fan page
 - Facebook [480](#)
 - fast roaming [479](#)
 - firewall information
 - export [506](#)
 - port information [515](#)
 - Firewall information screen [506](#)
 - firewall rule [370](#)
 - default [304](#)
 - Firewall screen [304](#), [374](#)
 - Firewall settings
 - Dynamic DNS screen [336](#)
 - Firewall settings screen [332](#)

firmware
 maintain **66**

Firmware management screen **199, 237**

firmware upgrade
 priority **199**
 schedule **199, 200, 226, 237**
 time **238**

firmware version
 view **253**

floor plan **213**

force logout **145, 170**

FQDN **143, 334, 398**

FQDN (Fully-Qualified Domain Name) **506**

Full (read and write)
 access **173**

full access **172**

Full privilege **146, 147**

Fully-Qualified Domain Name **334, 398**

Fully-Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) **141**

G

gateway
 log message **344**

Gateway settings screen **396, 399**

General settings screen **226**

get started **21**

Gold Security Pack license **15**

Google Authenticator app **25**
 install **109**

Google authenticator passcode **102**

Google map **254, 343, 465**
 client location **209**
 site location **148**

grace period
 organization license **20**

group
 create **135**
 definition **135**

Group Administrator account **144**

Group list **136**

Group-wide
 overview **136**

Group-wide menu **136**

guest ambassador
 access **172, 173**

Guest interface **355, 362**

guest VLAN **442**

guest WiFi network **47**

H

hash algorithm **304**

Hit for AP Network IP Reputation Filter
 Dashboard **205**

Hit for Collaborative Detect & Response
 Dashboard **204**

Home networking
 setting **250**

hub **196**
 add **143**

hub to hub VPN **141, 143**

hub-and-spoke topology **141, 196**

Hub-and-Spoke VPN **381**

I

ICCID **258**

icon
 delete **264**
 download **264**
 More **30**
 pause **255**
 photo remove **254**
 play **255**

idle timeout **154**

IDP **312, 376**

IEEE 802.11k/v **484**

IEEE 802.11r **479**

IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet standard **430**

IEEE 802.3at High Power over Ethernet standard **430**

IGMP filtering profile **431**

IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message **431, 440**

IGMP multicast groups **415**

IGMP query port **431**

IGMP snooping **437**

- IGMP status [405](#)
 - IKE (Internet Key Exchange) [301, 384](#)
 - IKE SA [297](#)
 - IKE SA (Security Association) [383](#)
 - IKE version [102, 298](#)
 - image
 - maximum file size [229](#)
 - upload/replace/remove [229](#)
 - IMEI [258](#)
 - import certificate [155](#)
 - IMSI [258](#)
 - Inactive
 - license state [167](#)
 - in-app push
 - alert notification [235](#)
 - Install wizard
 - action [157](#)
 - installation wizard [161](#)
 - Installer
 - access [173](#)
 - installer privilege [172](#)
 - instant messenger (IM) [307, 374](#)
 - Insufficient Licenses status [20](#)
 - Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID) [258](#)
 - Interface addressing screen [352](#)
 - Interface screen [279](#)
 - Interfaces addressing
 - Local LAN screen [365](#)
 - Interfaces addressing screen [367](#)
 - internal antenna [458](#)
 - International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) [258](#)
 - International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) [258](#)
 - Internet access
 - voucher [216](#)
 - Internet Information Server (IIS) [487](#)
 - Internet Protocol Security [386](#)
 - Internet Service Provider [258](#)
 - intra-BSS traffic blocking [476, 484](#)
 - Intrusion Detection and Prevention [312, 376](#)
 - Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) [272, 347, 349](#)
 - intrusion detection/prevention [196](#)
 - Inventory screen [137](#)
 - IP & Routing screen [433](#)
 - IP address
 - add [141](#)
 - client [210](#)
 - IP passthrough [258](#)
 - IPS (IDP) signature [229](#)
 - IPS (Intrusion Prevention System) [15](#)
 - IPSec [386](#)
 - IPSec SA [299, 303](#)
 - IPSec tunnel
 - maximum [515](#)
 - IPSec VPN [383](#)
 - IPSec VPN client
 - enable remote access VPN rule [102](#)
 - IPSec VPN tunnel [158](#)
 - IPTV
 - manage [93](#)
 - set up VLAN [94](#)
 - IPTV channel [39, 97, 415](#)
 - IPTV client [415](#)
 - IPTV report [39](#)
 - IPTV report screen [413](#)
 - IPTV topology setup [95](#)
 - IPTV traffic [415](#)
 - IPv4 address
 - gateway [263](#)
 - LAN station [263](#)
 - ISP (Internet Service Provider) [258](#)
- ## K
- key size [303](#)
- ## L
- L2 isolation [476](#)
 - L2TP [386](#)
 - L2TP VPN [386](#)
 - LAC [261](#)
 - LAI (Location Area ID) [261](#)
 - LAN interface configuration
 - DHCP option screen [286](#)
 - LAN interface configuration screen [283](#)
 - LAN stations screen [262](#)

- LAN usage
 - view [253](#)
 - language
 - select [32](#)
 - Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol [386](#)
 - layer-2 isolation [484](#)
 - leave mode
 - fast [431](#)
 - normal [431](#)
 - LED tags [451](#)
 - license
 - activate/assign [53](#)
 - activation [54](#)
 - assign to Nebula Device in new organization [62](#)
 - Circle [158](#)
 - expiration date [116](#)
 - feature difference [15](#)
 - general information [20](#)
 - monitor expiration [57](#)
 - payment method [137](#)
 - purchase [158](#)
 - states [54](#)
 - transfer [59, 90](#)
 - transfer to a different organization [61](#)
 - transfer to a Nebula Device in same/new organization [65](#)
 - undo assign [60](#)
 - validity [20](#)
 - license concept [13](#)
 - License Expired status [20](#)
 - license list
 - export [167](#)
 - license management [156](#)
 - License screen [21, 166](#)
 - license summary table [14](#)
 - license tier
 - organization [15](#)
 - License transfer
 - action [165, 167, 168](#)
 - license types [53](#)
 - licenses purchase
 - export [158, 164](#)
 - Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) [364](#)
 - Link Aggregation Group (LAG) [360](#)
 - Link Layer Discovery Protocol [410](#)
 - Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) [425](#)
 - live tools [255](#)
 - LLDP [410](#)
 - LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) [210](#)
 - LLDP-MED protocol [446](#)
 - load balancing [456, 501](#)
 - load balancing method [395](#)
 - local override [187, 189](#)
 - enable [80](#)
 - switch [190](#)
 - Location Area Code (LAC) [261](#)
 - Location Area ID [261](#)
 - locator LED [407](#)
 - log
 - full [117, 138](#)
 - log list
 - export [118, 139, 153, 169, 220](#)
 - log message [413, 466](#)
 - login account
 - menu [30](#)
 - login information [103](#)
 - login page [486](#)
 - logo
 - remove [120](#)
 - replace [120](#)
 - upload [120](#)
 - loop guard [426](#)
- ## M
- MAC account
 - create/update [180](#)
 - MAC address
 - gateway [343](#)
 - LAN station [263](#)
 - Nebula Device [237](#)
 - port [343](#)
 - user account [244](#)
 - WiFi station [263](#)
 - MAC authentication [479](#)
 - MAC screen [178, 180, 243](#)
 - Managed Service Provider (MSP) [12, 113](#)
 - management VLAN [445](#)
 - map
 - pin a device [214](#)
 - Map & floor plans screen [213](#)

- Max Power (mW) [408](#)
- MCC [258](#)
- MCS [261](#)
- Media Independent Interface (MII) [364](#)
- Memory usage [269, 343](#)
- merged privilege [171](#)
- mii (Media Independent Interface) [364](#)
- MNC [259](#)
- Mobile Country Code (MCC) [258](#)
- Mobile Network Code (MNC) [259](#)
- Mobile router
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- mobile router
 - restart [255](#)
- model name
 - Nebula Device [237](#)
- modulation coding scheme [261](#)
- monitor a site [70](#)
- Monitor menu [148, 202, 266, 341, 401, 450](#)
- Monitor-only
 - access [172, 173](#)
- More icon [30](#)
- MSP
 - create organization [118](#)
 - introduction [12](#)
- MSP administrator [129](#)
- MSP alerts
 - create [131](#)
 - email recipient [132](#)
 - notification type [133](#)
 - update [131](#)
- MSP alerts screen [129](#)
- MSP branding [119](#)
- MSP license [14, 113](#)
 - activate [85](#)
- MSP portal [113](#)
- MSP Trial license [14](#)
- My RADIUS server [480](#)
- myZyxel account [11, 13, 22](#)
 - email address [26](#)
- Nebula Device [237](#)
 - port [343](#)
 - user account [244, 246](#)
- NAS [340, 399](#)
- NAS identifier [481](#)
- NAS IP address [340, 399](#)
- NAT rule [292](#)
- NAT screen [292](#)
- Native mode [165, 167](#)
- NCAS [482](#)
- NCAS (Nebula Cloud Authentication Server) [330](#)
- NCC
 - access [21](#)
 - account settings [33](#)
 - alert [31](#)
 - change device owner [40](#)
 - create organization [40](#)
 - dark mode [32](#)
 - Dashboard [202](#)
 - display language [32](#)
 - example network [13](#)
 - features [11](#)
 - license expiration [116, 137](#)
 - license status [137](#)
 - live chat [516](#)
 - log message view [31](#)
 - login [22](#)
 - menu [33](#)
 - notification [32](#)
 - organization [12](#)
 - overview [11, 52](#)
 - portal website [21](#)
 - sample network topology [13](#)
 - settings icon [32](#)
 - site [12](#)
 - two-factor authentication [24](#)
- NCC license [158](#)
 - category [14](#)
 - status [115](#)
- NCC logo
 - replace [119](#)
- NCC menu summary [34](#)
- NCC portal
 - access [21](#)
 - no access [513](#)
 - overview [28](#)
 - parts [28](#)
 - title bar [28](#)

N

name

NCC Pro Pack
 activate [51](#)

NCC, Nebula Control Center [11, 52](#)

Near Expiring status [20](#)

Nebula account
 login [27](#)

Nebula cloud authentication
 select [480](#)

Nebula Cloud Authentication Server [482](#)

Nebula Device
 location [254](#)
 power consumption [407](#)
 remove [89](#)
 status [58](#)

Nebula Device list
 export [402](#)

Nebula Device port list
 export [425](#)

Nebula managed device
 connect [21](#)

Nebula native mode
 deployment method [48](#)

Nebula SD-WAN [23](#)

Nebula Security Service [37, 38, 272, 347](#)

Nebula Security Service (NSS) license [14](#)

Nebula Smart Mesh [448, 501](#)

NETCONF [11](#)

NETCONF over TLS [11](#)

Network Access Server [340, 399](#)

Network Access Server identifier [481](#)

Network address translation (NAT) [354](#)

Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) [11](#)

Network Interface Card (NIC)
 PXE-capable [286](#)

network topology [215](#)
 fully-meshed [196](#)

Network usage and connectivity screen [264](#)

next hop [288, 368](#)

NSG device
 license [14](#)

NSS [37, 38, 272, 347](#)

NSS Analysis Report screen [347](#)

NSS/UTM
 license expiration [116](#)

NSS/UTM license [158](#)

O

online document
 parts [504](#)

Online documents screen [504](#)

ONVIF (Open Network Video Interface Forum) [435](#)

ONVIF discovery
 configure [436](#)

ONVIF discovery screen [436](#)

operating system [206](#)
 show [463](#)

Orchestrator [23](#)

Orchestrator Management [23](#)

organization
 choose [41](#)
 copy settings [118](#)
 create [40, 44, 118](#)
 create new [24](#)
 delete [89, 92](#)
 overview [148](#)
 privilege [125](#)
 summary view [30](#)

organization (delegated) privilege [172](#)

organization access [147, 173](#)

organization administrator [11, 13](#)

organization license [14](#)
 grace period [20](#)

Organization Trial license [14](#)

Org-to-Org Service [141](#)

Org-to-Org VPN [141, 143](#)
 configure [141](#)
 example [141](#)

Org-to-Org VPN screen [142](#)

OSI (Open System Interconnection) [312, 377](#)

OUI (Organizationally Unique Identifier) [446](#)

output power
 radio [492](#)

override site-wide configuration
 enable [80](#)

Overview screen [148, 156](#)

owner
 change [171](#)

owner privilege [172](#)

P

- passcode
 - 2FA [110](#)
- password
 - login [226](#)
- pause icon [255](#)
- payment method
 - license [137](#)
- PCC [259](#)
- PCI [259](#), [260](#)
- PD priority [429](#)
- peer-to-peer (P2P) [307](#), [374](#)
- Perfect Forward Secrecy [385](#)
- Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) [299](#), [304](#)
- Personal Identification Number [258](#)
- PFS [385](#)
- photo
 - upload [254](#)
- photo remove icon [254](#)
- Physical Cell ID (PCI) [259](#), [260](#)
- PIN (Personal Identification Number) [258](#)
- PIN code [258](#)
- Pin Unlock Key [258](#)
- ping
 - perform [255](#)
- play icon [255](#)
- PLMN (Public Land Mobile Network) [258](#)
- Plus Pack license [14](#)
- Plus tier [15](#)
- PMI [261](#)
- PoE [442](#)
- PoE mode [408](#)
- PoE Power
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- PoE schedule [429](#)
- PoE schedules screen [442](#)
- PoE status [405](#)
- policy route [287](#), [368](#)
- Policy Route screen [368](#)
- port
 - gateway [343](#)
- port group [278](#), [354](#)
- port isolation [428](#)
- port mirroring [410](#), [446](#)
- Port screen [278](#)
- port security [442](#)
- port setting
 - Nebula AP [499](#)
- port VLAN ID [426](#), [429](#)
- power consumption
 - Nebula Device [407](#)
 - port [410](#), [423](#)
- power management mode [405](#), [408](#)
- Power over Ethernet [442](#)
- Power over Ethernet (PoE) [215](#)
- power-up mode [430](#)
- Precoding Matrix Indicator (PMI) [261](#)
- pre-shared key [199](#), [297](#), [381](#)
- pre-shared key (PSK) [475](#), [479](#)
- primary component carrier (PCC) [259](#)
- privilege [172](#)
 - admin in organization [146](#)
 - administrator [121](#)
 - assign [126](#)
 - merged [171](#)
 - organization [123](#), [125](#)
- privilege priority [121](#)
- Pro Pack license [14](#)
- Pro tier [15](#)
- problems [513](#)
- product registration [522](#)
- profile
 - switch [190](#)
- protocol ID [290](#)
- Public Land Mobile Network [258](#)
- PUCCH (Physical Uplink Control Channel) [261](#)
- PUK (Pin Unlock Key) [258](#)
- purchase history
 - export [170](#)
- Purchase History screen [169](#)
- Purchase license
 - action [164](#)
- PUSCH (Physical Uplink Shared Channel) [261](#)
- PVID [429](#), [458](#)
- PXE (Preboot eXecution Environment) [286](#)

Q

- QR code [25, 110](#)
- Quality of Service (QoS) [446](#)
- Quarantine screen [232](#)
- quarantine VLAN [232](#)
- Queued
 - license state [167](#)

R

- RAC (Routing Area Code) [261](#)
- radio
 - output power [492](#)
- Radio Frequency Channel Number [259, 260](#)
- radio setting
 - AP [490](#)
- Radio settings screen [490](#)
- RADIUS accounting [481](#)
- RADIUS policies screen [441](#)
- RADIUS server [396, 481](#)
- RAI (Routing Area ID) [261](#)
- Rank Indication [261](#)
- rate limiting [476](#)
- read and write (Full)
 - access [173](#)
- read and write access [172](#)
- read-only access [172, 173](#)
- Read-only privilege [146, 147](#)
- reboot
 - mobile router [255](#)
- Received Signal Code Power [260](#)
- recurring schedule
 - firmware upgrade [239](#)
- Reference Signal Receive Power (RSRP) [259, 260](#)
- Reference Signal Receive Quality (RSRQ) [259, 260](#)
- Reference Signals (RS) [259, 260](#)
- register
 - device [236](#)
- register a device [36](#)
- registration
 - product [522](#)
- remote access VPN
 - setup [100](#)

- Remote access VPN screen [102, 299](#)
- remote AP
 - maximum number of [515](#)
- Remote AP (RAP) [335](#)
- remote AP feature
 - enable [456](#)
- remote configurator
 - mobile router [256](#)
- Remove from organization
 - action [164, 165](#)
- renewal license [21](#)
- repeater AP [449](#)
- Resource Element (RE) [259, 260](#)
- restore configuration [187](#)
- RFCN [259, 260](#)
- roaming
 - mobile router [258](#)
- root AP [449](#)
- root bridge [405](#)
- Routing
 - Policy Routes/Traffic Shaping screen [288](#)
 - Static Route screen [290](#)
- Routing Area Code [261](#)
- Routing Area ID [261](#)
- RSCP [260](#)
- RSRP [259, 260](#)
- RSRQ [259, 260](#)
- RSSI [259](#)
- RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator) [263, 462](#)
- RSTP status [405](#)

S

- schedule firmware upgrade [35, 36, 199, 237](#)
- schedule profile
 - add [376](#)
- schedule template [443, 490](#)
- SD-WAN license [23](#)
- search
 - for NCC-managed device [30](#)
- SecuExtender license key
 - activate [103](#)

- SecuExtender software
 - install **103**
- Secure WiFi license **15, 158**
 - status **116**
- SecuReporter screen **272**
- Security Alert
 - Dashboard **204**
- Security Gateway screen **341**
- security license
 - status **115**
- security log
 - display **256**
- security policy **305**
- security profile sync **192**
 - configure **190**
- Security Profile Sync (SPS) **312**
- Security profile sync screen **190**
- Security Service license **14**
- Security service screen **312, 497**
- security services **343**
- Security Services Trial
 - activate **51**
- serial number **402**
 - gateway **343**
 - Nebula Device **237**
- Server-and-Client VPN **381**
- service provider **258**
- Service Set Identifier **474**
- Settings screen **140, 153**
- setup wizard **27, 43**
 - steps **43**
- severity level **511**
- SFP (Small Form Factor Pluggable) port **412**
- signal strength
 - mobile router **256**
- Signal to Interference plus Noise Ratio (SINR) **259, 261**
- SIM card
 - status **258**
- single sign-on (SSO) **177**
- SINR **259, 261**
- SIP
 - ALG **338**
- site **196**
 - create **44, 155**
 - delete **90**
 - summary **148**
- site (network)
 - add **155**
- site administrator **11, 13**
- site binding **188**
- site list
 - export **149**
- site tag
 - summary **148**
- Site tags tab **150**
- Sites tab **149**
- Site-to-Site VPN screen **294, 379, 382**
- site-wide schedule
 - firmware upgrade **239**
- Smart Alert Engine **130, 233**
- smart client steering **496**
- Smart Mesh **448, 459**
 - network topology **449**
 - wireless hops **449**
- Smart VPN **141**
- spanning tree **405**
- SSID **46, 474**
 - mobile router **263**
- SSID availability screen **489**
- SSID network
 - encryption method **222**
- SSID overview screen **474**
- SSID profile **474**
 - settings **476**
- SSID schedule **489**
- SSID settings screen **476**
- SSIDs (by Usage)
 - Dashboard **204**
- static route **287, 368**
- status
 - voucher **218**
- submit ticket **508**
- summary report **213**
- Summary Report screen **220, 273, 350, 422, 470**
- support
 - contact detail **12**
- support account **510**
- Support contact **119**
- Support forum **508**
- Support Request screen **508**

supported browsers [513](#)
supported Nebula Devices [11](#), [248](#), [401](#), [448](#)
Surveillance screen [419](#)
switch
 define role [95](#)
switch connection status [402](#)
Switch settings screen [444](#)
Switch Status
 Dashboard [204](#)
Switches screen [401](#)
Syslog server [228](#)
system log
 display [256](#)

T

TAC [261](#)
tag
 gateway [343](#)
tag list
 export [150](#)
team
 create [125](#)
 name [125](#)
 update [125](#)
Teams screen [124](#)
template
 configuration [187](#), [227](#)
 setting [189](#)
template setting
 duplicate/import to a site [74](#)
template site/setting
 create/bind [70](#)
ticket
 support request [508](#)
ticket details [508](#)
time zone
 set [45](#)
 site location [227](#)
topology overview [196](#)
Topology screen [215](#)
traceroute
 perform [255](#), [460](#)
traceroute function [269](#)

Tracking Area Code (TAC) [261](#)
traffic log
 AP [228](#)
traffic shaping [393](#), [496](#)
Traffic shaping screen [393](#), [497](#)
transfer license
 action [164](#)
 tutorial [59](#)
transfer license to another organization
 tutorial [61](#)
transferable license
 select [59](#)
transmitting power [496](#)
trial license
 expiration date [40](#)
troubleshooting [513](#)
 more help [516](#)
trunk group [425](#)
trunk port [429](#)
TV pixelation [415](#)
Two factor authentication screen [108](#)
two-factor authentication
 bypass [176](#), [243](#)
 enable [24](#), [102](#)
type
 user account [246](#)

U

U/TM Security Pack license [14](#)
U-APSD [484](#)
UARFCN (UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number) [259](#), [260](#)
UE (User Equipment) [261](#)
Undo assign
 action [164](#), [165](#), [167](#), [168](#)
Unused
 license state [167](#)
uplink AP [453](#)
UPnP
 conflict with ONVIF [435](#)
URL threat filter [193](#)
user
 remove [92](#)

user account
 bind [108](#)
 create [176](#)
 remove [175, 179](#)
 type [174](#)
User screen [174, 176, 240](#)
USG FLEX device
 license [15](#)
USG FLEX screen [266](#)
USG VPN device
 license [15](#)
UTRA Absolute Radio-Frequency Channel Number [259, 260](#)

V

virtual private network [294, 379](#)
Virtual Private Network (VPN)
 create automatically [196](#)
VLAN attribute [175, 242](#)
VLAN for IPTV [94](#)
VLAN ID [46](#)
VLAN settings
 guest [47](#)
Voice over IP (VoIP) [307, 374](#)
voice VLAN [446](#)
voucher [216](#)
 create [218](#)
 status [218](#)
voucher code
 login [480](#)
voucher table
 export [217](#)
voucher-based WiFi access [216](#)
Vouchers screen [217](#)
VPN [294, 379](#)
VPN access [175, 241](#)
VPN area [196, 296](#)
VPN client setting [299](#)
VPN client software
 download [387](#)
VPN configuration file [103](#)
 import steps [103](#)
VPN Connections screen [270, 345](#)

VPN connections screen [111](#)
VPN gateway site [290](#)
VPN Orchestrator screen [141, 197](#)
VPN rule
 enable [102](#)
VPN tunnel [346](#)
 open steps [106](#)
VPN Tunnel Interface (VTI) [385](#)
VPN user
 create [100](#)
 setup [103](#)

W

walled garden [330, 332, 335, 396, 476, 482](#)
WAN interface configuration screen [281](#)
WAN load balancing
 configure [291](#)
WAN status screen [256](#)
WAN Throughput
 Dashboard [204](#)
WAN usage
 view [253](#)
warranty [522](#)
 note [522](#)
web authentication [329, 392](#)
Web Filtering signature [229](#)
widget
 rearrange [202](#)
WiFi
 guest [47](#)
WiFi frequency band [269](#)
WiFi mesh solution [448](#)
WiFi network name
 enter [46](#)
WiFi password
 enter [46](#)
WiFi settings [46](#)
WiFi status
 mobile router [263](#)
wildcard domain name [482](#)
WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server [359, 365](#)
wired clients [205](#)

- wireless bridge
 - use [450](#)
- wireless channel bandwidth [493](#)
- Wireless Clients [205](#)
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- Wireless Clients (by Usage)
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- Wireless Clients Manufacturer
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- Wireless Clients OS
 - Dashboard [204](#)
- Wireless Health screen [466](#)
- Wireless screen [331](#)
- wizard
 - installation [161](#)
- WLAN stations screen [263](#)
- WLAN usage
 - view [253](#)
- world map [213](#)
- WPA Enterprise [480](#)
- WPA2-PSK data encryption [331](#)

Z

- Zero Touch Provisioning [49](#)
- ZTP (Zero Touch Provisioning) [48](#)
- ZyWALL VPN device
 - configure [23](#)
- Zyxel Device [216](#)
- Zyxel license marketplace [158, 164](#)
- Zyxel webstore [137](#)